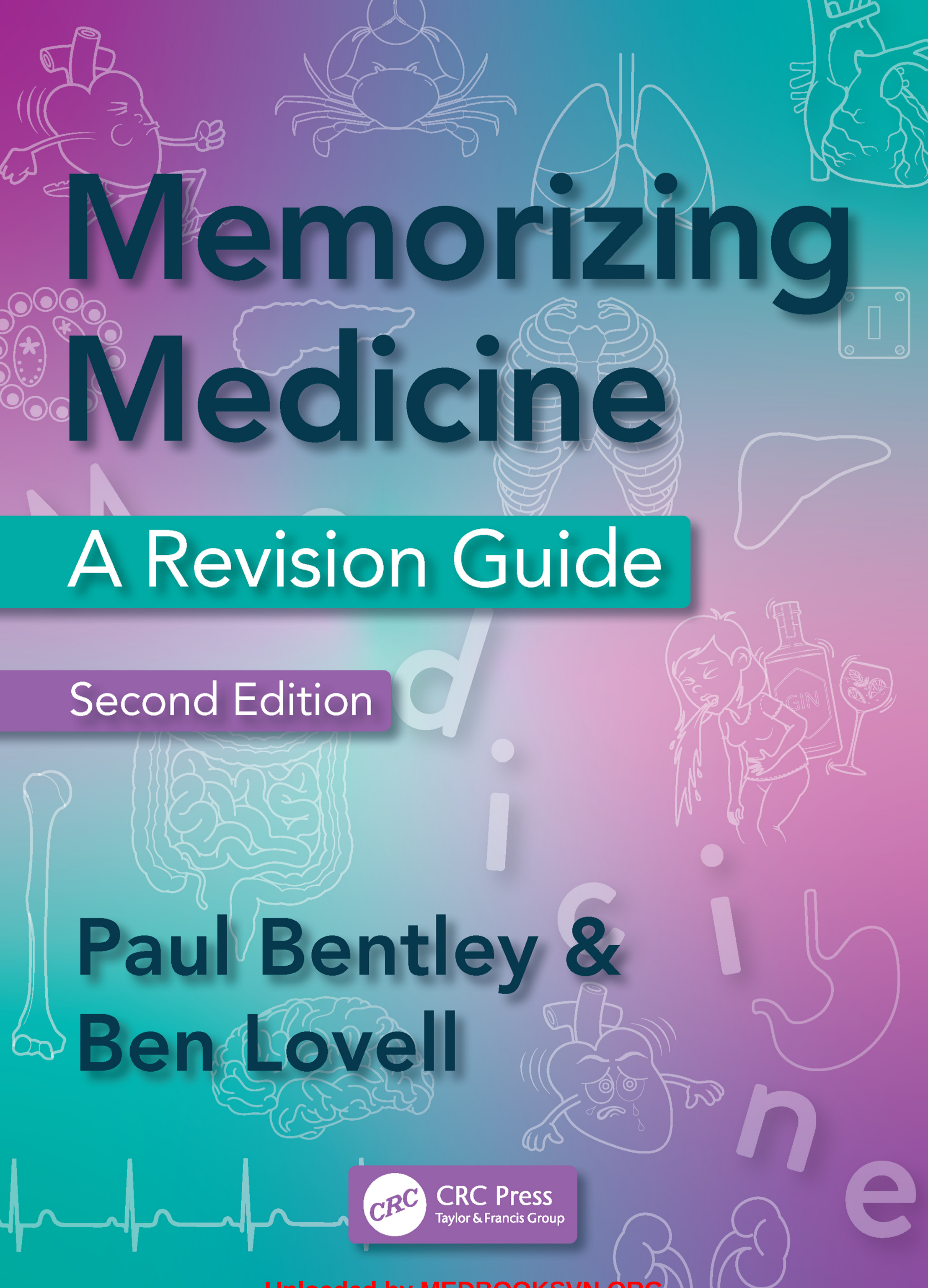


Memorizing Medicine

A Revision Guide

Second Edition

Paul Bentley &
Ben Lovell

CRC Press
Taylor & Francis Group

Memorizing Medicine

A Revision Guide

Second Edition

DR STORE PRO PRODUCTS

Please support me by buying one of Products in the store

View ALL Products

6Pcs Ears Protect Button Headband

3in1 Android & PC Visual Earpick

High Definition
720P
1.3 Million
Pixels
Android
iMac
Windows
Micro USB
6LED
USB
Type-C

Fashion Backpack for Female Nurses and Doctors

Stylish Stethoscope Cover

Taylor & Francis
Taylor & Francis Group
http://taylorandfrancis.com

Memorizing Medicine

A Revision Guide

Second Edition

Paul Bentley &
Ben Lovell

CRC Press
Taylor & Francis Group
Boca Raton London New York

CRC Press is an imprint of the
Taylor & Francis Group, an **informa** business

CRC Press
Taylor & Francis Group
6000 Broken Sound Parkway NW, Suite 300
Boca Raton, FL 33487-2742

© 2020 by Taylor & Francis Group, LLC
CRC Press is an imprint of Taylor & Francis Group, an Informa business

No claim to original U.S. Government works

Printed on acid-free paper

International Standard Book Number-13: 978-1-138-33271-3 (Hardback)
978-1-138-33269-0 (Paperback)

This book contains information obtained from authentic and highly regarded sources. While all reasonable efforts have been made to publish reliable data and information, neither the author[s] nor the publisher can accept any legal responsibility or liability for any errors or omissions that may be made. The publishers wish to make clear that any views or opinions expressed in this book by individual editors, authors or contributors are personal to them and do not necessarily reflect the views/opinions of the publishers. The information or guidance contained in this book is intended for use by medical, scientific or health-care professionals and is provided strictly as a supplement to the medical or other professional's own judgement, their knowledge of the patient's medical history, relevant manufacturer's instructions and the appropriate best practice guidelines. Because of the rapid advances in medical science, any information or advice on dosages, procedures or diagnoses should be independently verified. The reader is strongly urged to consult the relevant national drug formulary and the drug companies' and device or material manufacturers' printed instructions, and their websites, before administering or utilizing any of the drugs, devices or materials mentioned in this book. This book does not indicate whether a particular treatment is appropriate or suitable for a particular individual. Ultimately it is the sole responsibility of the medical professional to make his or her own professional judgements, so as to advise and treat patients appropriately. The authors and publishers have also attempted to trace the copyright holders of all material reproduced in this publication and apologize to copyright holders if permission to publish in this form has not been obtained. If any copyright material has not been acknowledged please write and let us know so we may rectify in any future reprint.

Except as permitted under U.S. Copyright Law, no part of this book may be reprinted, reproduced, transmitted, or utilized in any form by any electronic, mechanical, or other means, now known or hereafter invented, including photocopying, microfilming, and recording, or in any information storage or retrieval system, without written permission from the publishers.

For permission to photocopy or use material electronically from this work, please access www.copyright.com (http://www.copyright.com/) or contact the Copyright Clearance Center, Inc. (CCC), 222 Rosewood Drive, Danvers, MA 01923, 978-750-8400. CCC is a not-for-profit organization that provides licenses and registration for a variety of users. For organizations that have been granted a photocopy license by the CCC, a separate system of payment has been arranged.

Trademark Notice: Product or corporate names may be trademarks or registered trademarks, and are used only for identification and explanation without intent to infringe.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Names: Bentley, Paul, Dr., author. | Lovell, Ben, author.
Title: Memorizing medicine / Ben Lovell and Paul Bentley.
Description: Second edition. | Boca Raton, FL : Taylor & Francis Group, [2019] | Only Paul Bentley's name appears in the previous edition. | Includes bibliographical references and index.
Identifiers: LCCN 2019015648| ISBN 9781138332690 (pbk. : alk. paper) | ISBN 9781138332713 (hardbook : alk. paper) | ISBN 9780429185939 (e-book)
Subjects: | MESH: Clinical Medicine | Outline
Classification: LCC R834.5 | NLM WB 18.2 | DDC 610.76--dc23
LC record available at https://lccn.loc.gov/2019015648

Visit the Taylor & Francis Web site at
http://www.taylorandfrancis.com

and the CRC Press Web site at
http://www.crcpress.com

CONTENTS

Acknowledgements and Dedication viii

Introduction ix

Examples of Effective Memorizing x

Book Guide xi

Memorizing Medicine - 6 Tips xiii

Cardiology 1

Chest pain **2**; Cardiology examination **4**; Murmurs **6**; Aortic stenosis **8**; Aortic regurgitation **9**; Mitral stenosis **10**; Mitral regurgitation **11**; ECG interpretation **12**; Tachycardia **16**; Atrial fibrillation **18**; Ventricular tachycardia **20**; Bradycardia **22**; Acute coronary syndromes **24**; Myocardial infarction **25**; Management of ACS **27**; Shock **28**; Hypertension **30**; Heart failure **32**; Cardiology treatments **34**; Rheumatic fever **36**; Infective endocarditis **38**; Pericardial disease **40**; Myocarditis **42**; Myxoma **43**; Cardiomyopathy **44**; Congenital heart disease **46**

Respiratory Medicine 51

Respiratory examination **52**; Clubbing **54**; Cyanosis **55**; Respiratory failure **56**; Respiratory function tests **58**; Chest X-ray patterns **60**; Pneumonia **62**; Asthma **64**; Acute severe asthma **70**; COPD **72**; Pulmonary fibrosis **74**; Occupational lung diseases **76**; Sarcoidosis **78**; Bronchiectasis **80**; Lung abscess **82**; Cystic fibrosis **84**; Pneumothorax **86**; Pleural effusion **88**; Pulmonary oedema **90**; Lung carcinoma **92**; Obstructive sleep apnoea **94**; Pulmonary embolism **96**; Pulmonary hypertension **98**

Gastroenterology 101

Abdominal pain **102**; Diarrhoea **104**; Constipation **105**; Nausea and vomiting **106**; Sore throat **108**; Oral ulceration **109**; Dysphagia **110**; Haematemesis **112**; Rectal bleeding **113**; Abdominal examination **114**; Abdominal masses **115**; Oesophagitis **116**; Oesophageal carcinoma **118**; Peptic ulcers **120**; Gastric neoplasia **124**; Inflammatory bowel disease **126**; Colorectal carcinoma **130**; Malabsorption **132**; Coeliac disease **134**; Acute pancreatitis **136**; Chronic pancreatitis **138**; Jaundice **140**; Liver failure **142**; Liver transplant **145**; Portal hypertension **146**; Oesophageal varices **148**; Ascites **150**; Acute liver failure **152**; Chronic liver disease **154**; Infective hepatitis **156**; Primary biliary cirrhosis **158**; Autoimmune hepatitis **159**; Haemochromatosis **160**; Wilson disease **161**; Liver tumours **162**; Pancreatic tumours **163**; Gallstones **164**

Infectious Diseases 167

Infectious organisms **168**; Bacteria **172**; Antibiotics **174**; Viruses **176**; Pneumonia **178**; Food poisoning **180**; Gastroenteritis **181**; Genital discharge **188**; Genital ulceration **190**; Viral exanthema and related **192**; Herpes simplex virus **194**; Epstein–Barr virus **195**; HIV **196**; Tuberculosis **200**; Mycobacteria **204**; Leprosy **205**; Syphilis **206**; Borreliosis **208**; Leptospirosis **209**; Rickettsia **210**; Malaria **212**; Nematodes (roundworms) **214**; Cestodes (tapeworms) **216**; Trematodes (flukes) **217**

Rheumatology 219

Osteoarthritis **220**; Rheumatoid arthritis **224**; Seronegative arthropathies **228**; Septic arthritis **232**; Crystal arthropathies **234**; Pyrophosphate arthropathy **237**; Multisystemic autoimmune diseases **238**; Systemic lupus erythematosus **240**; Scleroderma **242**; Sjögren syndrome **244**; Autoimmune myositis **246**; Vasculitis **248**; Raynaud phenomenon **250**; Cryoglobulinaemia **251**; Carpal tunnel syndrome **252**; Collagen and elastic-tissue diseases **254**; Back pain **256**; Bone cysts **258**; Sclerosis **259**

Neurology 261

Headache **262**; Acute confusional state **266**; Coma **268**; Dementia **270**; Parkinsonism **272**; Chorea **274**; Dystonia **275**; Tremor **276**; Cerebellar disease **278**; Blackouts **280**; Epilepsy **282**; Stroke **284**; Acute weakness **288**; Guillain–Barré syndrome **289**; Hand wasting **290**; Walking disturbance **291**; Myelopathy **292**; Anterior-horn cell diseases **294**; ALS/Motor neurone disease **295**; Peripheral neuropathy **296**; Neuromuscular junction disease **298**; Myopathy **300**; Acute visual loss **302**; Optic atrophy **304**; Papilloedema **305**; Vertigo **306**; Deafness **307**; Facial nerve palsy **308**; Neurofibromatosis **310**; Neurocutaneous diseases **311**

Endocrinology 313

Diabetes mellitus – Causes **314**; Insulin – Physiology **315**; Diabetic ketoacidosis **316**; Diabetes HHS **318**; Diabetes – Lactic acidosis **319**; Diabetes mellitus **320**; Hypoglycaemia **330**; Hypopituitarism **332**; Hyperprolactinaemia **336**; Acromegaly **338**; Hypothyroidism **340**; Hyperthyroidism **344**; Goitre **348**; Thyroid tumours **349**; Adrenal insufficiency **350**; Cushing syndrome **352**; Hypermineralocorticoidism **354**; Steroid synthesis **356**; Amenorrhoea **357**; Male sexual problems **362**; Male infertility **363**; Precocious puberty **364**; Delayed puberty **366**; Neuroendocrine tumours **368**; Carcinoid tumours **370**; Multiple endocrine neoplasia **372**; Polyglandular autoimmune syndromes **373**

Clinical Chemistry 375

Acid–base balance **376**; Hyponatraemia **378**; Polyuria/Polydipsia **380**; Hypernatraemia **381**; Diabetes insipidus **382**; Hyperkalaemia **384**; Hypokalaemia **385**; Hypocalcaemia **386**; Hypercalcaemia **388**; Osteomalacia and rickets **390**; Osteoporosis **392**; Paget disease **394**; Hyperlipidaemia **396**; Porphyria **398**

Renal Medicine 401

Acute kidney injury **402**; Chronic kidney disease **404**; Haematuria **408**; Nephrotic syndrome **410**; Renovascular disease **412**; Glomerulonephritis **414**; Renal tubular disease **416**; Urinary obstruction **418**; Urinary retention **419**; Renal stones **420**; Renal enlargement **422**; Polycystic kidney disease **423**; Renal cell carcinoma **424**; Testicular tumours **426**; Ovarian tumours **428**

Haematology 431

Anaemia **432**; Bone marrow failure **434**; Aplastic anaemia **435**; Haemolytic anaemia **436**; Sickle cell anaemia **440**; Thalassaemia **442**; Folate and vitamin B12 metabolism **444**; Megaloblastic anaemia **446**; Lymphoproliferative disease **448**; Splenomegaly **449**; Leucocytosis **450**; Acute leukaemia **452**; Chronic myeloid leukaemia **456**; Polycythaemia/PRV **458**; Chronic lymphocytic leukaemia **460**; Hodgkin lymphoma **462**; Non-Hodgkin lymphoma **464**; Multiple myeloma **466**; Paraproteinaemia **468**; Hyperviscosity **469**; Amyloidosis **470**; Hyposplenism **472**; Immunodeficiency **474**; Haemostasis **478**; Platelet disorders **480**; Purpura **482**; Thrombosis **484**; Disseminated intravascular coagulation **486**; Haemophilias **488**; Blood transfusion complications **490**

Abbreviations 493

Index 503

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS AND DEDICATION

Thanks to Jo and Paul for inviting me onto this project, and thanks to Mark for his support.

Ben Lovell

To Annie, Mia, Tess and Noah

Paul Bentley

INTRODUCTION

The purpose of this book is two-fold: firstly, to inject an air of amusement and refreshing jollity into one's academic studies; secondly, to highlight an important point about how (rather than what) we should be studying.

With hope, the light-hearted aspect of the book will be immediately appreciated – punchy and practical mnemonics, entertaining pictures, sprinklings of humour and a general feeling of novelty and variety – at least relative to the average medical textbook. At the same time, weighty, wearisome text has been dispensed with as far as possible, to enable the salient points of each subject to stand out.

The serious side of the book, however, begins with the question, 'What does it take to memorize medicine?' A large part of what it takes to be a good doctor undoubtedly depends on the skill of being able to recall large quantities of information. Hence the training of doctors should not merely involve exposing students to knowledge in a passive manner, but should actively incorporate methods that engender efficient memorization. Medical textbooks should not simply be catalogues of facts, or even distillers of information, but should potentiate factual recall at a later date.

There are three reasons why a book such as this needs to be written, and they all seem to grow increasingly more compelling as each year goes by:

- The amount of medical knowledge increases exponentially with time.
- Technological advances, e.g. the internet, expose us to an increasing amount of data despite our brains being fixed in the rate at which we can 'input' it.
- Neuropsychological advances increasingly inform us on the nature of memory. A sharp mind is cultivated not so much by 'sheer hard work' or 'burning the midnight oil' as opposed to adopting optimal strategies of learning.

The manner in which we are exposed to knowledge assumes that our brains are built in a simple, sequential fashion, like home computers: read a new fact, listen to a lecture – and this information gets stored as easily as one's own name. Yet, it is clear from each of our own experiences that human memory does not work this way. Facts are most efficiently memorized as visual images, chunks, acronyms, rhymes, webs, etc. and as we update our knowledge, we must first recall our pre-existing schema of the topic, and then peg the new data onto this internal structure.

Enlightened with basic psychological truths about what it takes to memorize efficiently, this book aims to 'rewrite' the classical medical textbook by taking the same information as before but setting it out in an original style that lends itself to effective learning. We hope it succeeds in leaving an imprint in your mind while at the same time not taking itself too seriously.

EXAMPLES OF EFFECTIVE MEMORIZING

Consider SF, an ordinary undergraduate who set himself the task of learning long lists of arbitrary numbers. Starting with the average person's digit recall of 7 numbers, he was able to build up his memory to a staggering 80, albeit over one-and-a-half years of regular training sessions. He was not explicitly given formal mnemonic strategies but simply devised his own as he went along. The methods he stumbled upon just so happened to be similar to those utilized by world memory champions, as well as, coincidentally, pigeons trained on a picture task.

When SF was read the numbers 34928931944, he recalled this as short 'chunks' and made real-life associations, e.g. 3 minutes 49 seconds point 2 – 'near world-record mile time'; 89.3 years old – 'very old man'; 1944 – 'near the end of World War II'. Furthermore, whether he used a 3- or a 4-digit chunk was based upon a higher order of structure – the chunks were themselves chunked into blocks e.g. 444 444 333 333 444 333. This way he could remember the order in which the chunks were arranged.

Learning medicine is not quite like learning random number sequences – and not just for the obvious reason of the relative utility that distinguishes the two. Factual knowledge, unlike number lists, is structured with interconnections and hierarchies. This enables each topic to be naturally fragmented into a few elementary chunks, each possessing a core fact surrounded by details; the first-order of details may themselves be subsequently chunked, etc., repeating the structure at different scales.

That this sort of structuring actually occurs in the accumulation of expert knowledge has been demonstrated in chess masters in their recall of game positions. By measuring the time interval between the recall of particular positions, it has been found that masters chunk their memory of positions into meaningful groups. The maximum number of chunks that can be stored at any one time (into short-term memory) is about 4, but cumulatively the total number of chunks that can be stored in long-term memory can reach 100,000 or so – similar to the vocabulary span of the average adult!

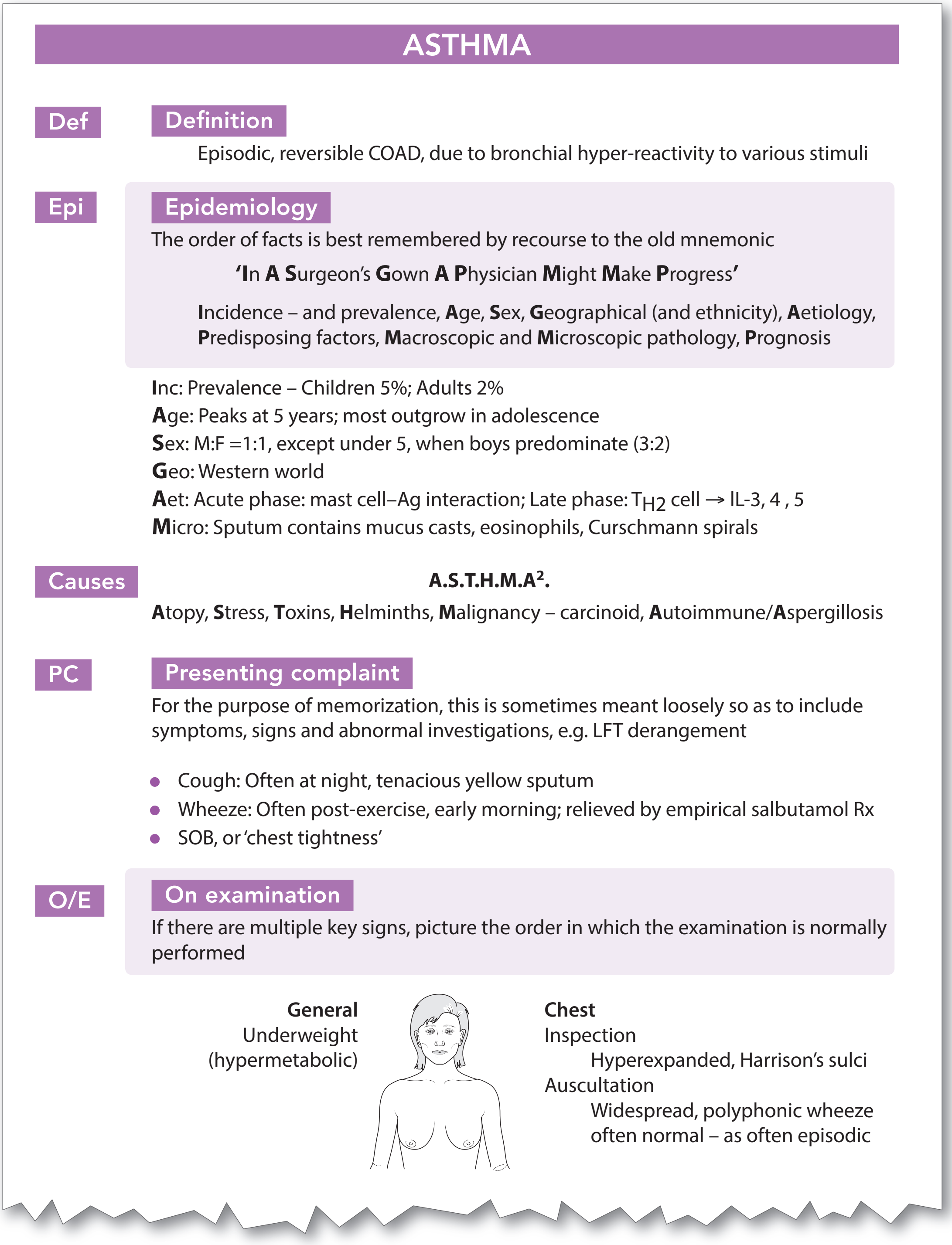
In a more recent experiment, world memory champions performed a memory task while the metabolic activity of the brain was observed using functional magnetic resonance imaging. Not only did these experts utilize methods that involved chunking and ordering chunks according to a spatial plan (the 'method of loci'), but the activated parts of the brain were those recognized to be involved in spatial memory and navigation. The experts were no more intelligent and had no differences in the structural appearance of their brains, relative to control subjects. The results suggest that skilled memory can be learnt through efficient methods rather than necessarily being a quality that one is born with.

References

Science 1980; **208**: 1181; *Nature* 1987; **325**: 149; *Memory* 2004; **12**: 232;
Nature Neurosci 2003; **6**: 90

BOOK GUIDE

Sample page explained:



ASTHMA

Def

Definition

Episodic, reversible COAD, due to bronchial hyper-reactivity to various stimuli

Epi

Epidemiology

The order of facts is best remembered by recourse to the old mnemonic

'In A Surgeon's Gown A Physician Might Make Progress'

Incidence – and prevalence, **A**ge, **S**ex, **G**eographical (and ethnicity), **A**etiology, **P**redisposing factors, **M**acroscopic and **M**icroscopic pathology, **P**rognosis

Inc: Prevalence – Children 5%; Adults 2%
Age: Peaks at 5 years; most outgrow in adolescence
Sex: M:F =1:1, except under 5, when boys predominate (3:2)
Geo: Western world
Aet: Acute phase: mast cell–Ag interaction; Late phase: T_{H2} cell → IL-3, 4 , 5
Micro: Sputum contains mucus casts, eosinophils, Curschmann spirals

Causes

A.S.T.H.M.A^2.

Atopy, **S**tress, **T**oxins, **H**elminths, **M**alignancy – carcinoid, **A**utoimmune/**A**spergillosis

PC

Presenting complaint

For the purpose of memorization, this is sometimes meant loosely so as to include symptoms, signs and abnormal investigations, e.g. LFT derangement

- Cough: Often at night, tenacious yellow sputum
- Wheeze: Often post-exercise, early morning; relieved by empirical salbutamol Rx
- SOB, or 'chest tightness'

O/E

On examination

If there are multiple key signs, picture the order in which the examination is normally performed

General
Underweight
(hypermetabolic)

Chest
Inspection
Hyperexpanded, Harrison's sulci
Auscultation
Widespread, polyphonic wheeze
often normal – as often episodic

Ix

INVESTIGATIONS

If there are more than three crucial tests, use the mnemonic – **B.U.M.M.E^3.R.S^3.**

Bloods if there are multiple blood tests, split into the different departments

- Chemistry **R.E.A.L.M.S.**
  Renal, **E**lectrolytes, **A**BGs, **L**FTs, **M**etabolic (glucose, lipids, TFT), **S**pecial
- Haematology
- Immunology

Urine

Microbiology

- Blood: Culture, serology
- Excretions: Sputum, stool, urine, discharge
- Collections: CSF, joint, pleural or ascitic effusion, abscess, lymph node

Monitor: e.g. PEFR ('peak flow'); oxygen; cardiac monitor

Electro: **E**CG (± Echo), **E**EG

Radiology

- Plain X-rays, e.g. CXR
- CT/MRI
- Radionuclide scanning

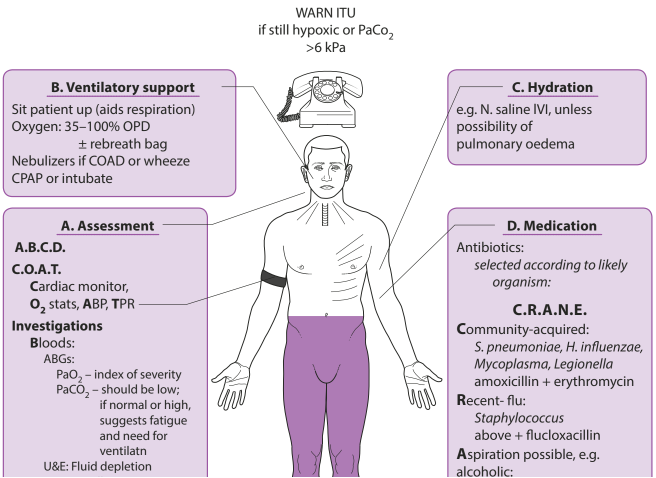
Surgical/ '**S**cope/**S**pecial

- Surgical, e.g. biopsy
- 'Scope, e.g. bronchosopy
- Special, e.g. respiratory function tests

Rx

TREATMENT

- Divide into 3-4 main category types: Conservative; Medical (supportive/ disease-modifying), Surgical
- For emergencies, picture the patient lying in bed with the various investigation/treatments surrounding him/her in order of priority



WARN ITU
if still hypoxic or $PaCo_2$
>6 kPa

B. Ventilatory support
Sit patient up (aids respiration)
Oxygen: 35–100% OPD
± rebreath bag
Nebulizers if COAD or wheeze
CPAP or intubate

C. Hydration
e.g. N. saline IVI, unless
possibility of
pulmonary oedema

A. Assessment
A.B.C.D.
C.O.A.T.
Cardiac monitor,
O_2 stats, **A**BP, **T**PR
Investigations
Bloods:
ABGs:
PaO_2 – index of severity
$PaCO_2$ – should be low;
if normal or high,
suggests fatigue
and need for
ventilatn
U&E: Fluid depletion

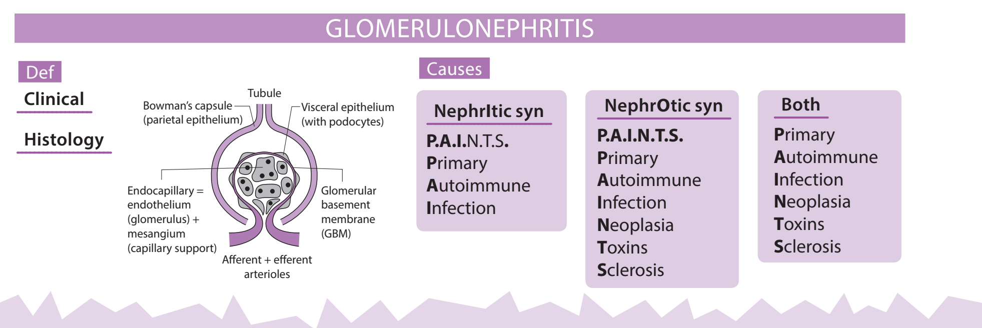
D. Medication
Antibiotics:
selected according to likely organism:

C.R.A.N.E.
Community-acquired:
S. pneumoniae, H. influenzae, Mycoplasma, Legionella
amoxicillin + erythromycin
Recent- flu:
Staphylococcus
above + flucloxacillin
Aspiration possible, e.g.
alcoholic:

MEMORIZING MEDICINE – 6 TIPS

One subject - one page

Have you ever tried to work out the route between two places using a map-book when the two places are on different pages? Similarly, if you sit down to learn a medical subject plot all the main headings on one piece of paper. It will also show you how much relative time to spend on each subheading. Never let a list run over 2 pages – you'll never remember it!



GLOMERULONEPHRITIS

Def

Clinical

Histology

Tubule

Bowman's capsule (parietal epithelium)

Visceral epithelium (with podocytes)

Endocapillary = endothelium (glomerulus) + mesangium (capillary support)

Glomerular basement membrane (GBM)

Afferent + efferent arterioles

Causes

NephrItic syn
P.A.I.N.T.S.
Primary
Autoimmune
Infection

NephrOtic syn
P.A.I.N.T.S.
Primary
Autoimmune
Infection
Neoplasia
Toxins
Sclerosis

Both
Primary
Autoimmune
Infection
Neoplasia
Toxins
Sclerosis

Hierarchy

Every doctor should know that glomerulonephritis can result in nephritic syndrome, nephrotic syndrome or both. Every general physician should know the main categories of causes. Every renal specialist should know the causes of each type of primary nephrotic syndrome. Therefore learning should proceed in this order.

NephrItic syn

Primary:
  Proliferative glomerulonephritis:
    Immune-complex:
    - Proliferation of endocapillaries
    - Proliferative = sube**P**ithelial granular

NephrOtic syn

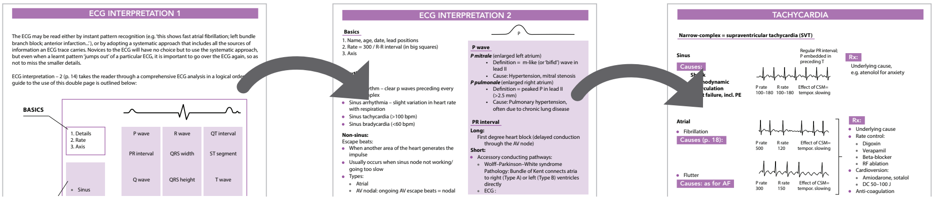
Primary:
  Membranous glomerulonephritis
  Diffuse thickening of GBM
  Subepithelial immune-complex deposits ('silver spikes')

Both

Primary
  Membranoproliferative GN
  Mesangial proliferation ('mesangiocapillary GN')
  Diffuse thickening of GBM

Nesting

As you learn finer and finer details of each subject, you'll need to move onto another page – but this needs to be done without breaking down the overall structure. The solution? Take those sub-headings with the greatest amount of extra information and cross-refer them to a new double page.



ECG INTERPRETATION 1

The ECG may be read either by instant pattern recognition (e.g. 'this shows fast atrial fibrillation; left bundle branch block; anterior infarction...'), or by adopting a systematic approach that includes all the sources of information an ECG trace carries. Novices to the ECG will have no choice but to use the systematic approach, but even when a learnt pattern 'jumps out' of a particular ECG, it is important to go over the ECG again, so as not to miss the smaller details.

ECG interpretation – 2 (p. 14) takes the reader through a comprehensive ECG analysis in a logical order guide to the use of this double page is outlined below:

BASICS

1. Details
2. Rate
3. Axis

P wave	R wave	QT interval
PR interval	QRS width	ST segment
Q wave	QRS height	T wave

- Sinus

ECG INTERPRETATION 2

Basics
1. Name, age, date, lead positions
2. Rate = 300 / R-R interval (in big squares)
3. Axis

ythm – clear p waves preceding every plex
- Sinus arrhythmia – slight variation in heart rate with respiration
- Sinus tachycardia (>100 bpm)
- Sinus bradycardia (<60 bpm)

Non-sinus:
Escape beats:
- When another area of the heart generates the impulse
- Usually occurs when sinus node not working/going too slow
- Types:
  - Atrial
  - AV nodal: ongoing AV escape beats = nodal

P

P wave
P mitrale (enlarged left atrium)
- Definition = m-like (or 'bifid') wave in lead II
- Cause: Hypertension, mitral stenosis

P pulmonale (enlarged right atrium)
- Definition = peaked P in lead II (>2.5 mm)
- Cause: Pulmonary hypertension, often due to chronic lung disease

PR interval
Long:
First degree heart block (delayed conduction through the AV node)
Short:
- Accessory conducting pathways:
  - Wolff–Parkinson–White syndrome
    Pathology: Bundle of Kent connects atria to right (Type A) or left (Type B) ventricles directly
  - ECG :

TACHYCARDIA

Narrow-complex = supraventricular tachycardia (SVT)

Sinus
Causes:
Sh k
odynamic
rculation
t failure, incl. PE

Regular PR interval; P embedded in preceding T

P rate	R rate	Effect of CSM=
100–180	100–180	tempor. slowing

Rx:
Underlying cause, e.g. atenolol for anxiety

Atrial
- Fibrillation

Causes (p. 18):

P rate	R rate	Effect of CSM=
500	120	tempor. slowing

- Flutter

Causes: as for AF

P rate	R rate	Effect of CSM=
300	150	tempor. slowing

Rx:
- Underlying cause
- Rate control:
  - Digoxin
  - Verapamil
  - Beta-blocker
  - RF ablation
- Cardioversion:
  - Amiodarone, sotalol
  - DC 50–100 J
- Anti-coagulation

Logic

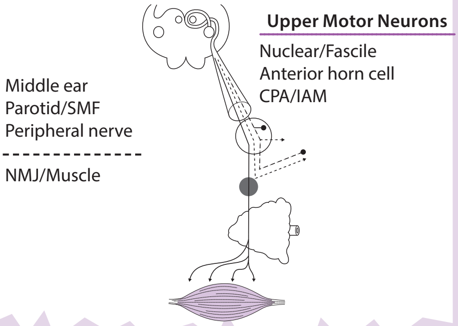
The first thing when learning a long list is to try breaking it down into categories that respect the underlying physiology or anatomy of the subject matter

JAUNDICE

Causes

Pre-hepatic	**Excess bilirubin production**	
Hepatic	Unconjugated hyperBRaemia	Conjugated hyperBRaemia
Post-Hepatic	Intrahepatic obstruction	Extrahepatic obstruction

FACIAL PALSY



Chunking

If a list doesn't easily lend itself to logical breakdown, then arbitrarily break the list down into bite-size chunks of 3, or possibly 4. This seems to be the maximum number of items the brain can remember at any one time. For example, in 'Facial palsy' above, see how the anatomical list of 8 is more easily remembered as 1 + 3 + 3 + 1 (conveniently, symmetric). Also –

Pneumonia – clinical features

chest pain, cough, dyspnoea, malaise, myalgia, fever, rigors, D+V, headache, confusion; PMH of pulmonary disease or immunocompromise, smoker, pets, travel

(extract from standard textbook)

Pneumonia – clinical features

1. Specific – chest pain, cough, dyspnoea
2. Systemic – myalgia, fever + rigors, D+V; headache, confusion
3. Other PC – PMH (pulmonary disease or immunocompromise)

Mnemonics

1. Link

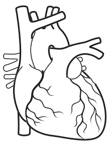
One of the main faults with mnemonics is remembering which mnemonic goes with which disease – so try to create ones with some meaningful connection

2. Order

Try to make the order of the items within the mnemonic approximate the order of importance or the frequency of occurrence

Causes of hyperkalaemia

C.A.R.D.I^2.A.C^2.



3. Consistency

Try to keep the same names between mnemonics to assist recalling what each letter stands for, e.g. use **T**oxins only, rather than sometimes **T**oxins and sometimes **D**rugs

4. Bend rules

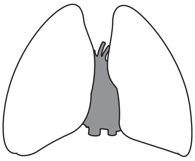
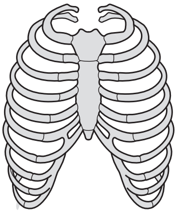
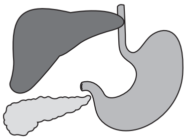
Let's face it – you can't always make mnemonics that adhere to all of the above, so you will need to exercise artistic licence ... e.g. the '**B**' for 'hepatitis **B**' in **T.A.B.O^2.O^2.S^2.** (p. 152) and multiple entries for the same letter (denoted by a superscript number)

Cardiology

CHEST PAIN

Causes

C.A.R.N.A.G.E.

	Acute	Chronic
Cardiothoracic 	**C**ardiac • Ischaemia: ACS • Pericarditis, myocarditis **A**ortic Dissection **R**espiratory • Pneumonia with pleuritis, TB • Pneumothorax • Pulmonary embolism • Pleural effusion	**C**ardiac • Ischaemia: Angina • Structural: Severe AS, HOCM **A**ortic Aortitis **R**espiratory • Bronchogenic carcinoma • Mesothelioma
Chest wall **Mediastinal** 	**N**euromuscular • Herpes zoster **A**rthritic/musculoskeletal • Costochondritis	**N**euromuscular • Radiculopathic pain **A**rthritic/musculoskeletal • Chronic costochondritis • Fibromyalgia
Abdominal 	**G**astrointestinal • Oesophageal spasm • GORD • Oesophagitis	**G**astrointestinal • GORD • Oesophagitis
Psychogenic Ψ	**E**xcitement • Anxiety attack	**E**xcitement • Psychogenic chronic chest pain

History

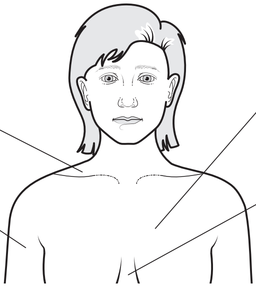
Any symptom can be categorized exhaustively according to the following 4 logical categories, each of which has 2 convenient subdivisions:

- **When:**
  - **F.O.P.P.:**
    - **F**irst occurred (when + what were you doing then?)
    - **O**nset (rapid/slowly?)
    - **P**ersistent (until present, or has now gone?)
    - **P**attern (continuous/episodic?)
      - Ever had before? (first time or recurrent?)
- **Where:** Location
  - Radiation
- **Character:** Type: e.g. pleuritic (sharp, localized, worse on inspiration); pressing; ache; burning
  - Severity
- **Extra:** Aggravating/relieving factors
  - Associated symptoms

Other history: PMH, e.g. arteriopathy (angina); immunodeficiency (pneumonia); SLE (PE)
DH: Thyroxine (angina), NSAIDs (gastritis). PH: Smoking (angina)
FH: Angina. SH: Travel abroad (pneumonia)

O/E

General: e.g. xanthelasma, fever, shingles, anxiety



JVP
↑ – MI/PE

ABP
↓ – MI
Differential arm pressures – dissection

Pulse
Weak – MI
Bounding – pneumonia

HS
Aortic stenotic murmur
S4 – MI

Chest
Palpation: Costochondral tenderness/ shoulder immobility
Percussion: Pn. thorax/consolidation
Auscultation: Creps./wheeze/rub

Abdo
Palpation: Organomegaly

Ix

Bloods: WCC (pneumonia, cholecystitis)
Troponin (MI, myocarditis)
D-dimer (PE)
Urine: Glucose (diabetes – angina); blood (SBE)
Micro: Blood, sputum cultures, incl. for AFB
ECG: Angina/MI/pericarditis
Radiol: CXR: Pneumothorax/consolidation/dissection/pleural effusion/cancer
CT pulmonary angiogram or V/Q scan: PE
CT aortogram: Aortic dissection
ECHO: Pericardial effusion
Special: Looking for ischaemia:
- Percutaneous or CT coronary angiogram
- Myocardial perfusion scan
- Stress echo

Looking for oesophagitis/GORD:
- Upper GI endoscopy
- Oesophageal manometry

CARDIOLOGY EXAMINATION

4. Neck
Carotid pulse: Both; separately
JVP: Level + character
Other:
- Goitre; SVCO (distended veins)

5. Precordium
Inspection:
- Scars (CABG, PPM, mitral valvotomy)
- Chest wall:
  - Ankylosing spondylitis (AR)
  - Pectus excavatum (ESM, R BBB)
  - Shield chest, wide nipples (Turner)
- Pulsation:
  - Apex = LV
  - L parasternal = RV

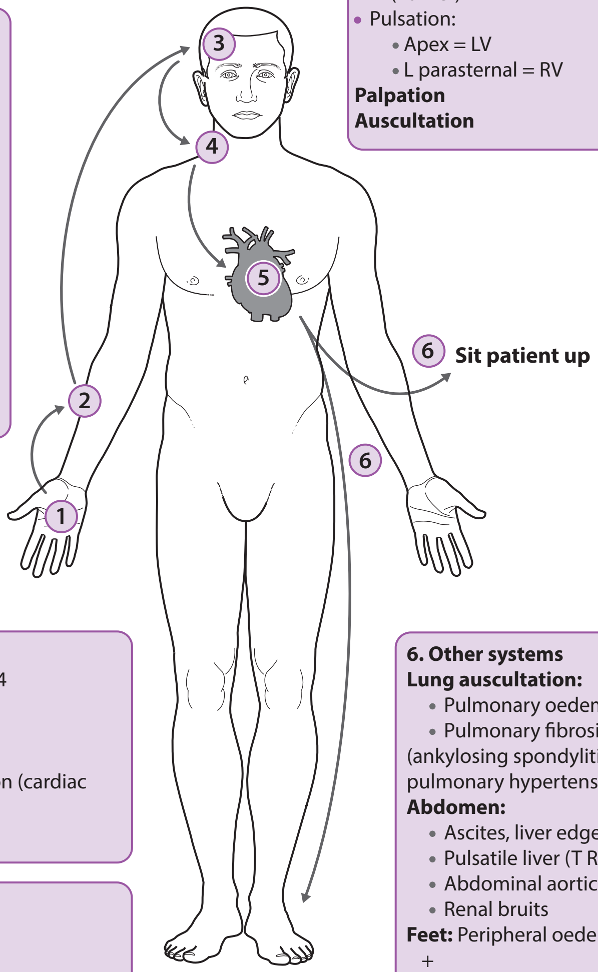
Palpation
Auscultation

3. Face – General
Eyes:
- Conjunctivae: Pallor, petechiae
- Sciera: Jaundice (CCF)
- Cholesterol: Xanthelasma, arcus

Mouth:
- Central cyanosis, dental caries

Cheeks:
- Flush (polycythaemia, SVCO, MS)
- Wasted (CCF)
- Plump (RSH failure)

Congenital syndromes:
- Chromosomal (Down, Turner)
- Connective tissue (Marfan, etc.)
- Myopathy (e.g. DMD, myotonia)



2. Pulse, ABP, RR
Pulse: Both radials; femorals; pedal x 4
ABP:
- Lying + standing
- R+L arm
- Pulsus paradoxus:
  > 10 mmHg ↓ on inspiration (cardiac tamponade)

RR: ↑ with CCF

1. Hands
Nails:
- Clubbing (SBE, CCHO)
- Splinter haemorrhages (SBE, vasculitis, trauma)
- Ouincke's sign (AR)

Fingers:
- Capillary refill
- Digital infarcts, Osier's nodes (SBE)
- Arachnodactyly

Palms:
- Temperature (CCF – cold)
- Erythema (Janeway lesions, polycythaemia, AR)

6. Other systems
Lung auscultation:
- Pulmonary oedema
- Pulmonary fibrosis

(ankylosing spondylitis, pulmonary hypertension)
Abdomen:
- Ascites, liver edge (RSH failure)
- Pulsatile liver (T R)
- Abdominal aortic aneurysm
- Renal bruits

Feet: Peripheral oedema
+
Fundi: OM, HT, Roth spots

7. AND FINALLY...
Temperature chart
Urine dipstick
BM stick (diabetes, SBE)

Pulse

Rate: Tachycardia (>100); bradycardia (<60)

Rhythm:

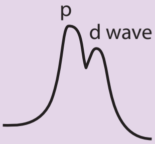
- Regular
- Reg. irregular: Bigeminy, Mobitz II AV block
- Irreg. irregular: AF, frequent ectopics

Volume (felt at brachial or carotid):

- ↑Bounding: Hyperdynamic circulation (fever, pregnancy, thyrotoxicosis, CO_2 narcosis, collapsing pulse of AR)
- ↓Thready: Hypovol. shock, LVF, AS, MS, MR
- Differential volume of R vs. L brachial: Dissection, stenosis, atheroma

Character:

- Slow-rising: AS
- Collapsing: AR, PDA, bradycardia
- Double:
  - Bisferiens = Mixed AR+AS
  - Bigeminy = Regular VEs
  - Jerky = HOCM



- Variable:
  - Paradoxus (↓a lot on inspiration) = cardiac tamponade
  - Alternans = LVF

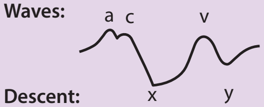
Delay: R vs. L; radio vs. femoral = coarctation

JVP

Level: Normal: <3 cm above sternal notch. Causes of raised JVP may be classified according to the response to inspiration:

- ↓ on inspiration (normal response):
  - RSH failure/fluid overload
  - Bradycardia
  - Cardiac tamponade
- ↑ (Kussmaul's sign):
  - Constrictive pericarditis
  - Restrictive cardiomyopathy
  - Tricuspid stenosis
- None: SVCO

Character:



a: Atrial systole
c: TV closure
v: Ventricular filling
x: Ventricular systole
y: TV opening

- **CAN**non waves: Big a wave + big x descent = atrial systole against closed TV
  Complete heart block
  Atrial flutter
  Nodal/ventricular rhythm (incl. pacemaker)
- Big a waves = RV filling ↓
  Pulmonary hypertension, tricuspid stenosis
- Giant a (single) waves = tricuspid regurgitation

Precordium – Palpation

Apex beat position:

- Normal = midclavicular line
- Displaced:
  - RV or LV enlargement
  - Mediastinal shift
  - Pectus excavatum, absent pericardium
  - Dextrocardia

Apex beat character:

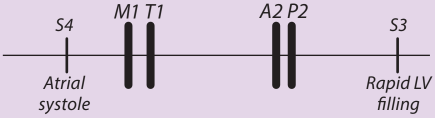
- Heaving: Pressure overload = LVH, incl. AS, HT
- Thrusting: Volume overload = AR, MR, VSD
- Knocking: MS (palpable S1)
- Dyskinetic, rocking: LV aneurysm
- Double or triple ripple: HOCM
- Impalpable: Fat, fluid (effusion), air (COPD); CCF; dextrocardia

Heave: At either sternal edge = RVH or severe LA dilation, e.g. MS

Thrill: Palpable murmur over affected valve area

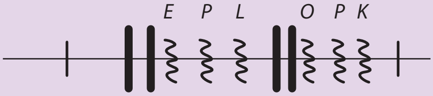
Precordium – Auscultation

Heart sounds



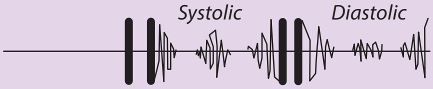
- S1: Loud (MS); soft (MR, heart block); wide split (normal at apex, heart block, VT)
- S2: Loud (HT, PHT); soft (aortic sclerosis, PS); wide split (ASD – fixed; VSD, MR – variable)
- S3: Volume overload: AR, MR, acute MJ
- S4: Pressure overload: AS, HT, HOCM; heart block

Added sounds



E: Ejection click (bicuspid AV – non-calcific)
P: Pericardial rub/click (pericarditis)
L: Late systolic click (mitral valve prolapse)
O: Opening snap: (MS, prosthetic MV, TS, ASD)
P: Plop (atrial myxoma)
K: Knock (constrictive pericarditis)

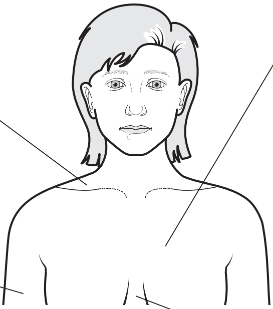
Murmurs (p. 6)



Early Sys: VSD, Ebstein's anomaly (TR)
Mid Sys (ESM): AS, PS, HOCM, coarc., ASD (flow)
Pan Sys: MR; late sys: MVP with regurgitation
Early Dias: AR, PR, Graham Steele (PR 2° to MS)
Mid Dias: MS, Austin Flint (aortic incomp.), MR (flow)
Late Dias: MS (pre-systolic accentuation) murmurs

MURMURS

Aortic stenosis



JVP
Small 'a' wave

Pulse
Small volume
Slow-rising

Auscultation
Ejection systolic murmer:
- Aortic area → carotids
- On sitting forward, on expiration
- Harsh

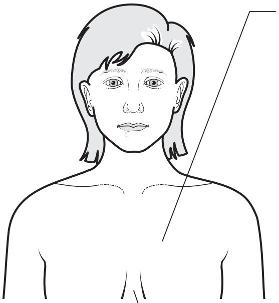
Ejection click: If pliable valves, e.g. bicuspid
S2:
- Single or reversed splitting S2 (due to delayed AV closure)
- Silent A2: If calcified valve

S4

Palpation
APB (apex beat):
Heaving, sustained, non-displaced
= pressure-overload
Systolic thrill at aortic area:
- On leaning forward, on expiration

Signs of severity: **P.A.M.S.**
Pulse pressure ↓/ABP ↓
Apex beat: Volume overload
Murmur: Loud (thrill) or soft (CCF)
S2 becomes silent or single

Aortic regurgitation



Pulse
Wide volume
(except in acute AR, CCF, or if hypertensive)
Collapsing pulse
or carotid shudder
Eponymous signs:
- Ouincke: Nail-bed pulsation
- Corrigan: Carotid pulsation
- DeMusset: Head nodding
- Traub: Pistol-shot femorals
- Duroziez: To-and-fro femoral bruit

Auscultation
Early diastolic murmur:
- LSE 3rd-4th ICS + tricuspid area (or RSE with dilated aortic root)
- On sitting forward, on expiration
- Blowing = chronic; musical = perforation

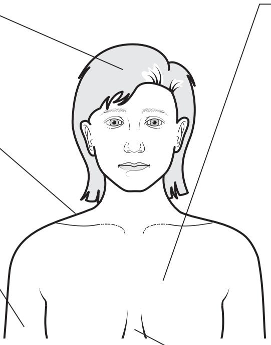
Other murmurs: Aortic incompetence
- Mid-diastolic murmur: 'Austin Flint' = anterior cusp of mitral valve hit by regurgitant stream
- Forward-flow systolic murmur

S1: Soft
S2: Soft, single
(cf. pulmo. regurg. = S2 + loud P2)
S3: ↑ LVEDP

Palpation
APB: Thrusting, non-sustained, displaced
= volume-overload
Diastolic thrill at LSE = acute AR

Signs of severity**: P.A.M.P.**
Pulse pressure ↑
Apex beat displacement
Murmur: length ↑
Pulmonary or peripheral oedema

Mitral stenosis



General
Malar flush/ cachectic
CVA or PVD 2° to AF
Mitral valvotomy scar

JVP
Prominent 'a'
(pulmo. hypertension)

Pulse
AF
Small volume

Auscultation
Mid-diastolic murmur:
- Apex
- Lean to left, on expiration., after exercise
- Rumble

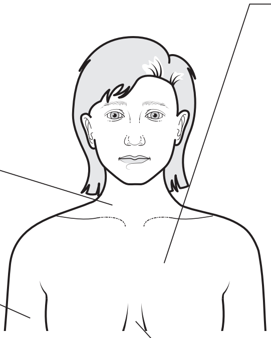
Other murmurs
- Early diastolic murmur: 'Graham-Steele'
  = Pulmo. regurgitation loudest on inspiration
- Pre-systolic accentuation: If sinus rhythm

Opening snap: If pliable valves
S1: If pliable valves
S3: Always absent

Palpation
APB Tapping S1, undisplaced
Parasternal heave (LAD/PHT)

Signs of severity: **P.O.M.P.**
Pulse = AF, or systemic emboli
Opening snap – severity inversely prop. to time between S2 and OS
Murmur – length ↑ (except in CCF)
Pulmonary oedema or pulmonary hypertension (RSH failure)

Mitral regurgitation



JVP
Prominent 'a'
(pulmo. hypertension)

Pulse
AF
Short, sharp jerky

Auscultation
Pan-systolic murmur:
- Blowing
- Apex → axilla (may be aortic area or spine)
- Lean to left, on expiration

Other murmurs: Forward-flow diastolic murmur
Mitral valve prolapse:
= late systolic click + subsequent crescendo decresc. murmur at LSE; make click louder + earlier by standing or Valsalva
S2: Wide splitting
S1: Soft,
S3: (↑ LADP)

Palpation
APB: Volume-overload
Parasternal heave:
= atrial dilation or pulmo. hypertension
Apical thrill

Signs of severity: **P.A.M.P.S.**
Pulse = AF
Apex beat displacement ↑
Murmur – becomes softer
Pulmonary oedema, or pulmonary hypertension (RSH failure)
S3 + soft S1; S2 = widely split

NB: Other murmurs:
Pulmonary hypertension (p. 98)
Congenital heart disease (p. 46)

AORTIC STENOSIS

Causes

Increasing age

Congenital:

Presents in childhood; M:F = 4:1

- Valvular: 3, 2 or 1 cusp
- Subvalvular: Congenital ring or HOCM
- Supravalvular: William syn. = AS, Ca^{2+} ↑, elfin-like face ↓ IQ

Rheumatic fever

esp. females (*'tight-lipped' females*)

Rheumatoid arthritis: (Rare) due to nodular thickening

Atherosclerosis

esp. FH homozygotes

Bicuspid AV calcification (40–60 y):

EPI: Commonest congenital anomaly (1%)

PATH: Progressive mechanical stress leads to premature calcification

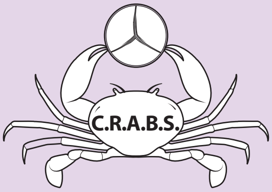
PC: Stenosis (1/3) + mixed (1/3) + asymptomatic (1/3)

ASSOC: Dissection; coarctation; Turner

Senile calcific degeneration (60+ y)

PATH:

- Initially, aortic sclerosis: Haemodynamically insignificant ring calcification
  O/E: ESM only, no radiation
- Later: Cusp calcification, renders them immobile



PC

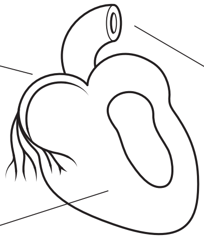
Angina

PROG: Survival = 2–3 y

AET: Due to O_2 demand ↑ but O_2 supply ↓

Arrhythmias

- Stokes-Adams
- Sudden death (8%)



Exertional syncope

- Peripheral vasodilation
- Cardiac reflex
- Bradcardia/3° HB

Emboli, from calcified valve – TIA/CVA

Concentric LVH

LVF/RVF: Prognosis = 1–2 y

Ix

ECG:

- Pressure-overload: LVH, lateral strain, LAD
- P mitrale
- Heart block: Aortic valve calcification may spread to AV node

Radiol: CXR

- Calcified aortic valve
- Post-stenotic dilation
- LV prominence/LVF

ECHO:

- M-Mode: Thickened cusps; LVH
- 2D: Valve area reduced
- Doppler: High pressure gradient across valve

Rx

Medical:

Vasodilators contraindicated in severe AS (reduce preload)

Surgical:

Valve replacement – indications are:

- Symptomatic, esp. syncope or chest pain
- Valve area <0.5 cm^2
- Peak systolic gradient > 64 mmHg

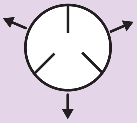
Trans-catheter aortic valve implantation:

- For those not fit enough for open heart surgery

AORTIC REGURGITATION

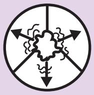
Causes

Ring dilation



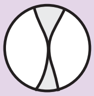
Pressure	Hypertension, aortic dissection, dilated LV (e.g. dilated cardiomyopathy)
Weak connective tissue	Hereditary: Marfan, Ehlers–Danlos syndromes Infective: Syphilis

Cusp contraction



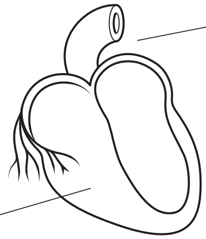
Infection	Infective endocarditis
Autoimmune	Seronegative arthropathies (ank. spond. reactive arthritis) SLE (Libman–Sacks endocarditis), RA

Poor fitting



Biscuspid valve

PC



Emboli, from vegetation
- TIA: Amaurosis fugax
- CVA

Arrhythmias
- Sinus tachycardia
- Extrasystoles/AF
- Sudden death

Eccentric LVH
LVF, due to ↑ **LVEDP**
RVF

Ix

Radiol: CXR:
- Proximal aorta dilation
- LV → LA dilation
- LVF

ECHO:
- M-Mode: Dilated LV; flutter of anterior MV
- Doppler: Pressure half-time across the valve falls

Rx

Medical:
Nifedipine recommended, but avoid in heart failure
ACE inhibitors

Surgical:
Valve replacement – indications:
- Symptoms of heart failure
- Pulse pressure >100 mmHg
- Heart size on CXR >17 cm
- ECG: Lateral T inv: ST depression
- LV end-sys. volume >5.5 cm
- Ejection fraction <50%

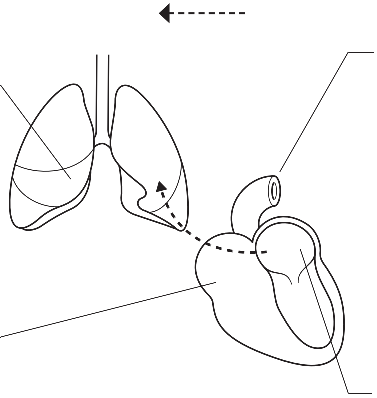
Contraindication: Dilated heart (as irreversible)

MITRAL STENOSIS

Causes

Congenital: Rare
Rheumatic fever (esp. females)

PC



Pulmonary oedema/ Recurrent RTI

Pulmonary hypertension/ RSH failure; Ischaemia/Cachexia

Emboli

Causes:
- Mural thrombus forms on ‘MacCallum patch’ above posterior MV cusp, or
- Calcification of cusps

Effects:
TIA; CVA; PVD; ischaemic colitis

Left atrial enlargement
- AF
- Hoarseness (Ortner syn. = recurrent laryngeal nerve palsy)
- Dysphagia
- L Bronchiectasis

Ix

ECG:
- P mitrale (with sinus rhythm), AF
- RV strain (with RV hypertrophy)

Radiol: CXR:
- LA enlargement:
  - Loss of aorto-pulmonary concavity
  - Double R wall shadow
  - Splayed carina
- Pulmonary oedema → RV enlargement
- Calcified MV

2D-**E**CHO:
- Valve area: <1 cm = severe
- LA dilation ± thrombus
- RVH/RV enlargement
- Doppler: High pressure half-time across the valve

Rx

Medical:
Anticoagulate if in AF or LA thrombus present

Surgical:
- Closed valvotomy:
  - Intercostal
  - Percutaneous transluminal catheter balloon dilation
- Open valvotomy:
  - Median sternotomy
  - Allows ring insertion
- Valve replacement: Indicated if co-existing mitral regurgitation

MITRAL REGURGITATION

Causes

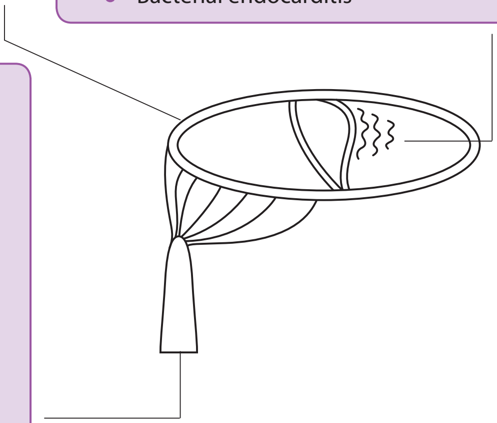
Ring dilation
- LV dilation ('functional MR')
- Connective tissue disorders: Marfan, RA, Ehlers–Danlos

Cusp degeneration
- Senile calcification of valve
- Immune-mediated cusp destruction
- Rheumatic heart disease
- Bacterial endocarditis

Subvalvular dysfunction
- Mitral valve prolapse

(C.R.U.M.P.L.E.)

Chordae tendonae rupture: Acute MI
Rheumatic heart disease
Unknown
Marfan
Polycystic kidney disease
Low BMI
Ehlers–Danlos syndrome



PC

Pulmonary oedema due to pulmonary hypertension
MVP:
- Palpitations
- Breathlessness
- Sudden death (due to VT)

Ix

ECG:
- P mitrale (with sinus rhythm)/AF
- LV strain (with RV hypertrophy)
- MVP: Inferior T wave inversion

Radiol: CXR:
- LA and LV enlargement
- Pulmonary oedema

2D-**E**CHO:
- Cause: Thickened/flail valves/MVP
- Volume overload of LV + LA

Rx

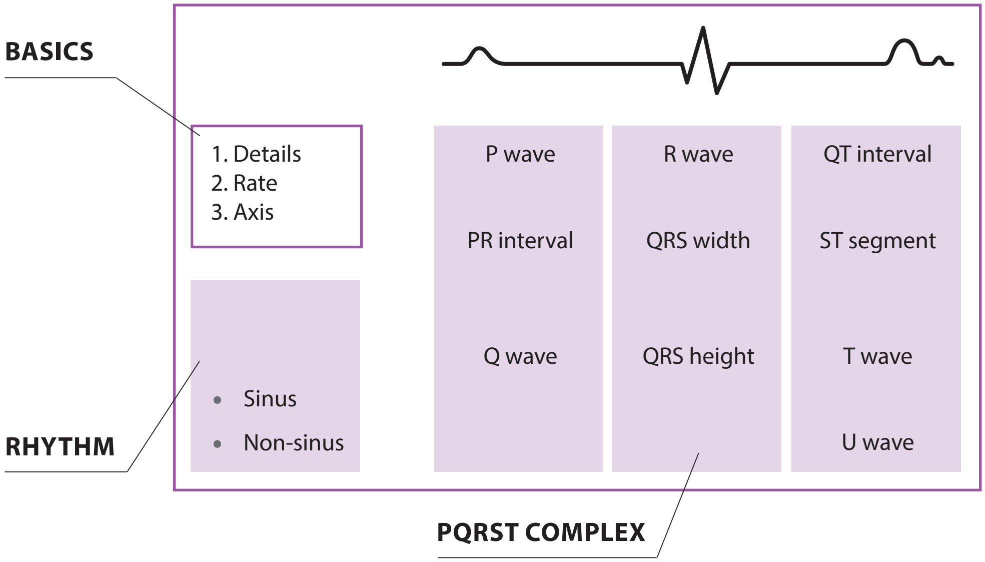
Medical:
Anti-coagulate if in AF

Surgical:
Valve replacement
IND: Deteriorating LV function (not asymptomatic patients, as the condition progresses slowly)

ECG INTERPRETATION 1

The ECG may be read either by instant pattern recognition (e.g. ‘this shows fast atrial fibrillation; left bundle branch block; anterior infarction…’), or by adopting a systematic approach that includes all the sources of information an ECG trace carries. Novices to the ECG will have no choice but to use the systematic approach, but even when a learnt pattern ‘jumps out’ of a particular ECG, it is important to go over the ECG again, so as not to miss the smaller details.

ECG interpretation – 2 (p. 14) takes the reader through a comprehensive ECG analysis in a logical order. A guide to the use of this double page is outlined below:


BASICS
1. Details
2. Rate
3. Axis
P wave
PR interval
Q wave
R wave
QRS width
QRS height
QT interval
ST segment
T wave
U wave
Sinus
Non-sinus
RHYTHM
PQRST COMPLEX

Tachycardias and bradycardias (pp. 14–23) provide an overview of most ectopics and dysrhythmias. Ectopics are beats that are interspersed randomly within a background rhythm. When frequent, ectopics may degenerate into an abnormal rhythm of their own.

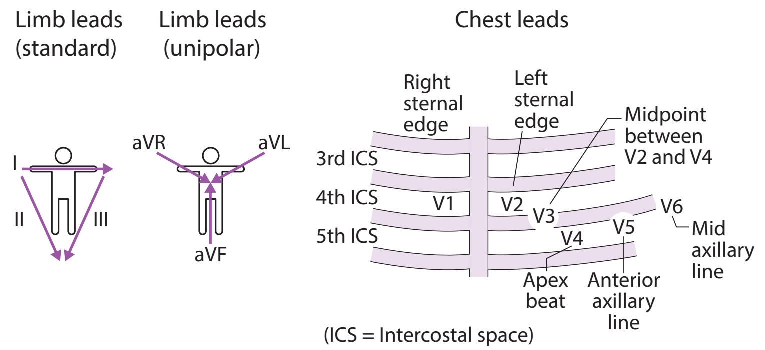
Normal variants

Mostly ‘to the right’:
- R axis deviation
- R bundle branch block

Rhythm:
- Sinus arrhythmia
- Sinus bradycardia esp. in the young/athletes
- Extrasystoles: Ventricular or supraventricular

Other
- LVH voltage criteria (if very thin or Afro-Caribbean)
- T wave inversion in Afro-Caribbeans

Lead positions

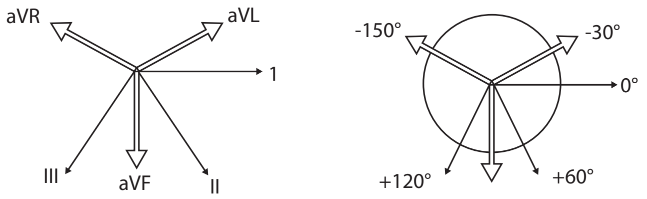

Limb leads (standard)
Limb leads (unipolar)
Chest leads
I
II
III
aVR
aVL
aVF
Right sternal edge
Left sternal edge
Midpoint between V2 and V4
3rd ICS
4th ICS
5th ICS
V1
V2
V3
V4
V5
V6
Mid axillary line
Apex beat
Anterior axillary line
(ICS = Intercostal space)

The 6 limb leads are 'virtual leads'

- Calculated by the ECG machine based on 4 actual leads placed on the 4 limbs, which are colour-coded
- **R**ide **Y**our **G**reen **B**ike (going clockwise round body)
  - Red – right arm
  - Yellow – left arm
  - Green – left leg
  - Black – right leg

Axis

The 6 limbs leads can be arranged as vectors. Lead I is designated as 0 degrees.


aVR
aVL
1
III
aVF
II
-150°
-30°
0°
+120°
+60°

The axis is the general direction of depolarisation of the heart, from the sinus node to the Purkinje fibres. The vector diagram can be used to calculate the QRS axis. This can be estimated by noting the limb lead with the most positive complex, and reading off its 'viewing angle' as shown below. When two leads show equally positive vectors, average their corresponding angles. Leads with the smallest complexes lie at 90° to the axis, and leads showing negative complexes point 180° away from the axis.

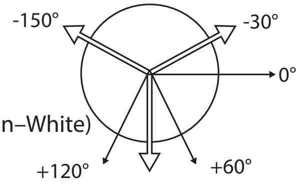
A normal axis lies between -30° and 60°. A right axis is greater than 60° and a left axis is less than -30°.

Causes of right axis deviation = think 'R'

- **R**ight-sided heart (dextrocardia)
- **R**V hypertrophy
- **R**espiratory disease, e.g. COPD
- **R**ight bundle branch block
- **R**e-entry rhythm (Wolff–Parkinson–White)
- **R**elax! it's a normal variant

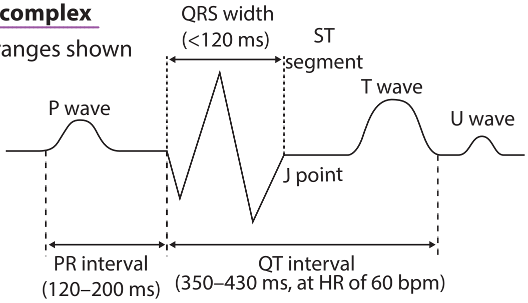
Causes of left axis deviation = think 'L'

- **L**eft anterior hemiblock
- **L**eft bundle branch block
- **L**V hypertrophy


-150°
-30°
0°
+120°
+60°

PQRST complex

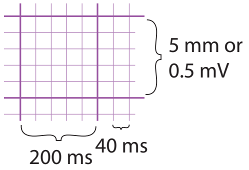
Normal ranges shown


QRS width
(<120 ms)
ST segment
T wave
P wave
U wave
J point
PR interval
(120–200 ms)
QT interval
(350–430 ms, at HR of 60 bpm)

Correct for heart rate 60 bpm with Bazett formula:

$$\text{Corrected Q-T int.} = \frac{\text{Actual Q-T int.}}{\sqrt{\text{R-R interval}}}$$

Scale


5 mm or 0.5 mV
200 ms
40 ms

ECG INTERPRETATION 2

Basics

1. Name, age, date, lead positions
2. Rate = 300/R-R interval (in big squares)
3. Axis

Rhythm

Sinus

- Sinus rhythm – clear p waves preceding every QRS complex
- Sinus arrhythmia – slight variation in heart rate with respiration
- Sinus tachycardia (>100 bpm)
- Sinus bradycardia (<60 bpm)

Non-sinus:

Escape beats:

- When another area of the heart generates the impulse
- Usually occurs when sinus node not working/going too slow
- Types:
  - Atrial
  - AV nodal: Ongoing AV escape beats = nodal or 'junctional' rhythm
  - Ventricular:
    - Fast ventricular rhythm = ventricular tachycardia (VT)
    - Slow rhythm = idioventricular rhythms (occurs in complete HB)

P wave

P mitrale (enlarged left atrium)

- Definition = m-like (or 'bifid') wave in lead II
- Cause: Hypertension, mitral stenosis

P pulmonale (enlarged right atrium)

- Definition = peaked P in lead II (>2.5 mm)
- Cause: Pulmonary hypertension, often due to chronic lung disease

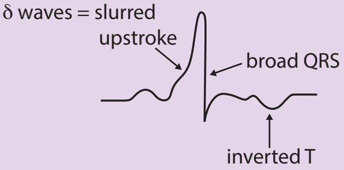
PR interval

Long:

First degree heart block (delayed conduction through the AV node)

Short:

- Accessory conducting pathways:
  - Wolff–Parkinson–White syndrome
    Pathology: Bundle of Kent connects atria to right (Type A) or left (Type B) ventricles directly
  - ECG :
    - Short PR interval
    - Slurred upstroke of R wave = δ wave
    - R in V1; Q in III (Type A)
    - Paroxysmal SVT, esp. AVRT, AF



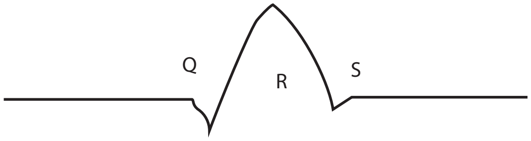
- DANGER! Rapid ventricular rate

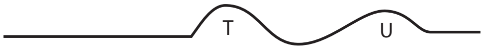
Q waves

Significant Q waves =
>25% height of successive R (or >2 mm), or
>40 ms wide (i.e. >1 mm wide)

Causes: **I.N.C.H.E.S.**

Infarction, **I**nfection (myocarditis)
Normal: Septal Q, or disappear on inspiration
Conduction defect: LBBB, WPW
Hypertrophy: LVH/RVH/HOCM
Electrolytes: ↑ K^+
Sarcoid + other infiltration





R wave

The (negative) S wave in V1 gradually transitions to a (positive) R wave across the chest leads from V1 to V3 – 'R wave progression'

Poor R wave progression = S wave dominant in ALL chest leads: Sign of chronic ischaemia or previous anterior MI

Causes of a dominant R wave in V1:

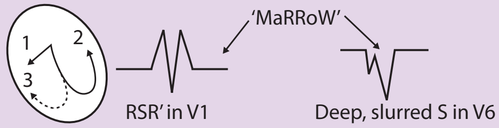
- R BBB (+ WPW Type A)
- RVH (+ myotonic dystrophy)
- Posterior MI

QRS width

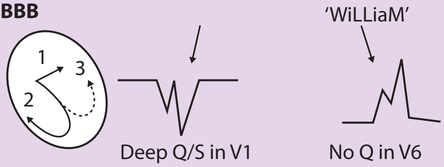
The causes of a WIDE QRS are:

- Ventricular initiation: An impulse originating from the ventricle, e.g. VT, ventricular ectopic, idioventricular rhythm
- Wolff–Parkinson–White syndrome: Due to the delta wave
- Intraventricular conduction defect: Either right or left bundle branch block

RBBB



LBBB



Fascicular block:

- Unifascicular: most common = Left anterior hemiblock = L axis deviation
- Bifascicular = unifascicular + R BBB
- Trifascicular = bifascic./LBBB + 1° HB

QRS height

↑Voltage (very tall/deep):

- LVH if S wave in V1 + R in V5/6 >35 mm
- RVH: Dominant R in V1 (normal QRS width)

↓ Voltage (very small complexes):

- Intervening tissue: Obesity, COPD, pericardial effusion
- Heart muscle weakening: Dilated cardiomyopathy, myxoedema

QT interval

LONG (>460 ms): → danger of developing VT

Causes = **T.I.M.E.**

Toxins:
- Anti-arrhythmics: Type Ia/III
- Antibiotics: Erythromycin, chloroquine
- Antidepressants: TCA, phenothiazines

Inherited:
- Romano Ward syndrome (autosomal dominant)
- Jervell–Lange–Nielsen syndrome (autosomal recessive) + deaf!

Mitral valve prolapse

Electrolytes: Hyp**O** = pr**O**long
- HypOcalcaemia
- HypOkalaemia
- HypOmagnesaemia

SHORT (<350 ms)

Causes: Digoxin, beta-blockers, phenytoin

ST segment

ELEVATION:

Infarction/ischaemia

- Acute MI:
  - >1 mm in 2 adjacent leads
  - Convex upwards
  - ST ↑ for <24 h; T inverts EARLY
- Vasospasm
- Ventricular aneurysm

Peri-, myocarditis:

- Concave upwards ('saddle-shaped')
- ST↑ for >24 h; T inverts LATE

LBBB/LVH in V1–2 ('high take off')

Brugada syn. = blackouts or sudden death, due to inherited Na channelopathy

DEPRESSION: (ST segment tries to **H.I.D.E.**)

Hypertrophy ('LVH strain pattern')
Ischaemia
Digoxin ('reversed tick' pattern)
Electrolytes: Hypokalaemia

T and U waves

Tented T: Hyperkalaemia

Flattened inverted T:

- As for ST depression (H.I.D.E.)
- Ventricular rhythm or WPW

U waves: Hypokalaemia

TACHYCARDIA

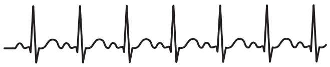
Narrow-complex = supraventricular tachycardia (SVT)

Sinus

Causes:

- **Shock**
- **Haemodynamic circulation**
- **Heart failure, incl. PE**

Regular PR interval;
P embedded in
preceding T



P rate	R rate	Effect of CSM=
100–180	100–180	tempor. slowing

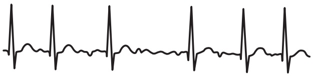
Rx:

Underlying cause,
e.g. atenolol for anxiety

Atrial

- Fibrillation

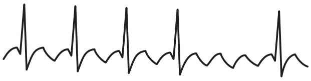
Causes (p. 18)



P rate	R rate	Effect of CSM=
500	120	tempor. slowing

- Flutter

Causes – as for AF

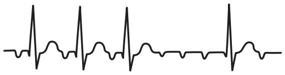


P rate	R rate	Effect of CSM=
300	150	tempor. slowing

Rx:

- Underlying cause
- Rate control:
  - Digoxin
  - Verapamil
  - Beta-blocker
  - RF ablation
- Cardioversion:
  - Amiodarone, sotalol
  - DC 50–100 J
- Anti-coagulation

- Tachycardia



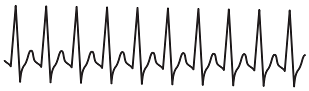
P rate	R rate	Effect of CSM=
200	100	slows/terminates

Nodal

- AVNRE

Causes:

Idiopathic (majority)
+ as for AF



P rate	R rate	Effect of CSM=
200	200	slows/terminates

P waves within/just after QRS
PR > RP′ (slow anterograde-quick retrograde)

- AVRE

Causes:

Wolff–Parkinson–White syn.
(75% of SVTs in WPW)

- Appears similar to AVNRE, although QRS alternating amplitude at >200 bpm
  WPW apparent from δ- waves in SR trace
- Mechanism: Depolarisation spreads downwards via AVN, and upwards via accessory pathway (orthodromic)

Rx:

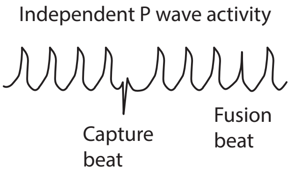
- Underlying cause
- 1st-line (assists diagnosis):
  - Carotid sinus massage
  - Adenosine
- 2nd-line:
  - Digoxin
  - Verapamil
  - Beta-blocker, esp. sotalol
  - Amiodarone
- DC 25–50 J + overdrive pace
- RF ablation

Broad-complex = ventricular or supraventricular tachycardia with bundle branch block

Ventricular

- Tachycardia

Causes (p. 20)



Rx:

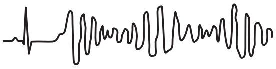
- IV K^+, $MgSO_4$
- Lidocaine amiodarone
- DC 100 J

Ventricular tachycardia: R-R rate: 100–250, usually regular
Accelerated idioventricular rhythm: R-R rate: 50–100; Cause = MI, post-thrombolysis

- Torsades de pointes (polymorphic VT)

Causes:

QT interval >500 ms



Frontal axis slowly rotates

Rx:

- IV $MgSO_4$
- Isoprenaline beta-blocker (if congenital)
- Pacing

- Fibrillation

Causes:

VT
QT interval >500 ms

Rx:

- CPR!
- Epinephrine
- DC 100–360 J

SVT with BBB

- Intraventricular block (R BBB or L BBB) including K^+ ↑, subarachnoid haemorrhage

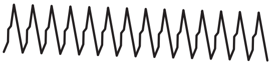
Rx:

As for SVT

- Pre-excitation (e.g. Wolff–Parkinson–White syn.)
These SVTs are less commonly associated with WPW, but potentially more dangerous due to ↑ risk of R-on-T, and VF

Pre-excited AF (20%):
R-R rate 100, irregular

Pre-excited AFlutter (3%):
R-R rate 250, regular



Antidromic AVRE (2%):
R-R rate 200, regular

Rx:

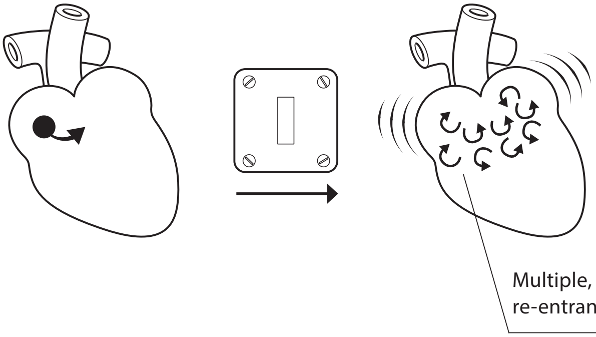
- Drugs:
  - Fleicanide
  - Disopyramide
  - Propranolol
- DC 100J

NB: Avoid verapamil and digoxin as blockage of AVN ↑ anterograde conduction down bundle of Kent!

ATRIAL FIBRILLATION

Causes

A.T.R.I.A^4.L. S.W.I.T.C.H.


Multiple, small, incoordinate, re-entrant circuits within the atria

Acute: PE, MI, infection, post-surgery
Thyrotoxicosis
Rheumatic heart disease
Ischaemic heart disease – COMMONEST CAUSE
Arterial hypertension/**A**lcohol/**A**SD/**A**ortic regurgitation
Lung: Bronchial carcinoma, PE

Sick sinus syndrome
Wolff–Parkinson–White syndrome
Inflammation: Pericarditis (± effusion), myocarditis, endocarditis
Toxin: Digoxin toxicity
Cardiomyopathy esp. infiltrative disease, e.g. sarcoid
Hypokalaemia

PATH: AF arises because parts of the atria lose their refractoriness before the end of atrial systole, enabling recurrent but uncoordinated atrial activation. This may be due to:

- Atrial enlargement, e.g. CCF, rheumatic heart disease
- Conduction velocity ↓, e.g. inflammation, ischaemia, fibrosis
- Refractory period ↓, e.g. ischaemia, T4, sympathetic tone ↑

Management

Management is guided by 4 principles:

1. **Underlying cause**

   e .g. anti-hypertensives, thyroid medication, replace electrolytes

2. **Rate control**

- Beta-blockers (careful in asthmatics)
- Non-dihydropyridine calcium channel blockers (e.g. diltiazem, verapamil)
- Digoxin

3. **Rhythm control *aka* cardioversion**

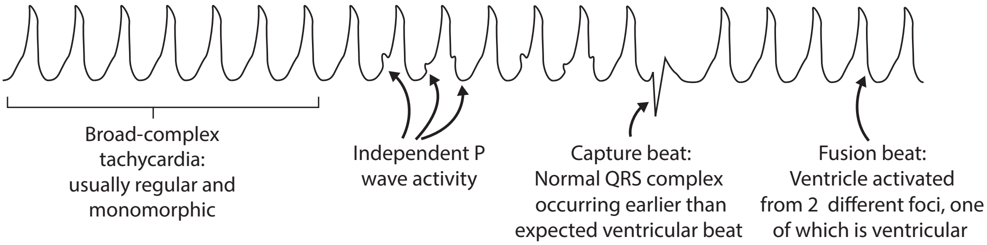
- Chemical cardioversion: Amiodarone, flecainide
- Electrical: DC cardioversion with 100–200 J
  - If AF present for >48 h, must first anti-coagulate for 4 weeks
- Maintenance of sinus rhythm:
  - Antiarrhythmic:
    - Type III – amiodarone/sotalol
    - Type Ic – propafenone/fleicanide
    - Type Ia – quinidine
  - Radiofrequency ablation of left atrium to prevent AF recurring
- Indications: There is no difference in mortality rate between rate control and rhythm control, but the following groups are selected for cardioversion:
  - Acute – for cardiovascular compromise, e.g. hypotension
  - Elective – good chance of cardioverting, e.g. young, normal heart size, first episode

4. **Anti-coagulation**

- Mandatory in AF if **CHADSVASC** score >0 (or >1 in women) to prevent stroke:
  - **C**ongestive heart failure = 1
  - **H**ypertension = 1
  - **A**ge >75 = 2
  - **D**iabetes mellitus = 1
  - **S**troke/TIA = 2
  - **V**ascular disease = 1
  - **A**ge > 65 = 1
  - **S**ex **C**haracteristic (female) = 1

VENTRICULAR TACHYCARDIA

Appearance


Broad-complex tachycardia: usually regular and monomorphic
Independent P wave activity
Capture beat: Normal QRS complex occurring earlier than expected ventricular beat
Fusion beat: Ventricle activated from 2 different foci, one of which is ventricular

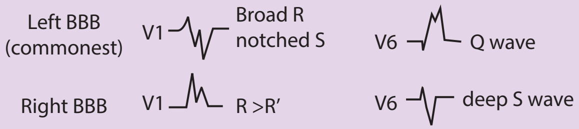
Rate and duration

Ventricular tachycardia:	R-R rate: 100–250
• Ventricular ectopics, ventricular bigeminy	1–2 beats
Non-sustained VT	3 beats–30 s
Sustained VT	>30 s

Distinguishing features from SVT with BBB

Atrio-ventricular dissociation:
Independent P waves/retrogradely conducted P waves
On exam: Cannon waves; variable S1

Bundle branch block:


Left BBB (commonest)
V1
Broad R notched S
V6
Q wave
Right BBB
V1
R >R′
V6
deep S wave

Concordance in precordial leads

Duration of QRS complex: >140 ms (>160 ms if LBBB)

Extreme **LE**ft axis deviation with LBBB
or **LE**ft axis deviation with RBBB

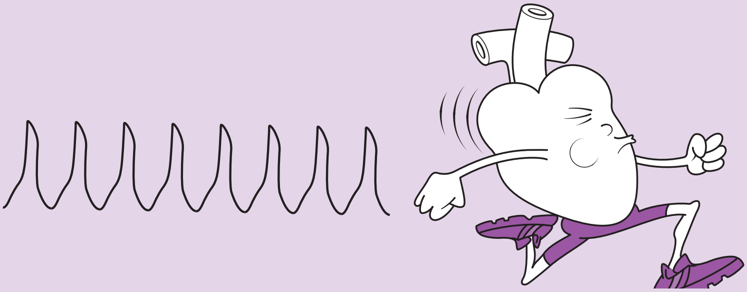
Fusion or capture beats

History of ischaemic heart disease

Intervention: Carotid sinus massage and adenosine do NOT terminate
(Verapamil may induce VF if actually in VT!!)

Causes

I.'M. Q.V.I.C.K.



Infarction (esp. with ventricular aneurysm); ischaemia
Myocarditis

QT interval ↑
Valve abnormality: Mitral valve prolapse, aortic stenosis
Iatrogenic, e.g. digoxin, antiarrrhythmics, surgery
Cardiomyopathy, esp. dilated
K$^+$ ↓ , Mg^{2+} ↓, O$_2$ ↓, acidosis

Management

Acute, unstable (hypotensive):

- Precordial thump (if witnessed and no defibrillation kit available)
- Synchronized DC shock 150 J

Acute, stable:

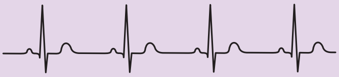
- IV K$^+$ to keep levels between 4.5 and 5.5 mmol/l
  IV Mg^{2+} 8 mmol bolus over 5 min → 60 mmol in 50 ml 5% dextrose over 24 h
- Chemical cardioversion: Amiodarone IV 300 mg/1 h, followed by 900 mg /23 h via CVP line
- Synchronized DC shock 100 J → 150 J → 200 J

BRADYCARDIA

Sinus or junctional rhythm

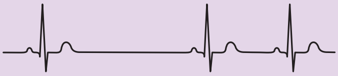
Sinus:

- Bradycardia



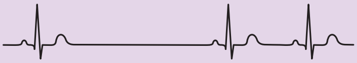
Constant PR interval of <200 ms
Constant PP interval

- Sino-atrial exit block



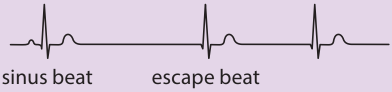
Delayed P wave, at a multiple of the basic P-P interval

- Sinus pause



Delayed P wave, out of phase

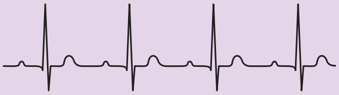
Junctional escape



No P wave, or
P wave immediately before, during or after QRS complex

Heart block = AV conduction defect

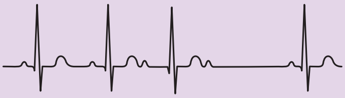
1° HB:



PR interval >200 ms

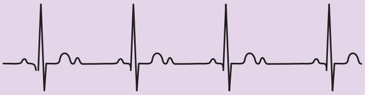
2° HB:

- Mobitz type I (Wenckebach)
  Due to localized AVN damage, or normal (improves with exercise)

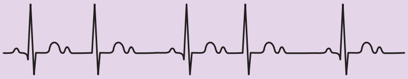


Progressively increasing PR interval, followed by unconducted P wave
R-R gets progressively shorter

- Mobitz type II
  Due to bundle of His or bundle branch block



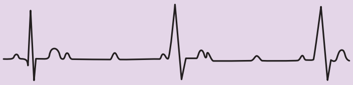
Regular relationship between P and R:
2:1 block = 2 P for every R
(i.e. every other P is conducted)



3:2 block = 3 P for every 2 R

NB: QRS complex is often wide, reflecting bundle branch or His bundle block

3° HB:



NB: The ventricular escape rhythm may speed up to 50–100 bpm, post MI (= accelerated idioventricular rhythm}

Independent P and R rhythms, although each is regular to itself
Atrial rate ≈ 150 bpm
Vent. rate ≈ 15 bpm
The QRS wave is broad, reflecting its ventricular origin

Causes

The rates are **D.I.V.I.S.I.O^3.N.S**. of the usual sinus rhythm:

÷

Drugs:
- Anti-arrhythmics (type Ia, amiodarone)
- Beta-blockers
- Ca^{2+} antagonists
- Digoxin

Ischaemia/infarction:
- Inferior (right coronary artery), or anteroseptal MI (if large)

Vagus hypertonia:
- Athletes, vasovagal syncope, hypersensitive carotid sinus syndrome

Infection:
- Typhoid, brucella (sinus bradycardia)
- Rheumatic fever
- Endocarditis, esp. involving aortic root
- Myocarditis (heart block)

Sick sinus syndrome = Tachy–Brady syndrome

PATH: Majority are due to senile amyloid or fibrosis of SAN, AVN and conducting tissue. May also be due to other structural causes of bradycardia, e.g. ischaemia, infiltration

PC: Comprises combinations of the following brady-tachyarrhythmias:
- Any of the bradycardias shown opposite, esp. sinus pauses, sinoatrial or AV block
- SVT, esp. AF with slow ventricular response; VT or torsades de pointes

Infiltration: Restrictive or dilated cardiomyopathy, esp. autoimmune, sarcoid, haemochromatosis, amyloid, muscular dystrophy

O: hyp**O**thyroidism, hyp**O**kalaemia (or hyperkalaemia), hyp**O**thermia

Neuro: Raised intracranial pressure

Septal defect: ASD, surgery or catheterisation (near AVN)

Management of bradycardia

Urgent
- Underlying cause
- Medical:
  - Atropine IV 0.6–3 mg
  - Isoprenaline
- Pacing:
  - External transcutaneous (using defibrillator machine)
  - Transvenous via a pacing wire

Elective
- Permanent pacemaker insertion
- Amiodarone when controlling sick sinus syndrome

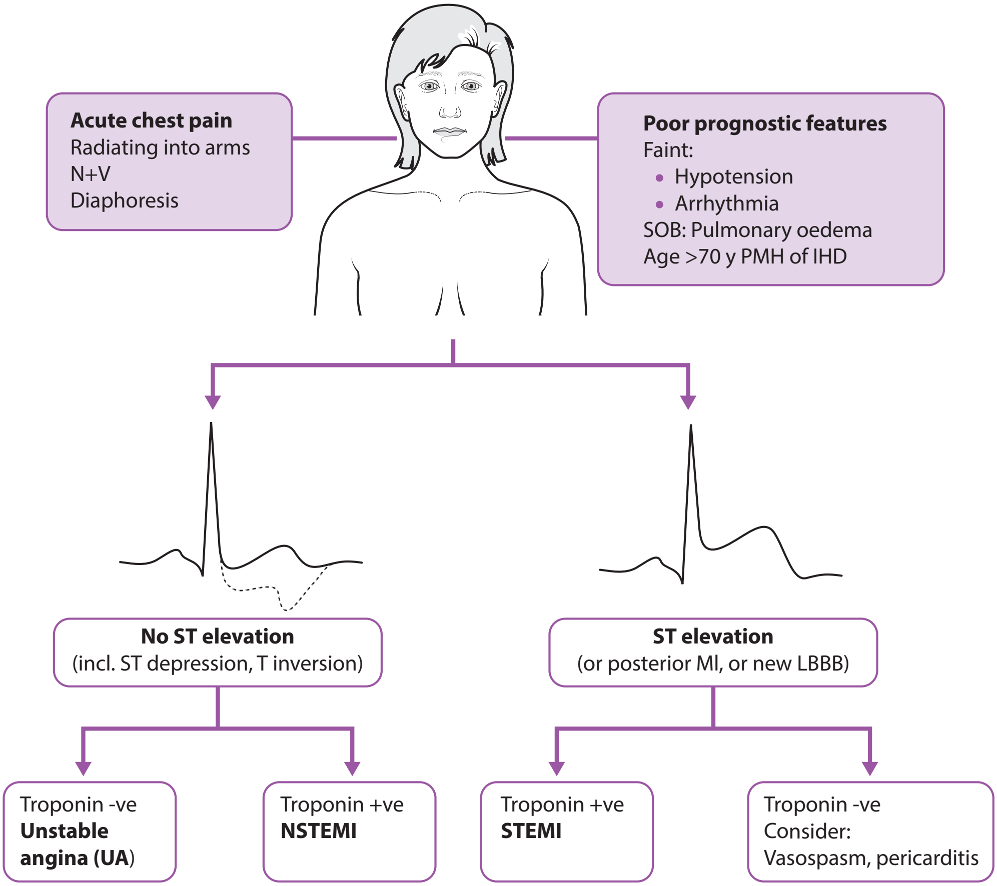
ACUTE CORONARY SYNDROMES

Def

Acute coronary ischaemia, with or without myocardial infarction, due to unstable atheromatous plaque

Types

- Unstable angina
- NSTEMI
- STEMI



Acute chest pain
Radiating into arms
N+V
Diaphoresis

Poor prognostic features
Faint:
- Hypotension
- Arrhythmia

SOB: Pulmonary oedema
Age >70 y PMH of IHD

No ST elevation
(incl. ST depression, T inversion)

ST elevation
(or posterior MI, or new LBBB)

Troponin -ve
Unstable angina (UA)

Troponin +ve
NSTEMI

Troponin +ve
STEMI

Troponin -ve
Consider:
Vasospasm, pericarditis

MYOCARDIAL INFARCTION – COMPLICATIONS

A.L.A.S.
I'm
T.R.A.P.P.E.D.

Arrhythmias (VT, VF, AF, heart block, esp. in inferior MI)
LVF or RVF failure
Arterial hypertension
Shock (cardiogenic)

Thrombus: mural/DVT
Ruptured:
- Septum (VSD)
- Papillary muscle/chordae tendinae (acute MR)
- Ventricular wall (cardiac tamponade)

Aneurysm, ventricular
Pericarditis: Early (<1 week) – infarction
Pericarditis: Late (2–12 weeks) – Dressler syndrome
Extension of infarction
Death (e.g. due to VF, LVF, CVA)

Arrhythmias/heart block
Tachycardias

- SVT:
  - Sinus tachycardia – poor prognosis, if persists despite control of pain and heart failure. Treat with beta-blockers
  - AF or AFlutter – assoc. with LVF
  - Accelerated junctional rhythm, esp. inferior MI
- Ventricular:
  - Ventricular ectopics:
    - Frequent VPBs (>10/h) are seen in 70% of patients, in the first 3 days
    - Rx: Do not treat, unless they become sustained. Maintain K^+ >4.5, Mg^{2+} >2.0 mmol/l
  - VT, VF:
    - 1° VF (i.e. within hours), due to reperfusion; carries a good prognosis if corrected
    - 2° VF (i.e. after days or weeks), due to extensive heart damage, carries a poor prognosis

Myocardial Infarction – Complications continued →

Myocardial Infarction – Complications continued

Bradycardias

- Sinus bradycardia, esp. inferior infarction, due to diaphragmatic/vagus stimulation
- Ventricular bradycardia/idioventricular rhythm: SAN, AVN damage
- Heart block:
  - 1°, 2° (Mobitz Type I), 3° – associated with inferior MI (right coronary artery)
  - 2° (Mobitz Type II) – associated with anterior MI (left coronary artery)

Left- or right-sided heart failure

- LVF = anterior MI; RVF = inferior MI
  Treat with oxygen and diuretics

ABP ↑ : Hypertension

e.g. due to heart failure, tachycardia, pain, catecholamine response

Shock (SBP <100 mmHg)

Causes:

- Myocyte loss (>30%)
- Arrhythmia
- Pain
- Diamorphine, nitrate, beta-blockers

Thrombus

- Mural thrombi typically occur in a dyskinetic area of heart wall, or in AF → CVA/ARF/PVD
- DVT may occur in any bed-bound patient

Rupture of septum, papillary muscle, wall

- These typically occur after several days
- Both VSD and MR give a pan-systolic murmur

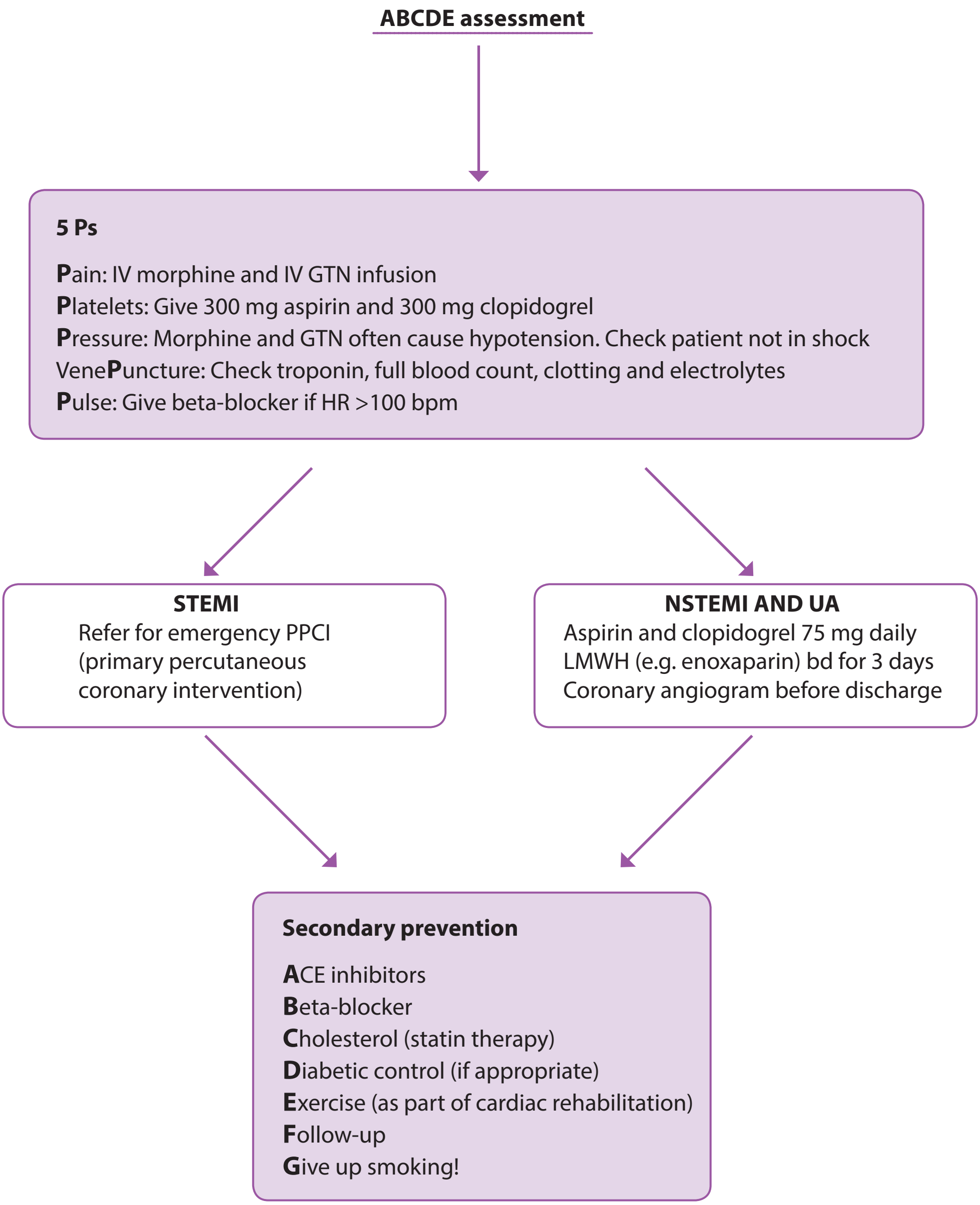
Aneurysm, ventricular

- A true aneurysm is a dyskinetic area of wall that becomes thin
- A false aneurysm is a cardiac rupture with adherent blood clot

Pericarditis

- Early pericarditis represents infarction of the pericardium
- Dressler syndrome is due to autoantibodies against sarcolemma + subsarcolemma of myocytes

MANAGEMENT OF ACS



ABCDE assessment

5 Ps

Pain: IV morphine and IV GTN infusion
Platelets: Give 300 mg aspirin and 300 mg clopidogrel
Pressure: Morphine and GTN often cause hypotension. Check patient not in shock
Vene**P**uncture: Check troponin, full blood count, clotting and electrolytes
Pulse: Give beta-blocker if HR >100 bpm

STEMI
Refer for emergency PPCI
(primary percutaneous
coronary intervention)

NSTEMI AND UA
Aspirin and clopidogrel 75 mg daily
LMWH (e.g. enoxaparin) bd for 3 days
Coronary angiogram before discharge

Secondary prevention

ACE inhibitors
Beta-blocker
Cholesterol (statin therapy)
Diabetic control (if appropriate)
Exercise (as part of cardiac rehabilitation)
Follow-up
Give up smoking!

SHOCK

Def

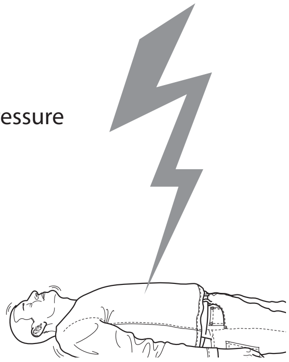
Hypotension resulting in critical organ hypoperfusion. Incipient shock may occur with normal blood pressure, but with tachycardia and narrow pulse pressure (esp. in young people).

Remember:

BP = CO x TPR

and CO = SV x HR

and SV depends on good ventricular diastolic filling (= 'pre-load')



Causes

Cardiogenic

- Acute pump failure, e.g. acute anterior MI
- Arrhythmias

Hypovolaemic

Due to loss of either:

- Fluid – dehydration
- Blood – 'haemorrhagic shock'

Distributive

Due to profound vasodilation:

- Septic shock
- Anaphylactic shock
- Neurogenic shock (loss of sympathetic tone)

Obstructive

LV unable to eject blood due to obstruction:

- Cardiac tamponade
- Massive PE
- Severe AS

DESPITE INCREASING HR, CO DROPS DUE TO BIG DROP IN SV

TACHYCARDIA: RAPID HR LEADS TO DROP IN SV → CO FALLS

DROP IN TPR AND SV LEADS TO HYPOTENSION

VASODILATION CAUSES MASSIVE DROP IN TPR

HIGH AFTERLOAD AND LOW SV → DROP IN CO

PC

Non-localising: Dizzy, weak, light-headed or syncope

Localising, e.g.

- Chest pain: MI, PE, aortic dissection, gastric perforation, anaphylaxis
- Abdominal pain: Bowel perforation, ectopic pregnancy, DKA
- Back pain: Aortic aneurysm, pyelonephritis → urosepsis

O/E

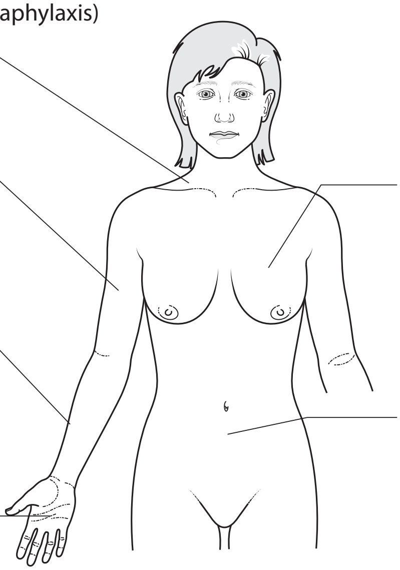
General
Pale, grey (hypovolaemia)
Fever, sweaty (sepsis)
Red face + eyes, urticaria, stridor (anaphylaxis)

JVP
↓ : Hypovolaemia, septic
↑ : Cardiogenic

ABP
Systolic
Pulse pressure
Differential R-L arm pressure (aortic dissection)

Pulse
Fast (except if bradycardia is cause of shock)
Small, thready (hypovolaemia)
Bounding (sepsis)

Hand
Poor capillary refill (hypovolaemia)
Erythema (sepsis, anaphylaxis)



Auscultation
New murmur
Chest: Pulmonary oedema, pneumonia

Abdominal
Tender, guarding
PR: Melaena
PV: Tenderness, gravid uterus

Ix

Bloods: U&E (pre-renal failure); WCC and CRP (sepsis); LFT (liver failure); amylase (pancreatitis); troponin-I (MI); TFT; Hb (haemorrhage); FBC (anaemia – not acute blood volume loss); clotting; Group & Save
Urine: Volume (anuric, polyuric); glucose; ketones (DKA); β-HCG (pregnant, incl. ectopic)
Micro: Blood cultures
Monitor: BP; temperature; fluid-balance chart
ECG (arrhythmia. MI); ECHO (MI, endocarditis)
Radiol:

- CXR – pneumonia, pulmonary oedema, GIT perforation (erect CXR)
- CT–pulmonary angiogram – PE
- Abdo. USS – aorta, pregnancy

Special, e.g. OGD endoscopy

Rx

Septic: **'SEPSIS 6' B.U.F.f.A.L.O.**
Blood cultures
Urine output measurement
Fluid resuscitation
Antibiotics
Lactate measurement
Oxygen

Hypovolaemia: Haemorrhage: Red blood cells, fresh frozen plasma, platelets, stop the bleeding
Fluid depletion: IV fluid resuscitation

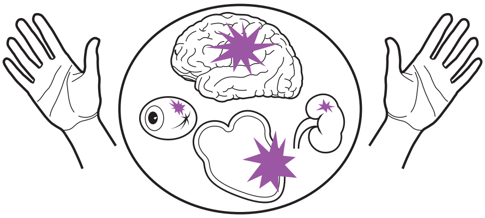
Cardiogenic: IV inotropes, high flow O_2, diuretics for pulmonary oedema, cardioversion if in unstable tachyarrhythmia

Anaphylaxis: **S.A.U.N.A. FLUIDS**
Steroid – IV hydrocortisone 100 mg
Adrenaline – IM adrenaline 1:1000 0.5 mg
Urgent anaesthetic review for airway oedema
Nebulized salbutamol 2.5 mg
Anti-histamine – IV chlorpheniramine 10 mg
FLUIDS High volume of fluid resuscitation

> **Septic shock** mandates transfer to critical care for vasopressors via a central line, e.g. noradrenaline

HYPERTENSION

P.R.E.D.I.C.T.I.O.N. *of arteriopathy*



Causes

Primary

Essential: Risk factors

- Irreversible: Age, genetic
- Reversible: Exercise, diet (salt, alcohol, weight), smoking

Isolated systolic:

- Arteriosclerosis (elderly)
- Hyperdynamic circulation, e.g. anxiety, pain

Renal

- Vascular (e.g. renal artery stenosis, scleroderma, SLE)
- Glomerulonephritis, or tubulointerstitial nephritis
- Structural – APKD, tumour (e.g. Wilms, periangiocytoma)

Endocrine

- Hypercortisolism, e.g. Cushing disease
- Hyperaldosteronism, e.g. Conn syndrome
- Hyperadrenalism, e.g. phaeochromocytoma
- Hyperthyroidism, e.g. Graves disease
- Hyperparathyroidism
- Excess growth hormone, e.g. acromegaly

Drugs

- Drugs of abuse: Alcohol, cocaine, amphetamines (incl. adrenaline)
- Anti-inflammatory: NSAIDs (renovascular dysfunction), steroids, cyclosporin

Inborn errors of metabolism (porphyria)

Coarctation of aorta

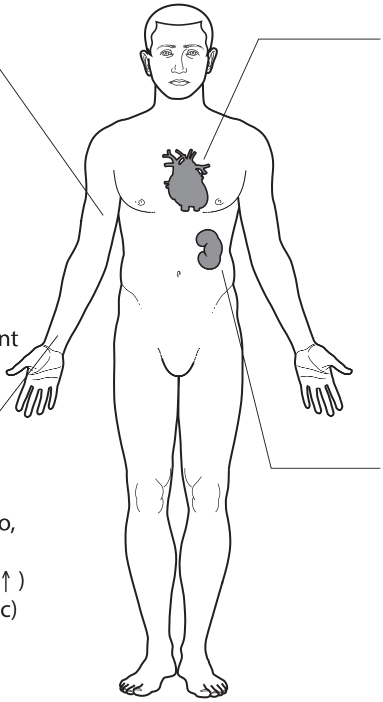
Toxaemia of pregnancy = pre-eclampsia

Increased viscosity: Polycythaemia

Overloaded with fluid (iatrogenic)

Neurogenic: Autonomic neuropathy, diffuse brain injury, spinal section, thalamic stroke

O/E



ABP
Definition

- 3 measurements over 3 months (or 1 week if DBP >110)
- Cuff size >2/3 arm circumference
- 4th Korotkoff sound (i.e. muffling of pulse)

Factors

- Position: Measure semi-recumbent
- Time of day/temperature
- Activity/anxiety

Pulse

1. Rate: Thyrotoxicosis/phaeochromo, heart failure
2. Rhythm: AF (complication of ABP ↑)
3. Volume: Bounding (arteriosclerotic)
4. Peripheral pulses: Atherosclerosis
5. RF-Delay: Coarctation

Precordium

Apex beat:
  Heaving, sustained, non-displaced (pressure overload)
Heart sounds:
  - Loud A2, reverse splitting
  - 4th (later 3rd) ejection click

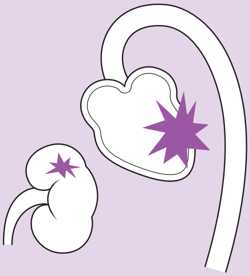
Murmurs:
  - Ejection-systolic
  - Aortic regurgitation

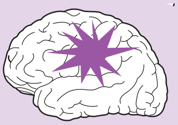
Lung bases:
  Pulmonary oedema

Kidneys

- Renal bruit
- Palpable: APKD

End-organ damage – **C.A.R.N.A.G.E.**





Cardiac
- IHD, incl. MI
- lVH → later, CCF → pulmonary oedema
- AR, MR

Aortic
- Aneurysm
- Dissection

Renal
- Proteinuria
- Chronic renal failure

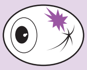
Neurological
- Ischaemic CVA
- Haemorrhagic CVA: Intracerebral, subarachnoid (berry aneurysm)
- Lacunar state: Dementia, parkinsonism
- Encephalopathy: Headache, dizzy, syncope, fits (posterior cortical oedema)

Anaemia: Microscopic angiopathic haemolytic anaemia (accelerated hypertension)

GIT: N+V

Eyes

Retinopathy grade:



- Silver wiring, tortuosity, irregular calibre
- AV-nipping
- Flame haemorrhages; hard exudates, cotton-wool spots
- Papilloedema
  + retinal detachment, retinal vein thrombosis

HEART FAILURE

Def

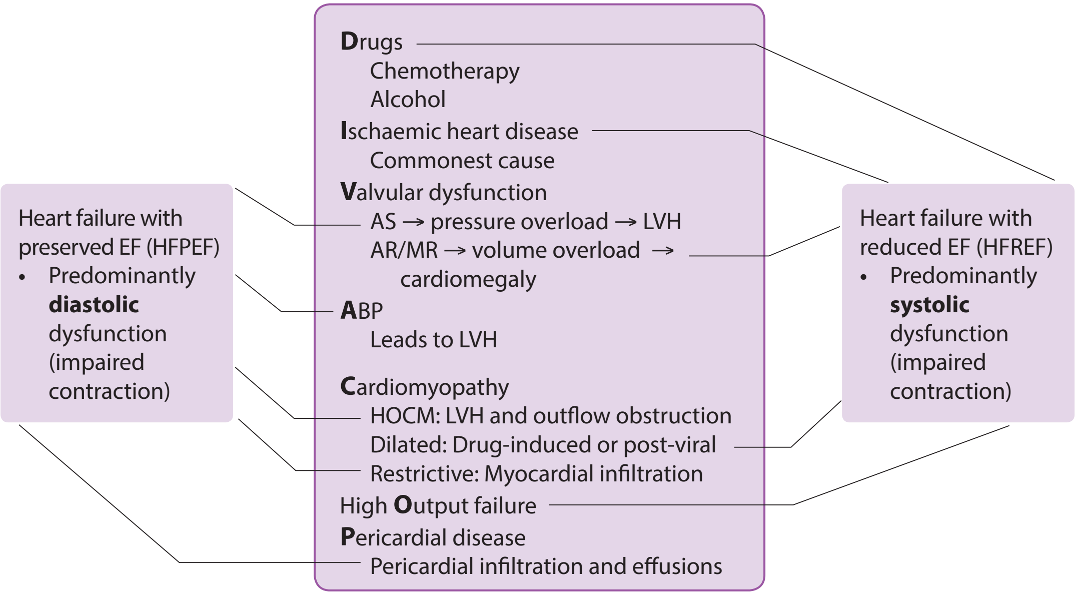
Inability of heart to pump blood at a rate commensurate to the metabolic demands of peripheral tissue, in the presence of normal filling pressures (cf. shock)

Epi

Prevalence: 2% at 50 years → 10% at 80 years. Mortality rate: 50% at 5 years

Causes

D.I.V.A. C.O.P

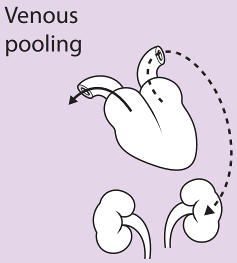

Drugs
Chemotherapy
Alcohol
Ischaemic heart disease
Commonest cause
Valvular dysfunction
AS → pressure overload → LVH
AR/MR → volume overload → cardiomegaly
ABP
Leads to LVH
Cardiomyopathy
HOCM: LVH and outflow obstruction
Dilated: Drug-induced or post-viral
Restrictive: Myocardial infiltration
High **O**utput failure
Pericardial disease
Pericardial infiltration and effusions
Heart failure with preserved EF (HFPEF)
• Predominantly **diastolic** dysfunction (impaired contraction)
Heart failure with reduced EF (HFREF)
• Predominantly **systolic** dysfunction (impaired contraction)

NB: High output failure - *Hyperdynamic circulation – i.e. uses up a lot of* **A**^{4}**.T**^{3}**.P**^{2}**.** *molecule**S***:

Anaemia, **A**lcohol (beri-beri), **A**VM (e.g. Paget), **A**ortic regurgitation
Thyrotoxicosis, **T**emperature, **T**oxins (e.g. salbutamol, diuretics)
Pregnancy (+ infants); **P**roliferative: Leukaemia, psoriasis; severe obesity
Systemic: CO$_2$ retention, cirrhosis

Pathogenesis of heart failure

Pump failure



Renal oligaemia

↓

RAAS ↑

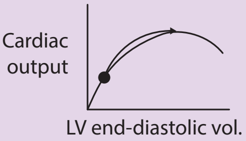
↓

Na^+ resorption ↑

→

CVS compensation

Starling's Law



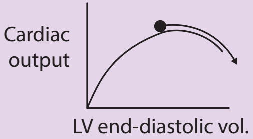
↑ **Sympathetic drive**
Triggered by hypotension; causes CO ↑, concentric LVH, peripheral vasoconstriction

↑ **Natriuresis**
Atrial stretch stimulates release of ANP

→

CVS decompensation

Starling's Law



Sympathetic excess
Periph. vasoconstrictn. → CO ↓ , renal failure

Cardiac remodelling

- LVH →↓ filling + subendocardial ischaemia
- LV dilatatn. → MR, AR

Periph. + pulmo. oedema
Hypoperfusion

CARDIOLOGY TREATMENTS

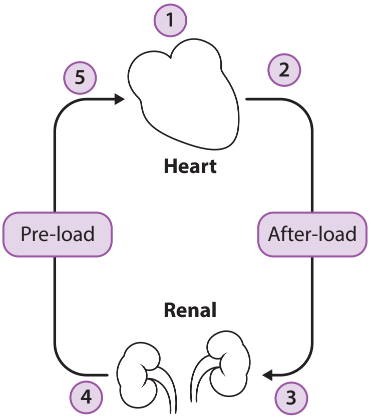
The following diagrams are aides-memoires for the choice and (approximate) order of drug initiation, in 3 main conditions.

Drugs used in cardiological treatment affect different parts of the circulation preferentially. These areas may be classified:

1. **Cardiac**
- Beta-blockers – inhibit cardiac contraction AND angiotensin formation
- Digoxin

5. **Venodilators**
- Nitrates
- K-channel opener – also arteriodilator and cardiac action

2. **Arteriodilators**
- Ca antagonists
- α_1 antagonists
- Centrally acting, e.g. moxonidine, methylDOPA



4. **Venodilators + renal**
- Diuretics

3. **Arteriodilators + renal**
- ACE inhibitors
- Angiotensin-II receptor-1 inhibitors

Hypertension

Conservative
Smoking; diet (weight, alcohol, salt, fish oil), exercise

Cause
Identify + treat reversible causes, e.g. renal causes, endocrine causes

Comorbidity + complications
DM, cholesterol, obesity
TIA, angina

Check: ABP regularly and appropriately
Diagnosis based on 24 hour ambulatory BP readings (eliminates 'white coat hypertension')

Choose the right medications using ABCD rule:

Patient <55 years		**Patient >55 years OR black ethnicity**	
ACEI	**B**eta-blocker	**C**alcium channel blockers	**D**iuretics
10% develop cough and need to switch to ARB	Largely disappeared from managing hypertension	Dihydropyridines only, e.g. amlodipine	Thiazide diuretics, e.g. indapamide
Monitor renal function		Peripheral oedema is common side-effect	May cause hyponatraemia

Step 1: A
Step 2: A + C or D

Step 1: C or D
Step 2: C or D + A

Step 3: A + C + D
Step 4: Consider adding
- α-blocker
- Spironolactone

Heart failure

Conservative
- Smoking
- Low salt diet
- Cardiac rehabilitation (graded exercise)

Cause
- Identify + treat reversible causes, e.g. high output states, ischaemic heart disease

Comorbidity + complications
- Close glycaemic control in DM
- Tight BP control

Choose the right medications using **A.B.C.D.**

- **A**CEI
- **B**eta-blocker
- **C**holesterol control (statin)
- **D**iuretics – loop diuretic (furosemide)
  improve symptoms only

PREVENT CARDIAC REMODELLING AND IMPROVES MORTALITY

Angina

Conservative
- Smoking
- Exercise
- Weight loss

Cause
- Identify + treat reversible causes, e.g. aortic stenosis, HOCM

Comorbidity + complications
- Close glycaemic control in DM
- Tight BP control

Choose the right medications to treat angina (GTN spray)

Choose the right medications to prevent angina

- 1st line **A.B.C.**
  - **A**spirin (secondary prevention of coronary disease)
  - **B**eta-blocker
  - **C**alcium channel blockers (non-dihydropyridines, e.g. diltiazem) if beta-blocker contraindicated
- 2nd line **N.I.N.A.**
  - **N**itrates (long acting, e.g. ISMN)
  - **I**vabradine
  - **N**icorandil
  - **A**ngiogram and possible stenting

RHEUMATIC FEVER

Def

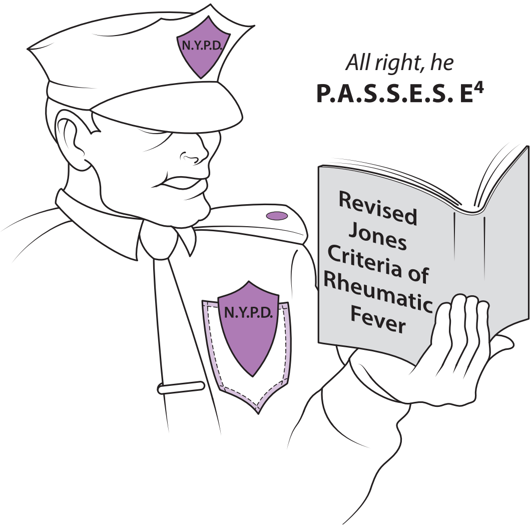
Autoimmune response to Group A beta-haemolytic streptococcus infection (– haemolytic streptococcus), occurring typically 2–3 weeks after streptococcal pharyngitis.

Epi

Inc: Rare in West; common in resource-poor countries
Only 3% of population are susceptible
Half of previous sufferers will develop recurrences after streptoccocal outbreaks
Age: 3–30 (esp. 5–15 y)
Children more likely to develop **C**arditis + **C**horea + **C**utaneous rash; **A**dolescents + **A**dults develop **A**rthritis
Sex: M:F = 1:1

PC

Diagnosis made by Revised Jones Criteria:


N.Y.P.D.
All right, he
P.A.S.S.E.S. E^4
Revised Jones Criteria of Rheumatic Fever
N.Y.P.D.

Pancarditis: Pericarditis (chest pain), myocarditis, endocarditis **A**rthritis: Migratory polyarthritis **S**ubcutanous nodules **S**ydenham chorea: Sufficient as a single major criterion **E**rythema marginatum	**Major criteria** (diagnosis requires 2 Major, or 1 Major + 2 Minor)
+	
Streptoccocal infection in recent past	Necessary criterion
+	
Extra symptoms: Fever, arthralgia **E**SR ↑ (or WCC, CRP ↑), **E**CG (PR int ↑) **E**ver had rheumatic fever before?	**Minor criteria**

PC

Major criteria – explanations:

Pancarditis (60%)
- Pericarditis:
  - Chest pain
  - Friction rub
- Myocarditis:
  - PATH: Aschoff nodules = granulomas
  - Sinus tachycardia (nocturnal) or AV conduction block
  - Cardiac failure
  - CK↑, T inversion
- Endocarditis:
  - Acute:
    - Changing murmur
    - Mitral valvulitis (Carey Coombs' murmur = mid-diastolic murmur)
  - Chronic: Valve disease may present up to 50 years after rheumatic fever; 90% cases involve mitral valve

Arthritis (75%): Migratory polyarthritis
- Flits but persists symmetrically, esp. knees
- Effusions: Painful, red, hot joints
- Jaccoud arthropathy (non-deformative subluxations)

Subcutanous nodules (10%), esp. on elbows

Sydenham chorea:
- Grimacing, clumsy, hypotonia – stops during sleep
- Chronic: Tourrette syn; ADHD, parkinsonism (post-encephalitic lethargicum)

Erythema marginatum:
- Macules that extend centrifugally on trunk, thighs, arms (not face)

Streptoccocal infection in recent past:
- Scarlet fever
- Throat swab: Culture +ve
- Serology: ASO or anti-DNase B titre – ↑ by 200 U/ml

Rx

Medical

Penicillin: IM benzylpenicillin stat + PO penicillin V for 5 years, due to risk of recurrence (or erythromycin)
+ pre-procedure antibiotics if permanent cardiac valve damage as endocarditis prophylaxis
Steroids if severe

Symptomatic

Arthritis – high-dose aspirin, physiotherapy; pericarditis – aspirin; chorea – haloperidol

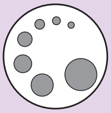
INFECTIVE ENDOCARDITIS

Def

Cardiac valves develop surface vegetations, that comprise bacteria and a platelet–fibrin thrombus

Types

Infective Culture +ve

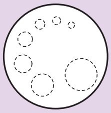


Streptococci
- *S. viridans:* Oropharynx
- *S. bovis, faecalis:* Bowel
- *S. pneumoniae*

Staphylococci
- *S. aureus:* IVDU, distant abscess
- *S. epidermidis:* Prosthesis
- NB: Poor prognosis

Gram negatives
- *Pseudomonas*

Infective Culture –ve

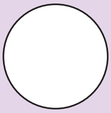


Pre-treatment
- with antibiotics

Fastidious bacteria
- Nutritionally-dependent strep: *S. defectivus* or *adjacens*
- CO_2-dependent HACEK orgs.
  - *Haemophilus, Actinobacillus*
- Brucella

Atypical bacteria/fungi
- TB
- *Chlamydia*
- *Coxiella*
- *Candida*

Non-infective (Marantic)



Autoimmune
- SLE (Libman–Sacks)
- Anti-phospholipid syn.
- Rheumatoid arthritis
- Rheumatic fever

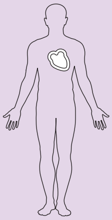
Neoplasia
- Adenocarcinoma
- Atrial myxoma

Other
- Thrombus on valve
- Stitch on prosthetic valve

Predisposing

Pre-existing cardiac disease

Usually subacute



Congenital
- VSD, PDA, MV prolapse, HOCM

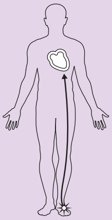
Adolescent
- Rheumatic heart disease

Elderly
- Degenerative valvulopathy

Prosthetic heart valves
- Early (<1 y): *Staph. epidermidis, Candida*
  - NB: Poor prognosis
- Late: (>1 y): *Strep. viridans*

Haematogenous spread

Usually acute



Infection elsewhere
- Dental caries
- Diverticulae, colon carcinoma (*S. bovis*)
- Pneumonia, UTI

Iatrogenic
- Dental, ENT procedure, GIT or GU endoscopy
- IV cannula, acupuncture
- IUCD insertion, labour

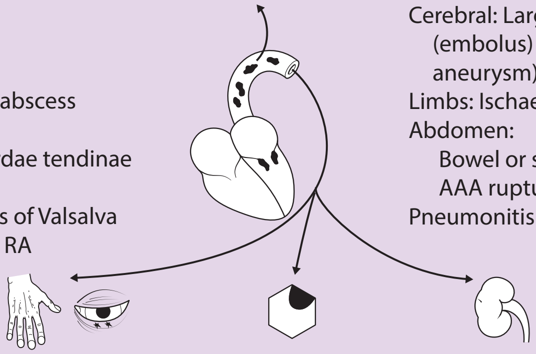
IVDU: *S. aureus* or *Candida*: Rt-sided endocarditis

Immunocompromised: DM tend to get *S. aureus*

PC

Cardiac

Changing murmur:
    MR (85%); AR (55%)
AV conduction block
    esp. with aortic root abscess
Heart failure:
    LHS: Rupture of chordae tendinae or valve cusp;
    RHS: Rupture of sinus of Valsalva Aneurysm into RA



Embolic

Cerebral: Large-vessel infarct (embolus) or bleed (mycotic aneurysm)
Limbs: Ischaemia
Abdomen:
    Bowel or splenic infarction, AAA rupture, ATN
Pneumonitis (R-sided endocarditis)

Peripheral

Hands:

- Splinter haemorrhages
- Osler nodes:
  - Painful, purple papules on finger pulp
- Janeway lesions: Palmar macules
- Clubbing

Eyes:

- Conjunctival haemorrhages
- Roth spots = retinal infarct + bleed

Constitutional

Fever
Splenomegaly
Weight loss
Arthralgia, myalgia, arthritis

Renal

Microscopic haematuria:

- Due to proliferative glomerulonephritis
- Also proteinuria, reversible renal failure

Murmur, fever, splenomegaly, haematuria = most reliable signs

Ix

Bloods: N. chromic N. cytic anaemia; ESR ↑, CRP ↑
Urine: Microscopic haematuria, RBC casts
Micro: Blood cultures × 3 serology for atypical organisms
Monitor: Temperature, murmur
ECG: Heart block
ECHO: Trans-thoracic or TOE – detects vegetations >3 mm
Radiol: CXR – cardiomegaly, pulmonary oedema

Rx

Medical:

Antibiotics for 6 weeks:

- Blind or streptococci: Benzylpenicillin + gentamicin (IV for 2 weeks)
- Staphylococci suspected: Flucloxacillin + gentamicin (and/or vancomycin, rifampicin)

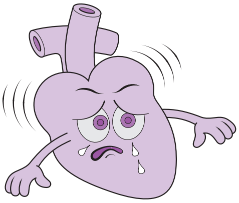
Surgical:

IND: Acute heart failure, emboli, prosthetic valve

PERICARDIAL DISEASE

Causes

I. A.M. H.U.R.T.I.N.'



Infection:
  Viruses, esp. coxsackie, echo, EBV, influenza, HIV
  Bacteria: *Strep. pneumoniae*, mycoplasma, TB, rheumatic fever
  Other: Fungal (candida, aspergillosis), protozoal (toxoplasmosis)

Autoimmune: Rheumatoid arthritis, SLE, scleroderma, PAN
Myocardial Infarction:
  Early: Self-limiting
  Late (2–12 weeks): 'Dressler syn.' – anti-myocardial Abs

Haemorrhage:
  Aortic dissection
  Rupture: Trauma, MI, catheterisation, cardiac surgery
Uraemia
Radiotherapy: Acute or chronic pericarditis
Thyroid ↓/cholesterol ↑
Iatrogenic: Procainamide, hydralazine
Neoplasia:
  Local: Lung cancer, thymoma
  Systemic: Metastases, leukaemia, lymphoma
  Amyloid

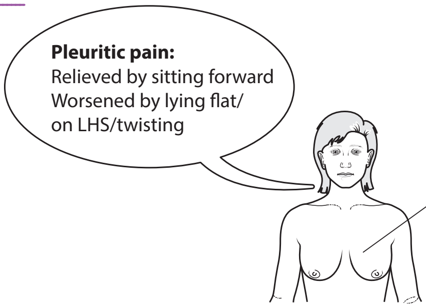
Rx

Conservative:	Bed-rest, avoid anti-coagulants
Symptomatic:	NSAIDS (aspirin, naproxen) Colchicine Prednisolone

Pericardiectomy for multiple, recurrent episodes of pericarditis

PC

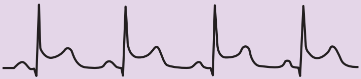
Pericarditis



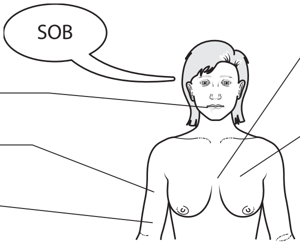
Pleuritic pain:
Relieved by sitting forward
Worsened by lying flat/
on LHS/twisting

Pericardial rub
LSE
Variable:
- ↑ on leaning forward
- Varies with respiration
- Varies over time

ECG: Saddle-shaped ST elevation



Pericardial effusion → cardiac tamponade



JVP
↑,
prominent x descent

ABP ↓, esp. on inspiration

Pulse
Low volume
Pulsus paradoxus
i.e. >10 mmHg ↓ on inspiration

Soft heart sounds
Pericardial rub

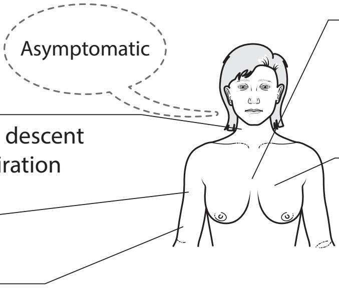
Apex beat – impalpable
Cardiac dullness up to sternum

+
Ewart's sign = bronchial breathing over L base
Oliguria (but diuresis with tamponade relief)

NB: Sx most prominent in tamponade

CXR Symmetric, globular heart
ECG Low voltage or 'electrical alternans' (alternating QRS amplitude)

Constrictive pericarditis



JVP
↑
Friedrich's sign = prominent x and y descent
Kussmaul's sign = descent with expiration

ABP ↓

Pulse Low volume, AF (20%)

Soft heart sounds
Pericardial knock
= early S3,
due to rapid, early LV filling

Apex beat – impalpable

Hepatomegaly/jaundice/ascites – may be acute; ankle oedema is uncommon

CXR Calcification of posterior border (lateral CXR) = TB
ECG Low voltage and T inversion

MYOCARDITIS

Causes

Infection

Viral:

- Enterovirus, esp. coxsackie B
- HIV

Bacteria:

- *S. aureus* (complication of staphylococcal endocarditis – abscess of valve ring or septum)
- Diphtheria toxin
- Lyme disease: Often requires a temporary pacemaker

Protozoa:

- Chagas
- Toxoplasmosis

Autoimmune: Giant cell myocarditis – assoc. with SLE, thymoma, thyrotoxicosis

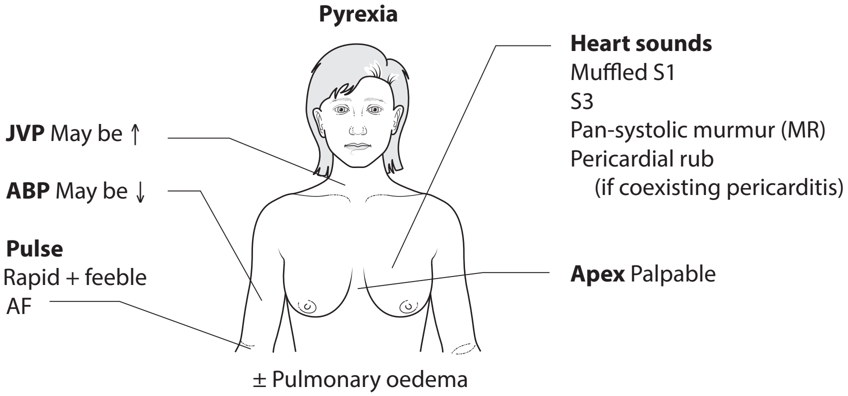
Iatrogenic: Toxins, radiation, trauma

PC

Viral myocarditis

- Prodromal flu-like symptoms, e.g. fever, sore throat, myalgia (may co-exist with Bornholm disease)
- Chest pain
- Contact with other cases (epidemic)
- Arrhythmias, ↑ by exertion
- Heart failure: Acute, or dilated cardiomyopathy (10%)

O/E


Pyrexia
JVP May be ↑
ABP May be ↓
Pulse
Rapid + feeble
AF
Heart sounds
Muffled S1
S3
Pan-systolic murmur (MR)
Pericardial rub
(if coexisting pericarditis)
Apex Palpable
± Pulmonary oedema

Ix

Bloods: Massive rise in troponin

Micro: Throat swab + stool sample virology cultures

ECG: Widespread ST depression; T inversion

Rx

Symptomatic only

MYXOMA

Epi

Inc: Commonest 1° cardiac tumour
Age: 50–60s (except familial syndromes – present <30 y)
Sex: Females 70%
Assoc: Familial (AD) in 7%: The Carney Complex of Syndromes:

- **NAME syn.**: **N**aevi, **A**trial myxoma, **M**yxoid neurofibromas, **E**phelides (facial freckles)
- **LAMB syn.**: **L**entigines, **A**trial **M**yxoma, **B**lue naevi
- Multiple tumours

PATH: Location: L atrium, in fossa ovalis – 90%
Solitary
Gelatinous, friable, attached by pedicle to fossa ovalis

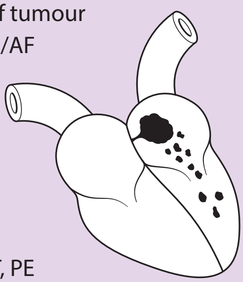
PC

F.L.E.C.K.S. *fall off*

Failure, cardiac: LHS or RV failure, depending on site of tumour
LOC or sudden death: Due to prolapse via mitral valve/AF
Emboli:

- CVA
- PVD, incl. aortic saddle embolus/Raynaud
- MI

Clubbing
Koagulation (prothrombotic): + polycythaemia, thrombocytosis → DVT, PE
Systemic: Fever, LOW, myalgia



O/E

- LA tumour: Signs are similar to mitral stenosis:

Similarities	**Differences**
Loud S1	Sinus rhythm
Mid-diastolic murmur	Postural changes affect murmur
Pre-systolic accentuation snap	Early diastolic plop: Tumour prolapses via valve in place of opening

- RA tumour – RV failure

Ix

Bloods: ESR ↑↑, Ig ↑;
Albumin ↓;
WCC ↑, Plts ↓ or ↑ Hb ↓ (chronic disease or haemolytic)
ECHO: Diagnosed on ECHO
Radiol:
CXR:

- Small heart with LA appendage enlargement (± pulmonary oedema)
- Calcification of tumour (not MV)

Special: Histology

Rx

Surgical: Cardiopulmonary bypass ± atrial septectomy/interatrial patch
RECURRENCE IS VERY RARE!

CARDIOMYOPATHY

Def

Structural pump failure due to primary myocardial damage

Hypertrophic – HOCM

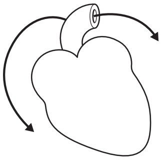
Autosomal dominant (AD) or spontaneous mutation

Features

Hypertrophy: Either **ASH** =**A**symmetric **S**eptal **H**ypertrophy, or concentric **LVH**
Obstruction: **SAM** = systolic anterior motion of anterior leaflet of mitral valve that obliterates LV outflow tract in systole
Cardiac death: Commonest cause of sudden cardiac death in young people
Myosin: ß-myosin heavy chain is commonest mutation (AD)

PC

Angina
Arrhythmias, esp. AF, WPW, VT



Exertional syncope, or sudden death, due to:

- Peripheral vasodilation
- Catecholamine-induced outflow obstruction
- Vagal-bradycardia/WPW/VT-VF

Diastolic heart failure , i.e. ↑ LVEDP

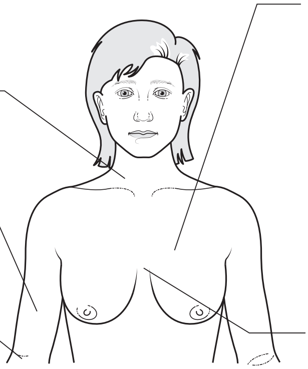
O/E

General Friedrich ataxia

JVP Large a wave

ABP ↓ on exercise

Pulse
Jerky
Small, collapsing
AF



Auscultation
HS: 4th HS; single/reversed S2 splitting
Mid-late ejection systolic murmur over LSE
Mitral regurgitation or stenosis-like murmurs

Manoeuvres that
↑ murmur + ↑ outflow obstruction =

↓PRE-LOAD	↓AFTER-LOAD	↓CONTRACTILITY
Valsalva	Standing	Exercise
Nitrate/diuretic	Nifedipine/ACEI	Digoxin

Palpation Pressure overloaded APB
Double/triple impulse/LV lift
Systolic thrill

Ix

ECG:
- LVH/LAD/L-sided strain
- Widespread Q waves
- Pre-excitation

ECHO: ASH – ground-glass appearance

Radiol:
- Normal or RA or LA dilation on CXR
- SAM
- Hypertrophied, dilated atria due to LVEDP ↑
- Intra-cavity pressure gradient within the LV

Special: Cardiac catheterisation – large intra-cavity pressure gradient

Rx

Medical: –ve inotropes ↓ obstruction/diastolic failure: ß-blockers, verapamil (AVOID nitrates, ACEI , diuretics, nifedipine)

Surgical:
- Pacemaker DDD: Delays septal depolarisation and ↓ obstruction
- Myomectomy/ MVR/ alcohol ablation

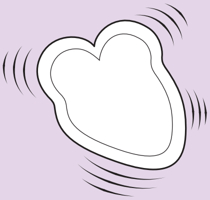
Dilated

Causes

D.I.L.A.T.E.D.

Dystrophy: Primary; muscular dystrophy, myotonic dystrophy, glycogen storage disease
Infection: Sequela of myocarditis, esp. enterovirus
Late pregnancy: 3rd trimester – 6 months post-partum
Autoimmune: SLE
Toxin:
- Alcohol (thiamine deficiency), cocaine
- Doxorubicin, cyclophosphamide (and radiotherapy)

Endocrine: Dysthyroidism; acromegaly; Addison; diabetes
DNA: Either autosomal dominant or recessive



PC

LVF
- Pulmonary oedema
- Pleural effusion
- Renal failure

RVF
- Peripheral oedema
- Liver failure, ascites

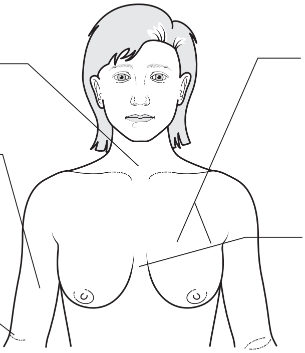
Arrhythmias

O/E

JVP ↑↑cv wave (TR)

ABP ↓ pulse pressure

Pulse
Fast, thready;
pulsus
alternans



Auscultation
HS: 3rd +
4th gallop
MR, TR

Apex
Displaced,
diffuse

Ix

ECG: T inversion, poor R wave progression, AF, VT
ECHO: LVEDV ↑; LV ejection fraction ↓;
LV thrombus
Radiol: CXR: Dilated RV + LV
Catheter + Bx: Myocardial fibre disarray

Rx

Medical:
- Diuretics, ACEI, beta-blockers
- Anticoagulation if cardiac thrombus or AF

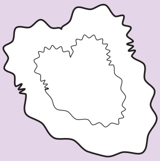
Surgical: LV assist device/transplant

Restrictive

Causes

S.I.N.E.

Storage diseases
  Fabry
  Gaucher
  Haemochromatosis (the only reversible cause)
  Glycogen storage diseases
Infiltrative diseases
  Sarcoid
  Amyloid
Non-infiltrative
  Idiopathic
  Scleroderma
  Pseudoxanthoma elasticum
Endocardial
  Hypereosinophilia
  Radiotherapy
  Carcinoid



PC

Heart failure with preserved systolic function, i.e. primarily diastolic dysfunction

O/E

Similarities to Constrictive pericarditis:
- JVP + prominent x, y descents, Kussmaul Sx.
- Peripheral oedema, hepatomegaly, ascites

Differences:
- Palpable apex beat
- MR/TR (sarcoid, amyloid)

Ix

Catheter: Difference in LVEDP and RVEDP
>7 mmHg at end-expiration (cf. constriction)
Biopsy
Amyloid screen Ix, e.g. BJP, SEP, SAP-scan

CONGENITAL HEART DISEASE – CYANOTIC

Fallot tetralogy

EPI

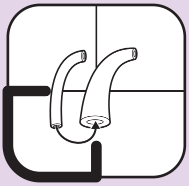
Commonest congenital cyanotic heart disease presenting after 1 year
Age: >3–6 months, although most are cyanosed at birth

PATH

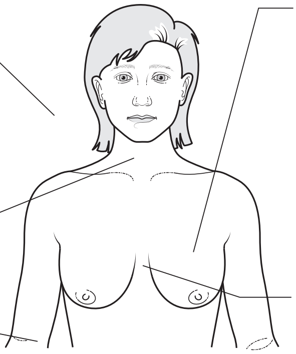
Failure of bulbis cordis to rotate:

You can see Fallot tetralogy with the **R**ight **P.O.V.**

Right ventricular hypertrophy
→ Right left shunting: cyanosis
Pulmonary stenosis
Over-riding aorta with wide aortic ring
(aorta displaced anteriorly and rightwards)
VSD: Infundibular-subaortic



O/E



General
Central cyanosis (growth delay, clubbing, stroke due to paradoxical embolism or abscess)

Polycythemia (plethora, acne, gingivitis, gout)

JVP Absent a (VSD)

Pulse
R > L strength
(Blalock shunt)

HS
Pulmonary ESM (LSE → pulmo) – manoeuvre-dependent (see table)

Aortic ejection click
AR murmur
Single S2 (absent P2)

Continuous murmur at back:
Aortopulmonary collaterals

Palpation
Palpable A2 (anterior aorta)

Pulmonary thrill

RV heave

Murmur/cyanosis variability
The murmur reflects flow through the pulmonary artery, so that the **louder** the murmur, the **less** the cyanosis!

Mechanism	Murmur	Cause		
Shunting ↓ no cyanosis	Intensity ↑	After-load ↑: Squatting	Pre-load ↑: Leg elevation	Cardiac contractility↓: Beta-blockers
Shunting ↑ cyanosis	Intensity ↓	After-load ↓: Exercise, sepsis	Pre-load ↓: Nitrates, ACEI	Cardiac contractility ↑: Digoxin

Ix

ECG:

- RAD
- R BBB
- VEs, paroxysmal VT

Radiol: CXR

- Coeur en sabot
- Pulmonary oligaemia/absent L pulmonary artery
- Large aortic knuckle

Special: Heart catheter

Rx

Surgical:

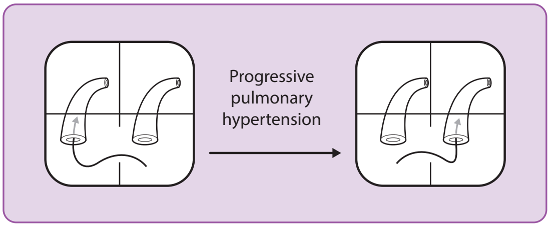
Shunt:

- Blalock Taussig: L saubclavian artery → pulmonary artery
- Pulmonary valvuloplasty/infundibular resection

Eisenmenger syndrome

PATH

Reversal of shunt flow in ASD/VSD/PDA



Rarities (4Ts)

TGA + essential shunt: Hyperdynamic circulation
TGA – congenitally correct
TAPVD
Tricuspid atresia/Ebstein's anomaly

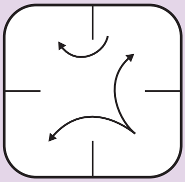
CONGENITAL HEART DISEASE – NON-CYANOTIC

Epi

Congenital heart defects occur in <1% live births, or 4% if mother had congenital heart disease. Of these, 50% require medical/surgical intervention in infancy, and a further 30% in later life

Atrial septal defect (ASD) (30%)

1°: Primum



AV-canal defect:
Associated MR and VSD

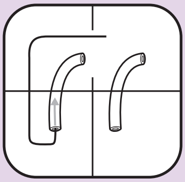
☠

Mitral reurgitation: LVH/LSH failure

Pulmonary hypertension

SBE: Due to low atrial pressure

2°: Secundum (70%)



Fossa ovalis
defect

☠

Atrial dilation:
- AF or SVT
- TR
- PE

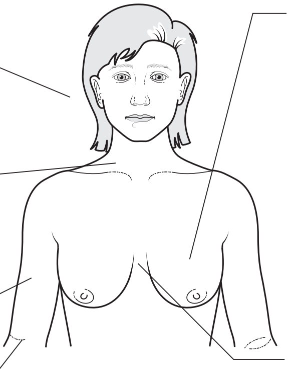
Pulmonary hypertension:
- Pulmo. oedema, pneumonia
- RVH/RSH failure
- Eisenmenger (cyanosis)

Other:

Patent foramen ovale
- Asymptomatic finding in 25% population
- No shunting occurs ∴ strictly not ASD!
- Associated with CVA (paradoxical embolism during Valsalva)

Sinus venosus defect
- Upper atrial defect
- Associated anomalous R pulmonary venous drainage → RA

O/E



General
M:F = 3:1
Holt–Oram syn. – 2°
(clavicle, thumb defects)
Down, Turner syn. –1°

JVP
Large a (PHT)/cv waves (TR)
Raised level (RSH failure)
– esp. 2°

ABP ↑ if coarctation
(assoc. with 1°)

Pulse AF/SVT – esp. 2°

HS
Fixed split S2, because inspiration
↑ RA filling but ↓ L → R shunt

Wide split S1

Pulmonary ejection systolic murmur
Tricuspid mid-diastolic flow murmur

NB:
Eisenmenger – Flow murmurs disappear; loud P2, ejection click, PR
Assoc. MVP (2°), MR (1°)

Palpation
APB: Undisplaced (2°); volume-overload (1°)
Parasternal heave; palpable S2 (PHT)

Ix

ECG: Long PR, R BBB, RAD (2°), LAD (1°)
ECHO: (+ bubble injection)
Radiol: CXR Pulmonary plethora, prominent pulmonary arteries

Rx

Rarely close spontaneously

Surgical: Closure via catheter-inserted device or surgical
IND = P:S flow ratio >1.5
CI = Eisenmenger (P:SVR >0.7)

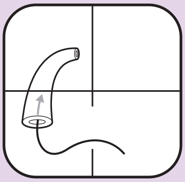
Ventricular septal defect (VSD) (70%) = Maladie de Roger

Types

Membranous: Commonest – closes spontaneously due to adjacent papillary muscle

Muscular: Post-MI, multiple – closes spontaneously

Infundibular: Assoc. AR, Fallot



☠

LVH/LSH failure

PHT (as for ASD 2°)

SBE, R-sided → pneumonia/pleurisy

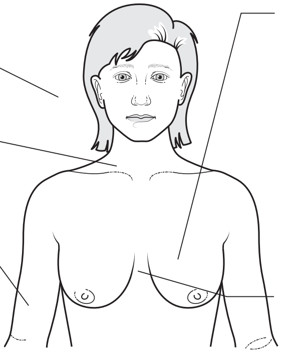
O/E

General Scars:

- CABG scar
- Childhood correction

JVP Large a (PHT)

ABP ↑ if coarctation –1°



HS

Wide, but variable S2

PSM at LSE → apex

Mitral mid-diastolic flow murmur

Eisenmenger:

- Single S2 (equal ventric. pressures)
- Soft ESM at LSE, or no murmur
- Loud P2 + ejection click + PR

Palpation

APB: Volume overload

Parasternal heave

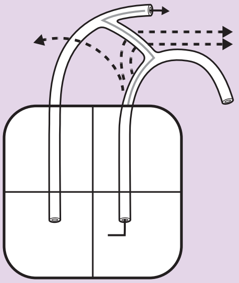
LSE thrill

Rx

Often close spontaneously (50% by 10 y)

Surgical: Double clamshell device

Patent ductus arteriosus (PDA) (10%)



Dashed lines represent carotid + subclavian arteries that branch off before PDA

Assoc:

Fetal hypoxia

Maternal rubella

VSD, PS, coarctation

☠

As for VSD + aneurysm, rupture

O/E

JVP

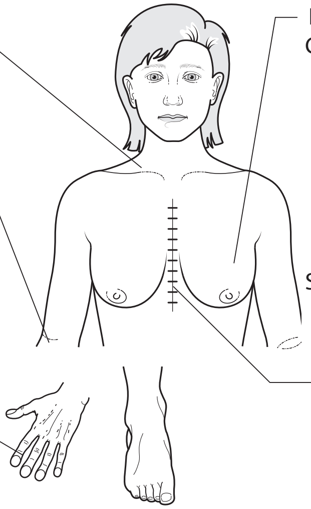
Large a (PHT)

Pulse

Bounding, collapsing

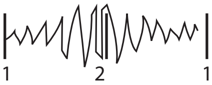
Hands, feet

Differential cyanosis + clubbing – in feet, not hands (reversed if TGA)



HS

Continuous machinery murmur + late sys. accentuation at L 2nd ICS, subclav. fossa + posteriorly



Silent S2

Palpation

APB: Volume overload

Parasternal heave

Thrill at L 2nd ICS

Rx

Medical:

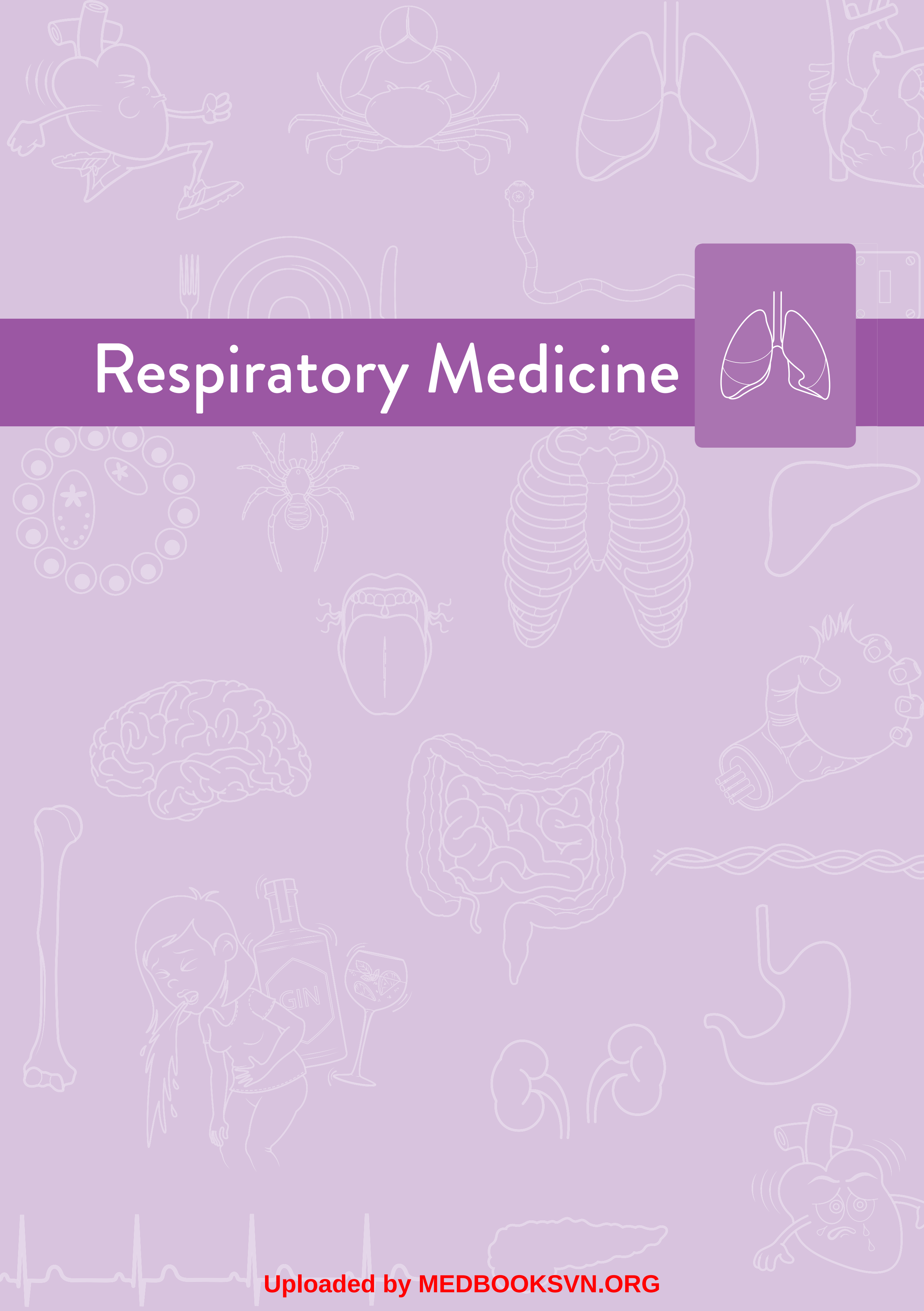
Indomethacin in neonatal period

Surgical:

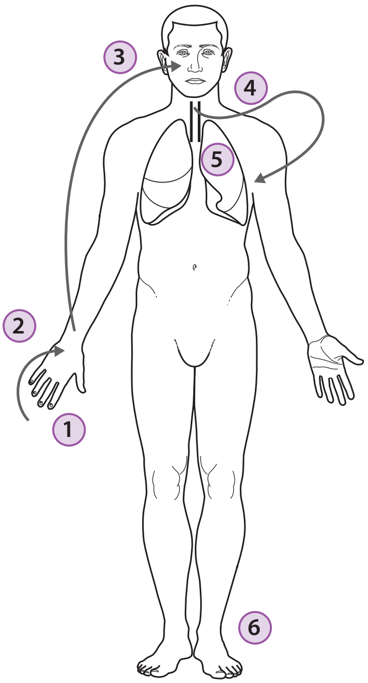
Closure – ligation, catheter-placed device

Taylor & Francis
Taylor & Francis Group
http://taylorandfrancis.com

Respiratory Medicine



RESPIRATORY EXAMINATION



4. Neck

Accessory muscles of respiration:
Sternocleidomastoid, arm support, alae flaring

JVP: ↑ in:

- Pulmonary hypertension
- SVCO (non-pulsatile), due to bronchial ca. (90%), lymphoma, Hodgkin (8%)

3. Face – General

Eyes:

- Conjunctivae: Pallor (anaemia)
- Sclera: Jaundice (cor pulmonale, cystic fibrosis)
- Horner syn. (Pancoast tumour)

Mouth:

- Central cyanosis

Cheeks, nose:

- Flushed (polycythaemia, SVCO, mitral stenosis)
- Rash (SLE, scleroderma, sarcoid, carcinoid)

General habitus:

- Obese (Pickwickian syn.)
- Cachexia (TB, ca., bronchiectasis)
- Marfanoid (pneumothorax)

2. Pulse, ABP, RR

Pulse: ↑ in PE, infection, severe asthma

ABP:

- ↓ in PE, infection, severe asthma
- Pulsus paradoxus: >10 mmHg ↓ on inspiration (severe asthma)

RR: Rate and pattern (periodic?)

Measure surreptitiously, while appearing to take pulse, so as not to make patient self-conscious

1. Hands

Clubbing (ca., bronchiectasis)
Nicotine staining (actually due to tar)
Hand wasting: T1 wasting (Pancoast tumour)
Arthritis, sclerodactyly {fibrosis}
Hand flap: CO_2 retention

5. Chest

Inspection:

- Barrel chest, pectus carinatum
- Kyphosis: Ankylosing spondylitis thoracic vertebral fracture (TB)
- Concavity: Lobe- or pneumonectomy
- Scars: Chest drain, thoracotomy, radiation marks

Palpation:

- Front: Trachea + apex beat (mediastinal shift, LVF) parasternal heave
- Back: Lymphadenopathy

Expansion: ↓ with most pathologies

Percussion: Include clavicle + axillary areas

Auscultation:

- Air entry: Intensity, quality
- Added sounds: Creps, wheeze

Manoeuvres:

- Tactile vocal fremitus (TVF)
- Vocal resonance
- Whispering pectoriloqy

(For all: Transmission loud with consolidation, soft with effusion, collapse)

Order

1. *Recline patient at 45°*
2. *Stand back and get pt. to take 2 deep breaths in and out, while inspecting*
3. *Examine front; palpation, expansion ...*
4. *Sit patient forward, inspect and palpate for cervical + axillary lymph nodes; then repeat palpation, etc.*

6. Elsewhere

Ankle oedema (cor pulmonale)
Ascites, liver edge

7. And finally ...

Talking in sentences?

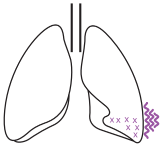
- Indicates severity of respiratory distress

PEFR; temperature charts
Surrounds: Sputum pot

Patterns

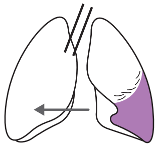
1. **Consolidation**
   Palpation: Lymphadenopathy in TB, HIV
   Expansion ↓
   Percussion note dull
   Auscultation:
   - Air entry ↓, bronchial breathing
   - Added: Coarse creps

   Tactile vocal fremitus or vocal resonance ↑, whispering pectoriloquy (whispering sounds loud + harsh)



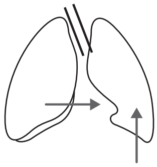
2. **Pleural effusion**
   Palpation: Mediastinum shifts away
   Expansion ↓
   Percussion note stony dull
   Auscultation:
   - Air entry – absent
   - Bronchial breathing just above effusion

   Tactile vocal fremitus or vocal resonance ↓, egophony (patient's voice sounds like bleating sheep just above effusion)

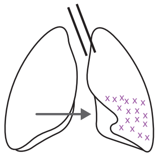


3. **Collapse (or lobectomy, or pneumonectomy or thoracoplasty)**
   Palpation: Mediastinum shifts towards
   Expansion ↓
   Percussion note:
   - Dull (collapse)
   - Stony dull (pneumonectomy, due to fluid replacement)

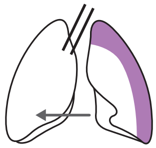
   Auscultation: Air entry ↓
   Tactile vocal fremitus or vocal resonance ↓



4. **Fibrosis**
   Palpation: Mediastinum shifts towards
   Expansion ↓
   Percussion note dull
   Auscultation:
   - Air entry ↓, bronchial breathing
   - Added: End-inspiratory fine or coarse creps, don't shift with coughing



5. **Pneumothorax**
   Palpation: Mediastinum shifts away (with large or tension pneumothorax)
   Expansion ↓
   Percussion note hyper-resonant
   Auscultation: Air entry ↓
   Tactile vocal fremitus or vocal resonance ↓
   + Hamman's sign: Systolic click, heard in time with heart (left-side pn.tx.)
   + Coin sign (tap on coin placed on chest → ringing sound heard)



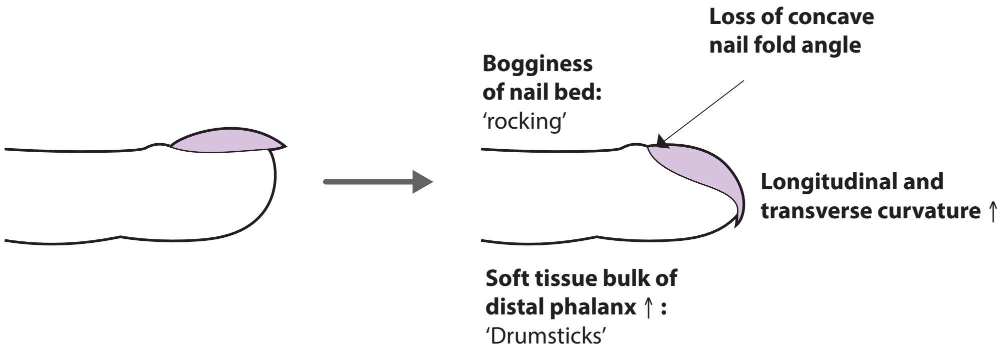
6. **Bronchiectasis**
   Clubbing, cyanosis
   Coarse crepitations
   Extra: Fever, copious green sputum in pot

7. **Pulmonary fibrosis**
   Clubbing, cyanosis
   Fine crepitations

8. **Cavity**
   Amphoric breathing (like blowing over a bottle top)

CLUBBING

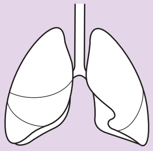
O/E


Loss of concave nail fold angle
Bogginess of nail bed: 'rocking'
Longitudinal and transverse curvature ↑
Soft tissue bulk of distal phalanx ↑ : 'Drumsticks'

Causes

All the **Cs**

Respiratory

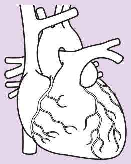


Cancer:
- Bronchial, esp. squamous cell carcinoma – assoc. hypertrophic pulmonary osteoarthropathy (HPOA)
- Mesothelioma (or asbestosis)

Cystic fibrosis + other **C**hronic suppurative disease:
- Lung abscess/bronchiectasis
- Empyema – may occur within a few weeks
- TB – uncommonly associated

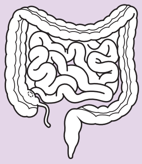
Idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis (formally **C**ryptogenic fibrosing alveolitis)

Cardiac



Congenital cyanotic heart disease
Infective endo**C**arditis
Cancer: Myxoma

GIT



Cirrhosis
Crohn
Coeliac
Cancer: GI lymphoma

Other

Congenital
a**C**ropachy

CYANOSIS

Def

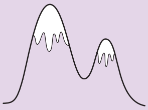
Blue discolouration of mucosal membranes/skin, caused by hypoxaemia

Types: 1. Peripheral: Cold, blue peripheries, e.g. nail beds
2. Central: Blue tongue, lips; warm peripheries; digital pulses present

Causes

Think of the path of O_2 from air to red blood cells:

Atmosphere



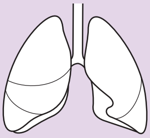
High-altitude acclimatisation:

- ↑ bicarbonate excretion: Counters hypoxia-driven hyperventilation and respiratory alkalosis
- ↑ Hb 2,3-DPG → ↓ affinity for O_2
- Polycythaemia

Nitrite-contaminated water

Cold exposure (peripheral cyanosis)

Respiratory

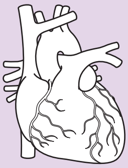


Ventilation ↓: COPD, ventilatory muscle weakness

O_2 diffusion ↓: Pulmo. oedema, pneumonia, fibrosis, alveolar haemorhage, aspiration

Pulmonary blood perfusion ↓: PE

Cardiac



Congenital:

- R→L shunt: Eisenmenger (ASD, VSD, PDA), Fallot
- R+L mixing: Transposition of great arteries
- Pulmonary blood flow ↓: Pulmonary atresia

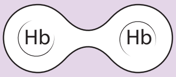
Cardiac output ↓:

- Mitral stenosis
- Severe heart failure

Vascular (peripheral cyanosis):

- Arterial obstruction: Raynaud, thromboembolic disease
- Venous obstruction: DVT, constrictive pericarditis
- Shock: Sympathetic redistribution

Red-**blood** cells



Hereditary low-affinity **Hb**:

- **Hb** Kansas
- Methaemaglobinaemia = Cyt B5 reductase deficiency

Acquired low-affinity **Hb**:

- Met**Hb**aemia
- Sulp**Hb**aemia
- Carboxy**Hb**aemia: (CO poisoning): Pt. appears cherry red

Polycythemia (peripheral cyanosis): Due to sluggish circulation

RESPIRATORY FAILURE

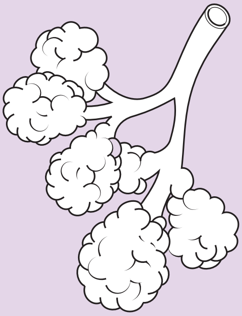
Def

Type 1 failure hypoxaemia – failure of oxygenation
Type 2 failure hypoxaemia and hypercapnia – failure of oxygenation and ventilation

Causes

Alveolar ventilation failure

PaO$_2$ ↓ PaCO$_2$ ↑ pH ↓
Alveolar–arterial grad. normal



Obstructive

Small airway:
COPD
Asthma – severe
Bronchiectasis
Bronchiolitis
Large airway:
Intra-thoracic:
Ca., LN, FB
Extra-thoracic:
Ca., OSA, epiglottitis

Restrictive

Extraparenchymal:

- Neuromuscular:
  - CNS Δ , sedatives
  - High – cervical cord Δ
  - Lower-motor neurone: MND, GBS, myasthenia
- Structural:
  - Ankylosing spondylitis + other skeletal Δ
  - Pleural disease
  - Obesity

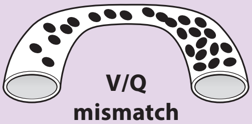
Diffusion failure

Fluid

Pulmonary oedema
Pneumonia
Infarction
Blood

Fibrosis

Both also cause V/Q mismatch + alveolar ventilation failure, due to lung compliance ↓
=> work of breathing ↑



V/Q mismatch

PaO$_2$ ↓ PaCO$_2$ ↓ pH ↑
Alveolar–arterial grad. ↑

Vascular

PE
PHT
Pulmonary shunt

Asthma – early

Atelectasis

Pneumothorax

PC

	PaO_2↓	**$PaCO_2$↑ or pH↓**
Acute	Cyanosis (deoxyHb ≥5 g/dl) Cardiac: • Angina, MI • Arrhythmias, esp. VT Cerebral: Encephalopathy	Tachypnoea Cardiac: • Peripheral vasodilation (warm), pulse volume ↑ • Arrhythmia, esp. sinus tachycardia, SVT Cerebral: Encephalopathy, incl.: asterixis, papilloedema, miosis, reflexes ↓
Chronic	Polycythaemia Pulmonary hypertension/cor pulmonale Renal: ATN (vasoconstriction)	Renal compensation: HCO_3^- ↑ Cl^- ↓

Ix

ABG:

pH/HCO_3: Determines chronicity and whether renal compensation has occurred:

Alveolar–arterial gradient ($PAO_2 - PaO_2$)

PAO_2 (Alveolar O_2) = 20 –($PaCO_2 \times 1.25$)

Normal A–a gradient = 2 kPa (50-y-old, at sea-level, room air)

Raised A–a gradient indicates diffusion failure or V/Q mismatch

PEFR, spirometry, transfer factor

Rx

Underlying cause, e.g. opiates – naloxone

Oxygenation failure (PaO_2 <8.0 kPa):

- Low/high-flow O_2, e.g. nasal cannulae, Venturi face-mask, reservoir bag
  ☠: Chronic ventilatory failure: Ventilation depends on hypoxaemic drive!
- Continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP) – tight-fitting mask (non-invasive)
- Alternative to CPAP is high-flow nasal oxygen
- Mechanical ventilation via intubation or tracheostomy

Ventilatory failure ($PaCO_2$ >6.5 kPa)

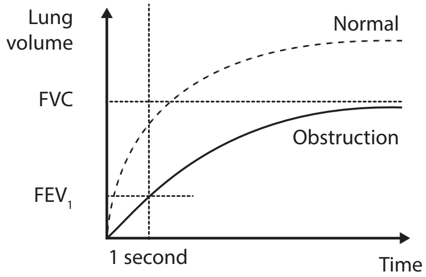
- BiPAP
- Mechanical ventilation

RESPIRATORY FUNCTION TESTS – SPIROMETRY

FEV$_1$: Forced expiratory volume in 1 s
FVC: Forced vital capacity
KCO: Transfer factor (diffusion rate)
PEFR: Peak expiratory flow rate
RV: Residual volume
TLC: Total lung capacity

Obstructive

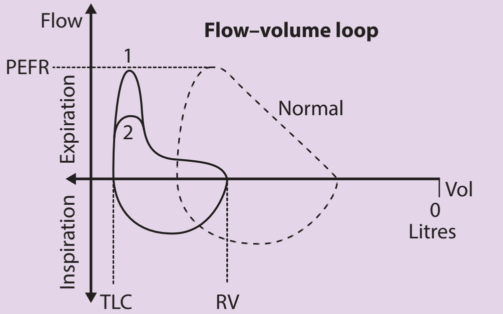
FVC slightly ↓
FEV$_1$: Dramatically ↓ (determines severity)
FEV$_1$/FVC = <0.7
TLC ↑, RV ↑
KCO ↓ emphysema



Causes

C.A.B.B.I.E.

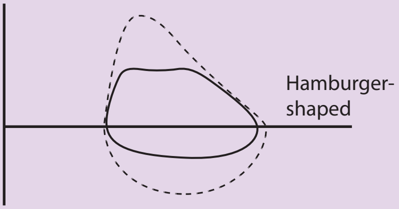
Small airways
COPD, irreversible
Asthma
Bronchiectasis
Bronchiolitis

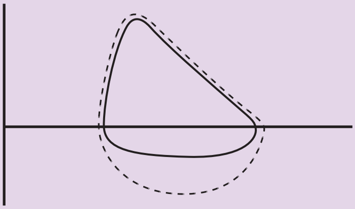


1. Volume-dep. collapse: Early asthma, bronchitis
2. Pressure-dep. collapse: Emphysema, bronchiolitis

Large airways
Intra-thoracic – fixed obstruction
- Bronchial carcinoma, lymph node, foreign body
- Relapsing polychondritis: Intermittent bronchial collapse

Extra-thoracic – collapse on inspiration only
- Laryngeal carcinoma, epiglottitis, tracheal stenosis
- Foreign body in throat
- Goitre, cervical lymph nodes

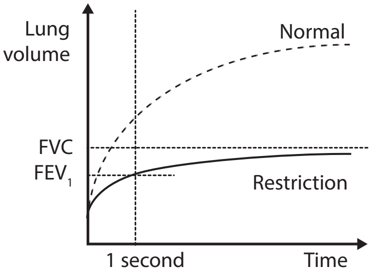




Restrictive

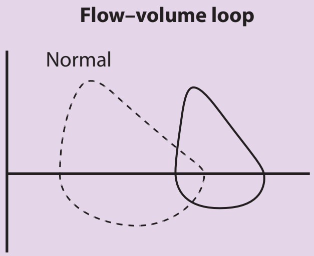
Intra-parenchymal
FVC↓ ↓
TLC↓, RV↓
KCO↓

Extra-parenchymal
FVC↓ ↓
TLC↓, RV↓
KCO normal



Causes

Intra-parenchymal
Pulmonary fibrosis
Pulmonary oedema, severe
Pulmonary hypertension

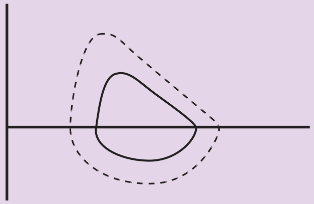


Extra-parenchymal
= expiratory and inspiratory weakness
Neuromuscular:
- High spinal cord injury,
- Guillain–Barré syndrome, motor neurone disease

Pleura:
- Mesothelioma

Chest wall:
- Ankylosing spondylitis, severe kyphosis

Severe obesity



CHEST X-RAY PATTERNS

Reticulo-nodular shadowing

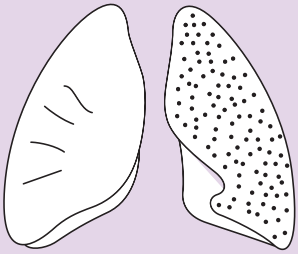
F.I.N.E. *shadows*

Fibrosis:
- Upper zones: Pneumoconioses, extrinsic allergic alveolitis seronegative arthropathies, TB, aspergillosis
- Mid zones: Sarcoid
- Lower zones: SLE, CFA, asbestosis, radiotherapy, drugs

Infection:
- Atypical pneumonia: Psittacosis, Q-fever
- Viral, VZV pneumonitis (nodular)

Neoplasia:
- Lymphangitis carcinomatosis (reticular)
- Thyroid carcinoma (follicular) ('snowstorm' appearance)
- Other: Renal cell, melanoma, lymphoma (nodular)

O**E**dema:
- Pulmonary oedema: Kerley B-lines (horizontal, peripheral)
- Long-standing pulmo. oedema/haemosiderosis (nodular)



Reticular or linear

Miliary nodules (< 2 mm)

Coin lesions, cavities

F.A.N.G.S.

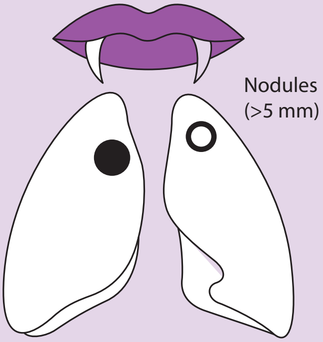
Fibrosis:
- Upper zones: Pneumoconioses (progressive massive fibrosis)
- Lower zones: Rheumatoid arthritis

Abscess:
- Bacterial: Staphylococci, TB, *Klebsiella*
- Mycetoma, *Aspergillus*
- Hydatid cyst; amoebic cyst

Neoplasia:
- 1°, 2°
- Benign: Hamartoma, bronchial cyst

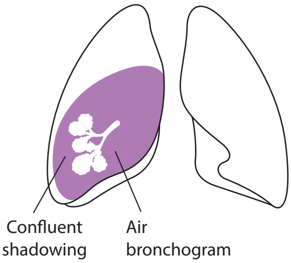
Granulomatous: Rheumatoid arthritis, granulomatosis with polyangiitis

Structural:
- AVM
- Pulmonary infarction
- Traumatic haematoma



Opacification

- Consolidation: Air-space infiltration



Fluid: Oedema 2° to LVF or ARDS
Alveolar proteinosis
Cells: Neutrophils:
  - Pneumonia: Bacterial, viral, TB, PCP
  - Infarction 2° to PE

Eosinophils:
  - Pulmonary eosinophilia, ABPA

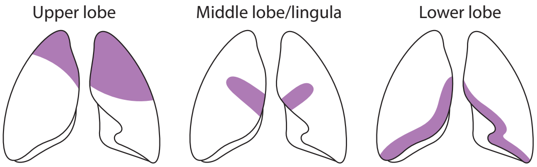
Red blood cells (pulmonary haemorrhage):
  - Goodpasture, granulomatosis with polyangiitis
  - Mitral stenosis, L → R shunt, e.g. VSD
  - Idiopathic pulmonary haemosiderosis

Tumour:
  - Bronchioalveolar cell carcinoma, Kaposi's sarcoma

- Collapse

Lobar
Segmental atelectasis
Surgery: Pneumonectomy, thoracoplasty (for TB)

Patterns observed with lobar collapse:



- Pleural disease

Effusion
Plaques – holly-leaf plaques or linear shadows
Asbestos exposure/mesothelioma (but not asbestosis)
TB
Old haemothorax

Mediastinal mass

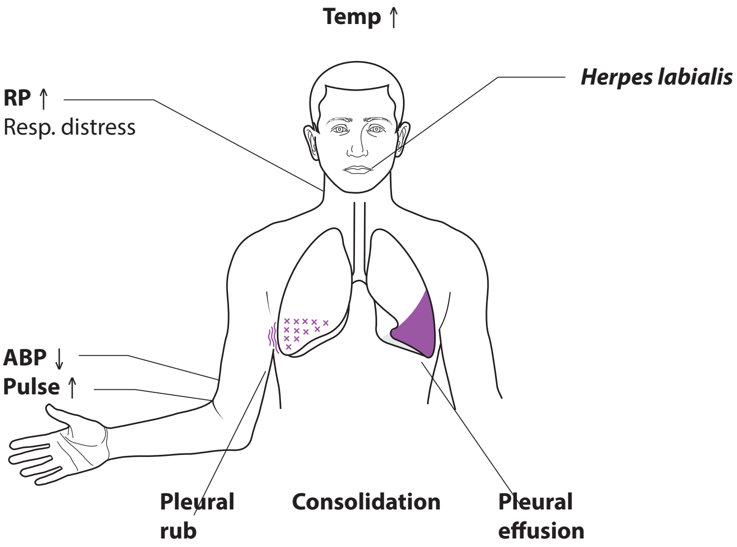
Thyroid (retrosternal goitre)
Thymoma
Teratoma
TB (or sarcoid) lymph nodes
Terrible diagnoses!!!: Lymphoma or aneurysm/dissection!!!

PNEUMONIA – CLINICAL FEATURES

PC

Specific: Pleuritic pain, cough productive of rusty sputum, SOB
Constitutional: Fever, rigors, malaise, myalgia,
D+V (esp. *Legionella*), headaches (esp. *Mycoplasma*) confusion, falls
Other history: PMH – pulmonary disease or immunocompromised
PH: Smoking, pets (psittacosis),
travel (Legionnaire, typhoid, TB)
SH: Job, contacts

O/E


Temp ↑
Herpes labialis
RP ↑
Resp. distress
ABP ↓
Pulse ↑
Pleural rub
Consolidation
Pleural effusion

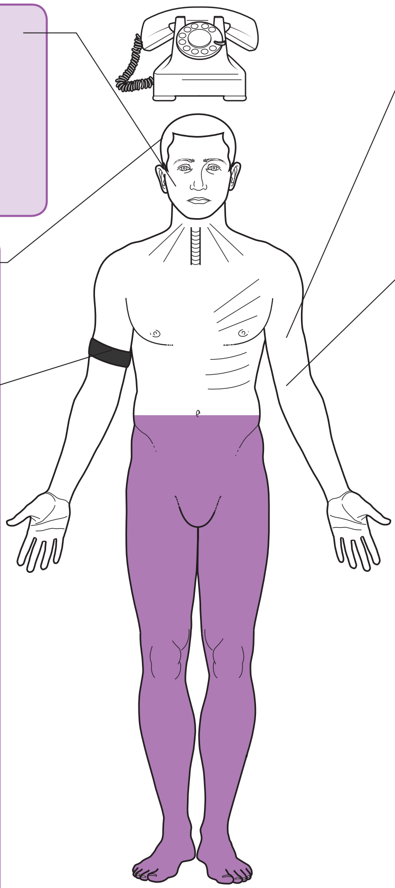
Poor prognostic features

H^2.A.R.M.F.U.L^2.

History: Age >50, comorbidity (e.g. IHD, ca.)
Hypoxia: Sats <92%, PaO_2 <8 kPa on room air
ABP: SBP <90 mmHg, or DBP <60 mmHg
RR: >30/min
Mental confusion
Fluid: Pleural effusion
Urea: >7 mmol/l
Leucocytosis: WCC <4 or >20 x10^9/l
Lobar, multi-, appearance of CXR

Ix and Rx

WARN ITU
if still hypoxic or $PaCo_2$
>6 kPa



A. Assessment

A.B.C.D.

C.O.A.T.
  Cardiac monitor,
  O$_2$ stats, **A**BP, **T**PR

Investigations
  Bloods:
    ABGs:
      PaO_2 – index of severity
      $PaCO_2$ – should be low; if normal or high, suggests fatigue and need for ventilatn
    U&E: Fluid depletion, *Legionella*
    LFT: *Mycoplasma, Legionella*
    FBC: Neutrophilia (not *Mycoplasma*)
    ESR, CRP – allows monitoring
    Clotting, FDP: DIC is complication
    Igs: Is patient immunodeficient?
  Urine:
    Glucose; *Legionella* antigen serology
  Micro:
    Blood cultures
    Serology: *Mycoplasma, Legionella, Chlamydia, Coxiella* (4× ↑ over 10 days)
    HIV
    Sputum: Gram, silver, AAFB stains; ELISA
  Monitor: PEFR, O$_2$
  ECG: AF may occur
  Radiol: CXR
  Special:
    Bronchoscopy – if PCP or carcinoma possible
    Pleural aspirate or biopsy
    Lung biopsy

B. Ventilatory support

Sit patient up (aids respiration)
Oxygen: 35–100% OPD
  ± rebreath bag
Nebulizers if COAD or wheeze
CPAP or intubate

C. Hydration

e.g. N. saline IVI, unless possibility of pulmonary oedema

D. Medication

Antibiotics:
  selected according to likely organism:

C.R.A.N.E.

Community-acquired:
  S. pneumoniae, H. influenzae, Mycoplasma, Legionella
  amoxicillin + erythromycin
Recent- flu:
  Staphylococcus
  above + flucloxacillin
Aspiration possible, e.g. alcoholic:
  Anaerobes, Gram –ves
  cefuroxime + metronidazole
Nosocomial:
  Gram –ves, MRSA
  cefotaxime ± vancomycin (if MRSA possible)
Extra:
  HIV (consider PCP)
    add co-trimoxazole
  TB: Consider R.I.P.E.

Optional

- Analgesics, e.g. NSAID OPD if not asthmatic
- Glucocorticoids if COAD

E. Other

Physiotherapy:
Clear pooled secretions

On discharge

Follow-up

1. Advice on smoking, pets, job
2. Isolate TB until smear –ve
3. Vaccine: *Pneumococcus*, flu – in immunocompromised

ASTHMA – CHRONIC

Def

Episodic, reversible small airways obstruction, due to bronchial hyper-reactivity to various stimuli

Epi

Inc: Children 5%; adults 2%
Age: Peaks at 5 years; most outgrow in adolescence
Sex: M:F =1:1, except under 5, when boys predominate (3:2)
Geo: Western world
Aet: Acute phase (30 min): Mast cell–Ag interaction → histamine → local axon + central reflexes
Late phase (12 h): TH2 cell → interleukins-3,4,5 → mast cells, eosinophils, B cells
Micro: Sputum contains mucus casts, eosinophils, Curschmann spirals, Charcot–Leyden crystals

Causes

All the **As**

Atopy – presents in childhood, hay fever, eczema, asthma, tendency to type 1 reactions
Auto-immune – eosinophilic granulomatosis with polyangiitis (formerly Churg–Strauss)
At the workplace – occupational asthma
Adult onset – unknown pathogenesis, seems to follow respiratory tract infection

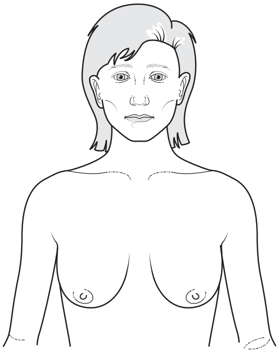
PC

Cough: Often at night, tenacious yellow sputum
Wheeze: Often post-exercise, early morning; relieved by empirical salbutamol Rx
SOB, or 'chest tightness'
+ failure to thrive children

O/E

General: Underweight
(hypermetabolic)

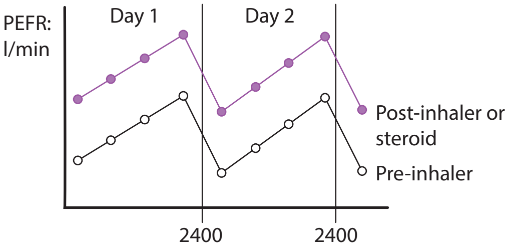
Inspection:
Hyperexpanded
Harrison sulci: Indraw subcostal margins



Auscultation:
Widespread, polyphonic high-pitched wheeze (small-airways obstruction)
Often normal – as characteristically episodic

Ix

Bloods: FBC – eosinophilia; ANCA
Urine: Glucose (if on chronic steroids)
Micro: Sputum – microscopy; serology: *Aspergillus*, *Ascaris*, *Strongyloides*
Monitor: PEFR – varies according to sex, age, height (normal = 300–600 l/min); characteristic daily pattern



- Early morning dips; may be fatal despite normal daytime values
- β2-agonist improves
- 3 weeks prednisolone 30 mg od: Improvement suggests COPD reversibility, and hence utility of steroids

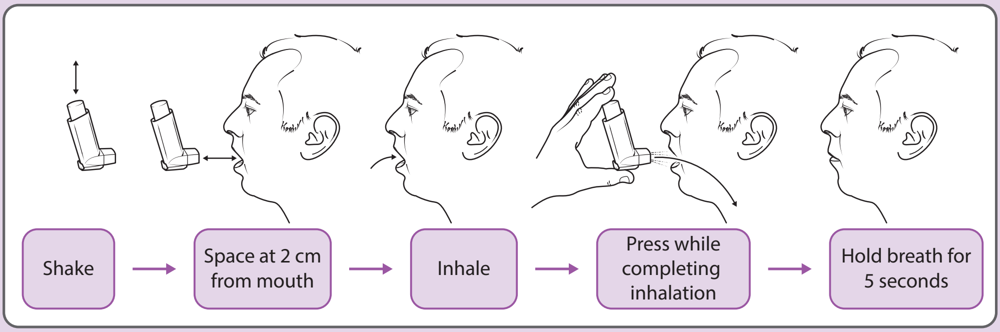
Radiol: CXR – hyperexpanded
Special: Spirometry:

- FEV_1/FVC ↓ (20–40%, cf. 70–80%)
- RV, and TLC↑
- Flow–volume loop – peak flow depressed most at lower lung volumes

ASTHMA MANAGEMENT – GENERAL

Remember to **T.A.M.E.** *your patient . . .*

Technique for inhaler use



Avoidance:

- Allergens: Smoke, carpets, grass in summer
- Prophylactic measures: Dust covers, synthetic pillows

Monitor:

- Peak flow monitor (2–4×/day) on chart → adjust drugs accordingly

Educate:

- Liaise with specialist respiratory nurse and/or district nurse
- Pt. to be able to assess severity based on symptoms and PEFR
- Reinforce need for compliance with Rx

Methods of drug delivery

Inhaler:

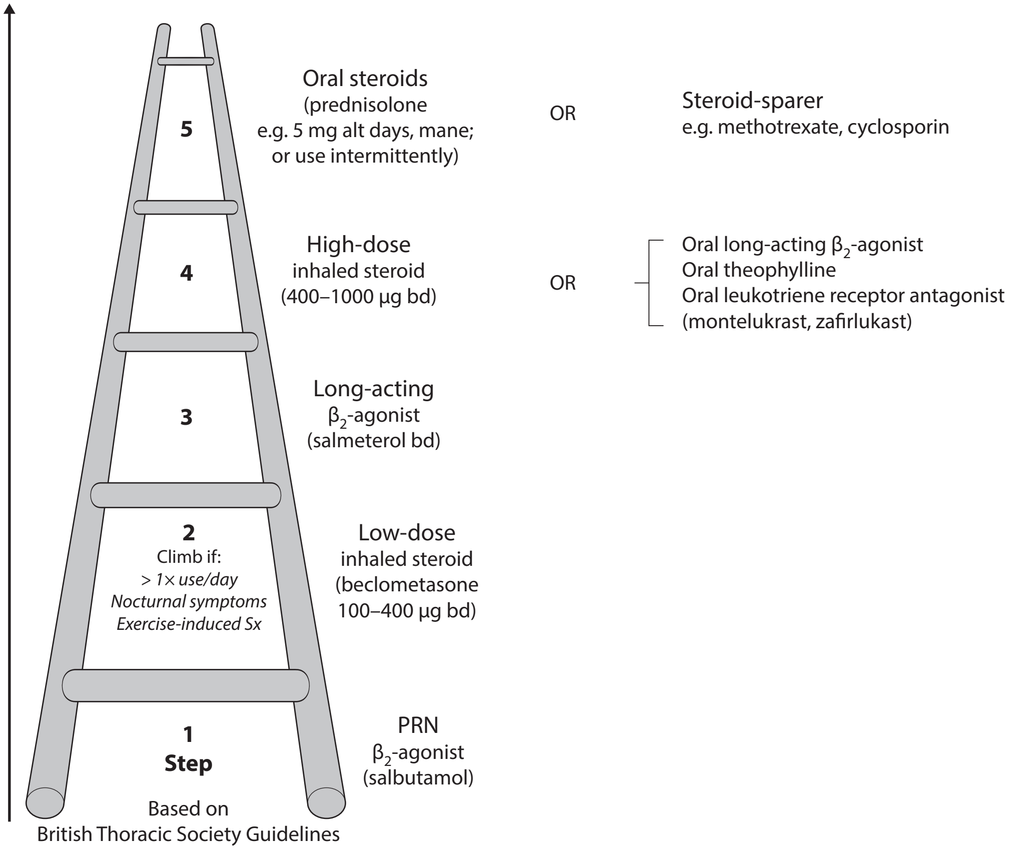
- **Metered-dose inhaler (MDI)**: Needs correct technique
- **Spacer + MDI**: Spacer acts as a short-term reservoir for aerosol, and creates smaller particles for inhalation
  Advantage – better for children or elderly who cannot coordinate technique, and may be administered by carer
- **Breath-activated** depends on pt.'s. effort

Nebulizer:

Mechanism: Finer particle size (3–10 μm) allows tracheobronchial deposition
Advantage: Allows high-dose drug to be administered; coordination not required
Disadvantage:

- Higher doses causes systemic effects
- Expensive + bulky

Drug ladder


5
Oral steroids
(prednisolone
e.g. 5 mg alt days, mane;
or use intermittently)
OR
Steroid-sparer
e.g. methotrexate, cyclosporin
4
High-dose
inhaled steroid
(400–1000 µg bd)
OR
Oral long-acting β_2-agonist
Oral theophylline
Oral leukotriene receptor antagonist
(montelukrast, zafirlukast)
3
Long-acting
β_2-agonist
(salmeterol bd)
2
Climb if:
> 1× use/day
Nocturnal symptoms
Exercise-induced Sx
Low-dose
inhaled steroid
(beclometasone
100–400 µg bd)
1
Step
PRN
β_2-agonist
(salbutamol)
Based on
British Thoracic Society Guidelines

Rules

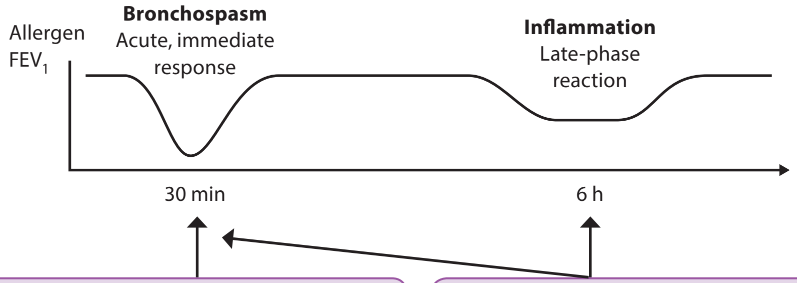
1. Start on step commensurate with present severity
2. Move up and down 1 step at a time
3. Take each lower step medication in addition to medication of new step

ASTHMA MANAGEMENT – DRUGS

Pharmacology

Drugs can be classified depending on when they act:

Early phase:	Bronchodilators	Immediate onset (min)
Early AND late phases:	Prophylactic	Delayed onset (hours – days – weeks)



ß$_2$-Agonists

Short-acting: Salbutamol (inhaler, nebulizer, IV)
Long-acting: Salmeterol (inhaler, PO – bd)

Action: cAMP ↑ + cGMP ↓

Reduces **S.E.E.PA.G.e.**

Smooth muscle: Bronchospasm ↓
Epithelium: Mucociliary clearance ↑
Endothelium: Permeability ↓
PArasympathetic ganglia: Vagal tone ↓
De**G**ranulation of mast cells ↓

Onset = 3, Offset = 5 h

Muscarinic antagonists

Ipratropium bromide (inhaler, nebulizer)

Action: non-selective, but M3 receptor mediates:

Smooth muscle: Bronchospasm ↓
Epithelium: Submucosal gland secretion ↓
Endothelium: Permeability ↓

More effective in COAD than in asthma
Onset = 30 min Offset = 6 h

Steroids/steroid sparers

Inhaled: Beclomethasone (activated in lungs), budesonide, fluticasone
Systemic: Prednisolone PO, hydrocortisone IV
Steroid sparers: Methotrexate, cyclosporin

Action: Blocks early + late phases:

- Early: Histamine, leukotrienes, prostaglandins, PAF (platelet activating factor)
- Late: Interleukins-3,4,5
  Upregulation of ß$_2$-receptors

Onset: 3–7 days

Mast cell stabilizers

Na cromoglycate, Na nedocromil

Action:

- Mast cell stabilizer (not main effect) ⇒ release of preformed cytokines ↓
- Neuronal reflexes (central + axonal) ↓
- Substance P + PAF antagonist

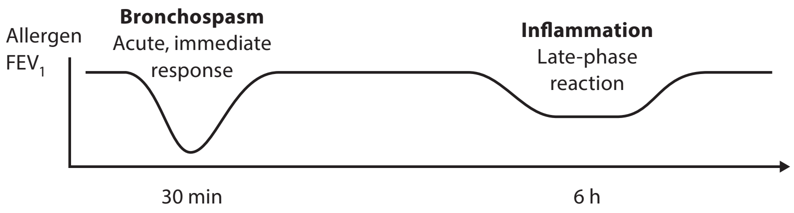
Leukotriene receptor antagonists

Montelukast, zafirlukast

Action:

- Competitive antagonists at cysteinyl-leukotriene receptor (LTC4, D4, E4)
- Effective for NSAID, allergen or exercise-induced asthma

Side-effects



ß$_2$-Agonists

Local:
- Rebound hyper-reactivity
- Tolerance (↓ by steroids)
- Paradoxical bronchospasm
- V/Q mismatch ↑ due to pulmonary vasodilation
- Long-term worsening ↑ (due to ↓ mast cell release of heparin that ↓ late-phase reaction)

Systemic:
- Fine tremor, muscle cramps, anxiety
- Dysrhythmias
- Periph. vasodilation – headache, flushing
- K^+ ↓ (↑ uptake of K^+ into skeletal muscle)

Muscarinic antagonists

Local:
- Glaucoma, diplopia (with face-mask)
- Dry mouth
- Paradoxical bronchospasm

Systemic: Rare, as 4° NH_4^+ compounds, e.g. urinary retention

Steroids

Local:
- Oral candidiasis
- Dysphonia (vocal cord myopathy)

Systemic (high-dose inhaled or oral):
- Osteoporotic-bone change/skin-thinning, bruising
- Growth suppression in children (>400 µg/day)
- Adrenal suppression

Minimize by:
- Titrating dose upwards
- Using inhalers with high 1st-pass metabolism, e.g. budesonide (90%) or fluticasone (99%), esp. in children
- Steroid-sparing agents

Mast cell stabilizers
- Transient bronchospasm – give salbutamol 1st!
- Minor URT irritation/cough
- Hypersensitivity

Leukotriene receptor antagonists
- Dry mouth
- URTI/flu-like symptoms

ACUTE SEVERE ASTHMA

Epi

75% hospitalisations could be avoided in that effective Rx should have begun 48 hours earlier

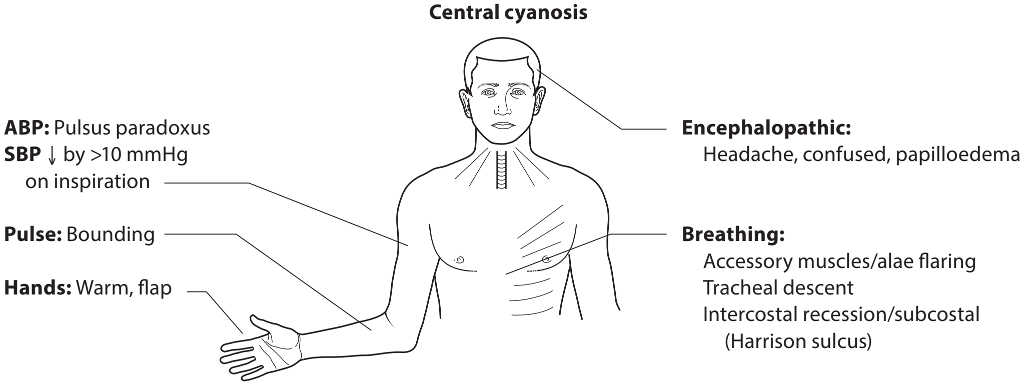
At-risk groups

R.A.M^3.P^5.

Recent deterioration: Noctural symptoms, diurnal lability, ↓ PEFR
Allergen exposure: Pollen (e.g. summer, holiday), storm, evening
Misjudged perception of severity; **M**eter use inadequate (PEFR); **M**iserly use of systemic steroids
Personal characteristics: **P**revious recent attacks, **P**sychiatric, **P**oor, **P**uberty

PC

- Respiratory distress


Central cyanosis
ABP: Pulsus paradoxus
SBP ↓ by >10 mmHg
on inspiration
Pulse: Bounding
Hands: Warm, flap
Encephalopathic:
Headache, confused, papilloedema
Breathing:
Accessory muscles/alae flaring
Tracheal descent
Intercostal recession/subcostal
(Harrison sulcus)

- Specific markers of severity

	Severe	**Life-threatening**
Airway	PEFR <50%	PEFR <33%
Breathing	RR ≥25	Resp. effort ↓, silent chest, central cyanosis
Circulation	Pulse >110	Pulse <60, hypotension
Disability	Can't complete sentence in 1 breath	Exhaustion/confusion/coma
Exchange, gas		$PaCO_2$ normal or ↑ (>5.0 kPa) PaO_2 ↓(<8.0 kPa) pH ↓ (<7.36)

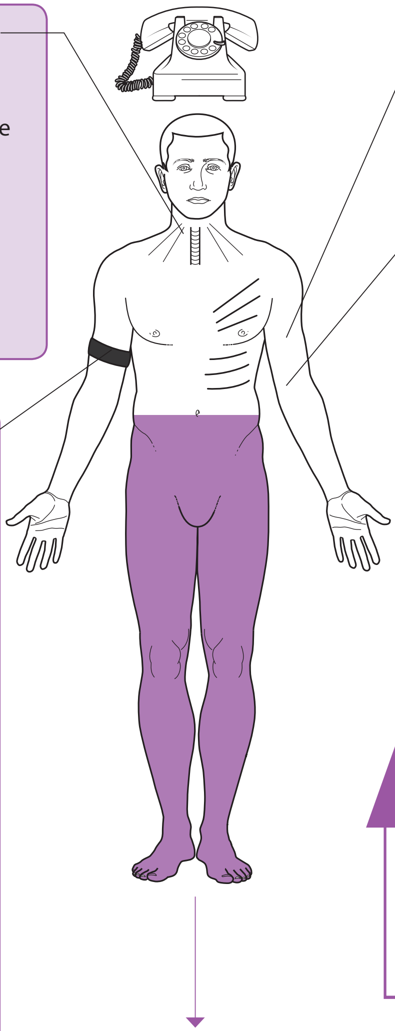
- Complications

Lung:
- Collapse: Segmental/lobar
- Pneumothorax/pneumomediastinum
- Pulmonary oedema

Heart:
- Dysrhythmia (esp. due to O_2 ↓ and K^+, exacerbated by salbutamol)
- Myocardial infarction

Ix and Rx

WARN ITU
if any life-threatening
features



B. Ventilatory support

Sit patient up (aids respiration)
Oxygen: 60%,
  unless Type II respiratory failure
Nebulizers:
  Salbutamol (5–10 mg) +
  Ipratropium bromide (0.5 mg):
  every 4 hours, or every
  15–30 min if Sx persist
CPAP, nasal IPPV,
  intubate/IPPV → ITU

A. Assessment

A.B.C.D.

C.O.A.T.

- **C**ardiac monitor
- **O**$_2$
- **A**BP
- **T**PR

Investigations

- **B**loods:
  - U&E: K$^+$ ↓
  - FBC: WBC, Hb
  - ABGs:
    - PaCO$_2$
      - ↓ : Early
      - Normal or ↑ : Late
- **U**rine:
  - Glucose
- **M**icro:
  - Blood cultures; serology
- **M**onitor:
  - PEFR
- **E**CG
- **R**adiol:
  - CXR

C. Hydration

e.g. N. saline IVI, unless possibility of pulmonary oedema

D. Medication

Glucocorticoid:
  IV hydrocortisone,
  PO prednisolone
  30–60 mg/day
IV magnesium
  if not responding to nebs
Consider IV salbutamol

Optional

Antibiotics, e.g. augmentin,
  erythromycin

DISCHARGE when:

- No nocturnal Sx
- Morning PEFR >75% expected
- Diurnal variation <25%

Other

Physiotherapy
Education via respiratory nurse:

- Inhaler technique
- PEFR monitor
- Compliance, esp. to steroid inhaler

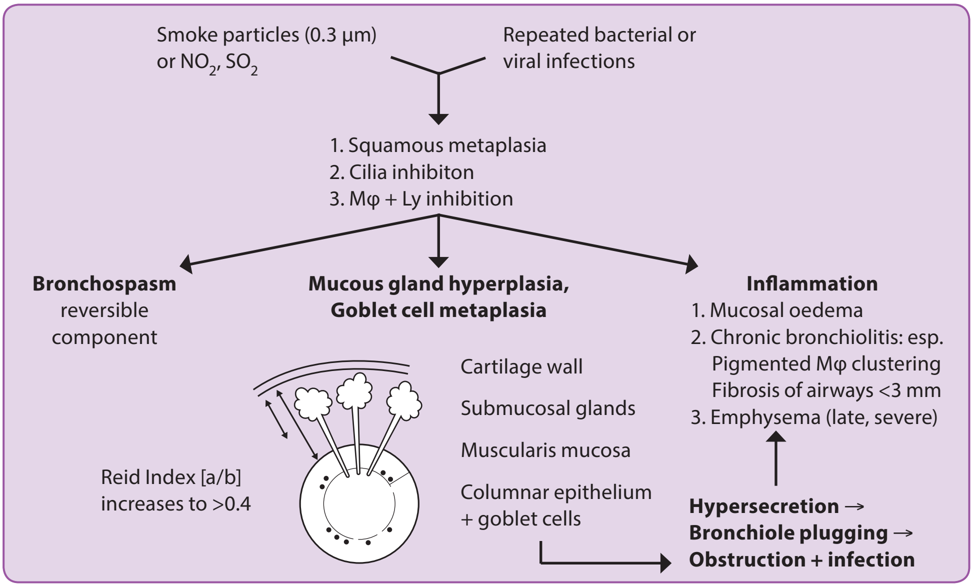
COPD

Def

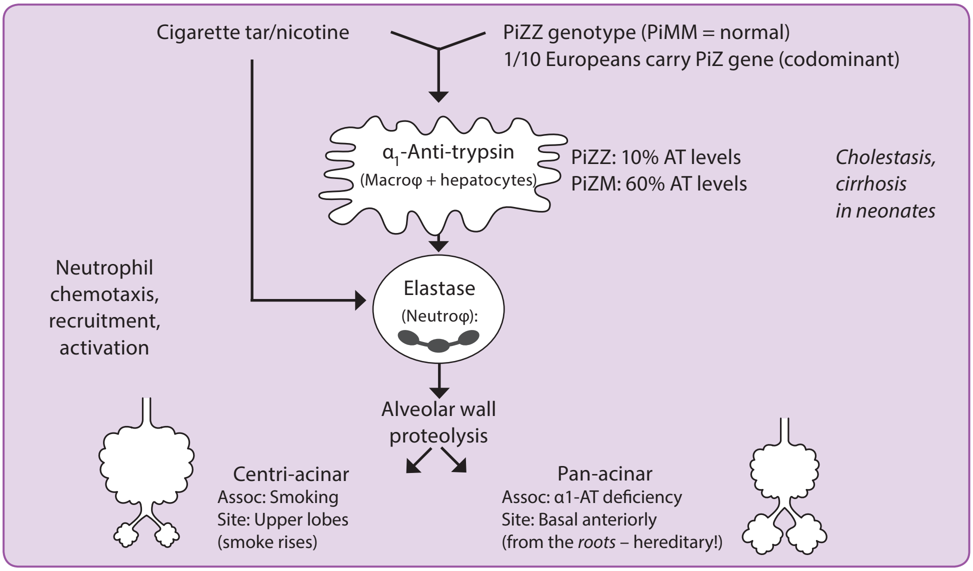
Chronic and irreversible small away obstruction with:
Mucus production and inflammation (chronic bronchitis)
+
Permanent enlargement of air spaces distal to terminal bronchiole, and alveolar wall destruction (emphysema)

Aet:

Chronic bronchitis


Smoke particles (0.3 μm) or NO_2, SO_2
Repeated bacterial or viral infections
1. Squamous metaplasia
2. Cilia inhibiton
3. Mφ + Ly inhibition
Bronchospasm reversible component
Mucous gland hyperplasia, Goblet cell metaplasia
Inflammation
1. Mucosal oedema
2. Chronic bronchiolitis: esp. Pigmented Mφ clustering Fibrosis of airways <3 mm
3. Emphysema (late, severe)
Cartilage wall
Submucosal glands
Muscularis mucosa
Columnar epithelium + goblet cells
Reid Index [a/b] increases to >0.4
Hypersecretion → Bronchiole plugging → Obstruction + infection

Emphysema


Cigarette tar/nicotine
PiZZ genotype (PiMM = normal)
1/10 Europeans carry PiZ gene (codominant)
α_1-Anti-trypsin
(Macroφ + hepatocytes)
PiZZ: 10% AT levels
PiZM: 60% AT levels
Cholestasis, cirrhosis in neonates
Neutrophil chemotaxis, recruitment, activation
Elastase
(Neutroφ):
Alveolar wall proteolysis
Centri-acinar
Assoc: Smoking
Site: Upper lobes
(smoke rises)
Pan-acinar
Assoc: α1-AT deficiency
Site: Basal anteriorly
(from the *roots* – hereditary!)

PC

Chronic cough
Exertional dyspnoea
Wheeze
Regular chest infections
Regular sputum production

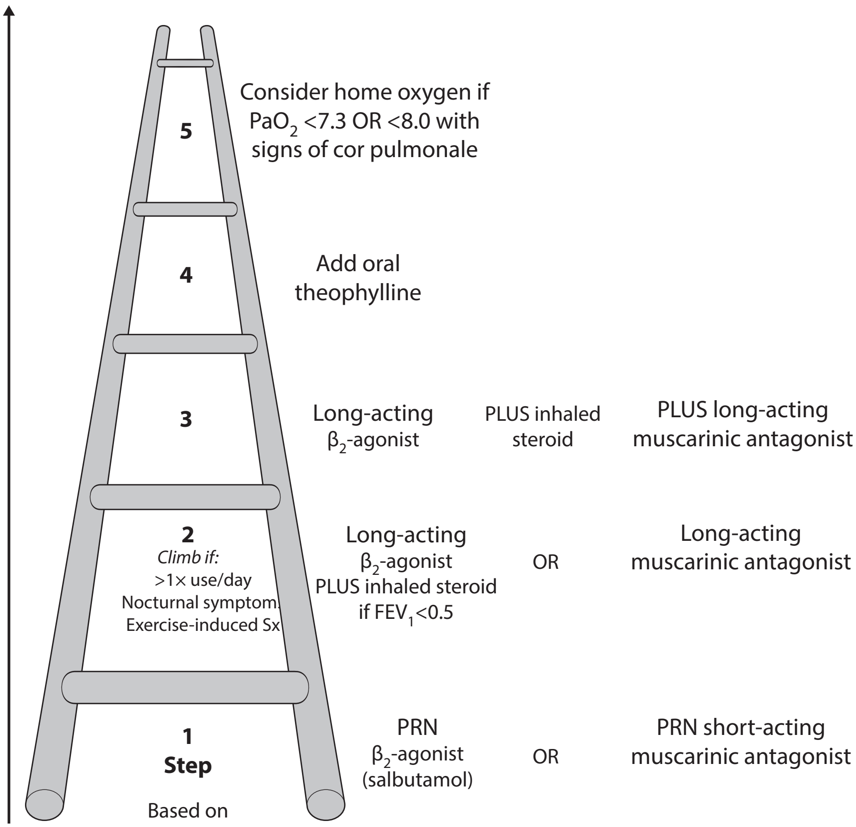
Ix

Radiol:
  CXR: Hyperexpanded lungs
  HRCT: Bullous disease (emphysema)
Special:
  Spirometry: Obstructive defect (FEV1/FVC < 0.7)
    FEV1 correlates with severity

Rx

STOP SMOKING!

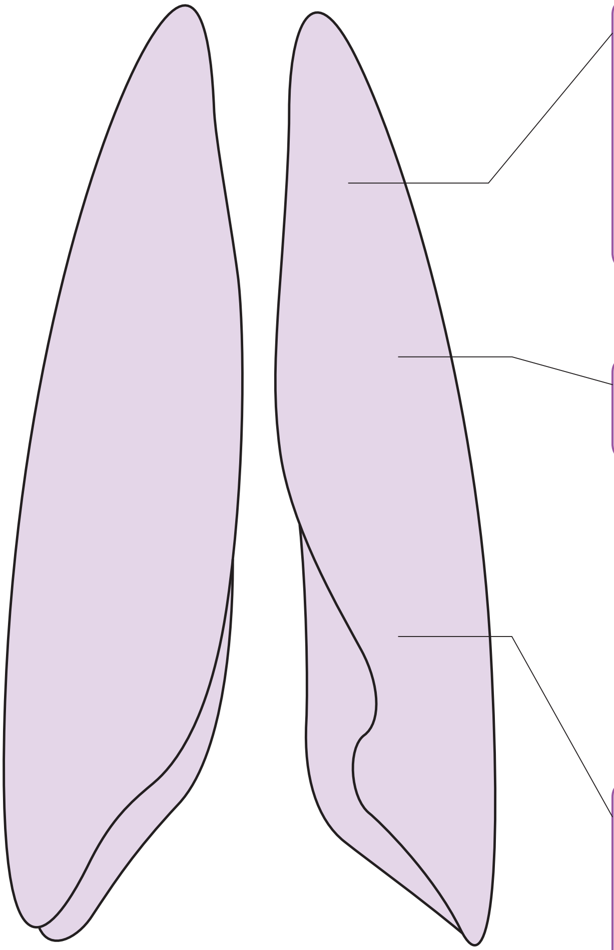
Regular influenza and pneumococcal vaccination
Pulmonary rehabilitation
Surgical: Lung volume reduction
  lung transplant


5
Consider home oxygen if PaO_2 <7.3 OR <8.0 with signs of cor pulmonale
4
Add oral theophylline
3
Long-acting β_2-agonist
PLUS inhaled steroid
PLUS long-acting muscarinic antagonist
2
Climb if:
>1× use/day
Nocturnal symptom
Exercise-induced Sx
Long-acting β_2-agonist PLUS inhaled steroid if FEV_1<0.5
OR
Long-acting muscarinic antagonist
1
Step
PRN β_2-agonist (salbutamol)
OR
PRN short-acting muscarinic antagonist

Based on
British Thoracic Society Guidelines

PULMONARY FIBROSIS

Causes



P.R.A.T.S.

UPPER ZONE

Hypersensitivity
Pneumonitis
Radiation
Ankylosing spondylitis
TB
Sarcoidosis

MIDDLE ZONE

Sarcoidosis

R.A.I.D.

LOWER ZONE

Rheumatoid arthritis and scleroderma
Asbestosis
Idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis
Drugs, e.g. amiodarone, methotrexate, nitrofurantoin, bleomycin

IDIOPATHIC PULMONARY FIBROSIS

= Usual interstitial pneumonitis (UIP)

PATH

Leaky alveolar-capillary membrane → macrophage and neutrophil infiltrate
Antibodies to unknown antigen, e.g. viral
Macrophage–T-cell interaction → IL-8, LT-B4, TNF → fibrosis and lung destruction

Epi

Age: Middle age
Sex: M:F = 2:1
Assoc.: Autoimmune disease in 1/3

HPC

PC

Constitutional: Malaise/weight loss/ arthralgia
Cough (dry)/Progressive SOBOE (acute form = Hamman–Rich syndrome)

O/E

Cyanosed
Clubbed
Creps: Basal, fine end-inspiratory; best heard in axillae, patient lying on side

COMPS

Carcinoma, lung: 15%

Ix

Bloods: ESR, immunoglobulins ↑
AutoAbs, e.g. ANA, RhF in 35%
ABG: ↓ O2, ↓ CO_2
Radiol: CXR: Bilateral basal; diffuse reticulonodular shadowing: ‘honeycombing’
High-resolution CT: Cystic spaces
Special: Spirometry: Restrictive picture with ↓ KCO
BAL: Neutrophils + eosinophils (if lymphocytes, then suggests Rx-responsive)

Rx

Perfenidone
Nintedanib
Lung transplant

MAY SLOW DISEASE PROGRESSION ONLY

Prog

5-year SR = 50%; highly variable: 65% if steroid-responsive (1/3); 25% if steroid-unresponsive (2/3)
Life expectancy: 1–20 years

OCCUPATIONAL LUNG DISEASES

Pneumoconioses

PATH

Inhaled inorganic dust is phagocytosed by alveolar macrophages, resulting in:

- Disruption of lysosomal membranes and release of proteolytic enzymes, e.g. elastase
- Impaired immunity (also caused by defective ciliary flow)

Epi

Coal worker's pneumoconiosis (dust = coal + kaolin + mica + silica; anthracite mine dust is more antigenic): 2% miners in resource-poor countries (rare where precautions heeded)

Silicosis: Seen in other types of miners, quarryworkers, sandblasters, pottery man

Asbestosis: Shipworkers; demolition or boilers; pipe-laggers; sputum reveals 'asbestos bodies' in macrophages

HPC

Acute (uncommon – usually silicosis or talcosis):

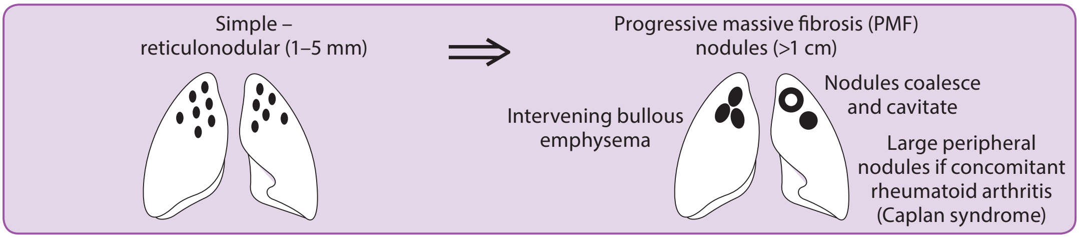
- Rapidly progressive SOB
- Respiratory failure
- Fever

Chronic (common):

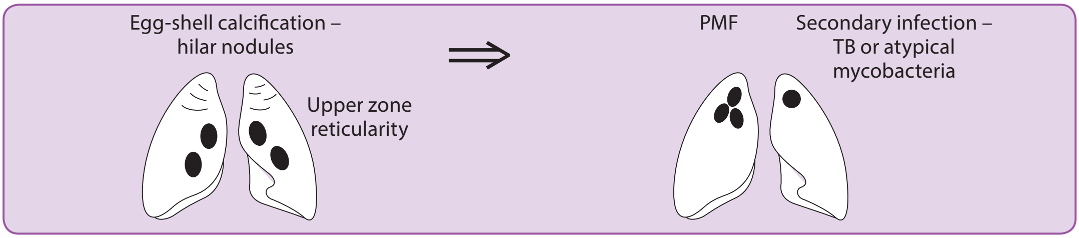
- Slowly progressive SOB
- Cough (haem- or melanoptysis)
- Cyanosis, Clubbing, Crepitations

CXR

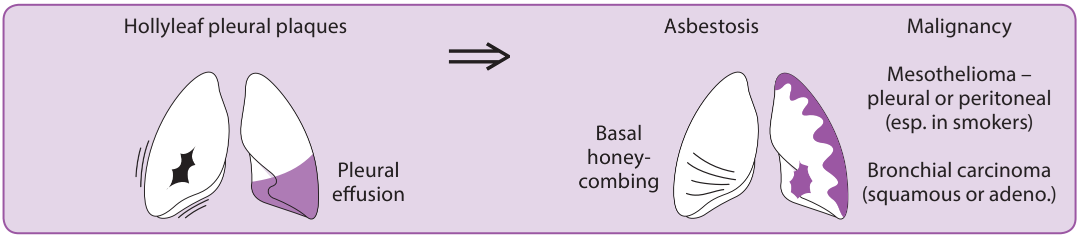
Coal worker's pneumoconiosis


Simple – reticulonodular (1–5 mm)
⇒
Progressive massive fibrosis (PMF) nodules (>1 cm)
Intervening bullous emphysema
Nodules coalesce and cavitate
Large peripheral nodules if concomitant rheumatoid arthritis (Caplan syndrome)

Silicosis


Egg-shell calcification – hilar nodules
Upper zone reticularity
⇒
PMF
Secondary infection – TB or atypical mycobacteria

Asbestos exposure


Hollyleaf pleural plaques
Pleural effusion
⇒
Asbestosis
Basal honey-combing
Malignancy
Mesothelioma – pleural or peritoneal (esp. in smokers)
Bronchial carcinoma (squamous or adeno.)

Hypersensitivity pneumonitis

PATH

Inhaled organic dusts result in acute or chronic alveolar sensitisation to particular antigen:

- Acute: Type III hypersensitivity reaction (starts 4–8 hours post-exposure; lasts 1–2 days)
- Chronic: Type IV hypersensitivity reaction, with granulomas (starts after 5–20 years)

Epi

Farmer's lung: Antigen = *Actinomycetes* spores (thermophilic filamentous bacteria), found in moist hay; worsens in winter (hay is moved); improves with smoking!

Bird fancier's lung: Antigen = serum proteins in bird droppings or feathers

Byssiniosis: Antigen = cotton dust, flax, hemp; worst on 1st day of week, and improves as week progresses; worsens with smoking

Other: Baggasosis (sugar); mushroom-worker's; grain-worker's; ventilator's lung

HPC

Acute:

- Flu-like (fever, myalgia)
- Cough (dry)
- SOB

Chronic:

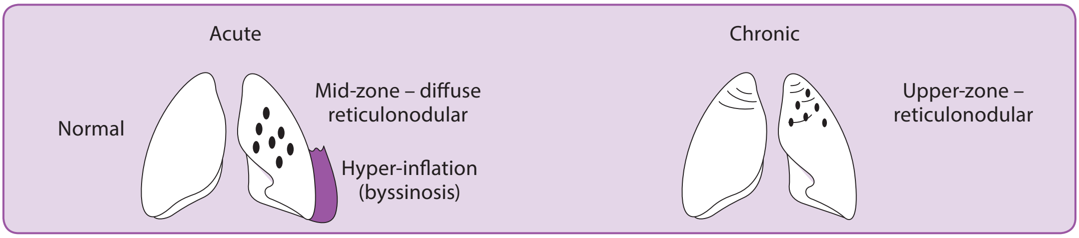
- Constitutional (malaise, LOW)
- Cough (dry)
- SOB
- Fine creps or squeaks (NB: No wheeze!)

Ix

Bloods: Neutrophilia (NB: Eosinophils normal)
ESR ↑

Micro: Serum precipitins farmer's lung (ELISA): 80% sensitivity + 80% specificity

Radiol: CXR:


Acute
Chronic
Normal
Mid-zone – diffuse reticulonodular
Hyper-inflation (byssinosis)
Upper-zone – reticulonodular

Special: Spirometry: Restrictive/obstructive picture, ↓ KCO
BAL: Lymphocytes + mast cells
Intradermal skin test (6 hours)

Rx

Avoidance
Prednisolone – acutely/long-term
Lung transplant

SARCOIDOSIS

PC

Characterized by **G.R.A.N.U.L.O.M.A.S.**

General

Fever (Löfgren syndrome = acute fever + arthralgia + cough + erythema nodosum)
Anorexia: Weight loss, fatigue
Lymphadenopathy, hepatosplenomegaly

Respiratory

Upper tract: Otitis, sinusitis, rhinitis, laryngitis
Lower tract:

- Bihilar lymphadenopathy (BHL): CXR = egg-shell calcification (stage 1)
- Parenchymal infiltration: Diffuse, miliary nodules (stage 2)
- Fibrosis: Apical and perihilar linear streaks (stage 3)
- Complications: Cavitation ± mycetoma; collapse 2° to bronchial obstruction

Arthralgia

Painful joints more common than arthritis
Dactylitis, bony cysts, tufting + sclerosis of terminal phalanges
Soft tissue calcinosis

Neurological

Brain:

- Diffuse, meningeal thickening: Dementia, meningo-encephalitis
- Focal granulomas: Seizures, focal signs, hydrocephalus

Cord: Transverse myelitis
Peripheral and cranial neuropathy, e.g. bilateral VII cranial nerve palsy
Myopathy

Urine

Polyuria, polydipsia (diabetes insipidus): Due to neurohypophysis and tubular disease
Renal stones, nephrocalcinosis: Due to hypercalcaemia: due to 1α-hydroxylase activity in lung lesions; worse in summer when light causes vitamin D synthesis
Interstitial nephritis: Due to hypercalcaemia and renal infiltration (tubulointerstitial nephritis + glomerulonephritis)

Liver

Causes cholestatic LFTs, but only rarely liver failure or cirrhosis

Ophthalmological

Lacrimal: Xerophthalmia, Mikulicz syndrome – enlarged lacrimal + 3 salivary glands; 'uveoparotid fever' (Heerfordt syn.)= acute fever + Mikuliczs syn. + uveitis + Bell's palsy
Anterior: Conjunctivitis (incl. due to sicca), band keratopathy, cataract, anterior uveitis, glaucoma
Posterior: Posterior uveitis – perivascular cuffing of equatorial veins, optic atrophy

Myocardial

Restrictive cardiomyopathy, 2° to myocardial granulomas + fibrosis → 3° heart block/VT
Pericardial effusion

Amenorrhoea etc: Hypopituitarism

Skin

Lupus pernio: Raised, dusky-purple plaque on nose, cheeks, fingers
Boeck sarcoid: Purple-red nodules on face, back, extensor surfaces
Scar infiltration
Erythema nodosum: Painful, erythematous nodules on legs, forearms

Epi

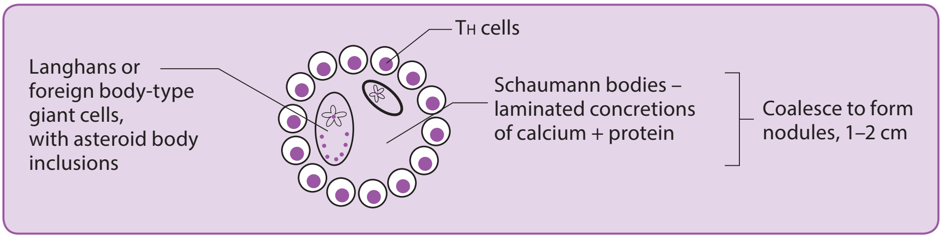
Inc: 10/100,000 pa
Age: Peaks in 20s–30s, but can occur at any age
Sex: F>M
Geo: Afro-Caribbeans have 10× higher incidence, and have more severe disease
Chinese: Rarely occurs
Aet: Immune:
- T-cell function impaired, although CD4 T cells, activated macrophages and soluble IL-2R levels ↑
- B-cell function ↑: Hypergammaglobulinaemia

Infection: Unidentified mycobacteria? since similar immune response (granulomas, ↑ T cells) and PCR +ve in some cases

Ix

Bloods: Serum ACE↑ (+ve in 75%; false +ves = atypical mycobacteria; leprosy; Gaucher)
Other: Ig ↑, ESR ↑, Ca^{2+}↑
Urine: Ca^{2+}↑
Radiol: CXR: 'Bihilar lymphadenopathy, apical fibrosis'
Gallium scan:
- Taken up by activated macrophages in granuloma
- 'Panda appearance' due to uptake in salivary + lacrimal glands
- Can be used to monitor disease activity

Special: Tuberculin skin test: –ve in sarcoid (cf. TB = +ve)
Kveim test: Intradermal injection of sarcoid-spleen suspension → skin biopsy at 6 weeks shows granulomas
Lung function tests: KCO ↓ (1st sign of parenchymal disease); restrictive picture (FVC ↓, FEV_1/FVC norm or ↑)


TH cells
Langhans or foreign body-type giant cells, with asteroid body inclusions
Schaumann bodies – laminated concretions of calcium + protein
Coalesce to form nodules, 1–2 cm

Rx

Serum **A.C.E.**
Steroids: Prednisolone, 3 month course
Indications: Respiratory, cardiac, ophthalmic, neurological, renal disease, hypercalcaemia
Azathioprine/methotrexate/hydroxychloroquine: Act as steroid sparers/maintenance therapy
- Need to check FBC (Aza, MTX) + LFT (MTX)
- Need to check central visual field (Amsler eye test)

Calcium reduction: see p. 389
Eye drops: Cyclopentolate: mAch receptor inhibitor
Fluorometholone: Steroid with least tendency to ↑ intraocular pressure

Prog

70% recover within 1–2 years, esp. acute presentation, e.g. Lofgren syndrome, young, Caucasian
25% relapses or chronic disease: More likely if insidious onset, e.g. lupus pernio, chronic uveitis, middle aged, black ethnicity
5% death due to complications

BRONCHIECTASIS

Causes

B.R.O.N.C.H.I.E.C.T.A.T.I.C.

Bronchial asthma
Rheumatoid arthritis
Obstruction of airways, due to inhaled foreign body or bronchial tumour
Yellow **N**ail syndrome: Rare disease comprising bronchiectasis, lymphoedema, pleural effusions and yellow nail dystrophy
Cystic fibrosis
Hypogammaglobulinaemia and other congenital immunodeficiency disorders (recurrent childhood lung infections)
Idiopathic
Eponymous syndromes
  Kartagener syndrome: Primary ciliary dysmotility, autosomal recessive
  William Campbell syndrome: Congenital bronchiomalacia
  Young syndrome: Viscous sputum, bronchiectasis, sinusitis and subfertility
Chronic gastric reflux
TB
Allergic broncho-pulmonary aspergillosis (ABPA): Hypersensitivity inflammatory response to inhaled aspergillus, most common in patients with asthma or CF
Traction bronchiectasis: Distortion of lung architecture due to severe COPD or fibrosis
Infections, repeated
Crohn and UC: Mechanism unknown and association is contentious

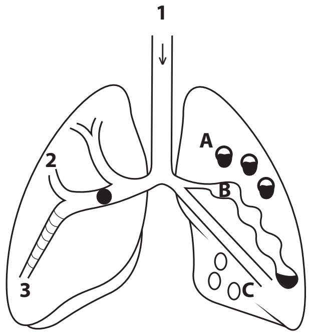
1. Chronic infection – Inhalation
Bacterial: **S.T.I.N.K.** (see p. 82)
Viral (measles, flu); pertussis
Aspergillosis (ABPA)
Toxic gas inhalation

2. Bronchial obstruction
Foreign body
Tumour (esp. carcinoid); lymph node, e.g. sarcoid
Congenital, e.g. pulmonary sequestration

3. Host defences ↓
Secretions:
- Cystic fibrosis: ↑ viscosity → bronchial clogging
- Yellow nail syndrome: ↓ lymphatic drainage

Structural:
- Kartagener syndrome: Ciliary dyskinesia
  PC: Sinusitis. male infertility, dextrocardia
- Marfan syndrome: ↓ bronchial elasticity

Immune:
- Hypogammaglobulinaemia, HIV



Pathology
A. Cystic: Blind-ending saccules with fluid levels
B. Varicose: Irregular beading
C. Cylindrical: 'Tram-tracks'

Complications
- Abscess
- Emphysema – fibrosis
- Amyloidosis

PC

Cough: Haemoptysis
Chest pain: Pleuritic
Systemic: Fever, weight loss

Ix

Bloods: Inflammatory markers, CF genetic testing, rheumatoid factor/CCP
Micro: Sputum culture including for TB
Radiol: CXR: 'Tram-tracks', cystic cavities
CT: 'Signet-ring sign' = large bronchiole + paired vascular bundle
Special: Bronchoalveolar lavage for culture

O/E

Inspection: Cyanosed, clubbed, cachectic
Auscultation: Creps – coarse, clicks – inspiratory, Wheeze
Sputum: Copious, purulent, bloody (cf. IPF – dry)

Rx

Physiotherapy: Chest wall percussion with head-down postural drainage

O_2, long-term – to prevent cor pulmonale

Medical:

- Bronchodilators
- Mucolytics (DNase) – degrade DNA released from neutrophils
- Daily prophylactic antibiotics, e.g. azithromycin 3 times/week or daily colomycin nebs

Surgical:

- Resection
- Artery embolisation (for hemoptysis)
- Lung transplant

LUNG ABSCESS

Causes

Sputum tends to **S.T.I.N.K.** *(due to anaerobes)*

1. Infection

_S__taphylococcus aureus_

Risk:

- Post-pneumonia, e.g. post-influenza
- Haematogenous, e.g. IVDU, CVP line

TB

Upper zone ± 2ndary *Aspergillus* infection

Intestinal bacteria

Organisms:

- Anaerobes: *Bacteroides, Actinomyces*
- Coliforms
- *Enterococcus*

Risk:

- Dental caries, pharyngeal abscess
- Aspiration pneumonia
- Liver abscess via diaphragm:

Strep. ml7/eri (anaerobic), *Entamoeba*

_N__ocardia_

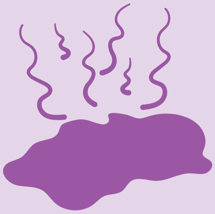
_K__lebsiella_

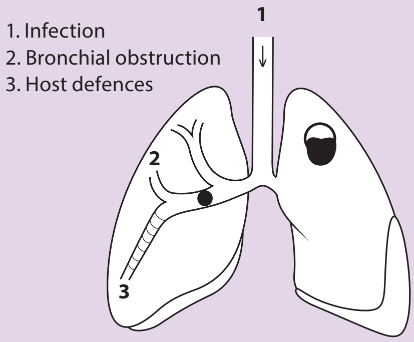
2. Bronchial obstruction

Due to FB, tumour, lymph node
– mixed organisms

3. Host defences ↓

AIDS, leukaemia,
chronic granulomatous disease





1. Infection
2. Bronchial obstruction
3. Host defences

Location

Usually on R side, as R bronchus is shorter + more vertical

(in the supine pt. abscess develops in apical lower lobe or posterior upper lobe)

Complications

- **Empyema**
  If abscess progresses into interlobar fissures + pleural spaces
- **Broncho-pleural fistula**:
  Causes pyo-pneumothorax

PC

As for bronchiectasis

O/E

As for bronchiectasis +
Amphoric breathing = breath sound, like blowing over a jar, suggests air–fluid level

Ix

Micro: Culture – sputum, blood, bronchoalveolar lavage

Radiol: CXR (AP & lateral): cavity ± fluid-level
CT

Rx

Physiotherapy

Medical: IV antibiotics

Surgical:

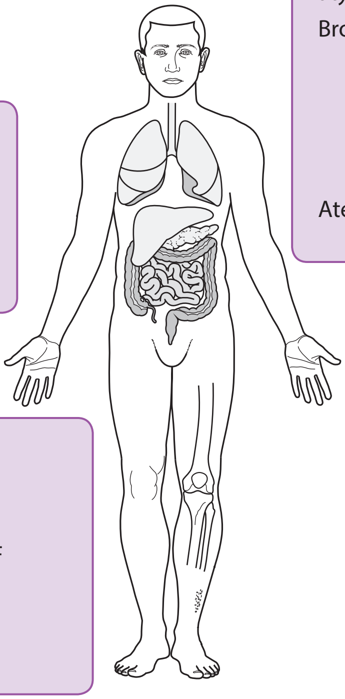
- Bronchoscopy: Repeated bronchoalveolar lavage
- Resection

CYSTIC FIBROSIS

Def

Commonest autosomal recessive disease among Caucasians, caused by defective epithelial chloride channel (CFTR), resulting in excessively concentrated epithelial secretions

PC



Nose – Sinuses
Nasal polyps
Chronic sinusitis

Lungs
Recurrent pneumonia: *Staph. aureus*, HiB, *Pseudomonas*, *Burkholderia*, aspergillosis, atypical mycobacteria/*E. coli*

Bronchiectasis (asthma-like):
  PC: Haemoptysis – 50%
  O/E: Clubbing, HPOA
    Wheeze/creps
    ☠: Abscess, fibrosis, emphysema, amyloidosis

Atelectasis: Mucus plugging

Liver
Portal hypertension due to:

- Periportal fibrosis (CAH)
- Focal biliary cirrhosis

Gallstones

Pancreas
Malabsorption (exocrine):

- Diarrhoea
- Weight loss

Diabetes mellitus (endocrine): 30%

Bowel
Meconium ileus in infants

Meconium ileus equivalent
  PC: Painful mass in RIF
    Obstruction
    Intussusception

Rectal prolapse in children

Other
Osteoporosis
Arthropathy
Rash, vasculitic

Sexual organs
Male infertility:

- Hypogonadism
- Azoospermia
- Vas deferens maldevelopment

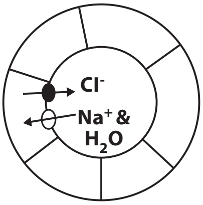
Female infertility: Cervical mucus thickening

Hazardous pregnancy

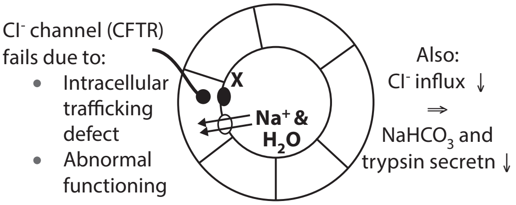
Epi

Inc: Carrier = 1/25; disease = 1/2500 (in Caucasians)
Age: Neonatal presentation: Meconium ileus; Guthrie heel-prick (serum trypsin ↑
Childhood presentation: Failure to thrive; asthma; diarrhoea
Sex: M:F =1:1
Geo: Caucasians predominantly
Aet: Law of **7s**:
Chromosome **7p**
70%: ΔF508 = Phenylalanine substitution or deletion
>**70** mmol/l: NaCl concentration in sweat test
Micro:

Normal epithelial lumen, e.g. pancreas, bronchus



Cystic fibrosis


Cl^- channel (CFTR) fails due to:
Intracellular trafficking defect
Abnormal functioning
X
Na^+ & H_2O
Also:
Cl^- influx ↓
⇒
$NaHCO_3$ and trypsin secretn ↓

Ix

Sweat test: NaCl >70 mmol/l (adults >90); fludrocortisone ↑ sensitivity
Nasal transepithelial potential difference more negative than normal
Faecal elastase ↑

Rx

Lungs

Conservative: Physiotherapy (postural drainage), O_2, vaccinate

Medical:
- Mucolytic: DNase
- Bronchodilators, incl. aminophylline; steroids for COPD
- Antibiotics, e.g. flucloxacillin, piperacillin, gentamicin, ceftazidime, ciprofloxacin

Surgical: Lung transplantation

Liver
- Ursodeoxycholic acid
- Injection sclerotherapy
- Liver transplant

Bowel: Surgery

Pancreas
- Oral pancreatin
- Insulin

Other
- Genetic counselling (screen family with gene probes)
- Chorionic villous sampling for prenatal Dx, at 9–12 weeks
- DEXA scan for osteoporosis; Rx with bisphosphonates

PNEUMOTHORAX

Def

Accumulation of air in pleural space, with secondary partial collapse of lung

Types

Primary – in a normal lung
Secondary – due to lung pathology, e.g. COPD, asthma

Either type may be under **tension** = air moves in, but not out, due to fistula or defect acting as one-way valve

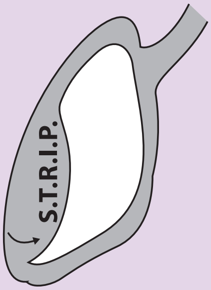
Causes

S.T.R.I.P.

Spontaneous, associated with
  Smoking
  Structural:
- Congenital, apical bleb ruptures
- Young, thin men (M:F=6:1), esp. Marfan syndrome; recurrence common (unilateral): 25% if had one; 50% if had two

Trauma: Blunt (e.g. CPR) or penetrating (e.g. stab wound)
Ruptured oesophagus: Boerhaave syndrome (severe vomiting causing rupture) → hydropneumothorax
Iatrogenic: CVP line, esp. subclavian; positive-pressure ventilation; bronchoscopy, esp. with biopsy
Pulmonary disease
  Diffuse:
- Obstructive: Asthma, emphysema, bronchiectasis
- Restrictive: Pulmonary fibrosis, sarcoid, rheumatoid arthritis

  Focal: Infection, tumour, esp. metastases, congenital



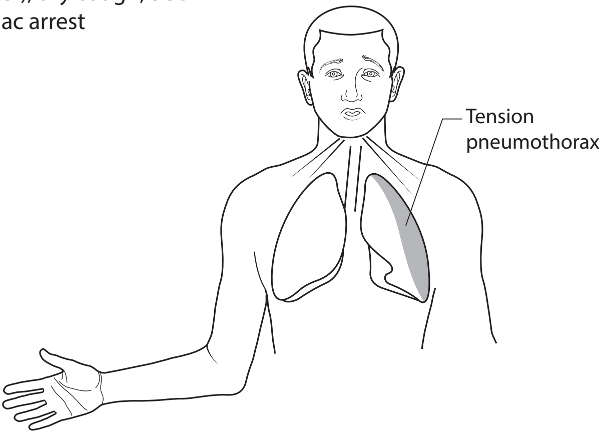
PC

Simple: Pain (sudden, pleuritic, radiates to shoulder); dry cough; SOB
Tension: Acute respiratory distress; collapse; cardiac arrest

O/E

Chest exam
Ipsilateral chest movement ↓
Hyper-resonance
Auscultation: AE ↓
Subcutaneous emphysema

If tension:
  Obstructive shock
  Elevated JVP
  Tracheal deviation away from affected side



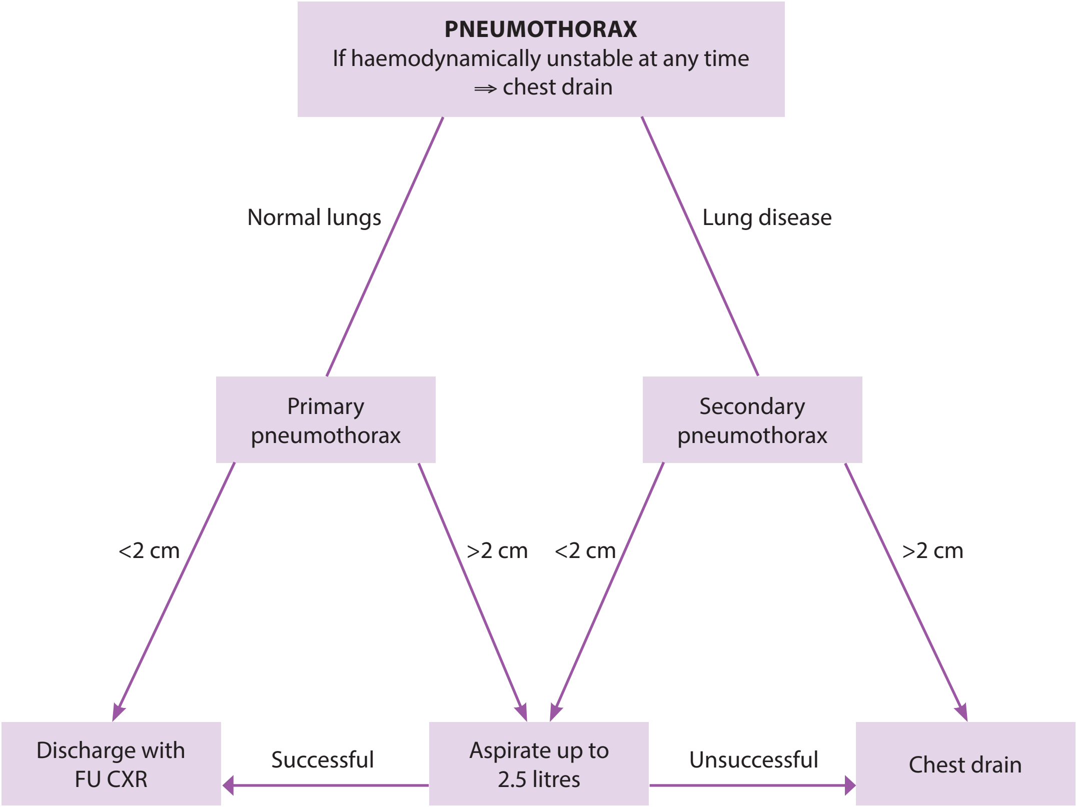
Ix

Radiol: CXR:

- Translucency + collapse visible rim between lung and chest-wall >2 cm = >50% lung volume loss
- Mediastinal shift
- Pneumomediastinum or surgical emphysema – air in local tissues
- Underlying lung disease

CT: Distinguishes loculated pneumothorax from bullae

Rx


PNEUMOTHORAX
If haemodynamically unstable at any time
⇒ chest drain
Normal lungs
Lung disease
Primary pneumothorax
Secondary pneumothorax
<2 cm
>2 cm
<2 cm
>2 cm
Discharge with FU CXR
Successful
Aspirate up to 2.5 litres
Unsuccessful
Chest drain

Refractory or recurrent

Lateral thoracotomy or thoracoscopy:

IND: Required if no improvement with intercostal drain after 1 week, or if recurrent pneumothorax

Method: Pleurodesis, e.g. tetracycline, bleomycin, talc injection
Pleural abrasion or pleurectomy
Bulla stapling or lasering

Tension pneumothorax:

Immediate insertion of wide-bore cannula into 2nd I/C sp., mid clavicular line (don’t wait for CXR)
Rapid insertion of chest drain

PLEURAL EFFUSION

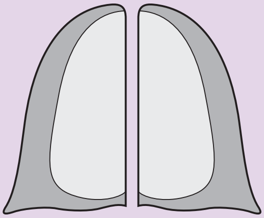
Causes

Categorized according to protein or LDH (lactate dehydrogenase) content of pleural fluid:

Transudate: Redistribution of Starling forces across microcirculation (as for pulmo. oedema – p. 90) protein <35 g/l or pleural/serum LDH < 2/3

Exudate: Capillary permeability increases or lymph drainage decreases, protein >35 g/l or pleural/serum LDH > 2/3

C^2.H.E.S^2.T. I.N.S.U.L.A.T.I.O.N.



Transudate

Cardiac failure: LVF, RVF, pericardial effusion or constriction: due to pulmonary (LVF) or bronchial (RVF) capillary hydrostatic pressure ↑

Cirrhosis, nephrosis, malnutrition, malabsorption, protein-losing enteropathy (e.g. intestinal lymphangectasia) – often R-sided effusion and concomitant ascites

Hypoalbuminaemia – plasma oncotic pressure ↓

Embolism, pulmonary: Due to hydrostatic pressure redistribution

Superior vena cava obstruction (or inferior vena cava obstruction): Due to drainage of bronchial veins into SVC/IVC

Subclavian or jugular vein catheter misplacement with infusion of crystalloid, or peritoneal dialysis in presence of congenital pleuro-peritoneal communication

Thyroid ↓: Due to myxoedema

Exudate

Infection: *Strep. pneumoniae, Mycoplasma,* TB, viruses (EBV, coxsackie), rheumatic fever: may cause either a parapneumonic effusion or empyema (i.e. bacterial infection of pleural fluid)

Neoplasia: Bronchial carcinoma, pleural mesothelioma or fibroma, breast, ovarian, lymphoma

Surgery or trauma: CABG, mastectomy, radiotherapy, lung contusion

Uraemia

Liver, pancreatic, ovarian disease:
  Subphrenic or hepatic abscess
  Pancreatitis or pancreatic pseudocyst or carcinoma; pleural fluid amylase ↑
  Ovarian fibroma (Meigs syndrome); ovarian hyperstimulation; pleural endometriosis

Autoimmune: SLE, rheumatoid arthritis, scleroderma, polyarteritis nodosa

Toxins: **B.A.N. M.E.** – **B**romocriptine, **A**miodarone, **N**itrofurantoin; **M**ethysergide, **E**nvironmental – asbestosis

Infarction: Pulmonary (due to multiple PEs), myocardial (Dressler syndrome)

Oesophageal rupture: Pleural fluid amylase ↑

Nail syndrome, yellow: Due to lymphatic hypoplasia, and also associated with pitting oedema and sinusitis + familial Mediterranean fever: periodic fever + pains in pleura, peritoneum and joints, due to pyrin mutation

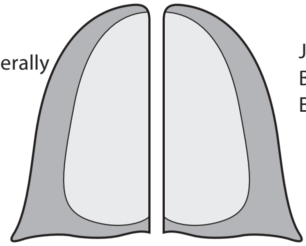
PC

SOB, progressively worsening
Chest pain

O/E

Mediastinal shift contralaterally
- Tracheal deviation
- Apex beat displaceent (if large)

Expansion ↓
Stony dullness
Absent AE



Just above effusion:
Bronchial breathing
Egophony – patient's voice sounds like bleating sheep

Ix

Radiol: CXR: Meniscus-shaped, rises towards axilla; repeat after drainage to look for tumour/lymph nodes
USS: Localizes small effusions, and allows their tapping
CT: Allows underlying lung and mediastinum to be visualized

Special: Pleural fluid aspiration

Appearance:
- Clear, straw-coloured suggests transudate
- Turbid, green indicates exudate (pus cells) or empyema (i.e. actual bacterial infection)
- Bloody (i.e. haemothorax): Tumour; pulmonary embolism; acute pancreatitis, trauma
- White (i.e. chylothorax = lymph): Blocked thoracic duct, usually due to tumour

Analysis:
- Protein and LDH: Determine whether transudate or exudate; glucose ↓ in most exudates
- Amylase ↑ in pancreatitis, tumour, oesophageal rupture
- Microbiology, incl. AAFB staining and cultures
- Cytology

Rx

Underlying cause

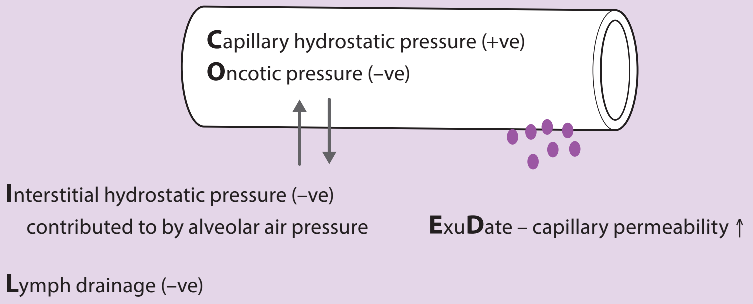
Specific:
Transudate: Diuretics can result in rapid resolution
Exudate:
- Repeated drainage (thoracocentesis): Limit drainage rate to <2/24 h
- Intrathoracic streptokinase via chest drain: Lyses fibrinous adhesions
- Pleural adhesion: Tetracycline, bleomycin, talc
- Decortication surgery

PULMONARY OEDEMA

Causes

May be classified in accordance with Starling forces:

C.O.I.L.ED.


Capillary hydrostatic pressure (+ve)
Oncotic pressure (–ve)
Interstitial hydrostatic pressure (–ve) contributed to by alveolar air pressure
Exu**D**ate – capillary permeability ↑
Lymph drainage (–ve)

Transudate

Capillary hydrostatic pressure ↑
- LVF
- PE
- Overhydration, e.g. with normal saline

Oncotic pressure ↓
- Malnutrition, malabsorption, protein-losing enteropathy
- Cirrhosis
- Nephrosis

Interstitial negative hydrostatic pressure ↑
- Asthma: Acute airway obstruction with high end-expiratory volume (more –ve pleural pressure required)
- Aspiration of pneumothorax or pleural effusion – if too rapid
- Altitude – unacclimatized athletes

Lymphatic drainage ↓
- Lymphangitis carcinomatosis
- Fibrosis, esp. secondary to silicosis
- Lung transplant

Exu**D**ate

Capillary permeability ↑ = ARDS (see opposite)
PATH: Diffuse endothelial + alveolar epithelial damage
Acute inflammatory exudate: Fibrin forms in airspaces ('hyaline membrane')
Pulmonary thromboemboli

Adult respiratory distress syndrome

Def

ARDS is a common inflammatory response to various lung insults, resulting in:

T.O.X.I.C.

- **T**achypnoea
- **O**xygen ↓: Progressive respiratory failure
- **X**-ray: Bilateral pulmonary infiltrates
- **I**nterstitial fluid ↑
  - Lung compliance (volume/pressure) ↓, so ↑ positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP) required
  - V/Q mismatch: Due to alveolar flooding + microvascular occlusion with platelets and neutrophils
  - Fibrosis: >4 weeks
- **C**ardiac function is normal (i.e. normal left atrial pressure or PAWP)

Causes

Lungs get **T.I.G.H.T.** *due to poor compliance*

- **T**oxins:
  - Aspirated
  - Inhalation: Smoke, paraquat, O_2
  - Systemic: Opiates, barbiturates, anaesthesia, aspirin, heparin
- **I**nfection:
  - Pneumonia: Bacterial, viral, PCP
  - Septicaemia, esp. acute pancreatitis
- **G**ynaecological: Eclampsia, amniotic fluid embolism
- **H**ypotension (shock): Hypovolaemic, anaphylaxis, anaesthesia/massive transfusion, cardiopulmonary bypass, cardioversion neurogenic: ICP ↑, e.g. SAH/status
- **T**rauma: Lung contusion, DIC, fat embolism

Rx

Underlying cause, e.g. antibiotics, pleural drainage

Ventilation

Aims: High PEEP to recruit unused alveoli
Low tidal volume to avoid pneumothorax
Low FiO_2, e.g. 0.6 to avoid O_2 toxicity + permissive hypercapnia

☠: Pneumothorax: Due to high PEEP, high tidal volume, fibrosis; more apparent in lungs with near-normal compliance
Nosocomial infection: Ventilator-assoc. pneumonia; IV lines; catheters
Organ failure:

- Cardiac, renal, neuro: Avoid by keeping tight fluid control
- GIT: Enteral nutrition; H_2-antagonists, sucralfate

Medical: Adjuvants

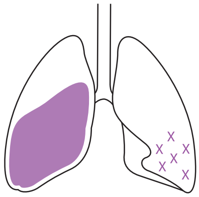
Prone positioning: Aerates better perfused dorsal lung segments
Nitric oxide ± nebulized prostacyclin: Vasodilate in vicinity of ventilated alveoli
Corticosteroids: Decrease fibrosis

LUNG CARCINOMA

PC + O/E

Lung carcinoma may present at 5 different levels:

1. Lung

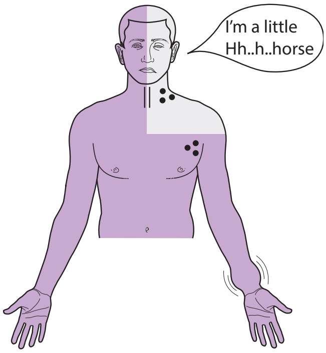


PC: SOB/cough (esp. haemoptysis)/chest pain
Recurrent pneumonia
O/E: Quiet breath sounds:

- Tumour; lobar collapse; pleural effusion
- Elevatated hemidiaphragm (phrenic N. palsy)

Crepitations: Consolidation; bronchiectasis; (radiotherapy: fibrosis)
Pneumothorax esp. pulmonary mets, e.g. osteosarcoma, Wilms

2. Lymph nodes + local compression



PC: Hoarseness: Due to L recurrent laryngeal N. palsy
Dysphagia, stridor
O/E: Lymphadenopathy: Supraclavicular, axillary
Neuro: Pancoast tumour infiltrates T1 stellate ganglion → Horner syn; wasting of intrinsic hand muscles; shoulder pain
Hands: Clubbing; tender wrists = hypertrophic pulmonary osteoarthropathy; hyperhidrosis; tar staining fingers (smoker)

3. Superior vena cava obstruction (SVCO)

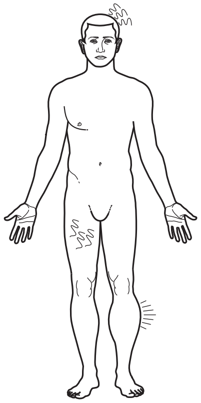
PC: Headache, SOB
O/E: Conjunctival oedema, plethora, vein dilatation
Pericardial tamponade: JVP ↑, ABP ↓, quiet HS

4. Metastases

B.L.O.B.S.

Bone pain
Liver, adrenal (Addison)
Other: Lung, pleura, thoracic cage
Brain (stroke); spinal cord
Skin: Slightly blue umbilicated lesions

5. Constitutional + paraneoplastic



Constitutional: Cachexia; leucoerythroblastic anaemia; immunocompromise, e.g. shingles
Neurological (assoc. with small-cell carcinoma): Cerebellar degeneration; limbic encephalitis; peripheral neuropathy; dermatomyositis; Lambert–Eaton myasthenic syndrome
Endocrine: Ectopic secretions (mostly assoc. with small-cell ca.)
ACTH: Cushing; SIADH: confusion; β-HCG: gynaecomastia, body hair loss
PTHrp: Hypercalcaemia (esp. squamous cell carcinoma)
Skin: Dermatomyositis: Acanthosis nigricans; erythema gyratum repens; pruritus (also radiotherapy marks; burns)
Hypercoagulable state (assoc. with adenocarcinoma)
DVT, thrombophlebitis migrans, marantic endocarditis

Types of lung neoplasia

PRIMARY

Squamous cell carcinoma

Epi: 30% of all primary lung tumours, but decreasing incidence
Prog: Relatively good prognosis if localized (5-y survival ≈ 50%) – metastases occur late
Histo: Squamous metaplasia; keratin whorls
Characteristics: **C**entral location, **C**avitates, **C**lubbing (+ HPOA); **C**alcium ↑ (PTH-rp secretion)

Adenocarcinoma

Epi: 30%; increasing incidence, esp. women, less association with smoking
Prog: Poor (1 y median survival) – metastases occur early
Histo: Gland-like, mucin-secreting
Characteristics: Peripheral location; pleural effusions; hypercoagulable state

Small-cell carcinoma

Epi: 20%; strongest association with smoking
Prog: Poor (1 y median survival) – metastases occur early
Histo: Small APUD cells with neurosecretory granules; dark, oval nuclei, little cysts
Characteristics: Central location; paraneoplastic syndromes common

Large-cell carcinoma

Epi: 10%
Prog: Poor – metastases occur early
Histo: Giant cells; clear cells; anaplastic
Characteristics: Local invasion into mediastinum

RARE

Bronchoalveolar cell carcinoma:

- Variant of adenocarcinoma that is associated with chronic lung inflammation, rather than smoking. Prognosis relatively good
- Characteristics: Copious, clear mucoid sputum; SOB; recurrent bilateral pneumonia (cells carried in sputum)

Adenoma:

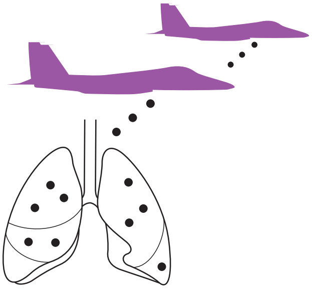
- Majority are carcinoid tumours (APUDomas) that occur in young people and have good prognosis
- Characteristics: Haemoptysis, lobar collapse, wheeze; 2% develop carcinoid syndrome or acromegaly; tumours occupy a central location, so often not visible

Hamartoma: Benign tumour of older men, seen on CXR as a peripheral calcified mass, and consisting of disordered but differentiated smooth muscle and cartilage

SECONDARY

B.O.M.B.E.R.S.

Breast
Oesophago/gastric/head–neck (+ colon if liver mets.)
Melanoma
Bone, sarcomas
Endocrine: Thyroid
Renal, prostate
Sex: Ovary, choriocarcinoma, testes



Rx

Non-small cell: Surgical resection possible in 1/3; adjuvant chemo/radiotherapy
Small cell: Radiotherapy + chemotherapy; 90% show limited regression

OBSTRUCTIVE SLEEP APNOEA

Def

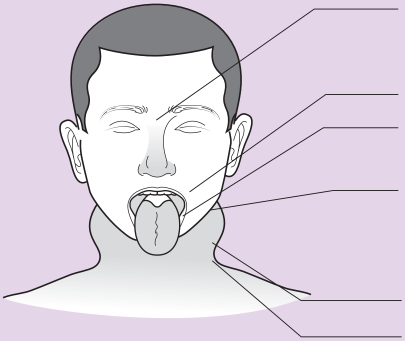
Obstruction: Obstruction of upper airway occurs at night with loss of muscle tone in sleep
Sleep: Sleep disruption, snoring, sleepiness during day
Apnoea: Apnoeic spells: O_2 ↓, patient awakes from sleep

Causes

$O.S^3.A^2.$

Obesity, central
The strongest risk factor for OSA is central obesity
This is measured as neck circumference (rather than Body Mass Index)
PATH: Fat deposition around upper airway → airway narrowing and resistance ↑
Abdominal fat ↑ elevates diaphragm

Structural features of upper airway



Nasal obstruction, e.g.
rhinitis, polyps, deviated septum:
↑ Negative upper airway pressure

Adenotonsillar hypertrophy

Macroglossia, e.g.
hypothyroidism; acromegaly, amyloid, Down

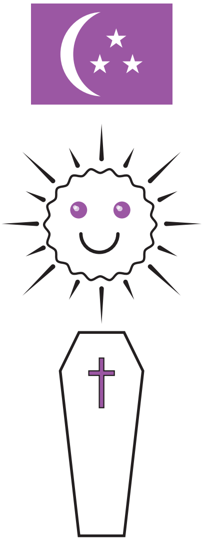
Jaw shape, e.g.
micrognathia, retrognathia,
malocclusion,
family history of OSA due to inherited facial size

Cervical masses, e.g. goitre

Laryngeal stenosis, e.g. stricture

Smoking: Exacerbates hypoxia
Sex: Male
Atony:
Neuromuscular: Motor neurone disease, myopathy, myotonic dystrophy
CNS: CVA, multiple systems atrophy, encephalitis
Connective tissue laxity: Marfan syndrome (also because of high-arched palate)
Alcohol: Acts as a sedative thereby reducing upper airway tone (same for anaesthetics, benzodiazepines)

PC



Nocturnal Sx
Obstruction and apnoea:

- Snoring, choking, gasping
- Awakening with nocturia

Gastro-oesophageal reflux

Daytime Sx:
Morning headache
Daytime somnolence
Memory + attention ↓, → accident risk!
Irritability, depression

Complications
Cyanosis → polycythaemia
Systemic hypertension (loss of normal nocturnal dipping)
Pulmonary hypertension – late (2° to chronic hypoxia) → cor pulmonale

Ix

Bloods: Causes: TFTs: hypothyroidism; LFTs: alcoholism
Effects: Hb ↑; ABG: CO_2 ↑
Urine: Glucose (Type II DM assoc. with obesity)
Monitor: Overnight oximetry
ECG: R-sided strain
Radiol: CXR: Cardiomegaly
Special: Polysomnography (overnight sleep study):

- Apnoea–hypopnea Index: >5/h abnormal (except elderly)
- O2 dipping: Titrate nasal CPAP to ↑ O_2
- EEG: Categorizes apnoea as REM or NREM sleep predominant

Rx

Conservative:
Weight loss
Avoid smoking, alcohol, sedatives
Sleep: Avoid supine position and sleep deprivation

CPAP (continuous positive airway pressure)
Method: 4–20 cm H_2O for >4 h per night, via nasal mask, maintains upper airway patency
Benefits: Reverses daytime Sx. (incl. accidents); prevents complications; MR ↓
Side-effects: Poor compliance due to encumbrance; skin ulceration; rhinorrhoea, epistaxis; aerophagia

MAD (mandibular advancement device) – intra-oral device that ↑ A-P diameter of upper airway →, ↓ snoring + apnoea

Surgical:
Adenoidectomy (curative in children)
Uvulopalatopharyngoplasty (50% benefit)
Maxillomandibular osteotomy
Tracheostomy if CPAP-intolerant

PULMONARY EMBOLISM

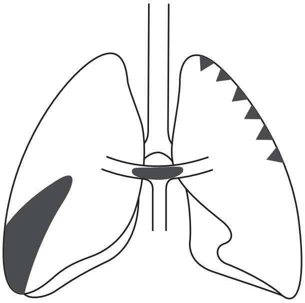
PATH

Embolus originates from deep-vein thrombosis in proximal leg or iliac veins (peri-operative), renal vein or IVC (renal or pelvic tumour), or cerebral venous or SVC thrombosis.

Types

PE may be classified according to size, with different pathologies and presentations for each:

Small–Medium
PATH:
  Infarction
  Haemorrhage
PC:
  Pleuritic pain
  Haemoptysis
  Acute SOB
O/E:
  Fever, low-grade
  Tachycardia (incl. AF)
  Pleural rub, wheeze



Multiple
PATH:
  Widespread infarction
  Pulmonary hypertension
PC:
  Cough, wheeze
  Progressive SOB, due to
    subacute right-sided
    heart failure
O/E:
  Respiratory distress,
    cyanosis
  Pulmonary hypertension:
    JVP ↑, gallop rhythm (S3),
    loud P2

Large
PATH: Pulmonary insufficiency due to occlusion of pulmonary trunk or main artery
PC: Acute right-sided heart failure; collapse, EMD, sudden death

Ix

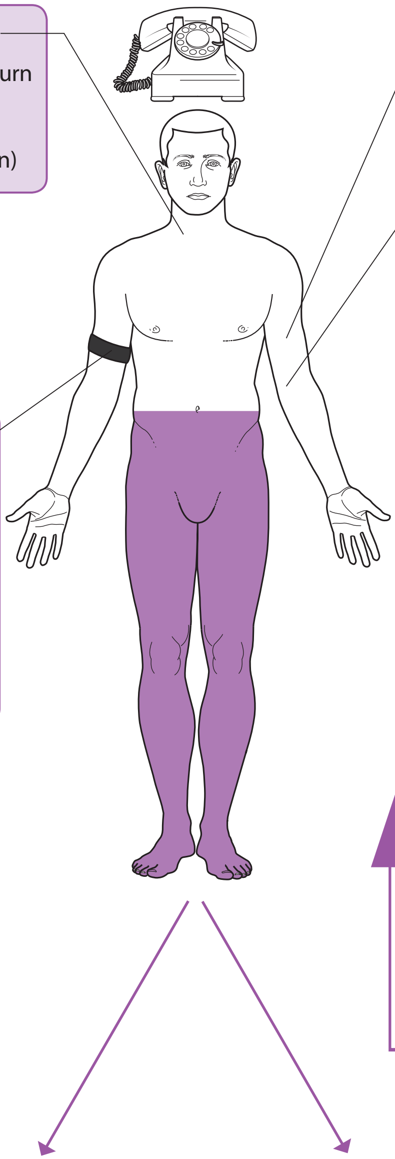
Bloods:	ABGs: O_2 ↓, CO_2 ↓
	D-Dimers: Very sensitive, but poor specificity (false +ves)
ECG:	Sinus tachycardia, AF
	SI-QIII-TIII (R axis deviation)
	R-sided strain; R bundle branch block
Radiol:	CXR:

- Normal
- Decreased vascular markings or focal oligaemia
- Wedge-shaped infarct
- Linear atelectasis
- Small pleural effusion

V/Q isotope scan
CT pulmonary angiogram

Special:
Establish underlying cause: Doppler USS thigh, pelvis (+ve in 40%); thrombophilia screen
ECHO: Look for right heart strain

Rx



WARN ITU
if any life-threatening
features

Ventilatory support

Lie patient down – aids venous return
Oxygen: 100%
Intubate/IPPV → ITU
(☠ : Hypotension with sedation)

Hydration

Normal saline to avoid hypotension

Medication

Analgesia
- Oral NSAID
- Diamorphine + cyclizine (☠: Hypotension)

Anti-coagulation:
- Mild–Moderate:
  LMW heparin, e.g. dalteparin
  10,000 units SC od (weight-adjusted)
- Severe:
  tPA or streptokinase via pulmonary artery catheter

Dobutamine if cardiogenic shock

Assessment

A.B.C.D.

C.O.A.T.
Cardiac: Monitor
O$_2$
ABP
TPR

Investigations
See opposite

On discharge

Warfarin (INR 2–3)

Continue for 6 months, or longer if recurrent or prothrombotic tendency

Surgery

Thrombendarterectomy if life-threatening

Radiology

Inferior vena cava filter

IND: Recurrent or chronic PE
☠ Recurrent PE
IVC occlusion; leg + genital oedema

PULMONARY HYPERTENSION

Causes

It can **C.H.A.N.GE.** *you…*

Connective tissue diseases, e.g. RA, SLE
HIV
Amphetamines
No-one knows (idiopathic)
GEnetic

Lung disease: Cor pulmonale due to COPD, ILD, bronchiectasis, OSA
Cardiac: LVF, MS, right-to-left shunt
Chronic PEs

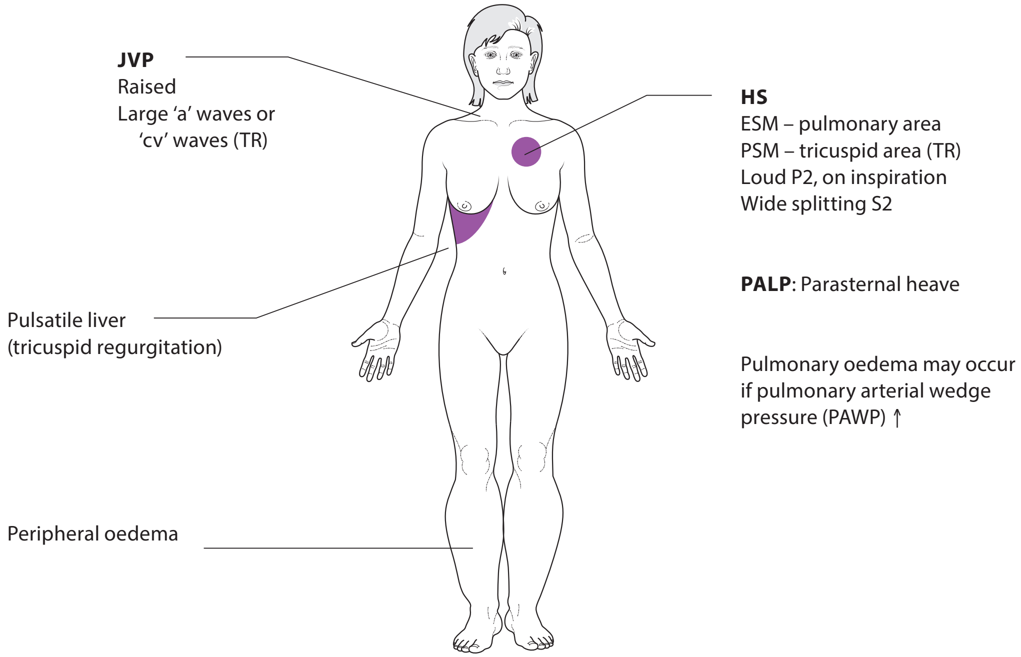
PATH

Primary pulmonary arterial hypertension and systemic causes are characterized by medial hypertrophy, concentric fibrosis, thrombosis and vasoconstriction of arterioles and venules

PC

SOBOE – worsens with right ventricular failure
Syncope
Angina or myocardial infarction (right ventricle)

O/E


JVP
Raised
Large ‘a’ waves or
‘cv’ waves (TR)
HS
ESM – pulmonary area
PSM – tricuspid area (TR)
Loud P2, on inspiration
Wide splitting S2
PALP: Parasternal heave
Pulsatile liver
(tricuspid regurgitation)
Pulmonary oedema may occur
if pulmonary arterial wedge
pressure (PAWP) ↑
Peripheral oedema

Ix

Bloods: ABG: O_2 ↓ CO_2 ↓; respiratory alkalosis
ECG: Sinus tachycardia, AF
SI-QIII-TIII (R axis deviation)
R-sided strain; R bundle-branch block
Radiol: CXR: Large pulmonary arteries; clear lung fields
V/Q isotope scan: Diffuse patchy filling defects (non-segmental, cf. PE = segmental)
Angio: Risk of bradycardia (give atropine)
Special: Lung function tests: Mild restrictive picture; KCO ↓

Rx

Conservative: Avoid exercise
Medical:
Diuretics
Warfarin (INR 1.5–2.5)
Vasodilators:

- Bosentan (endothelial receptor antagonist)
- Sildenafil, tadalafil (phosphodiesterase type 5 inhibitors)
- IV prostacyclin via indwelling central venous catheter
- Calcium channel blockers if patient is vasoreactive (only 5%)

Bilateral lung (± heart) transplantation

Prog

Survival: 3 years from diagnosis if untreated; 6 months from symptomatic heart failure (grade IV)

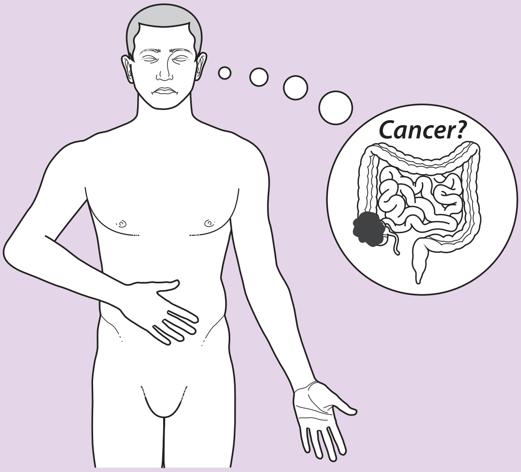
Taylor & Francis
Taylor & Francis Group
http://taylorandfrancis.com

Gastroenterology

ABDOMINAL PAIN

Causes

Abdominal pain has the **P^2.O^2.T.E.N.T.I.A.L.** *to be serious*



- **P**eritonitis/**P**erforation (see opposite)
  - PATH: Inflammation of viscus with extension to local peritoneum
  - PC: Constant, worsened by movement, patient tends to lie down and shallow breathe
- **O**bstruction/c**O**lic
  - PATH: Colic suggests excessive contraction of viscus, e.g. due to obstruction or infection
  - PC: Waxes and wanes, patient tends to writhe and move around
- **T**oxins
  - Food poisoning
  - Drugs, e.g. opioid addiction, antibiotics, anticholinesterases; radiotherapy
  - Poisons: Chronic lead poisoning; black widow spider bite
- **E**ndocrine crises
  - Diabetic ketoacidosis
  - Addison
  - Hypermetabolic state: Thyrotoxicosis; phaeochromocytoma; carcinoid
- **N**euro-psychiatric
  - Functional: Irritable bowel; anxiety; Munchausen syndrome
  - Radiculopathy: Shingles; spondylosis. NB: Dermatomal pattern and hyperaesthesia
  - Syphilis: 'Tabetic crisis'
- **T**horacic origin (referred pain)
  - Basal pneumonia, pulmonary embolism; myocardial infarction; pericarditis; thoracic radiculitis
- **I**nherited
  - Acute porphyria: Colic
  - C'1-esterase inhibitor deficiency: Hereditary angioedema
  - Familial Mediterranean fever
- **A**bdominal wall
  - Rectus sheath haematoma (e.g. over-anticoagulation); myositis. NB: Worsened by lifting head off pillow
- **L**abour or other gynaecological disorder
  - Ovarian torsion
  - Ectopic pregnancy
  - PID

Peritonitis

PC

Localized peritonitis: Constant localized pain, worsened by movement, patient tends to lie down and shallow-breathe; e.g. appendicitis: umbilical → **RIF** pain

Sub-diaphragmatic: L shoulder-tip pain

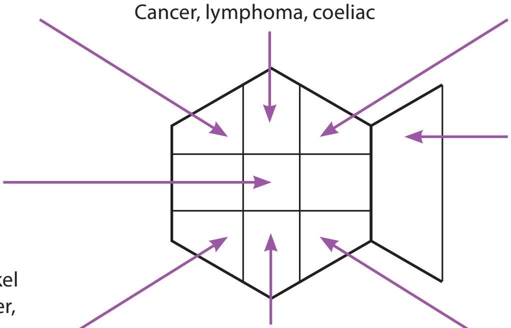
Retroperitoneal origin: Vague localisation or back pain; patient tends to sit up or move around

O/E

Inspection In pain, shallow breathing pattern, pale, shocked
Palpation Abdominal rigidity; guarding (involuntary abdominal wall contraction); rebound (pain on release); Murphy's sign (tenderness in RUQ on inspiration); pain per rectum – retrocaecal appendicitis
Auscultation Absent bowel sounds (paralytic ileus)

Ix

Erect CXR (air under diaphragm with oesophageal – bowel rupture)
USS: Free fluid in peritoneum or bowel
CT: Localizes area of pathology and any free fluid



Hepatitis, abscess, hepatomegaly

Cholecystitis, cholangitis, cancer

Oesophago-gastritis, peptic ulcer, rupture (Boerhaave syndrome)

Cancer, lymphoma, coeliac

Splenic infarction, splenomegaly, EBV

Pancreatitis, cancer, pseudocyst

Gastroenteritis, ischaemic

Aortic aneurysm, aortitis

Pyelonephritis

Psoas abscess, retroperitoneal sarcoma

Appendicitis, Crohn, Meckel diverticulum. caecal cancer, diverticulitis

Mesenteric adenitis, *Yersinia*, TB, lymphoma, carcinoid

Cystitis, testes torsion

Sigmoid colon diverticulitis, cancer

Pelvic inflammatory disease, salpingitis, ectopic pregnancy, Mittleschmertz, menses (either iliac fossa and back)

Generalized peritonitis
Any of above + 'spontaneous bacterial peritonitis'
(cirrhosis, nephrosis, e.g. from streptococcal pharyngitis)

Obstruction

Bowel

MECHANICAL

PC Colic:
- Umbilical: small bowel
- Lower half; lumbar: large bowel

Constipation + vomit
May progress to bowel infarction and/or perforation, with peritonitis

O/E
Abdominal distension
Tinkling bowel sounds
Hyperperistaltic movements

PARALYTIC

PC Constipation + vomit only
O/E Absent bowel sounds
Biliary: Cause – calculi
PC Colicky or constant; RUQ, worse after eating
Renal: Cause – calculi
PC Constant but migrates: loin → groin

V.A.N.I.S.H.I.N.G. P.O.o.
(i.e. constipated!)

Volvulus
Adhesions 2° to peritonitis, surgery
Neoplasia
Inflammation: Crohn, ischaemia, diverticulitis
Strangulated **H**ernia
Intussusception: Meckel diverticulum, polyp
Neonatal: Imperforate anus
Gallstone ileus; faecal bolus, FB, bezoar

Pseudo-**O**bstruction: Reflex atony – post-surgery; trauma; retroperitoneal haematoma

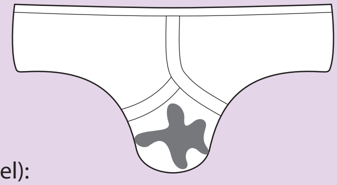
DIARRHOEA

Def

Reduction in stool consistency (essential)
>3× bowel opening per day, or >250 g stool per day – not essential

Causes

S.O.I.L.I.N.G.S^2.



Secretory – diarrhoea persists with fasting
  Infection
  Food poisoning (toxin or organism pre-formed within food):
  - Toxin-mediated: *Staph. aureus, Clostridium perfringens*
  - Inflammation: *Salmonella, Camplylobacter*

  Gastroenteritis (i.e. organism colonizes and multiplies within bowel):
  - Toxin-mediated: Cholera, *E. coli* (enterotoxigenic – traveller's diarrhoea)
  - Inflammation: *Shigella, E. coli* (enteroinvasive), *Clostridium difficile*, viral

  Endocrine
  APUDomas:
  - Carcinoid
  - Islet-cell tumour (VIPoma, somatostatinoma, glucagonoma, gastrinoma)
  - Endocrine: Medullary carcinoma thyroid (via calcitonin), phaeochromocytoma

  Systemic: Thyrotoxicosis, hypoadrenalism (Addison), hypopituitarism

Osmotic
  Malabsorption – diarrhoea relieved by fasting
    Causes: Intestinal wall disease; bile salt malabsorption; pancreatic disease (exocrine)
  Haemorrhage into bowel

Inflammation or **I**schaemia
  Inflammatory bowel disease: Ulcerative colitis, Crohn, microscopic colitis
  Ischaemia, incl. vasculitis, mesenteric embolism

Laxatives or other drugs
  Laxatives:
  - Secretory: Phenolphthalein-containing, e.g. senna, bisacodyl
  - Osmotic: Na, Mg or anion-containing

  Antibiotics, esp. erythromycin; prokinetics
  Radiation

Irritable bowel syndrome
  Abdominal pain and bloating, relieved by defaecation
  Altered stool passage
  PR mucus

Neuropathy, autonomic, e.g. diabetes; MS

Gastrectomy + other surgery
  Short-bowel syndrome: Extensive bowel resection; dumping syndrome – gastrectomy
  Fistulae, e.g. jejuno-ileal bypass; anal sphincter disturbance

Structural
  Rectal adenoma, neoplasia, diverticular disease

Special
  Alcohol, dietary indiscretion
  Overflow: Faecal impaction

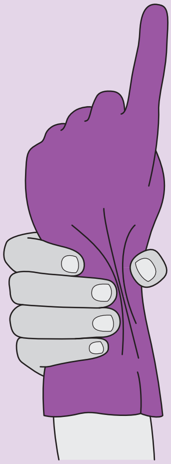
CONSTIPATION

Def

Bowel opening <3× per week
Straining during defaecation >25%

Causes

O.P.E.N. I.T. W.I.D^2.E.



Obstruction
- Mechanical (colic) – see p. 103: Volvulus, adhesions, neoplasia, inflammation, strangulated hernia, intussusception, gallstone ileus
- Pseudo-obstruction (reflex atony), e.g. post-surgery

Pain
- Anal fissure; 3° piles

Endocrine/**E**lectrolytes
- Endocrine: T_4 ↓, DM (DKA, ↓ gastrocolic reflex)
- Electrolytes: Ca ↓, K ↓, uraemia

Neurological
- Brain: PD, CVA, MS
- Spine: Myelopathy, cauda equina, sacral plexopathy
- Neuropathy: Botulism, Hirschsprung disease, Chagas disease (*Trypanosoma cruzi* – S. America)

Inflammation or **I**schaemia
- IBD or diverticulitis, or ischaemia

Toxins
- Opioids, anticholinergics, nicotine (ganglion blocker), aluminium salt (antacid), iron

Gut **W**all disease
- Systemic sclerosis or visceral myopathy

Irritable bowel syndrome

Diet or **D**ehydration
- Inadequate roughage, diuretics, starvation

Elderly, pregnancy

Rx

Underlying cause
Laxatives:

B.O.S.S.E.S.

Bulking: Faecal mass ↑→ peristalsis ↑ – bran, ispaghula husk
Osmotic: Fluidity of faeces ↑ – lactulose, macrogol
Stimulant: GIT motility and secretion ↑ – senna, bisacodyl
Softeners: Sodium docusate
Enemas:
- Osmotic: PO_4, Na citrate
- Stimulant: Na picosulphate
- Softener: Arachis oil

Suppositories: Stimulant – glycerol

NAUSEA AND VOMITING

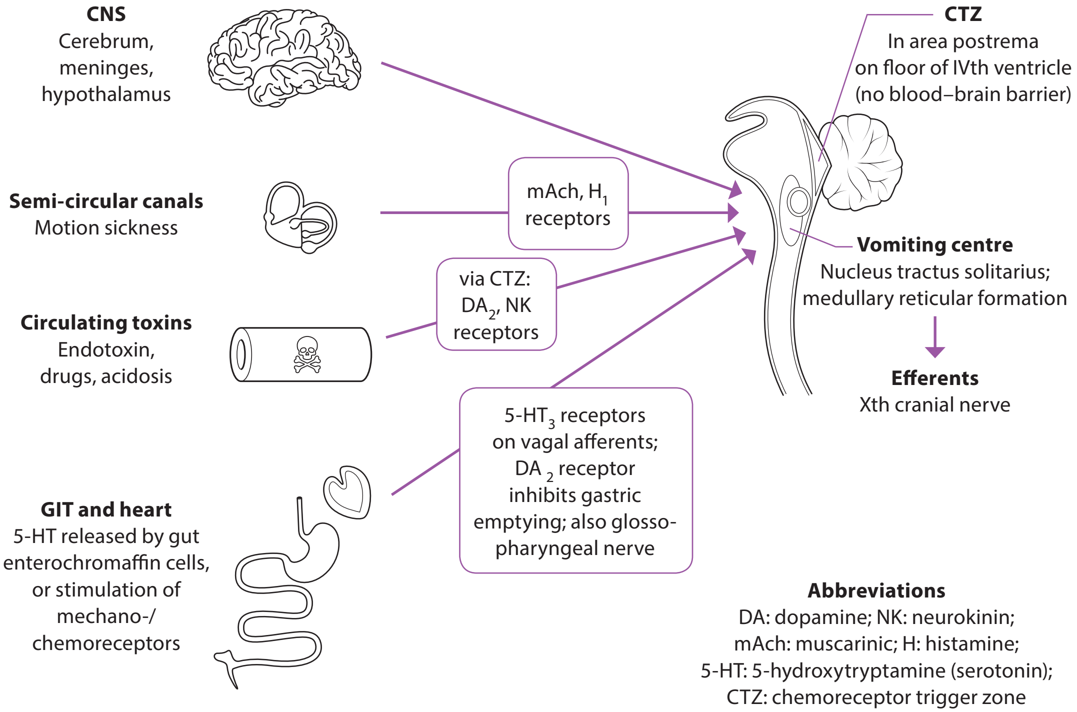
Causes

Too many **G.I.N. & T.O^2.N.I.C.S.**

Gastrointestinal
  Gastro-oesophageal: Reflux; ulcer; pyloric stenosis
  Pancreatic, liver, gallbladder disease
  Obstruction
  Peritonitis
Infection
  GIT: Gastroenteritis; hepatitis; visceral abscess
  Systemic: RTI (esp. tonsillitis, otitis media); UTI; septicaemia
Neoplasia
  GIT: Oesophago–gastric–duodenal carcinoma; lymphoma; amyloid
  Other: Hypernephroma; hepatoma; ovarian
  Paraneoplastic

Toxins
  Chemotherapy, opioids
  Antibiotics, aminophylline, antiarrhythmics (esp. digoxin), L-DOPA
  Alcohol
Obstetric: Pregnancy
Ophthalmic: Acute closed-angle glaucoma
Neurology
  Labyrinthitis, Menière, brainstem-cerebellar disease, e.g. MS
  ICP ↑; meningo-encephalitis
  Migraine
  Vasovagal syncope
  Autonomic neuropathy/gastroparesis: Diabetes, acute intermittent porphyria
  Psychiatric: Bulimia or anorexia nervosa, psychogenic
Infarction: Myocardial, esp. posterior, transmural
Calcium ↑/endocrine dysfunction
  DKA gastroparesis
  Addison crisis
  Thyrotoxicosis
Systemic
  Respiratory failure: Acidosis
  Cardiac failure, esp. right-sided: Bowel oedema
  Renal or liver failure: Uraemia

Physiology


CNS
Cerebrum, meninges, hypothalamus
Semi-circular canals
Motion sickness
Circulating toxins
Endotoxin, drugs, acidosis
GIT and heart
5-HT released by gut enterochromaffin cells, or stimulation of mechano-/chemoreceptors
mACh, H_1 receptors
via CTZ: DA_2, NK receptors
$5\text{-}HT_3$ receptors on vagal afferents; DA_2 receptor inhibits gastric emptying; also glossopharyngeal nerve
CTZ
In area postrema on floor of IVth ventricle (no blood–brain barrier)
Vomiting centre
Nucleus tractus solitarius; medullary reticular formation
Efferents
Xth cranial nerve

Abbreviations
DA: dopamine; NK: neurokinin;
mAch: muscarinic; H: histamine;
5-HT: 5-hydroxytryptamine (serotonin);
CTZ: chemoreceptor trigger zone

Rx

Underlying cause
Supportive: Hydration (PO/IV), NaCl replacement
Anti-emetics: Select according to receptor-type relevant to cause

A.1.2.3.

Muscarinic (**A**ch) receptor antagonist: Hyoscine
- Indication: Motion sickness, GIT causes
- ☠ : Sedation, dry mouth

Histamine type **1** receptor antagonist: Cyclizine, cinnarizine, promethazine
- Indication: Motion sickness, GIT, cardiac causes
- ☠ : Sedation, other anti-cholinergic side-effects

Dopamine type **2** receptor antagonist: Metoclopramide, domperidone
- Indication: Most causes, esp. gastro-oesophageal reflux (as pro-motility effect)
- ☠ : Sedation, extrapyramidal reactions (less likely with domperidone), diarrrhoea

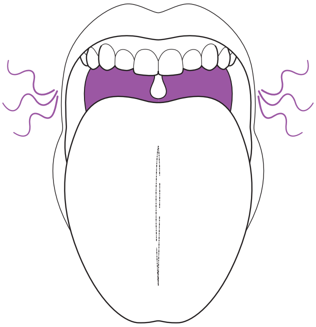
5-HT type **3** receptor antagonist: Ondansetron, granisetron
- Indication: Most causes, esp. chemotherapy, post-surgery, neoplasia, MS
- ☠ : Headache, constipation

Others:
- Steroids for neoplasia
- Nabilone (cannibinoid, acts on opiate receptors) for chemotherapy, MS

SORE THROAT

Causes

I.N.T.E.R.N.A.L.S.



Infection

Viral:

- Influenza or coryza (coronavirus, adenovirus, rhinovirus, enteroviruses, coxsackie)
- Exanthems: Rubella, measles, hand, foot and mouth disease – coxsackie A16, enterovirus 71
- EBV: PC – pearly-white exudate + palatal petechiae
- Other: Parainfluenza, croup, haemorrhagic fever

Bacterial – localized

- *Streptococcus pyogenes* (β-haemolytic, Lancefield group A): Tonsillitis and quinsy (peritonsillar abscess) and rheumatic fever
- *Staphylococcus aureus*: Facial erysipelas
- *Haemophilus influenzae* type b: Epiglottitis
- Anaerobes: *Fusobacterium necrophorum* (necrobacillosis): Lemierre disease; also causes jugular thrombophlebitis; lung and brain abscesses

Bacterial – general:

- Pneumonia: *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, *Mycoplasma*, chlamydia, tularaemia, brucellosis
- GIT: Typhoid, leptospirosis
- STD: Gonorrhoea, 2° syphilis
- Neurological:
  - Diphtheria (bull neck, stridor, brassy cough, palatal weakness, myocarditis)
  - Meningococcus (Neisseria meningitidis), listeriosis (associated meningitis)

Fungal: Oral candidiasis

Neoplasia

Carcinoma of oral cavity or pharynx

Toxins

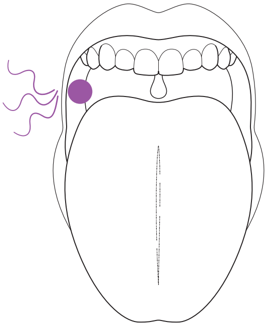
Smoking, alcohol, pollution, e.g. H_2S
Drugs: Carbimazole, clozapine, anti-epileptics (due to agranulocytosis)

Exogenous: Radiotherapy-induced mucositis
Reflux: Gastro-oesophageal
Nutritional: Vitamin B12, folate, iron deficiency: Mucositis, glossitis, cheilitis
Autoimmune: Sjögren syndrome – dry mouth
Long styloid process: Chronic sore throat in children
Sinusitis, chronic: Post-nasal drip

ORAL ULCERATION

Causes

I.N.T.E.R.N.A.L.



Infection

Viral:

- Herpangina: Enterovirus, coxsackie, echovirus – children
- Herpes: HSV-1 (acute gingivostomatitis or recurrent); VZV; EBV
- HIV: Acute gingivitis, ulceration; glandular fever-like illness

Bacterial:

- TB: Tip-of-tongue ulcers
- STD:
  - Gonorrhoea
  - Syphilis (1° – chancre; 2° – snail-track ulcer; tongue; 3° – gumma)
- Anaerobic:
  - Vincent angina = symbiosis of *Borrelia vincentii* + *Bacteroides* spp.
  - Actinomycoses: assoc. with tooth extraction or jaw fracture: inspection reveals yellow sulphur granules

Fungal: Histoplasmosis – ulcerative nodules, laryngitis, fever

Neoplasia: Carcinoma of oral cavity – raised edge

Toxins:

Sulphonamides, chloramphenicol, cytotoxics – neutropenia
Stevens–Johnson syndrome, erythema multiforme

Exogenous: Trauma/dentures

Recurrent aphthous ulceration

Epi: 20% lifetime incidence; assoc. with stress, menses
PC: Painful, single or cluster of ulcers with grey base and red surround
Types: Minor (1–5 mm); major (5–15 mm); herpetiform (200 × 1 mm)

Nutritional

Haematinics: Vitamin B, folate, iron deficiency
Vitamin C deficiency
Malabsorption, e.g. coeliac

Autoimmune: Most are aphthous ulcers (i.e. painful, grey base, red surround)

Behçet syndrome: Orogenital ulceration + anterior uveitis + arthritis
SLE
Seronegative arthropathies: IBD (esp. Crohn); Reiter syndrome
Pemphigus (ruptured bullae); pemphigoid (bullae); lichen planus (white striae)

Leukaemia, acute: esp, AML, 2° to neutropenia

DYSPHAGIA

Causes

Neuromuscular

Central (pseudobulbar palsy):

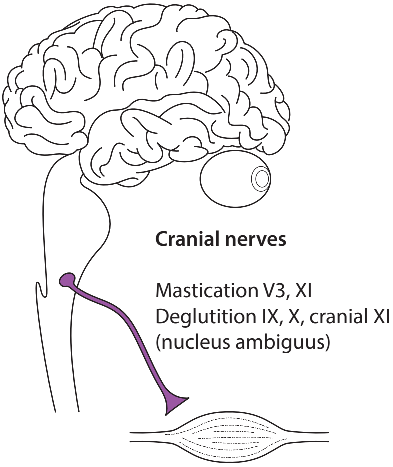
- CVA
- Parkinson, esp. progressive supranuclear palsy
- Motor neurone disease (MND)
- MS

Bulbar palsy (lower motor neurone):

- MND
- Syringobulbia
- Myaesthenia gravis
- Jugular foramen syndrome
- Guillain–Barré syndrome

Muscular/myenteric plexus

- Myopathy
- Ganglion/peristalsis dysfunction:
  - Scleroderma/CREST
  - Oesophageal spasm
  - Achalasia



Oral

Pharyngitis and oral ulcers cause painful swallowing (odynophagia) with secondary dysphagia

Pharynx/oesophagus

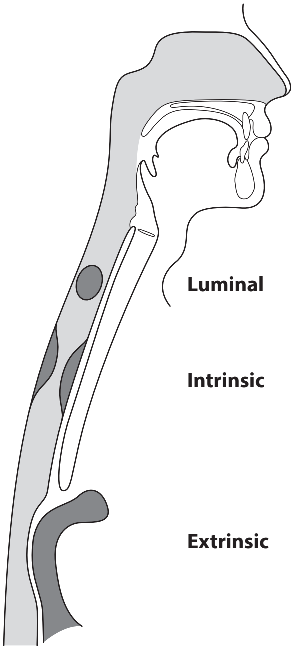
Luminal: Foreign body, large bolus

Intrinsic:

- Upper:
  - Pharyngeal pouch
  - Post-cricoid web
- Middle:
  - Oesophagitis
  - Oesophageal stricture
  - Oesophageal carcinoma
- Lower:
  - Hiatus hernia
  - Schatzki ring

Extrinsic – **B.U^2.L.G.I.N.'**

Bone: Cervical spondylosis
U: Dysphagia L**U**soria – vascular compression:
Aberrant R subclavian artery, aortic aneurysm, mitral stenosis (enlarged left atrium)
Lymphadenopathy
Goitre
Infection: Retropharyngeal abscess
Neoplasia: Pancreatic cancer



PC

Neuromuscular

Solids and liquid: Nasal regurgitation

Aspiration occurs while attempting to swallow

Other: Diplopia, ataxia

Oral

Odynophagia

Pharynx/oesophagus

Solids > liquids

Aspiration unrelated to swallowing

Other: Chest pain; dyspepsia, hiccups (lower oesophagus)

O/E

Neuromuscular

Other neurological deficits, e.g. ataxia, dysarthria, Horner syndrome

Oral

Erythema, aphthous ulcers, candida

Pharynx/oesophagus

Hoarse:

- Laryngitis (gastro-oesophageal reflux)
- Left recurrent laryngeal nerve palsy (carcinoma, lymph nodes)

Respiratory Sx:

- Right basal consolidation (aspiration pneumonia)
- Unilateral wheeze (main bronchus compression)

Ix

Neuromuscular

Videofluoroscopy: Identifies weakness or incoordination

Pharynx/oesophagus

Barium swallow

OGD

Oesophageal motility + manometry studies

Specific causes

Neuromuscular

Psychiatric 'globus pharyngis':

- Patient feels lump in the throat at level of cricoid
- Middle-aged female, depression

Achalasia: Chest pain

Pharynx/oesophagus

Pharyngeal pouch: Elderly

Post-cricoid web: Occurs as part of Plummer–Vinson or Paterson–Brown–Kelly syndrome, also characterized by iron-deficiency anaemia, koilonychia, glossitis, and risk of squamous cell carcinoma

HAEMATEMESIS

Causes

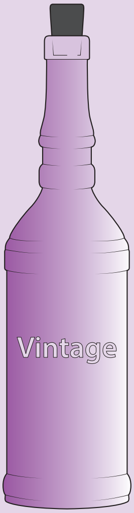
V.I.N.T.A.G.E.

Varices
Inflammation: Oesophago-gastroduodenitis or peptic ulcer; PC: coffee-grounds vomit
Neoplasia: Oesophageal or gastric (carcinoma, polyp, leiomyoma, Menetrier disease)
Trauma
  Mallory–Weiss tear:
  - Mucosal break <2 cm proximal to gastro-oesophageal junction
  - Due to forceful vomiting, esp. males drinking alcohol

  Surgery, ERCP (haemobilia), aorto-duodenal fistula, 2° aortic aneurysm/repair
  Hypovolaemic shock: Ischaemic, stress ulcer in stomach
Angiodysplasia + other vascular anomalies
  Angiodysplasia: Dilated vessel complexes in *clusters*
  Hereditary haemorrhagic telangiectasia:
  - Dilated vessels over entire bowel wall
  - Autosomal dominant: Endoglin mutation (TGF-receptor on endothelium)
  - PC: Haematemesis, haemoptysis (pulmonary AVM), cerebral abscess, epistaxis

  Other:
  - Dieulafoy lesion = protruding large submucosal vessel
  - Watermelon stomach = gastric antral vascular ectasia
  - Vasculitis, e.g. PAN

Generalized bleeding disorder
  Connective tissue defects: Ehlers–Danlos syndrome, pseudoxanthoma elasticum
  Coagulopathy, e.g. chronic renal failure, warfarin
Epistaxis or dental: Oropharynx; epistaxis or haemoptysis (swallowed blood)



Ix for any GIT bleeding

Bloods: U&E: urea ↑↑ with upper GIT lesion; AKI
FBC: Chronic or acute
LFT: Liver disease
Coagulation screen + group and save + cross-match as appropriate
Radiol: CT angiogram
Special: Endoscopy
Laparotomy; investigative ileo-/colostomy

RECTAL BLEEDING

Causes

D.R.I.P.P.I.N.G. T.A^3.P^2.S.

Diverticulae
    Colonic: Diverticular disease
        PC: Pellety stool, pain, PR bleeding + diarrhoea
    Ileal: Meckel diverticulum
        PC: Childhood bleeding
    Jejunal:
        PC: Usually present with malabsorption + vitamin B12 deficiency due to bacterial overgrowth

Rectal
    Piles
        PC: Blood separated from stool; painless unless thrombosed
    Solitary rectal ulcer; proctitis, e.g. 2° to gonorrhoea

Infection
    Bacterial: *Salmonella*, *Campylobacter*, *E. coli*, *Shigella spp.*
    Other: HIV, CMV, *Candida*
    Parasite: Amoebic dysentery, hookworm (melaena)

Polyps – Benign
    Hyperplastic, esp. rectal
    Hamartomatous, e.g. Peutz–Jeghers syndrome
        PC: Obstruction, intussusception → strawberry-jelly stool

Polyps – Neoplastic
    Adenoma → carcinoma

Inflammation
    Ulcerative colitis: Bloody diarrhoea
    Crohn: Ileal bleeding – uncommon

Neoplasia
    Carcinoma, lymphoma, Kaposi's sarcoma

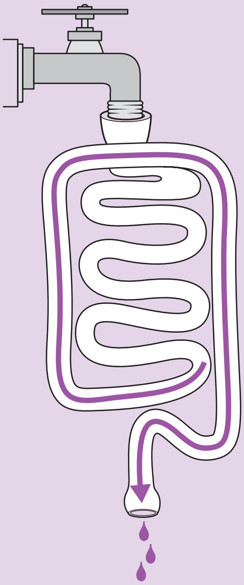
Gastric–upper bowel bleeding
        PC: Melaena (black, tarry stool), or bloody, if rapid transit

Trauma
    Surgery, colonoscopy, e.g. polypectomy; radiation colitis

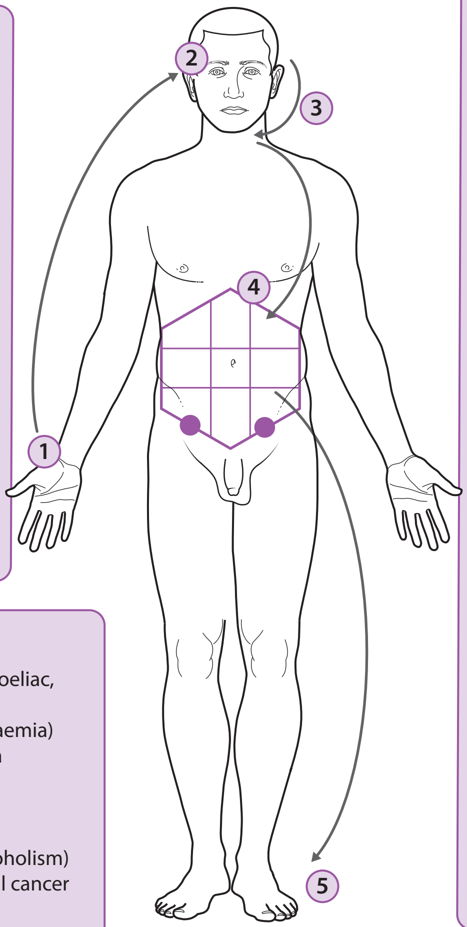
Arterial/**A**ngiodysplasia/**A**VM
    Ischaemic colitis
    Angiodysplasia
    AVMs, hereditary haemorrhagic telangiectasia

Pseudomembranous colitis/**P**arasites
    see under Infection

Systemic
    Coagulopathy
    Amyloid



ABDOMINAL EXAMINATION



1. Hands

Nails:

- Clubbing (cirrhosis, colitis, coeliac, lymphoma)
- Leuconychia (hypoalbuminaemia)
- Sclerodactyly, telangiectasia (scleroderma}

Palms:

- Asterixis (liver failure}
- Dupuytren contracture (alcoholism)
- Hyperkeratotic-oesophageal cancer (tylosis)

Forearms:

- AV-fistula thrill, excoriations: Chronic renal failure
- Tattoos: Hepatitis or HIV risk

2. Face

Eyes:

- Conjunctivae: Pallor - anaemia
- Cornea: Jaundice
- Xanthelasma: Lipids

Mouth:

- Pigmentation (Peutz-Jeghers syndrome Addison)
- Telangiectasia (HHT, scleroderma)
- Glossitis, cheilitis (vit B12 or Fe def.)
- Ulceration:
  - Crohn (also swollen lips),
  - Candida (white plaques – check genitalia)
  - Oral hairy leukoplakia (lymphoma, HIV)

Parotid enlargement:
Liver failure

3. Neck

JVP ↑: A-sided cardiac failure as a cause of cirrhosis

Lymphadenopathy:

- Lymphoma, TB, HIV
- Gastric cancer: Supraclavicular LN = Troisier's sign

Goitre (dysphagia, T4-toxicosis causes diarrhoea)

4. Abdomen

Inspection of trunk and back

- Skin of trunk and back:
  - Stigmata of chronic liver disease: Spider naevi, gynaecomastia, testis atrophy, sexual hair loss, caput medusa, dilated abdominal veins
  - Uraemic frost: Brown-yellow tinge
- Scars, stoma, sinuses, striae
- Masses, e.g.
  Sister Joseph nodule (umbilical 2°), hernia (on coughing and standing)
- Peristalsis: Obstruction

Palpation + percussion

- Peritonism – see page 103
- Masses, organomegaly
- Ascites: Shifting dullness, fluid thrill
- Pulsation: Expansile (aneurysm) transmitted (overlying mass) liver (tricuspid regurgitation}

Auscultation

- Bowel
  - Tinkling or succussion splash (obstruction}
  - Hyperactive
- Renal bruits
- Liver bruit (hepatoma; portal hypertension}

Extras, where appropriate

- PR, for unexplained weight loss, anaemia, altered bowel habit, bleeding
- PV, e.g. discharge, pelvic pain
- Genitalia, e.g. unexplained abdominal pain (testes), signs of immunocompromise (HIV)

5. Other systems

- Feet (peripheral oedema)
- Fundi (hyperlipidaemia)
- ABP, chest (renal failure)

6. AND FINALLY...

Temperature chart
Weight chart, abdominal girth
Urine dipstick, β-HCG test

Order:

1. Examine JVP at 45° recline
2. Sit patient forward to examine back and palpate cervical lymph nodes
3. Lie patient completely horizontal
4. Palpate, first light, then deep, in clockwise fashion

ABDOMINAL MASSES

Hepatomegaly

Hepatomegaly

Diffuse liver disease: **T.A.B.O.O^2.S^2.** – see p. 152

Nodular:

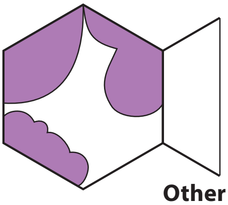
- Cirrhosis, esp. due to alcohol
- Neoplasia – 2°, 1°
- Cysts:
  - Benign, e.g. adult polycystic kidney disease
  - Abscess, incl. hydatid, gumma
  - Haemangioma (usually solid)
- Riedel lobe (apparent hepatomegaly)

Hepatomegaly and splenomegaly

As for causes of splenomegaly

Palpable gallbladder

Courvoisier's Law: Jaundice + palpable gallbladder = cancer of pancreas, common bile duct, or duodenum, but **not** chronic cholecystitis as gallbladder is fibrosed



Other abdominal masses

I.N.V.I.S.i.B.L.E. *to the naked eye*

Infection: Abscess – appendicular, viral mesenteric adenitis, amoebic TB, *Actinomyces*, *Yersinia* (esp. RIF for all above)

Neoplasia: Gastric, pancreatic cancer or pseudocyst (epigastrium), colorectal, carcinoid (esp. right iliac fossa)

Vessel: Aortic or iliac aneurysm

Inflammatory: Crohn (esp. RIF), diverticular (esp. LIF)

Sex: Pregnancy, ovarian cyst or cancer

Bladder, pelvic kidney (e.g. transplant)

Lymphoma (esp. RIF, epigastrium)

Endocrine: Adrenal mass

Splenomegaly

Causes **B.I.G. S.P.A^2.N.**

Blood disorders: CML, CLL, myelofibrosis, myeloproliferative, haemolytic anaemia, ITP, sickle cell

Infection: Hepatitis, EBV, CMV, endocarditis, HIV, malaria, toxoplasmosis, leishmaniasis

Granulomatous: Sarcoid, primary biliary cirrhosis

Storage disease: Gaucher, Niemann–Pick disease

Portal hypertension, esp. 2° to cirrhosis

Autoimmune: Rheumatoid arthritis, SLE, Graves; **A**myloid

Neoplasia: Cysts, melanoma

Features:

Cannot get above

Superficial (dull on percussion)

Descends medially on inspiration

Medial notch

Renal enlargement

P.H.O.N.E. – *shaped*

Polycystic kidneys

Hypertrophy 2° to contralateral renal agenesis

Obstruction/occlusion:

- Hydronephrosis
- Renal vein thrombosis

Neoplasia:

- Renal cell carcinoma
- Myeloma, lymphoma
- Amyloid

Endocrine: Diabetes mellitus

Features:

Can get above

Deep (tympanic on percussion)

Does not descend on inspiration

Bimanually ballotable, i.e. freely moving

OESOPHAGITIS

Causes

I.R.R.I.T.A.N.T.S.

Infection
  Herpes (HSV, CMV, VZV), HIV, candida
  Usually only occurs in immunocompromised, e.g. HIV, lymphoma

Reflux, gastro-oesophageal (GOR) – Structural
  Lower oesophageal sphincter weakness may be 1° or due to:

- Hiatus hernia
  EPI: 10%, of which 10% are symptomatic – presents in infancy (congenitally short oesophagus), middle-age or elderly; female:male = 4:1
  Types:
    Sliding (95%) – along axis of oesophagus
    Rolling (5%) – greater curvature rolls over
- Pregnancy; multiparous women; obesity:
  - Pushes stomach up
  - Oestrogen relaxes oesophageal sphincter
  - Abdominal wall weakness
- Iatrogenic: cardia resection; nasogastric tube

Reflux, gastro-oesophageal (GOR) – Toxic
  Smoking
  Anti-cholinergics
  Smooth-muscle relaxants: Calcium antagonists, aminophylline, sildenafil

Inflammatory bowel disease: Crohn

Toxins
  Alcohol, hot tea, poisoning, e.g. caustic, corrosive
  Drugs: Iron, aspirin, chemotherapy
  Radiotherapy

Autoimmune
  Vasculitis, incl. Behçet: Pemphigus, pemphigoid, epidermolysis bullosa

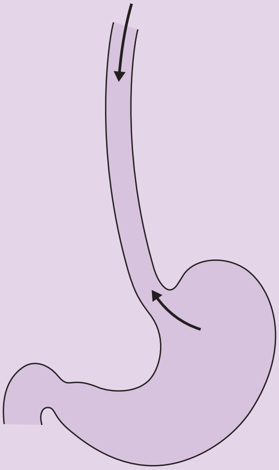
Neurological
  All cause disordered motility, incl. food stasis and reflux:

- Achalasia causes food stasis
- Scleroderma
- Visceral myopathy

Trauma
  Endoscopy/severe vomiting

Systemic
  Uraemia
  Hypothyroidism

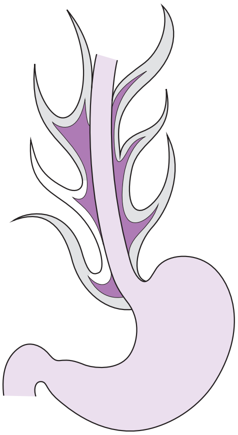
Lower oesophageal sphincter mechanisms
Oesophageal smooth muscle sphincter
Right crus diaphragm
Abdominal wall – increases intra-abdominal pressure
Acute angle of junction
Tall mucosal folds



PC

B.U.R.N.S^3.

Burning pain, heartburn
  Retrosternal or epigastric; radiates to arm + jaw
  Relieved by GTN (oesophageal spasm), sitting up, alkali (milk)
Ulceration
  Haematemesis, melaena, iron-deficiency anaemia
Reflux
  Acid regurgitation, water-brash (sour taste), halitosis, dental caries
Neoplasia
  Pre-malignant: Barrett oesophagus = columnar metaplasia within normal stratified, squamous epithelium of lower oesophagus (appear as red-brown, velvety islands among pink oesophageal mucosa); develops in 10% GOR
  Malignant: Adenocarcinoma; develops in 10% Barrett oesophagus
Stricture
  Dysphagia
Spasm
  Severe, acute, crushing (also caused by rolling hiatus hernia)
SOB, wheeze, palpitations, hiccoughs
  Due to reflex bronchospasm, hiatus hernia, aspiration pneumonitis



Ix

Bloods: FBC/ferritin: Iron-deficiency anaemia
Radiol: CXR:
- Hiatus hernia seen as gas bubble and fluid level in chest
- Aspiration pneumonitis, esp. right-middle lobe

Barium swallow: Reflux, spasm, mucosal irregularity
Special: OGD + biopsy
Oesophageal manometry: Propulsive motion, sphincter tone
Nasogastric tests: 24-hour ambulatory pH – 2× intraluminal electrodes records diurnal variation

Rx

Conservative S.O.S^3.
  Smoking
  Obesity (+ loose clothing around waist)
  Small **S**nacks and **S**leep upright

Medical:
- Mucosal protectants: Antacids ± alginates (Gaviscon) – forms viscous 'raft' on gastric contents
- Secretion suppression: Proton-pump inhibitor, e.g. omeprazole or H^2 receptor blocker, e.g. ranitidine
- Pro-kinetic: Domperidone or metoclopramide: ↑ LOS tone and gastric emptying:
  ☠ Extrapyramidal symptoms incl. acute dystonic reaction

Surgical:
- Hiatus hernia repair
- Nissen fundoplication: Gastric fundus mobilized and sutured around LOS, so that gastric contraction closes LOS

OESOPHAGEAL CARCINOMA

Epi

Inc: 1% of all cancers, but 5% of cancer deaths due to early spread to mediastinal structures
Age: Elderly (squamous cell carcinoma); middle-aged (adenocarcinoma)
Sex: men > women, esp. adenocarcinoma

Causes

Any cause of chronic oesophagitis or stricture

Upper oesophagus – Squamous cell carcinoma (10%)

Pharyngeal pouch
  PC: Elderly person with dysphagia, regurgitation
Post-cricoid web (Plummer–Vinson syndrome)
  PC: Middle-aged woman with chronic iron-deficiency anaemia, dysphagia

Middle oesophagus – Squamous cell carcinoma (40%)

Toxins
- Nitrites, nitrosamines – environment, food
- Alcohol, smoking, hot liquids, caustics
- Proton-pump inhibitor: i.e. *H. pylori* eradication

Nutrition
- Vitamin A, B, C, Zn deficiency; poor oral hygiene

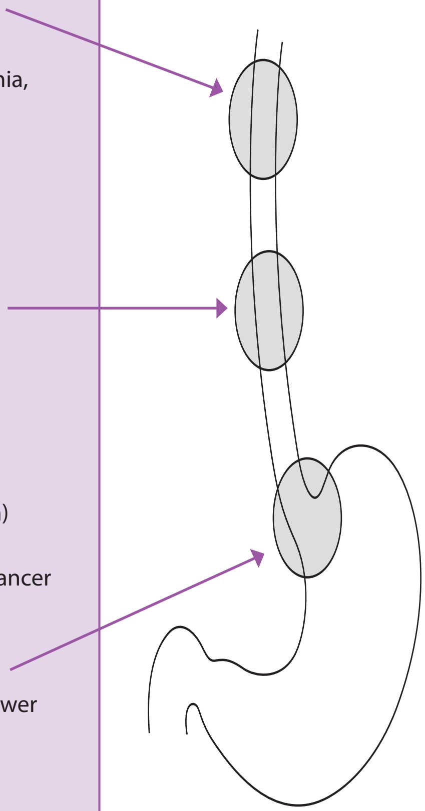
Infection
- *Aspergillus flavus* contamination of grain
- Human papillomavirus

Inflammation
- Coeliac, achalasia (food stasis leads to chronic inflammation)
- Epidermolysis bullosa
- Tylosis (palmar keratosis) – autosomal dominant: 40% get cancer

Lower oesophagus – Adenocarcinoma (50%)

Gastro-oesophageal reflux (GOR)
- 'Barrett oesophagus' refers to columnar metaplasia at the lower oesophagus
- Metaplasia occurs in 10–15% of reflux patients
- Adenocarcinoma occurs in 10% of metaplasia

Predisposing: Obesity, hiatus hernia, cardiac surgery



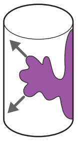
Rare oesophageal tumours

Benign: Mesenchymal leiomyoma, polyp, squamous papilloma

Malignant: Metastases or direct invasion (bronchial, gastric); Kaposi's sarcoma

PC

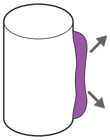
Polypoid or constrictive



Pain: Retrosternal, due to direct pressure
Obstruction:
- Dysphagia (poorly localized), odynophagia
- Anorexia: LOW, malnutrition

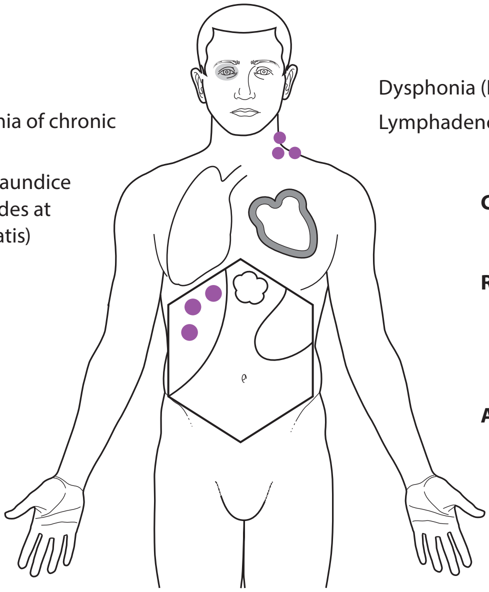
Regurgitation: Heartburn, water-brash (sour taste), halitosis,dental caries, cough due to aspiration pneumonitis

Ulceration



Pain: Mediastinitis; pleuritis
Haematemesis, melaena, iron-deficiency anaemia; catastrophic exsanguination (aorta-oesophageal fistula)
Perforation; infection: Mediastinitis, peritonitis

O/E



Cachexia

Pallor (anaemia of chronic disease)

Obstructive jaundice (lymph nodes at porta hepatis)

Dysphonia (L recurrent laryngeal nerve palsy)

Lymphadenopathy: Cervical, supraclavicular

Cardiac
Pericarditis

Respiratory
Pneumonitis: Direct spread, tracheal fistula
Lung metastases (via azygos or thyroid veins)
Pneumothorax (oesophageal rupture), pyothorax

Abdomen
Craggy epigastric mass
Portal hypertension: Splenomegaly, ascites
Liver metastases (via L gastric vein)

Ix

Bloods: FBC (iron-deficiency anaemia); ESR; U&E (vomiting); LFT (biliary obstruction, liver metastases)
Urine or faeces: Faecal occult blood
Radiol: CXR: Aspiration pneumonia, thoracic invasion, pulmonary metastases
Barium swallow: Irregular filling defect, stricture
CT, MRI
Special: OGD with biopsy – ulcerated mucosa, friable, oedematous, haemorrhagic

Rx

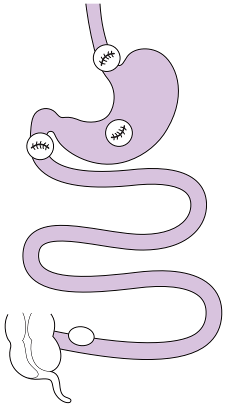
Curative: Total or subtotal oesophagectomy
Palliative if evidence of local or systemic spread:
- Endoscopic pulsion intubation
- Endoscopic laser photocoagulation or alcohol injection

Prog

5-year survival rate = 5% due to early spread (75% if resected before it spreads)

PEPTIC ULCERS

Locations



1. Duodenal, esp. 1st part, anterior wall

3. Oesophageal – secondary to Barrett oesophagus

2. Gastric, esp. antrum and lesser curvature; greater curvature ulcer suggests carcinoma

4. Meckel diverticulum

Locations listed in order of frequency

Causes

G.I.T. S.C^3.A.R.S.

Genetic
  A family history often exists
  Blood group O (duodenal ulcers)

Infection – *Helicobacter pylori*
  PATH:

- Antral infection: Inhibits somatostatin-secreting D-cells, which in turn disinhibits gastrin-secreting G-cells. Bacteria produce urease that ↑ local ammonia and ↑ mucosal IL-8 and TNF-α
- Duodenal infection: Causes gastric metaplasia, inflammation and HCO_3^- secretion ↓
- Corpus infection: Causes parietal cell atrophy, achlorhydria and resultant chronic gastritis

Toxins
  NSAIDs: 25% of all drug side-effects; 25% of all long-term NSAID users get PUs – inhibit COX-1 → prostaglandins E_2, I_2↓→ mucosal + HCO_3^- secretions ↓; HCl secretion ↓; mucosal blood flow ↓
  Steroids
  Chemotherapy, e.g. doxorubicin
  Smoking (duodenal ulcers); alcohol (acute gastritis and gastric erosions); salt

Surgery
  Antrectomy or gastro-enterostomy: Causes duodeno-gastric reflux of bile salts
  Extensive small-bowel resection: Disinhibition of gastrin secretion

Calcium ↑; **C**irrhosis; **C**RF

APUDoma – gastrinoma
  Zollinger–Ellison syndrome = non-islet cell pancreatic gastrinoma → gastrin ↑
  PC: Multiple, refractory peptic ulcers; diarrhoea; steatorrhoea; malabsorption, incl. vitamin B12 deficiency

Reflux, gastro-oesophageal

Stress
  Anxiety
  ‘Stress ulcers’: Ischaemia secondary to shock from sepsis, burns, ↑ICP

Epi

Inc: Life-time risk = 20% (males), 10% (females)
Age: 20–30s first presentation
Geo: Japan-China, South America more common and higher risk of carcinoma

PC

Pain

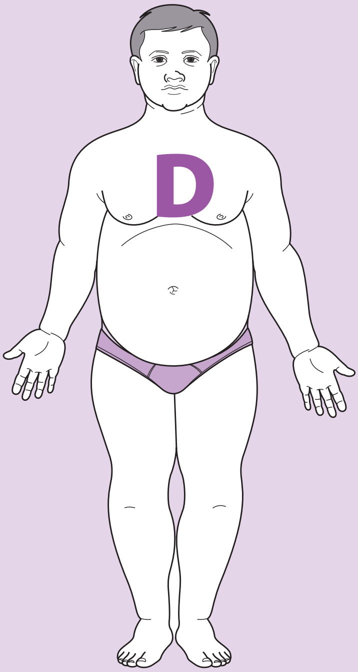
Epigastric-left upper quadrant, back, chest-shoulder
Recurrent (every 2 months; lasts 2 months), but when occurs is constant and burning
Relieved by milk or antacids
Assoc. bloating, abdominal distension, N+V

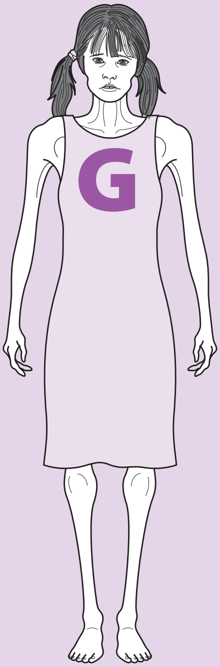
Duodenal ulcer
Dozy Fat Man

- Kept awake at night, as pain ↑ by lying flat and fasting ('hunger pains')
- Pain relieved by eating
- Men > women

Gastric ulcer
Anorexic **G**irls

- Thin as pain ↑ by eating
- Women > men





Comps

H.O.P.I.N.G. .... *I won't have!*

Haemorrhage
  Acute: Haematemesis, melaena
  Chronic: Iron-deficiency anaemia
Obstruction
  Vomiting, copious, projectile, stale-food (i.e. non-bilious), tetany due to alkalosis
  Constipation
  Colic, visible peristalsis
  Distension, succussion splash
Perforation
  Acute abdomen due to peritonitis, or back pain due to retroperitoneal perforation
Infection: Septic shock
Neoplasia: Gastric carcinoma, esp. if chronic, atrophic gastritis
Gas: Pneumatosis coli or pneumatosis cystoides intestinalis indicate necrotising fasciitis

Ix

Bloods:	Hb ↓, MCV ↓; urea ↑ (haemorrhage); hypochloraemic alkalosis (obstruction)
Urine:	Paradoxical aciduria (pyloric obstruction)
Micro:	*Helicobacter pylori* from stool test or direct sampling during endoscopy Urea-breath test: Ingested ^{13}C-urea is catabolised by *H. pylori* urease to CO_2
Radiol:	Barium swallow: 'Hour glass' deformity due to fibrosis of lesser curvature
Special:	OGD–endoscopy: ● Brush cytology and biopsy of rim + base ● *H. pylori* urease test: Gastric biopsy incubated with urea → NH_4^+ → pH ↑ Gastrin tests: Serum gastrin – fasting, post-prandial and post-secretin (gastrin ↓ in normals)

Rx

Conservative:

- Avoid smoking, alcohol, caffeine, NSAIDs, steroids
- Small and regular snacks; at night, take biscuits, milk or antacids to bed
- GORD Rx for oesophageal ulcers: Lose weight, Gaviscon, pro-motility drugs

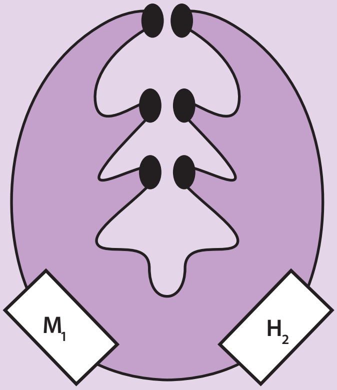
Medical:

- *Helicobacter pylori* treatment

H. pylori eradication regime ('triple therapy') = 1 week course of:
Amoxicillin 1 g bd + clarithromycin 500 mg bd + lansoprazole 30 mg bd

or if penicillin allergic:
Metronidazole 400 mg bd + clarithromycin 250 mg bd + lansoprazole 30 mg bd

- Acid-suppression:
  - Proton-pump inhibitors – omeprazole, lansoprazole



    - Irreversible inhibitors of H^+–K^+-ATPase pump in apical parietal cell membrane
    - Require acidification for activation (rabeprazole not as pH-dependent)
    - Decreases *H. pylori* infection of antrum, but increase corpus–fundus infection
      ☠ Diarrhoea, N+V, gastroenteritis by decreasing gastric protection; transaminitis (esp. lansoprazole); anaemia; headache; cytochrome p450 inhibitor (esp. omeprazole)
  - Histamine (H_2) receptor antagonists – ranitidine, cimetidine
    - Competitive inhibitors of parietal cell H_2 receptor: H^+ and pepsin secretion ↓
      ☠ Diarrhoea, bradycardia
      Cimetidine only: Gynaecomastia, decreased libido, cytochrome p450 inhibitor

GASTRIC NEOPLASIA

Epi

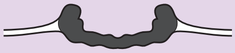
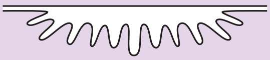
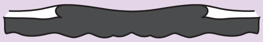
1% of all cancers, but 3% of cancer deaths due to gastric cancer presenting late

Risk factors **'7 As'**

Androgen (male)
Atrophic gastritis (due to *H. pylori* infection)
AIDS
Ash (smoking)
Adiposity (obesity)
Group **A** blood type
Anaemia (pernicious)

Types

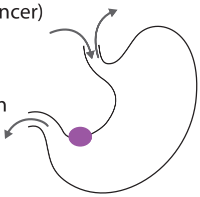
Malignant
Adenocarcinoma
APUDoma: Gastrinoma (Zollinger–Ellison syndrome); carcinoid syndrome
Lymphoma
Secondaries: Carcinoma, melanoma

Microscopic	**Macroscopic**
Intestinal metaplasia Formation of intestinal glands	Excavated ulcer Irregular, heaped-up borders; shaggy, necrotic base
	
Diffuse infiltration Mucin stored intracellularly ('signet-ring cells') or secreted into extracellular stroma ('colloid carcinoma')	Flat or linitis plastica Broad infiltration of entire wall depth Rigid, thick + fibrotic walls
	

Pre-malignant
Adenomatous polyp: 30% have carcinoma within or in adjacent mucosa
Ménétrier disease: Rugal thickening due to glandular hyperplasia and mucin hypersecretion

Benign
Leiomyoma (mesenchymal)

PC



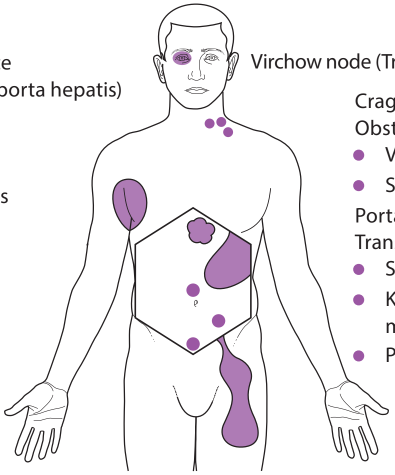
Anorexia, cachexia,
dyspepsia,
dysphagia (cardia cancer)

Projectile vomiting, stale-food
(outlet obstruction – non-bilious),
haematemesis

Pain – epigastric or back,
early satiety

Obstruction – constipation, malnutrition
Haemorrhage – melaena, anaemia
Gastrocolic fistula – diarrhoea

O/E



Cachexia
Obstructive jaundice
(lymph nodes at porta hepatis)

Acanthosis nigricans

Tetany
(with prolonged
vomiting)

Virchow node (Troisier's sign): Spread via thoracic duct

Craggy epigastric mass
Obstruction:
- Visible peristalsis
- Succussion splash

Portal hypertension: Splenomegaly, ascites
Transcoelomic spread:
- Sister Joseph nodule: Umbilical mass
- Krukenburg tumour: Bilateral ovarian cancer, mucin-producing, signet-ring cells
- Pouch of Douglas mass (PR exam)

Metastases: Left hepatic lobe → bone, lung

Ix

Bloods: FBC, ferritin: Iron-deficiency anaemia, ESR↑
U&E: Pre-renal renal failure; hypochloraemic alkalosis (vomiting)
LFT: Biliary obstruction, liver metastases
Urine + faeces: Aciduria (with outlet obstruction); faecal occult blood
Radiol: CXR: Aspiration pneumonia, lung metastases
Barium meal + double contrast: Ulcers; polyp; generalized narrowing (linitis plastica)
CT/MRI: Staging
Special: OGD + brush cytology + biopsy: Lesser > greater curvature stomach
Endoscopic ultrasound: Allows staging (**T**umour, **N**odes, **M**etastases in liver)
Laparoscopy/laparotomy

Rx

Curative: Radical gastrectomy, node removal and adjuvant chemotherapy:
- Polya-type gastrectomy (distal 3/4) for antral cancer
- Total gastrectomy and distal oesophagectomy for gastric body cancer

Palliative: If evidence of local or systemic spread:
- Gastrectomy, gastroenterostomy (for pyloric obstruction), endoscopic laser photocoagulation, alcohol injection

Prog

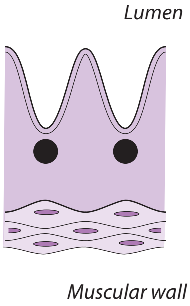
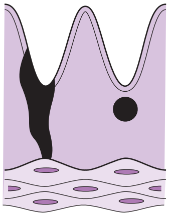
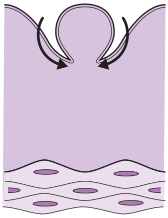
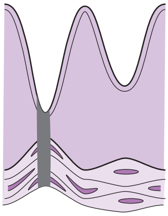
5-year survival rate = 10% (95% if detected + resected early, e.g. by screening, as in Japan)

INFLAMMATORY BOWEL DISEASE

Epi

	Ulcerative colitis	**C**rohn disease
Inc	10/100,000 p.a.	5/100,00 p.a. (rising)
Age	Bimodal: 20s and 60s	Bimodal: 20s and 60s
Sex	Females predominantly	Males predominantly
Geo	Ashkenazi Jews↑; Africans↓, Asians 0	As for UC
Aet	Genetic: MZ concordance = 10%	Genetic: MZ concordance = 70%
Pre	Smoking *protects*	**C**igarettes and **C**ontraceptive pill **C**ause **C**rohn

PATH

	Ulcerative colitis	**C**rohn disease
Macro	Restricted; always in the following order: Rectum → colon → terminal ileum (proctitis) (colitis) ('backwash ileitis')	Global, but occurs as 'skip lesions' anywhere between mouth ↔ anus
Micro	Restricted: **U**lcers limited to m**U**cosa **U**ndermining ulcers	Transmural: **C**lefts + fissures **C**obblestone appearance non-**C**aseating granulomas→ lymphadenopathy
	Cryptitis and crypt abscesses 	
	Inflammatory pseudopolyp 	*Fibrosis, stricture, adhesions, fistula* 

PC

	Ulcerative colitis	Crohn disease
Abdomen	**Colon–rectum** Diarrhoea, blood or mucus PR, tenesmus; faecal urgency *Less common*: Constipation, pain, abdominal distension (colon)	**Mouth** Aphthous ulcers, glossitis, cheilitis, granulomatous swollen lips **Ileum** Diarrhoea, colic, flatus **Terminal ileum** RIF pain, mass **Colon–rectum** As for UC **Anus** Piles, tags, fissure, fistula, dusky, blue colouration
Abdomen complications	**A.B.C.** **A**cute colitis PC: Toxic megacolon; mortality rate 10%, or 50% if bowel perforates **B**leeding – massive **C**arcinoma: • Ascending colon commonest site • Risk = 10% every 10 years • Dep. on: · Age at onset <25 y · Unremitting Sx · Pancolitis (40% risk) *Less common*: Obstruction: Benign strictures of sigmoid–rectum Protein-losing enteropathy	**F.O.A.M. B.C.** **F**istula Entero-enteric or colonic. PC: Diarrhoea Vesical: PC: Frequency, pneumaturia Vaginal, perianal, abdominal wall skin **O**bstruction: Benign strictures anywhere in GIT **A**bscess Bowel, psoas, subclinical perforation PC: Diarrhoea **M**alabsorption Fat: Steatorrhoea; gall, renal stones Protein: Oedema (also 2° protein loss) Vitamin B12: Megaloblastic anaemia Vitamin D: Osteomalacia *Less common* Acute colitis or ileitis: → toxic megacolon + perforation **B**leeding – massive **C**arcinoma/lymphoma
Extra-abdominal	**H.A.S.S.L.E.S.** **H**aematology: Anaemia of chronic disease, DVT **A**rthritis: Enteropathic athropathy **S**ystemic: Fever, weight loss, anaemia of chronic disease, DVT, AA amyloid **S**pondylosis **L**iver: Sclerosing cholangitis, cholangiocarcinoma, chronic active hepatitis **E**yes: Iridocyclitis, phylectenular conjunctivitis, episcleritis **S**kin: Pyoderma gangrenosum, erythema nodosum or multiforme, vasculitis	

Ix

Bloods**:** Biochemistry:
- U&Es: Urea ↑, Na ↓, K ↓, Ca ↓, vitamin D ↓, Mg ↓ LFT: ALT ↑, ALP ↑, PT ↑, albumin ↓
- ABG: Metabolic acidosis, HCO_3 ↓

Haematology: Hb – microcytic anaemia; WCC – neutrophils ↑; ESR, CRP ↑

Urine: MSU: Faecal flora if entero-vesical fistula

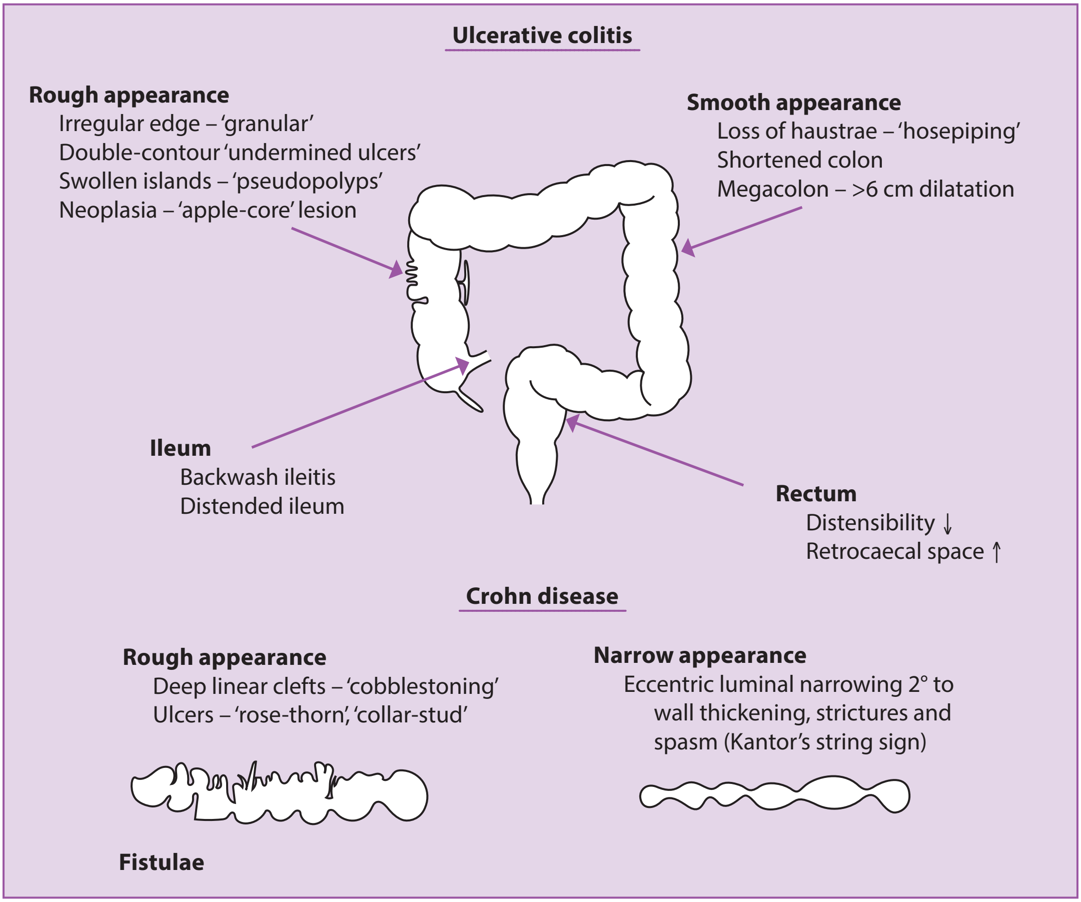
Micro: Blood culture
Stool culture: Exclude *Campylobacter, Salmonella*, amoebiasis ('hot' specimen)
Crohn disease: Exclude infectious causes of right-iliac fossa mass – TB, *Yersinia*, actinomycosis (biopsy + stain)

Monitor: Tachycardia, temperature, tenderness (>5 days)
Stool count, daily (>6 BO at day 3)

Radiol: Erect CXR: Perforation
AXR:
- Transverse colon dilatation
- Sacro-iliitis
- Biliary or renal stones (Crohn disease)

Barium enema (Crohn: barium meal and follow-through) – see below

Special: Endoscopy + mucosal biopsies:
- UC: Granular mucosa; superficial ulcers; pseudopolyps; Crohn; granuloma
- UC: Perform annual check-up >10 years disease to detect dysplasia or neoplasia


Ulcerative colitis
Rough appearance
Irregular edge – 'granular'
Double-contour 'undermined ulcers'
Swollen islands – 'pseudopolyps'
Neoplasia – 'apple-core' lesion
Smooth appearance
Loss of haustrae – 'hosepiping'
Shortened colon
Megacolon – >6 cm dilatation
Ileum
Backwash ileitis
Distended ileum
Rectum
Distensibility ↓
Retrocaecal space ↑
Crohn disease
Rough appearance
Deep linear clefts – 'cobblestoning'
Ulcers – 'rose-thorn', 'collar-stud'
Narrow appearance
Eccentric luminal narrowing 2° to wall thickening, strictures and spasm (Kantor's string sign)
Fistulae

Rx

S.N.A.C.K.S.

Supportive:

Anti-diarrhoeal and anti-motility Rx:

- Mebeverine, buscopan, codeine
- Cholestyramine, hydrophilic colloid preparation (for bile-salt malabsorption in Crohn)

Smoking: Stopping causes 30% ↓ in risk of relapse over 5 years

Nutrition

Nutrient replacement: Protein; vitamins and haematinics (esp. Crohn); TPN if obstruction

Crohn:

- Acute relapse: Give liquid-formula diet to 'rest' bowel; elemental (amino acids); oligomeric (peptides); polymeric (protein) course = 4–6 weeks as sole nutrition (as effective as steroids)
  ☠: Unpalatable (can use NGT/PEG); high relapse rate afterwards
- High-carbohydrate refined sugars; avoid dairy products (lactose-intolerant)

Aminosalicylates:

Mesalazine, olsalazine, sulphasalazine (more side-effects):

- Activated by colonic bacteria: Use laxatives to ↓ faecal loading of colon
- Oral (ileum–colon); retention enema (desc. colon); suppository (proctitis)
- Indications: Acute disease if mild; chronic disease – maintains remission
  ☠: Headache, abdo pain, diarrhoea, rash, interstitial nephritis, megaloblastic anaemia

Corticosteroids/other imunosuppressants:

- Steroids:
  - Systemic: Prednisolone: 30–60 mg od, ↓ 5 mg/week; IV hydrocortisone
  - Topical: Hydrocortisone by retention or foam enemas
  - Budesonide PO: Minimal absorption; high 1st-pass metabolism; activated in ileum–colon
- Cyclosporin (IV or enema), tacrolimus, mycophenolate – acute relapses
- Methotrexate, azathioprine, thalidomide – chronic disease, esp. perianal Crohn
- Infliximab: Mouse–human chimeric anti-TNFα monoclonal antibody:
  - Used for refractory disease (65% improve) or fistulae; good in Crohn and maybe UC
    ☠: Headache, SLE-like syn.; lymphoma; obstruction due to rapid healing with fibrosis

Kill bacteria if signs of sepsis or infection (IV antibiotics)

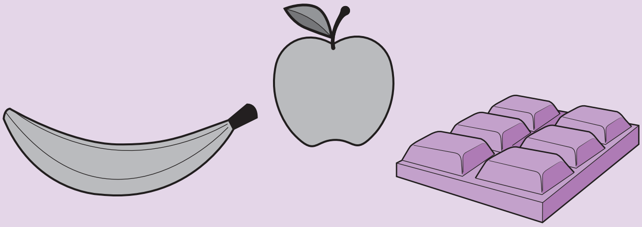
Surgery

UC – *30% require at some time:*

- Types: Panproctocolectomy; permanent ileostomy and ileoanal anastomosis with ileal pouch
- Indications: Toxic megacolon; steroid-resistant disease; chronic (>10 y) or dysplasia

Crohn – *70% require at some time*:

- Types: Limited resection; endoscopic balloon dilatation; abscess drainage
- Indications: Resistant disease; stricture; fistula; tumour
  ☠: Recurrence occurs in 50% by 10 y



COLORECTAL CARCINOMA

Aet

Most colorectal cancers arise from adenomatous polyps, via a succession of mutations:

- K-ras proto-oncogene →
  APC (adenomatous polyposis coli) gene
  - *DCC* (deleted in colon cancer) gene
    → *p53* tumour-suppressor gene

Assoc

Colorectal cancer is often **H.I.D.D.E.N.**

Hereditary

The lifetime risk of developing colorectal cancer is 10% if one first-degree relative <50 y is affected, and 5% if one first-degree relative >50 y is affected. The background risk is 2%.

Familial syndromes (all autosomal dominant)

Hereditary polyposis coli:

- Adenomatous polyposis coli (APC, or familial adenomatous polyposis):
  - 100% patients get carcinoma by 40 years old
  - Due to tumour-suppressor gene (5q-), involved in sporadic cases of adenomatous polyp transformation
- Gardner syndrome
  PC: Colonic polyps + bone tumours (osteomas; sarcomas) + soft tissue tumours (lipomas, sebaceous cysts, dermoid cysts)
- Turcot syndrome:
  PC: Colonic polyps + brain tumours

Hereditary non-polyposis colon cancer (HNPCC)= Lynch syndrome

Def = 3 cases colorectal cancer over 2 generations with at least 1 case <50 years old; Type 1 = colorectal cancer only: <50 years old; usually R-sided; good prognosis; Type 2 = colorectal, gastric, ovarian, endometrial cancer

- 5% of all colorectal cancer; 1/200 population
- Due to mismatch repair gene mutation → microsatellite instability

Hamartomatous polyps syndromes: Polyps affect entire bowel + stomach

- Juvenile polyposis = assoc. various congenital abnormalities
- Peutz–Jeghers syndrome = mucocutaneous pigmentation
  Complications: Obstruction, intussusception → PR bleed, adenoma → carcinoma

Inflammation

Ulcerative colitis: 10% per 10 years; 30% lifetime risk (Crohn disease = less risk)

Coeliac

Infection: *Streptococcus bovis* endocarditis or septicaemia

Diet: Obesity is a risk factor, whereas high fibre diets protect

Diabetes and insulin resistance

Endocrine

Acromegaly

Oestrogen: HRT protects; women less at risk for rectal cancer

Nicotine and alcohol: Both increase risk

NB: NSAIDs, aspirin and COX-2 inhibitors are protective

PC

Approx. relative incidence in each site indicated:

Constitutional
weight loss

Transverse + descending colon

(15%)

Abdominal pain, lower:

- Constant, gnawing: Invasion
- Colic: Obstruction

Obstruction

Perforation → peritonitis
(stool solidifies + ∴ gets stuck)

Sigmoid

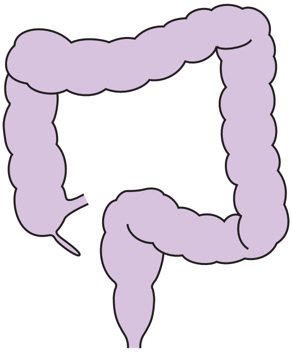
(30%)

Caecum + ascending colon

(15%)

Iron-deficiency anaemia:

- Fatigue, palpitations, angina (stool is liquid + ∴ slips past luminal narrowing)



Rectum

(40%)

Bowel habit alteration
and narrowing of stool caliber
Tenesmus (rectal discomfort,
'incomplete emptying')
Rectal bleeding:
Bright = distal colon–rectum
Dark = proximal colon
O/E: PR mass (rectal–anal cancer)

Anus

(2%)

Painful mass, pruritus, bleeding

Complications

Fistula, e.g. colonic–vesical, colonic–vaginal
Metastases: Liver, bone, lung

Ix

Bloods: FBC: Hb ↓, ferritin ↓, ESR ↑
Urine + faeces: Faecal occult blood – poor sensitivity (intermittent bleeding) + poor specificity (benign polyps)
Monitor: Plasma CEA (carcinoembryonic antigen) – increases on tumour recurrence
Radiol: Double-contrast barium enema: Annular, constricting 'apple-core' lesion
CT pneumocolon: Non-invasive alternative to colonoscopy
CT, liver USS: Staging
Special: Proctosigmoidoscopy (<60 cm) + biopsy
Colonoscopy + snare-biopsy: >95% sensitivity + specificity
Entire colon must be visualized due to risk of >1 polyp

Rx

Surgical:

- Anterior resection: Proximal tumours – colorectal anastomosis with staple gun
- Abdominoperineal (AP) resection : Distal tumours – end-sigmoid colostomy fashioned

Radiotherapy: Given pre-operatively in rectal cancer (recurrence ↓; survival rate ↑)

Chemotherapy: Adjuvant therapy with oxaliplatin or 5-fluorouracil

Palliative: Laser therapy, radiotherapy, chemotherapy

MALABSORPTION

Causes

Wall disease

C^2.R.A.G^2.G.Y^3.

Coeliac disease/**C**rohn disease; other autoimmune – collagenous sprue; scleroderma

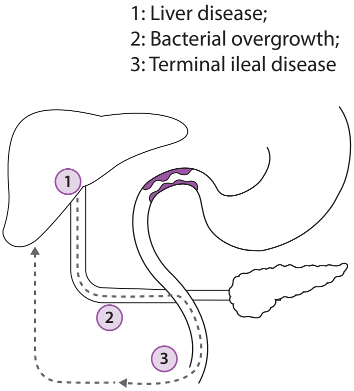
Radiation enteritis

Arterial/venous
  Arterial: Mesenteric ischaemia, e.g. AAA, vasculitis
  Venous hypertension: CCF, constrictive pericarditis

Giardiasis/**G**astroenteritis, other infection
  Salmonella, HIV, TB, protozoa
  Whipple disease (lymphatic infection)

Genetic
  Brush-border disaccharidase deficiency (lactase, maltase)
  Agammaglobulinaemia

Y
  Am**Y**loid
  L**Y**mphoma (incl. coeliac disease); a-heavy-chain disease
  L**Y**mphangectasia



Bile salt circulation ↓

Bile salts combine with fatty acids to form micelles that are essential for fat absorption

1. Liver disease
Hepatocellular failure
Cholestasis

2. Bacterial overgrowth (bacteria deconjugate bile salts)
Structural:
- Strictures, adhesions, fistulae, e.g. Crohn, ischaemia
- Small bowel diverticulae
- Pneumatosis cystoides intestinales
- Blind loops, e.g. gastrojejunostomy

Motility ↓, e.g. scleroderma
Defence impairments:
- Achlorhydria (e.g. long-term PPI)
- Nodular lymphoid hypoplasia
- Agammaglobulinaemia

3. Terminal ileal disease
Crohn, TB, radiation

+ Drugs
Cholestyramine, neomycin, $CaCO_3$

Pancreatic disease

Chronic pancreatitis
Cystic fibrosis
Carcinoma of the pancreas, surgical resection

Other

Endocrine
Gastrinoma, or other APUDoma:
- H^+↑↑ inactivates pancreatic lipase
- Rapid intestinal transit

Systemic**:** Hyper- or hypo T4ism, Addison, DM

Diarrhoea
Any cause of rapid transit, e.g.
  Gastroenteritis
  Drugs: Laxatives
  Surgery: Gastrectomy, duodenojejuno-ileal bypass

PC

Malabsorption symptoms: Carbohydrate, fat, protein, haematinics, vitamins (see p. 132)
Symptoms associated with cause, e.g. abdominal pain due to chronic pancreatitis or strictures

Ix

Bloods: U&Es: Ca, PO_4, Mg, vitamin D ↓
LFT: ALP ↑, albumin ↓, PT ↑
Glucose ↑: Pancreatic or coeliac disease (assoc. DM)
FBC: Micro- or macrocytic anaemia
Film: Megaloblastosis; hyposplenism (e.g. Howell–Jolly bodies) – coeliac disease
Haematinics: Ferritin ↓, Fe ↓, TIBC ↑
Folate ↓ (↑ in bacterial overgrowth due to bacterial synthesis)
Vitamin B12 ↓: Bacterial overgrowth; terminal ileal or pancreatic disease
Special: Amylase ↑ – pancreatic disease; anti-endomysium – coeliac; serum electrophoresis

Urine, faeces: Hyperoxaluria: Bile salt malabsorption
Faecal fat estimation: >6 g/day (pre-treat with 100 g fat/day for 2 days)

Micro: Exclude *Giardia*: Stool cysts, faecal antigen; duodenal aspirate – trophozoites

Monitor: Weights, vitamins

Radiol: Bone X-ray: Looser zones (OM); subperiosteal erosions (2° hyper-PTHism)
Small-bowel enema:

- Jejunal dilatation + flocculation ('snowflakes')
- Blind loops; strictures – bacterial overgrowth

AXR, CT, USS, ERCP – pancreatic disease

Special:

Wall disease

Biopsy, duodenal–jejunal, via OGD, or push enteroscopy:

- Sub-total villous atrophy present in most wall diseases, bacterial overgrowth, gastrinoma
- Other: Amyloid; Whipple (PAS +ve macrophages)

Absorption tests:

- Administer oral D-xylose, lactose or ^{14}C-labelled triolein (triglyceride)
- Measure urine xylose; exhaled H_2 (↑ in lactase deficiency) or CO_2 (↑ in lipase deficiency)

Bile salt circulation↓

Breath tests

- ^{14}C-labelled-glycholate bile salt breath test:
  - Small-bowel bacteria deconjugate glycholate, with resultant CO_2 detectable in breath
  - Terminal ileal disease: Bile salt not absorbed; colonic bacteria deconjugate it to CO_2 in faeces
- H_2 breath test: Bacterial overgrowth: ↑ with fasting; oral glucose – early peak

Duodenal–jejunal aspirate: Shows >10^5 microorganisms/ml and polymicrobial flora
Empirical antibiotics: Coamoxiclav, metronidazole

Pancreatic disease

Faecal elastase – pancreatic exocrine insufficiency

COELIAC DISEASE

Epi

Inc: 1/2000, ↓ due to later introduction of cereals

Age: Any age, but esp. 1–5 y and 20–30 y

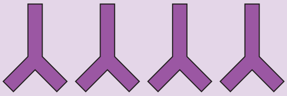
Sex: F>M

Geo: Common in West Ireland (1/300); rare in Afro-Caribbean and Japanese

Aet: Genetic: HLA-B8, DR3 in 80% (cf. 20% general population)
Enzyme deficiency: Pancreatic peptidase; brush border membrane disaccharidase
Mucosal absorption deficit

PC

*Anti-***G.L.I.A.D.I.N.S.**



Gastrointestinal: malabsorption

Carbohydrates:
- N+V; watery diarrhoea
- Abdominal distension + colic
- Flatus, borborygmi (lactose intolerance)

Fat: Due to ↓ bile salt secretion (as cholecystokinin ↓) and bile salt malabsorption
- Steatorrhoea
- Renal stones (hyperoxaluria)

Protein: Due to peptidase deficiency, malabsorption, protein-losing enteropathy (ulcerative jejuno-ileitis)
- Oedema, ascites
- Weight loss, muscular atrophy
- Leuconychia

Haematinics:
- Folate, Fe: Dimorphic anaemia (vitamin B12 deficiency – only occurs late)
- Epithelial atrophy (cheilitis, glossitis, gastric atrophy, koilonychia, alopecia, pruritus)

Vitamins:
- D, Ca, Mg: Tetany, osteomalacia, osteoporosis
- A: Night blindness
- K: Petechiae
- B1 (thiamine): Wernicke encephalopathy; niacin: pellagra

Lymphoma and carcinoma

Lymphoma: Small bowel > other MALToma > extra-intestinal
Adenocarcinoma: Small or large bowel; breast
Squamous cell carcinoma: Oesophageal, oropharynx

Immune abnormalities

Type 1 DM, rheumatoid arthritis, thyroiditis
Infertility: Amenorrhoea, impotence
Inflammatory bowel disease (UC), PBC, PSC

Anaemia

Micro- or macrocytic anaemia + reticulocytosis
Splenic atrophy: Blood film shows Howell–Jolly bodies, acanthocytes, target cells, siderocytes

Dermatological

Dermatitis herpetiformis (IgA deposits in upper dermis and dermo-epidermal junction)
Follicular hyperkeratosis, pigmentation, aphthous ulcers, clubbing

Ig A mesangial nephropathy (and Ig**A** deficiency)

Neurological: Cerebral calcification (epilepsy), spinocerebellar degeneration, peripheral neuropathy

Systemic: Fatigue – 90%

Ix

Bloods: Biochemical: **R.E.A.L.M.S.**

Renal

Electrolytes: Ca, PO_4, Mg, vitamin D ↓

ABG

LFT: ALP ↑, albumin ↓, PT ↑

Metabolic: Glu (DM)

Special: Haematinics: Ferritin ↓, Fe ↓, TIBC ↑, folate ↓

Haematological:

- FBC: Micro- or macrocytic anaemia
- Film: Features of hyposplenism (e.g. Howell–Jolly bodies)
- ESR ↑ or normal

Immune:

- Tissue transaminase
- Anti-endomyseal abs: False –ve: IgA deficiency, adoption of gluten-free diet
- IgA: Majority ↑ (but may be ↓); IgM ↓

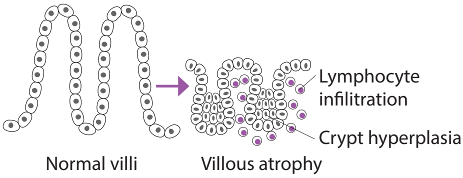
Urine: Haematuria: IgA mesangial glomerulonephritis
Hyperoxaluria: Bile salt malabsorption

Micro: Exclude *Giardia* with: Stool cysts, faecal antigen; duodenal aspirate

Monitor: Weight; new bowel symptoms (risk of neoplasia)

Radiol: Bone X-ray: Looser zones (osteomalacia); subperiosteal erosions (2° hyper-PTHism)
Small-bowel enema: Jejunal dilatation + flocculation ('snowflakes')

Special: OGD-endoscopy: 'scalloping' of duodenal valvulae conniventes; loss of Kerkring duodenal folds
Small-bowel biopsy (via OGD; push-enteroscopy or Crosby capsule) subtotal/total villous atrophy, reversible after 3–6 month gluten-free diet



+ permeability test, tissue transglutaminase, disaccharidase activity

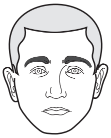
Pancreatic function tests deranged; bacterial overgrowth test normal

Rx

Diet: Gluten-free diet

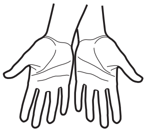
B.R.O.W.

AVOID flour from:



Barley (hordein)
Rye (secalin)
Oats (avenin)
Wheat (α-gliadin)

ACCEPTABLE
M.O.R.E.



Maize
Oats (some tolerated)
Rice
Extra: Fibre
Vitamins, Ca, Fe, folate

Failure to respond (Ix: Repeat Bx after 3 months):

- Non-compliance (lesions return within 8–12 h of gluten-diet resumption)
- Resistant coeliac
- Complication: Lymphoma, ulcerative jejuno-ileitis, intestinal stricture
- Wrong diagnosis, e.g. hypolactasia

Medical:

- Corticosteroids, azathioprine – for those who have a poor response to gluten-free diet
- Dapsone – for dermatitis
  ☠ Herpetiformis; headache; haemolysis; methaemoglobinaemia

Surgical: For lymphoma or ulcerative jejuno-ileitis

ACUTE PANCREATITIS

PATH

Pancreatic duct blocks off, causing activation of proteases and lipases within pancreas
Histology shows oedema, fat necrosis and haemorrhage

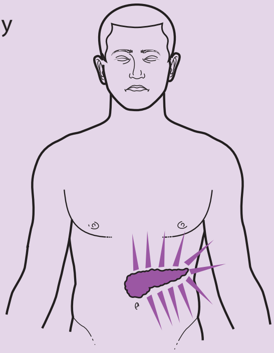
Causes

A.G.I.T.A^2.T.E.S. M.E.

Alcohol
  Increases viscosity of pancreatic juice, thereby forming inspissated protein plugs in ducts
  Can occur with chronic consumption or one-off binge
Gallstones
  Large stones (wide cystic duct) block common biliary–pancreatic duct
  Stones may be recovered in faeces, several days after
  So-called 'idiopathic' pancreatitis may be caused by transient biliary sludge

80%

Iatrogenic or trauma
  ERCP
  Surgery: May occur after any operation, but especially Polya gastrectomy
  Trauma – blunt abdominal
Triglyceridaemia, hyper
  Triglycerides >10 mol/l, incl. DM
Autoimmune or **A**rterial
  Autoimmune: Vasculitis, Sjögren
  Arterial: Atherosclerosis, hypotension
Toxin
  Azathioprine, anti-HIV, tetracycline, valproate
Electrolytes
  Hypercalcaemia
Structural
  Pancreatic carcinoma, sphincter of Oddi dysfunction, pancreas divisum



Mumps
  Or viral hepatitis, EBV, CMV, enteroviruses, mycoplasma
O**E**strogens **–** oral contraceptive pill

PC

P.A.N.C.R^3.E.A.S.

Pain
  Acute, severe, epigastric pain, radiates to back
  Relieved by sitting up and flexing trunk
  Assoc. N+V, abdominal distension, jaundice (pancreatic head compresses bile duct)
ABP ↓
  Third-space sequestration: Blood and plasma protein accumulate retroperitoneally
  Vasodilator release: Kinins, proteases, lipases
  Septic shock: Coliforms, *Candida*
  Haemorrhage: Gastritis, varices from portal vein thrombosis, DIC
Necrosis
  Pancreatic necrosis:

- Cullen's sign = faint blue umbilicus (haemoperitoneum)
- Grey-Turner's sign = purple-brown flanks due to catabolism of tissue Hb

  Panniculitis = subcutaneous nodules due to fat necrosis
Calcium and **C**ardiac arrhythmias, due to Ca↓, 2° to fat necrosis
Renal: Acidosis, AKI
Respiratory: Hypoxia, left-sided pleural effusion, ARDS
Retinopathy or encephalopathy
Endocrine: Hyperglycaemia
Abscess or pseudocyst
  Occurs after 4 weeks
  Pseudocyst = necrotic fluid in lesser sac (fistula with pancreas)
  Complications: Rupture (MR = 15%) or haemorrhage (MR = 60%)
Stricture

Ix

Bloods:	Amylase >1000 iU/l: Non-specific and may normalize after few days Pancreas-type isoamylase, lipase, trypsin elevation: More specific and remain high for weeks
Radiol:	Contrast-enhanced CT

Poor prognostic features

A.C.U.T.E.

ABGs: pO_2 <8 kPa	**A**lbumin <30 g/l
Ca^{2+} <2 mmol/l	**C**RP > 150 mg/l; WBC ↑↑
Urea >16 mmol/l	**U**rine output <50 ml/h
Transaminases (AST >200 U/l)	**T**rypsinogen activation pepetide (urine) ↑
Elderly, obese	**E**xtra: LDH, haematocrit ↑

Rx

Routine:

- NGT: 'Drip + Suck'
- IV cefuroxime + metronidazole
- Analgesics
- Bowel rest

Surgical: Debridement for necrosis

CHRONIC PANCREATITIS

PATH

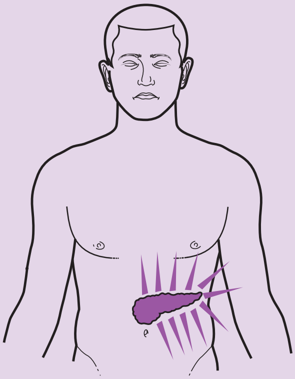
Caused by recurrent clinical or subclinical episodes of acute pancreatitis

Similar causes to acute pancreatitis, **except that** gallstones do not cause it because cholecystectectomy is normally performed after 1st attack!

Causes

A.G.I.T.A.T.E.S.

Alcohol
Genetic
  Hereditary pancreatitis (autosomal dominant)
  Cystic fibrosis
  Haemochromatosis
  α_1-antitrypsin deficiency
Iatrogenic
  Gastrectomy
Triglyceridaemia
Autoimmune
Toxin
  Excess cassava (tropical)
  Protein–calorie malnutrition
Enzyme deficiency, isolated
  Trypsinogen, enterokinase, lipase, amylase
  Results in specific nutrient malabsorption
Strucural
  Stricture
  Pancreatic or duodenal cancer
  Congenital: Pancreas divisum, choledochal cyst

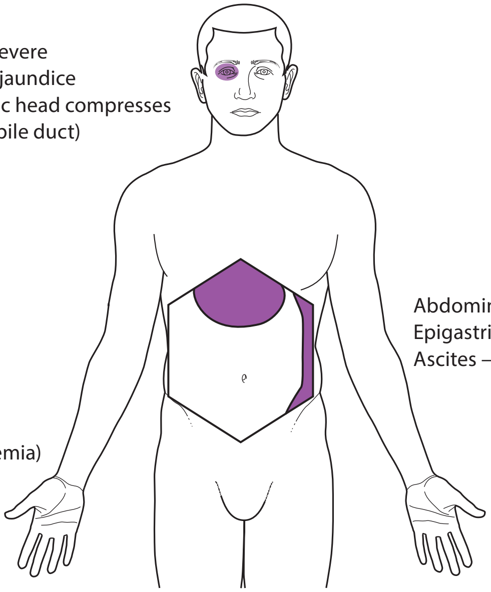


PC

Abdominal pain
Timing: Intermittent (due to duct obstruction) or constant (due to inflammation or duodenal ulcers secondary to ↓ HCO_3 secretion)
Location: Epigastric radiating to back; may present as chest or flank pain
Severity: May be severe enough to result in opiate abuse
Exacerbation: ↑ by fatty food or alcohol (therefore encouraging anorexia)

Steatorrhoea
Stool pale, offensive, bulky, doesn't flush
Profuse: >35 g/day (cf. coeliac: 20–30 g/day; normal <6 g/day)
Malabsorption of fat-soluble vitamins + protein less problematic

O/E



Cachexia – severe
Obstructive jaundice
(pancreatic head compresses common bile duct)

Abdominal tenderness
Epigastric mass – pseudocyst
Ascites – pancreatico-peritoneal fistula

leuconychia
(hypoalbuminaemia)

Ix

Bloods: CRP, WBC, ALT ↑↑
Urine or faeces: Faecal elastase <100 mm/mg stool; faecal fat collection >6 g/day
Radiol: PAXR, USS: Calcification
CT: Pseudocyst
ERCP: Differentiates pancreatitis from carcinoma but 3% risk of acute pancreatitis!
Special: Duodenal aspirate following 'Lundh meal' or secretin stimulation

Rx

Diet:

- Low-fat; high-carbohydrate; protein supplements; fat-soluble vitamins
- Alcohol abstinence

Medical:

- Pancreatic enzyme supplements
- Proton-pump inhibitor due to risk of duodenal ulcers
- Oral hypoglycaemics or insulin

Surgical:

- Sphincteroplasty
- Lateral pancreatico-jejunostomy
- Pancreatectomy – distal or Whipple, with coeliac ganglion block

JAUNDICE

Causes

Pre-hepatic

Excess bilirubin production

Haemolytic anaemia
Inefficient erythropoiesis, e.g. pernicious anaemia, thalassaemia
Haematoma

Hepatic

Unconjugated hyperBRaemia

Bilirubin uptake
Hereditary: Gilbert syn. (AD)
- EPI: 5% pop., esp. young men
- PC: Malaise on fasting or illness
- Rx: Phenobarbitone (liver inducer)

Fasting, acidosis
Toxins: Rifampicin, aspirin

↓Conjugation
(BR-UDP-glucuronyl transferase ↓)
Children:
- Crigler- Najjar syndrome:
  - Type I severe (AR); II mild (AR)

Neonates/breast milk
Hypothyroidism

Conjugated hyperBRaemia

↓ Bilirubin excretion
Hereditary
- Dubin–Johnson syndrome (AR):
  - Canalicular membrane carrier defect
  - Black liver due to catecholamine metabolite accumulation
  - PC: Recurrent jaundice, asymptomatic
- Rotor syndrome (AD):
  - Decreased uptake, storage, conjugation
  - Normal liver colour
  - Much rarer
- Diffuse hepatocellular disease (can also cause unconjugated hyperBRaemia)

Post-hepatic

Intrahepatic obstruction

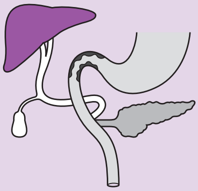
I.N.T.R.A.H.E.P.A.T.i.C.

Infection: Systemic, HIV, abscess
Neoplasia: 1° or metastases
Toxins:
  Chlorpromazine (+ tricyclic antidepressants)
  Chlorpropamide, carbimazole, Ca-antagonists, carbamazepine
  Cloxacillin (+ erythromycin estolate, augmentin, rifampicin)
  Cyclosporin (+ azathioprine)
Roids - steroids:
  Anabolic steroids, contraceptive pill
Autoimmune: PBC, UC, coeliac
Hepatitis – icteric stage
Endocrine: Thyrotoxicosis/DM
  Obesity/malnutrition/TPN
Pregnancy
Amyloid
Transplant
Cholangitis, sclerosing

Extrahepatic obstruction

Biliary system
Stricture:
  Post-cholecystitis
  (Mirizzi's syn.) or
  ERCP
Carcinoma:
- Cholangiocarcinoma, incl. Klatskin ca. (bifurcation of common hepatic duct)
- Gall bladder carcinoma

Calculus
Congenital:
- Choledochal cyst
- Caroli's disease



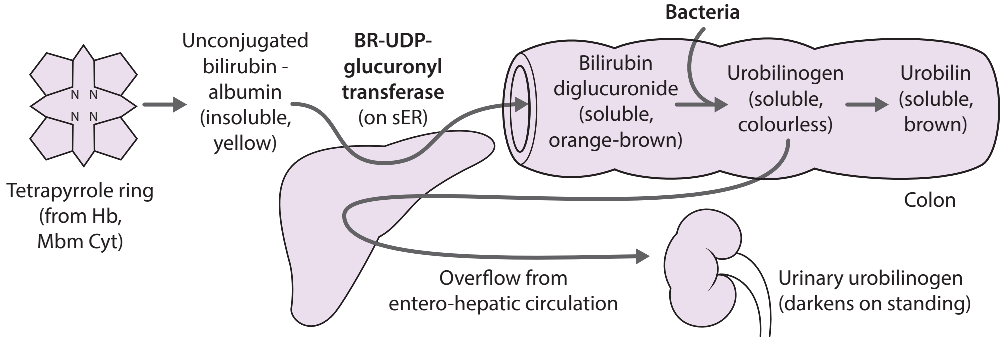
Stomach-duodenum
Gastric carcinoma
  porta hepatis lymphadenopathy
Ampullary/duodenal carcinoma

Other
Retroperitoneal fibrosis

Pancreas
Carcinoma
Pancreatitis or pseudocyst

Physiology

Normal bilirubin (BR) = 3–17 μmol/l. Jaundice occurs with levels >51 μmol/l (i.e. 3× ULN)


N N N N
Tetrapyrrole ring (from Hb, Mbm Cyt)
Unconjugated bilirubin - albumin (insoluble, yellow)
BR-UDP-glucuronyl transferase (on sER)
Bacteria
Bilirubin diglucuronide (soluble, orange-brown)
Urobilinogen (soluble, colourless)
Urobilin (soluble, brown)
Colon
Overflow from entero-hepatic circulation
Urinary urobilinogen (darkens on standing)

PC

	Urine	Stool	Other
Pre-hepatic	Dark: • Urobilinogen ↑ • Haemoglobinuria (if intravascular haemolysis)	Dark: Urobilin ↑	Pale conjunctivae; leg ulcers
Hepatic	Dark: Conjugated BR ↑ *(not Unconjugated hyperBRaemia)*	Pale: Urobilin ↓ due to partial cholestasis	Portal hypertension: Varices, ascites, encephalopathy
Post-hepatic	Dark: Conjugated BR↑	Pale: Urobilin ↓ fat malabsorption (steatorrhoea)	Pruritus; abdominal pain

Ix

	Urine	LFTs	Other
Pre-hepatic	BR nil ('acholuric') Urobilinogen ↑ Intravascular haemolysis: • Haemoglobinuria • Haemosiderinuria • Methaemalbuminuria	BR unconjugated↑ AST↑ LDH↑	FBC and film Reticulocytes: Normal – 1–2% a_2-haptoglobin (intravascular) Causes: • Hb electrophoresis • Direct Coombs' test
Hepatic	BR ↑ Urobilinogen ↓ Unconjugated hyperBRaemia: As for Pre-hepatic, except urobilinogen ↓	BR conjugated ↑ ALT ↑ ↑ ALP ↑ icteric stage GGT ↑ ↑ Function: Alb ↓, PT ↑ Unconjugated hyperBRaemia: BR unconjugated ↑	Anaemia: Normocytic, chromic Film: Target, spur, burr cells Causes: MCV↑; paracetamol levels; anti-LKM, ANA, ANCA; serology; liver USS + Doppler a_1,-AT, caeruloplasmin, ferritin
Post-hepatic	BR↑ Urobilinogen↓	As for Hepatic, except ALP ↑ ↑ greater than ALT ↑	Abdominal USS, ERCP, CT AMA, ANCA

LIVER FAILURE

PC

Jaundice + its associated features:

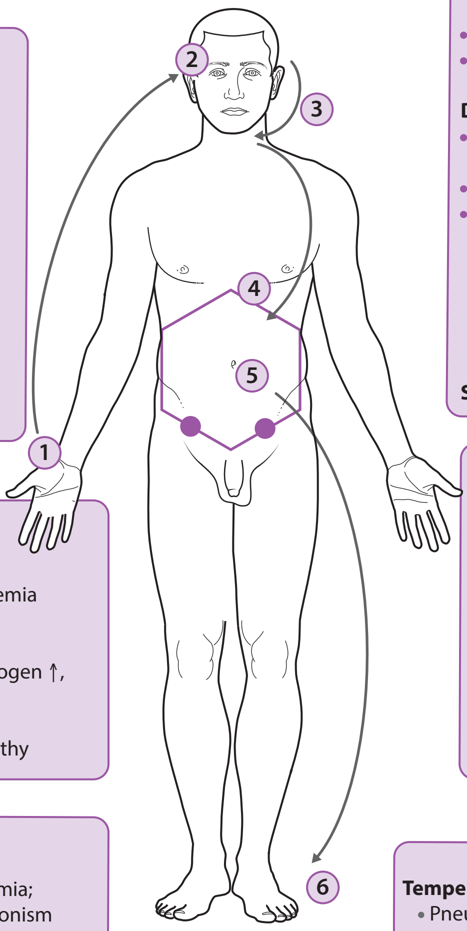
Hepatic: Dark urine (conjugated BR↑), pale stool (urobilin ↓ due to partial cholestasis)

Post-hepatic: Dark urine, pale stool-steatorrhea (fat malabsorption), pruritus

Portal hypertension: Varices, ascites – peripheral oedema, encephalopathy

Underlying cause features, e.g. nausea, fever (hepatitis); paraesthesia, delusions (alcoholism)

O/E



1. Hands

Nails:
- Clubbing: Cirrhosis
- Leuconychia: Hypoalbuminaemia

Palms:
- Dupuytren contracture
- Palmar erythema due to oestrogen ↑, SHBG ↑

Hand flap (asterixis):
Early Sx of hepatic encephalopathy

2. Face

Eyes:
- Jaundiced sclerae (BR >50 /µmol/l)
- Pallor:
  - Varices, marrow aplasia
  - Haemolysis (lemon-yellow facies)
- Hyperlipidaemia: Xanthelasma, arcus cornealis, tendinous xanthomas

Parotid enlargement

Breath: Hepatic fetor – sweet + sickly smell

3. Neck

JVP
↓: Hypovolaemia
↑: Cardiac cause

4. Trunk

Spider naevi:
- Central arteriole that blanches ands fills from centre
- >7 in SVC distribution
- Skin appears 'paper-money' thin

Demasculinisation:
- Gynaecomastia = breast tissue around nipple
- Testicular atrophy
- Loss of 2° sexual hair (axillary; pubic; legs):
  - All due to testosterone ↓, oestrogen ↑ , sex hormone binding
  - Also haemochromatosis (hypogonadism)

Scratch marks

5. Abdomen

Hepatomegaly

Portal hypertension:
- Dilated superficial abdominal veins, caput medusa, venous hum
- Ascites
- Splenomegaly
- Encephalopathy: Visuospatial deficits + apraxia

6. Feet

Oedema due to:
- Hypoalbuminaemia;
- 2° hyperaldosteronism

Peripheral neuropathy, esp. ↓ ankle jerks, ↓ vibration sense

Gout (esp. 1st MTP) due to alcohol, acidosis

7. AND FINALLY...

Temperature:
- Pneumonia, TB, meningitis (strep.)
- Peritonitis (coliforms)

Weight chart:
- Salt retention (ascites, oedema)

Urine dip: Haematuria:
- UTI, ATN, coagulopathy

Ix

Bloods:

Biochemistry

R.E.A.L.M.S.

Renal: Urea ↓, creatinine ↑. Hepato-renal syndrome: due to impaired prostaglandin synthesis and over-activation of sympathetic system, RAAS and ADH → renal vasoconstriction and pre-renal renal failure

Electrolytes:

- Na$^+$, K$^+$ ↓: Secondary hyperaldosteronism due to hypovolaemia
- Ca^{2+} ↓, Mg^{2+} ↓, vitamin D ↓ due to vitamin D malabsorption; 0 25-α-hydroxylation of cholecalciferol
- Ammonium ↑: Hepatic encephalopathy
- Uric acid ↑ due to acidosis; purine metabolism ↑

ABGs: Metabolic acidosis, esp. with alcoholism, due to:

- NADH/NAD$^+$ ↑ → pyruvate converts to lactate
- Hypoglycaemia → lipolysis → ketoacidosis
- Hypoxia, due to pulmonary shunts → TLCO ↓

LFTs: BR ↑, ALT ↑, ALP ↑, GGT ↑, Alb ↓

Metabolic: Glucose ↓ due to:

- Glycogen storage ↓
- Gluconeogenesis ↓ (esp. alcoholism: NADH/NAD$^+$ ↑)
- Malnutrition:

Cholesterol ↑: Cholestasis; triglycerides ↑: alcoholism, hepatitis due to:

  - Zone 3 necrosis;
  - LCAT and TAG lipase ↓;
  - Abnormal LDL (lipoprotein X) – cholestasis

Special: AFP ↑: Hepatoma

Causes of liver failure:

- Toxicology screen, esp. paracetamol; save serum; urine; gastric aspirate
- Transferrin saturation ↑ (haemochromatosis), caeruloplasmin ↓ (Wilson), α_1-AT ↓

Haematology Hb ↓ + macrocytosis + film: Target cells, acanthocytes, spur cells, ringed sideroblasts – anaemia due to:

- Marrow suppression + erythropoeitin insensitivity
- Haemolysis: Hypersplenism; alcohol ↑ cholesterol in RBC membrane
- Iron or folate deficiency, e.g. varices, malnutrition

WBC ↓, frequent infections – pneumonia, TB, spontaneous bacterial peritonitis

Plts ↓ due to hypersplenism, ITP (also, abnormal platelet function)

PT ↑ due to: vitamin K deficiency; synthesis ↓ + activation ↓; DIC

G&S; X-match if anaemic; varices; liver biopsy

Immunology: ANA, Rh factor, AMA, LKM – autoimmune hepatitis

Micro:	Blood cultures: MSU Sputum Ascitic tap LP (stain for AA FB, for all) Serology: HBV, HCV, HDV
Monitor:	Glucose: 4 hourly if encephalopathic Daily weights
ECG:	Sx. of hypokalaemia ECHO: Right-sided heart failure
Radiol:	CXR: Pneumonia or TB; pulmonary oedema; cardiomegaly (RSH failure) USS: Cirrhosis; hepatoma; ascites
Special	Endoscopy: Varices Liver biopsy

MANAGEMENT

Airway – Breathing

Airway:

- Clean vomit, loose teeth
- Cuffed endotracheal tube
- Nasogastric tube, if vomiting

Oxygen: 60%

Ventilation if comatose

Assessment

The three Gs

Glasgow coma scale
Glucose – BM stick
Group and save,
X-match 4 units

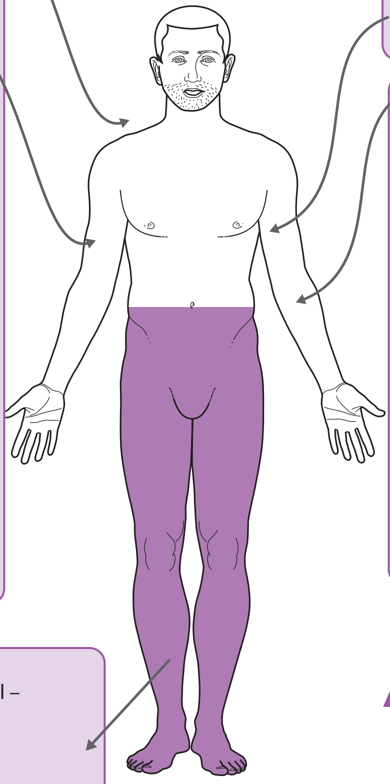
C.O.A.T.

Cardiac monitor
O2 sats
ABP, CVP line
TPR

Investigations

Bloods, e.g. K^+ ↓, ABGs
Urine: Na, osmolality ↓
Micro: Blood cultures; serology
Monitor fluid balance:
Daily weights, girth, urine catheter, NG-aspirate, ascitic taps
ECG
Radiology: CXR,
Abdominal USS
Special: OGD, EEG, liver biopsy

1. Urgent endoscopy, if:
    - Varices suspected
2. ITU transfer, if:
    - Drowsy or comatose
    - Major haemorrhage
3. Liver transplant



Hydration

Salt restriction and depletion:

- Fluid intake <1 l/day
- Spironolactone, furosemide
- Low-dose dopamine or haemodialysis if ARF

Fluids:

- Dextrose 5–50%, depending on BM, + KCl
- Salt-free albumin if ABP ↓
- Packed red cells, platelets, FFPs – if haemorrhage
- Mannitol – cerebral oedema

Drugs

Vitamins:

- Thiamine (B 1) – esp. alcoholics
- Vit B12, C – esp. alcoholics
- Vit K, FFP – for coagulopathy

Laxatives:

- Lactulose – lowers NH4
- MgS04 enemas – aim for 2 soft stools/day

Ulcer prophylaxis:

Omeprazole; sucralfate NGT

±

Broad-spectrum antibiotics,

e.g. ampicillin + gentamicin + metronidazole

Anti-convulsants:

Diazepam; phenytoin

Steroids based on Madri index,

i.e. give if bilirubin and PT ↑↑

Specific

Toxin overdose: Paracetamol – N-acetylcysteine
Autoimmune: Steroids, AZA
B: HBV, HCV – Interferon-α
Occlusive anti-coagulation
Syndromes:
- Haemochromatosis – venesection
- Wilson's – penicillamine

At home

Avoid alcohol;
refer for counselling
Avoid:
NSAIDs,
sedatives,
high-protein meals

LIVER TRANSPLANT

Indications

General

End-stage liver failure must be apparent, despite best medical therapy:

- Cholestasis: Pruritus, osteomalacia
- Portal hypertension: Varices, ascites
- LFTs: BR >150 µmol/l, albumin <30 g/l, PT >5 s

No other organ failure – i.e. patient survival is good if liver corrected. Hence, those with acute liver failure who are systemically unwell have a poorer 2-year survival rate (acute 70%, cf. chronic 90%)

Cause of liver failure does not predispose to recurrence in graft

Specific indications for liver transplant **T.A.B.O^2.O^2.S.**

Toxins

Drugs, e.g. paracetamol overdose, isoniazid or halothane idiosyncratic reactions

Chronic alcoholism, if:

- Child grade C cirrhosis
- Abstinent for >6 months

Autoimmune: Good survival rate due to disease not recurring (CAH) or uncommonly recurring (PBC)

B: Infections: Hep **B**, C, D:

- Hep B: Poor success rate (50%) due to extrahepatic replication and graft infection; must be e Ag –ve and HBV DNA –ve, and pre-treat with IFN + lamivudine
- Hep C: Good success rate due (90%) to recurrence of hepatitis being only mild
- Hep D: Intermediate success rate as Hep D prevents Hep B re-infection

Occlusive venous disease: Budd–Chiari syndrome

Obstetric: Fatty liver of pregnancy

Obstruction: PSC, biliary atresia; PSC has poor success rate due to infection and recurrent bile duct strictures

Oncology: Hepatoma – poor success rate due to tumour recurrence:

Indications:

- Fibrolamellar variant (metastasize late)
- Tumour size <5 cm
- AFP –ve

Syndromes **W.A.T.C.H.**

Wilson; α_1-**A**nti-trypsin deficiency; **T**yrosinaemia, galactosaemia, glycogen storage disease

Cystic fibrosis; **H**aemochromatosis (latter two are not cured by liver transplant)

Complications

Graft failure:

- Primary: Poor donor organ; hepatic vessel thrombosis <2 days: Rx = re-transplantation
- Acute: Immune 5–30 days: Rx = ↑immunosuppression
- Chronic: Shrinking bile ducts 1–3 months: Rx = re-transplantation

Infection:

- Opportunistic (from immunosuppression), e.g. PCP, *Candida*
- CMV or HSV reactivation from donor/host: Use prophylactic aciclovir

Recurrence of underlying condition, esp. infective hepatitis, hepatocellular carcinoma

PORTAL HYPERTENSION

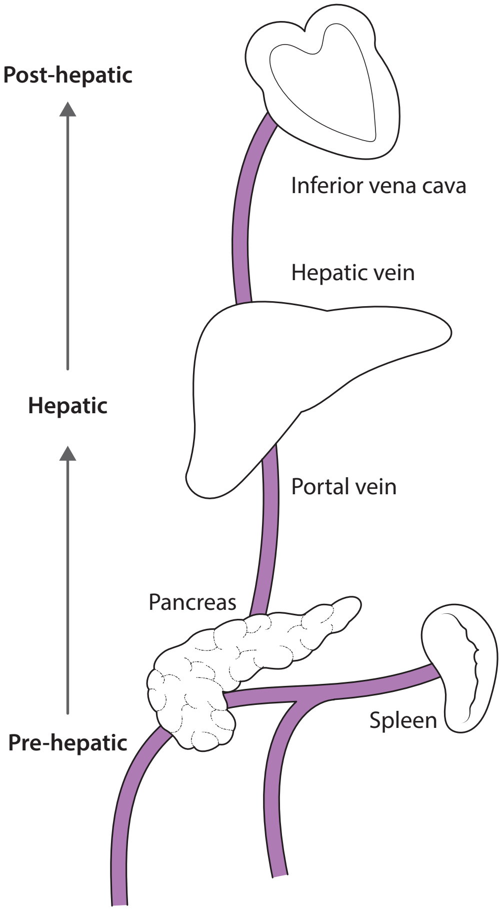
Def

Resting portal venous pressure >12 mmHg (may be up to 50 mmHg)

Causes

Right-sided heart failure
Budd–Chiari syndrome (hepatic venous thrombosis)
Granulomas in hepatic veins:
- Schistosomiasis (Banti syndrome)
- TB
- Sarcoidosis

Cirrhosis or fatty infiltration (e.g. alcohol)
Acute liver failure
Hepatocellular carcinoma


Post-hepatic
Inferior vena cava
Hepatic vein
Hepatic
Portal vein
Pancreas
Spleen
Pre-hepatic

Portal vein thrombosis due to:

P.I.N.C.H.E.S.

Pancreatic: Chronic pancreatitis, pseudocyst carcinoma
Inflammation: Diverticulitis, appendicitis, colitis, haemorrhoids
Neoplasia: GIT, pancreas, cholangiocarcinoma
Congenital: Atresia, AVM
Haematological: Prothrombotic state
Exogenous: Trauma, surgery
Splenomegaly, massive due to excess blood flow

PC

Varices + other porto-systemic collaterals

Oesophageal varices
Occur in 2/3 of cirrhotics; 50% will die of them
Due to dilated venules between oesophageal (→ azygos vein) and left, and short gastric veins (→ portal vein)

Haemorrhoids
Worsens existing piles, but does not cause
Due to dilated venules between inferior, middle rectal (systemic) and superior rectal veins (portal)

Caput medusa
Dilated venules emerge radially from umbilicus, superficial abdominal veins enlarge, venous hum (Cruveilhier–Baumgarten syndrome)
Due to dilated venules between superficial epigastic, lateral thoracic (systemic) and umbilical (portal) veins

Surgical bleeding
Risk increased due to dilated venules between retroperitoneal, and diaphragmatic veins (systemic) and portal vein

Ascites + other oedema

Ascites, due to:

- Back-pressure → fluid exudation
- Hyperaldosteronism, due to hypoalbuminaemia and reduced aldosterone catabolism

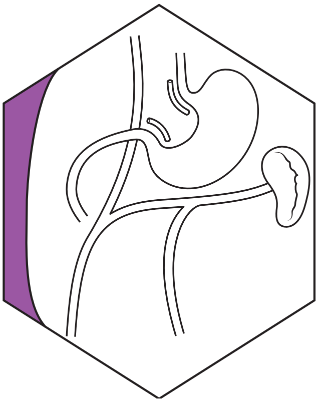
Pleural effusion, esp. on R side
Ankle oedema

Splenomegaly

Due to back-pressure (congestive) or functional hypersplensim (i.e. cause of portal HT)

Hepatomegaly

If post-hepatic venous obstruction or hepatic inflammation or hepatic infiltration



Cause

Encephalopathy

Diversion of GIT toxic metabolites, e.g. NH_4^+, cyclic amino acids, mercaptans, indoles away from liver into IVC directly

Precipitants:

H.E.I.G.h.T.e.N. *RISK*

Haemorrhage, e.g. varices
Electrolytes: Na^+↓, K^+↓
Infection: Spontaneous bacterial peritonitis, any other infection
Glucose↓, incl. low-calorie diet
Toxins: Diuretics, sedatives, anaesthetics, alcohol
Neoplasia: Hepatocellular carcinoma

PC

F.A.C².E².

Flap, dystonia
Ataxia, dysarthria, ophthalmoplegia
Confusion, **C**onstruction a praxia, inverted sleep pattern
Epilepsy; o**E**dema, cerebral

Ix

Bloods:	Elevated plasma ammonia Plasma bile acid ↑
EEG:	High-voltage, slow-wave form

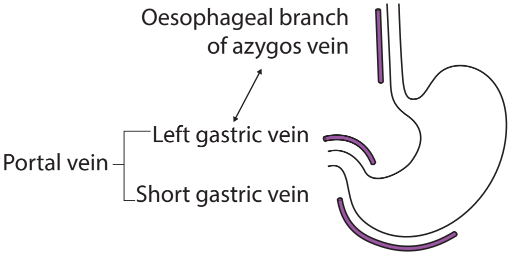
Rx

- Remove cause, e.g. IV glucose if hypoglycaemic; IV colloid if hypovolaemic; IV antibiotics if sepsis
- Lactulose: Aim for bowel opening 2–3 times per day

OESOPHAGEAL VARICES

Def

Dilated venules between oesophageal (systemic) and gastic (portal) veins, due to portal hypertension (see p. 156 for causes)



PC

Asymptomatic, e.g. identified on screening by endoscopy or barium meal
Massive haematemesis, hypovolaemic shock: Precipitated by erosion; food bolus; vomit; rise in portal venous pressure
Hepatic encephalopathy: Precipitated by GIT haemorrhage

Ix

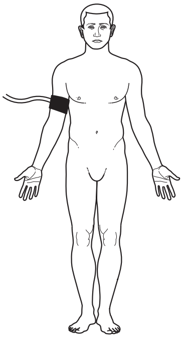
Bloods: U&E: Urea ↑ (blood digestion), creatinine ↑ (AKI), Na ↓ (RAAS activation)
LFT/clotting: Risk indicator (see below)
FBC: Hb ↓ Plt ↓
ABGs: Lactic acidosis
Glucose ↓
Urine: Na ↓: Hepato-renal syndrome
Micro: Blood, urine and ascitic culture: Spontaneous bacterial peritonitis (Gram –ve)
ECG
Radiol: CXR: Aspiration pneumonitis
Abdominal USS: Ascites, hepatomegaly, hepatocellular carcinoma – hepatic or portal vein thrombosis (use duplex USS)
Tc-scintigram: In Budd–Chiari syndrome liver shows ↓ activity, except in the central caudate lobe due to different venous drainage
Special: OGD endoscopy

Severity markers (Child–Pugh Score)

I need **A.N. A.B.P.**:
Ascites
Neurological: Encephalopathy

Albumin ↓
Bilirubin ↑
Prothrombin time ↑

Used to assess operative risk



Rx

Airway – Breathing

Airway:
- Clean vomit, loose teeth
- Cuffed endotracheal tube,
- Nasogastric tube, if vomiting

Oxygen: 60%

Ventilation if comatose

1. Urgent endoscopy, if:
    - Varices suspected
2. ITU transfer, if:
    - Drowsy or comatose
    - Major haemorrhage
3. Liver transplant

Hydration

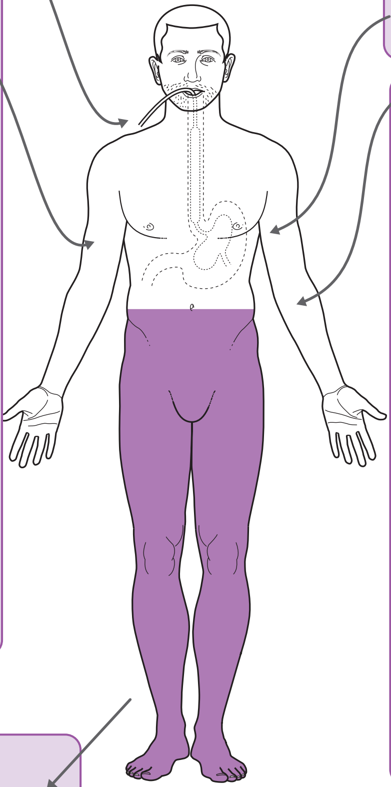
- Dextrose 50%, 50 ml if 'hypo'
- Colloid, preferably salt-free
- Packed red cells:
  - Initially: O Rhesus -ve or grouped blood
  - Later: X-matched blood
  - ☠: Ca ↓, K^+ ↑, pH ↑, temp. ↓
- Fresh frozen plasma (2 units), platelets (5 units), Vit K (10 mg IV)

Assessment

The three Gs
Glasgow coma scale
Glucose – BM stick
Group and save,
  X-match 4 units

C.O.A.T.
Cardiac monitor
02 sats
ABP, CVP line
TPR

Investigations
Bloods: incl. FBC, clotting,
  urea ↑, K^+ ↓, ABGs
Urine: Na, osmolality
Micro: Cultures; serology
Monitor fluid balance:
  CVP: Aim for 5-15 cm H_20
  UO: Aim for >30 ml/h
ECG
Radiology: CXR,
  Abdominal USS
Special: OGO



Drugs

Splanchnic vasoconstrictor
- Terlipressin (glypressin) IV or vasopressin IV: mortality rate ↓ by 1/3
  ☠: Coronary vasospasm, skin or gut necrosis, hypertension (for vasopressin: use GTN patch)
- Octreotide IV = (somatostatin analogue)

Laxatives
- Lactulose (laxative + probiotic) + $MgS0_4$ (oral + enemas) + neomycin (↓ NH_4^+formation) ↓ 'blood meal' + encephalopathy

Metoclopramide 20 mg iv, ranitidine, PPI or sucralfate
  Metoclopramide ↑ lower oesophageal pressure and ↓ azygos blood flow

Antibiotics: Ceftriaxone IV

Thiamine

Specific

Endoscopy: Injection
  sclerotherapy;
  ethanolamine or thrombin
Balloon tamponade:
  <12 h to avoid ischaemia
Radiological embolisation
T.I.P.S.S.:
  Transjugular
  intrahepatic
  porto-systemic shunt
Surgical:
  Transgastric
  oesophageal stapling;
  distal oesophagectomy

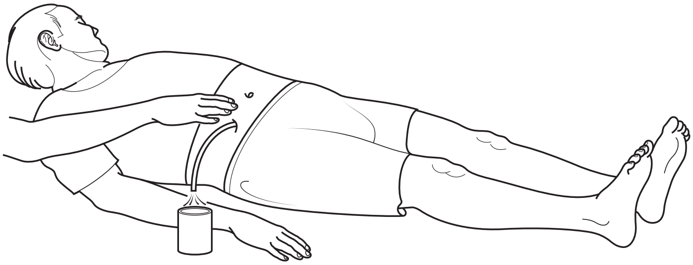
Prophylaxis

Propranolol or octreotide SC:
  Reduce portal pressure by more than systemic
Endoscopy:
  Rubber-band ligation
Surgery:
  Gastric vein ligation;
  porto-caval shunt

ASCITES

Causes

P.A.T. P.I.N.T.S



Transudate (protein <30 g/l):

Portal hypertension
- Pre-hepatic: Right-sided heart failure, schistosomiasis (NB: Budd–Chiari syndrome: exudate!)
- Hepatic: Cirrhosis, acute liver failure
- Pre-hepatic: Pancreatic disease, inflammation, neoplasia, congenital

Albumin ↓
- Malnutrition, malabsorption, protein-losing enteropathy
- Cirrhosis
- Nephrosis

Thyroxine ↓

Exudate (protein >40 g/l, plus WBCs, RBCs):

Pancreatitis
- Acute pancreatitis: Bloody and yellow-white flecks of fat necrosis
- Chronic pancreatitis: Purulent
- Ix: Amylase ↑

Infection
- TB (high protein content)
- Peritonitis (purulent)

Neoplasia
- 1° peritoneal: Mesothelioma, pseudomyxoma peritonei
- 1° visceral:
  - Colonic or ovarian cancer, ovarian fibroma (Meig syndrome)
  - Hepatoma
- 2°, e.g. breast. Ix: Cytology +ve

Thrombosis, hepatic vein: Budd–Chiari syndrome. Ix: Venography or Tc-scintigraphy showing caudate lobe sparing

Severe pain: Ectopic pregnancy, abdominal aortic aneurysm, trauma. Ix: Bloody tap on all of 3 attempts

PC

Weight + girth ↑
Peritonitis: Gram –ve, esp. if protein <10 g/l

O/E

Abdominal circumference
Shifting dullness
Fluid thrill

Ix

Bloods: Na, albumin ↓ (may precede oedema)
Urine: Na ↓
Monitor: Daily weights
Micro: Ascitic tap culture; also send for:
  - Chemistry: Protein, glucose, lactate, amylase
  - Cytology

Blood cultures
Radiol: USS – confirms diagnosis and allows drain site to be marked
CXR
MRI, MRV, hepatic and portal venography

Rx

General

Conservative:

- Salt (fluid) restrict
- Bed rest

Diuretic: Spironolactone ± loop
Drain (paracentesis) + IV albumin replacement

Specific

Portal hypertension: TIPSS
Malignant ascites:

- Intraperitoneal bleomycin
- Le-Veen shunt: Subcutaneous catheter connects to internal jugular vein, via 1-way valve

ACUTE LIVER FAILURE – CAUSES

T.A.B.O^2.O^2.S^2.!

Toxins
  - Alcohol, and other poisons
  - Drug overdose
  - Idiosyncratic

Autoimmune hepatitis
  - Classical lupoid
  - LKM +ve
  - SLA +ve

B: hepatitis virus + other infections
  - Viral: Hepatitis A–G, herpes group (esp. EBV, CMV), measles, yellow fever
  - Bacterial: Leptospirosis
  - Protozoal: Malaria, toxoplasmosis

Occlusion/**O**bstruction
  - Hepatic vein thrombosis: Budd–Chiari syndrome
  - Ischaemic hepatitis: Hepatic artery thromboembolism, or profound hypotension
  - Obstructive jaundice

Obstetric
  - Acute fatty liver of pregnancy
  - Cholestasis of pregnancy
  - HELLP syndrome (haemolytic anaemia + elevated liver enzymes + low platelets)

Oncology
  - Massive malignant infiltration
  - Lymphoma

Syndrome/**S**torage disease
  - Reye syndrome
  - Wilson disease

Toxins

Alcohol, and other poisons:

- Herbal tea
- CCl_4, trichloroethylene, yellow phosphorus (zone 1 necrosis)
- *Amanita phalloides* (Death cap mushrooms)

Drug overdose:

- Paracetamol: Saturation of conjugation reactions → P450 oxidation to NABQI → glutathione consumption
- Aspirin
- Iron sulphate (zone 1 necrosis)

Idiosyncratic – **M.A.I.N.**

Methotrexate + NSAIDs, esp. indomethacin, ibuprofen
Amiodarone + other cardiac: Methyl-dopa, Ca antagonists, enalapril
Isoniazid, esp. in fast acetylators, e.g. Inuits, other inducer, women >50 + other antibiotics, e.g. nitrofurantoin, flucloxacillin, AZT, fansidar, keto-/fluconazole
Neuro/psychiatric/anaesthetic:

- Anticonvulsants (phenytoin, CMZ, valproate)
- Antidepressants (TCA/MAOI/chlorpromazine – cholestasis)
- Psychostimulants: Ecstasy, cocaine, glue-sniffing (trichloroethylene, toluene)
- Halothane

Budd–Chiari syndrome

Causes

Thrombophilic state, esp. myeloproliferative disorders (60%), paroxysmal nocturnal haemoglobinuria, antiphospholipid syndrome, ulcerative colitis, oral contraceptive pill
Local tumour: Hepatocellular carcinoma, renal cell carcinoma, adrenal carcinoma
Congenital: Membranous obstruction of inferior vena cava (commonest cause in Japan)
Exogenous: Azathioprine, radiation, bone-marrow transplant, herbal bush teas (pyrrolidizine alkaloids = bush tea disease), trauma, hydatid cyst

PC

Abdominal pain – right upper quadrant (stretching of Glisson capsule)
Jaundice, liver failure
Ascites (exudate!)

Ix

Duplex scan: Cavernous transformation
Colloid scan: ↑ uptake caudate lobe
Venography with retrograde CO_2 portography
Liver Bx: Centrilobular congestion/sinusoidal dilatation/haemorrhagic necrosis/fibrosis

Rx

Medical: Anticoagulation, providing clotting initially normal

CHRONIC LIVER DISEASE – CAUSES

E.M.O^2.T.I.O.N^2.

Errors of immunity
  Autoimmune hepatitis
  Primary biliary cholangitis
  Primary sclerosing cholangitis
  Lupus

Metabolic/inherited disorders: **W.A.T.C.H.**
    Wilson disease
    α_1-**A**ntitrypsin deficiency
    Tyrosinaemia, galactosaemia, glycogen storage disease, fructose intolerance
    Cystic fibrosis
    Haemochromatosis

Occlusion/**O**bstruction
  Hepatic vein disease:
  - Hepatic vein thrombosis: Budd–Chiari syndrome or IVC web
  - Hepatic vein congestion: Right-sided heart failure, constrictive pericarditis

  Hepatic ischaemia: Sickle cell anaemia
  Obstructive jaundice: primary biliary cirrhosis, sclerosing cholangitis, biliary atresia

Toxins
  Alcohol, and other poisons
  Idiosyncratic

Infection: Hepatitis B and C
  Viral: Hepatitis B, C, D, G, herpes group (esp. EBV, CMV), measles, yellow fever
  Bacterial: Brucella, syphilis
  Nematode: Hydatid disease, schistosomiasis (pipe-stem fibrosis, pre-sinusoid portal hypertension)

Oncology
  Hepatocellular carcinoma
  Graft-versus-host-disease (GVHD)

NASH and **N**AFLD: Usually with concomitant diabetes and/or dyslipidaemia

Histology

Chronic persistent hepatitis (CPH): Lymphocytic infiltrate + fibrosis of portal tracts >6 months
Chronic active hepatitis (CAH): Piecemeal, bridging necrosis centred on portal tracts
Cirrhosis: Fibrosis + nodular regeneration + distorted lobular architecture

Toxins

Drugs may induce a wide range of liver diseases:

Hepatitis – cirrhosis
Alcohol, and other poisons:

- Alcohol: fatty change → hepatitis → cirrhosis
- Vinyl chloride

Idiosyncratic: **M.A.I.N.**

Methotrexate + other NSAIDs, e.g. diclofenac
Amiodarone + other cardiac: Methyl-dopa
Isoniazid (esp. fast acetylators) + nitrofurantoin, minocycline (+ isotretinoin)
Neuro/psychiatric/anaesthetic:

- Anticonvulsants: Valproate, phenytoin, carbamazepine
- Dantrolene

Fatty change
Valproate
Amiodarone
Asparaginase
Tetracycline

Hypersensitivity and granulomas
Carbamazepine
Allopurinol
Phenylbutazone
Sulphonamide

Veno-occlusion: Azathioprine, radiation

Tumour : Androgens, oral contraceptive pill

Biliary cholestasis: Androgens, oral contraceptive pill, rifampicin, gold
Calculi: Ceftriaxone
Sclerosing cholangitis: Fluorodeoxyuridine

INFECTIVE HEPATITIS

Types

	Spread	Virus type	Associated cause	Incubation (months)
A	FO	RNA ss+ve	**A**broad (esp. seafood); **A**utumnal peaks	1 (<2)
B	IV	DNA ds	**B**lood; **B**ody fluids; **B**abies (vertical transmission)	3 (<6)
C	IV	RNA ss+ve	As for Hep B, but ↑ blood and ↓ vertical risk	2 (<6)
D	IV	RNA ss+ve	**D**ependent on prior Hep B as envelope-**D**eficient	3 (<6)
E	FO	RNA ss+ve	**E**conomically-poor countries, e.g. post-flood	1 (<2)

FO: faeco-oral; IV: parenteral

Epi

Hep B Mediterranean, Far East – 30% carriers; Hep C: Middle East – 15% carriers

PC

Prodrome

Hep **A** associated with small-joint **A**rthritis
Hep **B** has a particularly **B**ad prodrome – high fever, flu-like, angioedema, arthritis

General PC
Fever, flu-like symptoms, headache, arthralgia
Lymphadenopathy, hepatosplenomegaly

Immune-complex reactions S.N.A.G.S.

Skin: Hep A = pruritus, urticaria, papular rash
Hep B, C = vasculitis (PAN, cryoglobulinaemia), lichen planus, porphyria cutanea tarda
Neurological: Peripheral neuropathy, transverse myelitis
Aplastic anaemia
Glomerulonephritis, membranous or membranoproliferative
Systemic: Pancreatitis, myocarditis, pneumonitis, thyroiditis

NB: Infectivity begins from 3 days pre-jaundice and lasts until 2 weeks post-jaundice

Acute hepatitis

Hep A > B > C; in order of frequency of jaundice: 99%, 75%, 25%

PC

Hepatitis
Cholestasis (dark urine, pale stool) may precede jaundice by 5 days
Fulminant hepatic failure occurs in <1%; more in Hep D and E

Chronic hepatitis

*Hep **C** and **C**hildhood Hep B are most **C**hronic, but Hep A may cause symptoms for <1 year*
Carrier is defined for Hep B as sAg +ve >6 months, or eAg +ve >2 months
Hep C as HCV RNA or ALT↑ >6 months

Risks

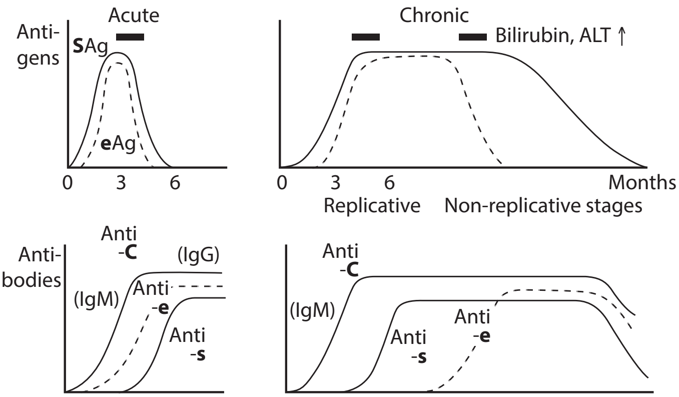
Carrier	Hep B: 10% (↑ if eAg +ve)	Hep C: 80%
Chronic active hepatitis:	Hep B: 10%	Hep C: 60%
Cirrhosis	Hep B: 5% (↑ by Hep D)	Hep C: 20%

Serology

Hep A

Anti-HAV: IgM occurs from 1–3 months post-infection; IgG predominates >3 months

Hep B



NB: The pre-core mutant shows active replication with HBV DNA but is eAg –ve
→
assoc. with severe liver disease

NB: In acute infection, order of antibody appearance is alphabetic; in chronic infection, anti-e appears late.

s**A**g = acute infection; reactivation; chronic carrier
Anti-c: **IgM** acute infection
IgG reactivation or past infection

NB: May be +ve even when HBsAg –ve and so more sensitive!

e**A**g = high level of virus replication (also indicated by HBV DNA and pre-S1, S2 proteins)
Anti-e –ve = high infectivity; **+ve** = low infectivity
Anti-s = past infection or immunized

Hep C

Anti-HCV: Pre-clinical (anti-C22 or C33); clinical (anti-C100-3)
HCV RNA PCR: Infectivity index

Rx

L.A.S.T.

Liver support: No aspirin or alcohol; manage liver failure (lactulose, low-protein diet)
Anti-viral
- PEGylated IFN. Indications: Recently acquired chronic infection (6 months–2 years);
  low HBV DNA or HCV RNA, mild hepatitis on biopsy.
  Response: Hep B = 40% seroconvert; Hep C =10% seroconvert
- Nucleotide analogues: Hep B, lamivudine; Hep C, ribavirin

Steroids. Indications: Prolonged cholestasis (esp. Hep A); prior to anti-viral (Hep B, C)
Transplant liver

Prophylaxis

Safe sex, needle exchange (Hep B, C); hygiene precautions (Hep A, E)
Vaccine: HAV; HBV sAg; human immunoglobulin

PRIMARY BILIARY CHOLANGITIS

Epi

Middle-aged Caucasian women
Predisposing:

- HLA-B8, -DR8
- Autoimmunity
  - Scleroderma, dermatomyositis, rheumatoid arthritis, Sjögren (in 80%)
  - Addison, coeliac, vitiligo, Hashimoto, pulmonary fibrosis

PATH

Non-suppurative destructive cholangitis

G*o*t P.B.C.?

Stages 1 **G**ranulomas (may also occur in other tissues)
2 **P**roliferation or disappearing bile ducts
3 **B**ridging septa + fibrosis
4 **C**irrhosis

PC

$P^2.B^2.C^2.$

Pruritus: Excoriations, due to cholestasis. Also pale stool, dark urine, steatorrhoea, but jaundice occurs late. Can become unbearable
Pigmentation: Melanosis of face; Kayser–Fleischer rings may also occur in cornea
Bones: Osteomalacia, osteoporosis – due to poor vitamin D absorption; also arthralgia
Big organs: Hepatosplenomegaly; lymphadenopathy, incl. at porta hepatis
Cirrhosis: Clubbing ,varices, ascites
Cholesterol↑: Xanthomata

50% are asymptomatic at presentation (abnomal LFTs); but 50% of these have cirrhosis!

Ix

Anti-mitochondrial Abs, esp. PDH, E2 and E3 binding protein on inner mitochondrial membrane (95%)
Other autoantibodies: Anti-smooth muscle, ANA, ANCA; IgM ↑↑
Liver biopsy

Rx

Supportive
Pruritus: Cholestyramine, naltrexone, rifampicin
Nutritional: Vitamin A, D, E, K, Ca, medium-chain triglycerides
Disease-modifiying: Ursodeoxycholic acid slows disease progression, reduces cholestasis but has no effect on symptoms
Liver transplant: Disease may recur

Prog

Normal LFTs	12 y	Abnormal LFTs	10 y	Symptomatic	8 y	Cirrhosis	4 y

Bilirubin >150 μmol/l predicts 18 months median survival

AUTOIMMUNE HEPATITIS

Epi

Middle-aged Caucasian women (ANA +ve)
Equal sex ratio and occurs more commonly in children (LKM +ve)
Predisposing:

- HLA-A1, B8, DR3 occurs in 40%, and is associated with more severe disease (ANA +ve)
- Autoimmunity common in patient and family (any form)
- Hepatitis C (LKM +ve)

PATH

Piecemeal bridging necrosis, and lymphocytic infiltrate, centred on portal tracts
Present for >6 months
LE cells in 10%

PC

Chronic **A**utoimmune **H**epatitis

Early:
  Constitutional: Fatigue, nausea, pruritus
  Cushingoid: Striae, hirsute, acne
  Amenorrhoea
  Arthralgia: May also develop rheumatoid or migratory arthritis
  Hepatitis: Recurrent jaundice
  Hepatosplenomegaly: Tender, lymphadenopathy

Complications:
  Cirrhosis
    Present in 70% at presentation; esp. LKM +ve
    Spider naevi, palmar erythema, purpura (PT↑)
  Autoimmune
    Colitis, ulcerative; **C**holangitis, sclerosing; **C**onjunctivitis or uveitis
    Acidosis, renal tubular
    Hyperthyroidism (thyroiditis); **H**yperglycaemia – type 1 DM (LKM +ve)
  Haematological
    Normocytic anaemia, Coomb +ve haemolysis
    Pancytopenia due to hypersplenism

Ix

Auto-antibody patterns

ANA +ve (homogeneous immunofluorescent staining pattern): May occur with anti-dsDNA, anti-mitochondrial, anti-smooth muscle, p-ANCA
LKM Ab +ve (liver and kidney microsomal antigen = cytochrome P450)
SLA Ab +ve (soluble liver antigen = glutathione-S-transferase)

Rx

Immunosuppression: Prednisolone 60 mg od titrated according to ALT; can also use azathioprine. Response better for no autoAbs > ANA +ve >L KM +ve
Liver transplant: Disease does not recur in graft

HAEMOCHROMATOSIS

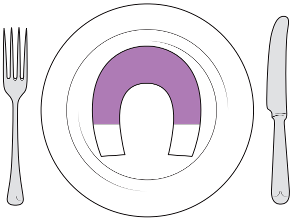
Epi

Inc: Prevalence: 1/3000, although 10% of population are gene-carriers
Age: Onset 40–60 years
Sex: Women present 10 years later due to menses
Geo: Celtic origin
Aet: 1°: ***HFE*** gene (esp. C282Y mutation), results in:

- Increased divalent-metal transporter (DMT-1) expression on brush border of enterocytes
- Reduced hepcidin expression in liver (hepcidin inhibits iron absorption from gut)

2°: Haemolytic anaemia, aplastic anaemia, sideroblastic anaemia, due to ineffective erythropoiesis and iron release, increased iron absorption, repeated blood transfusions

PC



Iron **M.E.A.L.S^2.**

Myocardial: Arrhythmias, heart block, dilated or restrictive cardiomyopathy
Endocrine: **P**ancreas – diabetes (in 2/3)
Pituitary – amenorrhoea, infertility (hypogonadotrophic hypogonadism)
Parathyroid – hypocalcaemia; hypothyroidism
Arthritis: Calcium pyrophosphate deposition in joints
Liver: Chronic active hepatitis, cirrhosis, hepatocellular carcinoma (in 1/3 if untreated), abdominal pain, hepatomegaly
Skin: Bronzed appearance (due to melanosis and iron), porpyria cutanea tarda
Systemic: Fatigue

Ix

Bloods: Transferrin sat. ↑ (>60%); TIBC ↓; plasma Fe ↑; ferritin ↑
HFE genotype
Urine: 24-h urinary Fe ↑ (post-desferrioxamine injection)
ECG, **E**CHO
Radiol: Liver CT or MRI – detects increased Fe stores
Special: Liver biopsy; dry weight >2%: iron in hepatocytes

Rx

Iron removal
Venesection: initially, 1–2× per week for 1–2 years; then once every 3 months
Desferrioxamine
Liver transplant
Family screening and treatment

WILSON DISEASE

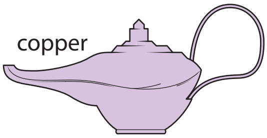
Epi

Inc: Prevalence: 1/50,000
Age: Presents between childhood and 30; never after mid-50s
Aet: Reduced copper excretion from hepatic lysosome into bile, due to mutant copper transporter ATPase 7B (chromosome 13; autosomal recessive)

PC

C^2.L.A.N.K.i.N.G^2.

Corneal/**C**ataracts
  Kayser–Fleischer rings: Grey-green copper deposits around rim of cornea
  Sunflower cataracts
Liver
  Acute: Hepatitis, fulminant hepatic necrosis
  Chronic: Fatty liver, chronic active hepatitis, cirrhosis
Arthritis
  Chondrocalcinosis
  Osteoporosis
Neurology
  Parkinsonism; tremor (intention, postural)/chorea/tics
  Spasticity, pseudobulbar dysarthria and dysphagia
  Dementia, psychosis – mania, headache
Kidney: Renal tubular acidosis/Fanconi syndrome, resulting in osteomalacia
Negative, Coombs' – haemolytic anaemia
Growth failure (puberty)
Gynaecological – amenorrhoea



Ix

Bloods: Serum caeruloplasmin ↓ (<20 mg/dl); serum Cu-free ↑ (but total ↓)
Urine: 24-h urinary Cu ↑ (esp. post-penicillamine)
Special: Slit-lamp exam for Kayser–Fleischer rings; sensitivity = 70%; false +ve in primary biliary cholangitis
Liver biopsy: Dry Cu weight increased; false +ve in primary biliary cholangitis

Rx

Copper-chelators
Penicillamine:
- Take for 2 years
- Adjuvant vitamin B6 and zinc ± steroids, e.g. for ITP, arthralgia

Trientine: If penicillamine worsens neuro Sx or intolerance
Dimercaprol
Plasmapharesis
Liver transplant: Curative

LIVER TUMOURS

Primary hepatocellular carcinoma

Causes

Cirrhosis, therefore **E.M.O^2.T.I.O.N^2.S.**

PC

Abdominal pain; **A**scites, blood-tinged; **A**cute decompensated liver failure (encephalopathy)

O/E

Abdominal mass
Liver bruit, friction rub

Complications

Paraneoplastic: Glucose ↓, cholesterol ↑, PTH-rp: Calcium ↑, polycythaemia, DIC
Metastases: Bone, lung

Ix

AFP ↑↑ (>500 μg/l); ALP ↑↑
USS or CT: Satellite lesions may be present
Angiogram + ^{131}I-lipiodol pre-injection – selectively retained within tumour (avoid biopsy due to vascularity, coagulopathy + risk of spread along needle tract!)

Rx

<5 cm
  Hepatic artery embolisation: Gel foam; alcohol; doxorubicin
  Liver transplant: Risk of recurrence if metastasized
>5 cm: Resection

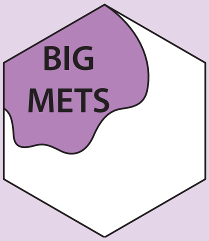
Prog

Median survival: 4 months; prognosis better in fibrolamellar variant (no underlying cirrhosis)

Secondary – metastases

Breast; Bronchus
Intestinal: Colorectal, carcinoid, pancreas
Gastro-oesophageal

Melanoma
Endometrial
Testis
Special: Lymphoma



PANCREATIC TUMOURS

Exocrine – Ductal Adenocarcinoma (90%)

Causes

S.I.N.S.

Smoking: Risk increases three-fold
Inflammation: Chronic pancreatitis, esp. hereditary pancreatitis
Nutrition: High calorie intake, obesity, diabetes mellitus
Surgery: Partial gastrectomy leads to biliary reflux into stomach, and secondary cholecystokinin release

PC

Abdominal – back pain
Anorexia – weight loss
Altered stool colour – pale (obstructive jaundice); silver (ampullary carcinoma)

O/E

Abdominal mass
 Umbilical mass due to tumour
 Gallbladder due to bile duct compression (also causes jaundice)
 Splenomegaly, and umbilical mass due to portal vein compression
Lymphadenopathy: Troisier's sign (supraclavicular)

Complications

Local compression: Obstructive jaundice, portal hypertension, IVC obstruction
Pancreas failure: Diabetes mellitus
Paraneoplastic:

- Thrombophilia causes migratory thrombophlebitis (Trousseau's sign)
- Panniculitis: Fat necrosis

Metastases: Liver

Ix

Bloods:	Amylase ↑ CEA, CA 19-9 FBC (anaemia), ESR↑, LFT changes
Radiol:	CT Angiography
Special:	ERCP or endoscopic USS Biopsy, via USS or CT guidance

Rx

Surgery (in only 10%): Whipple procedure – pancreatico-duodenectomy
Radiotherapy + 5-fluorouracil 'sensitizer': ↑ survival pre-operatively
Chemotherapy: Gemcitabine – for palliative use only

Prog

Median survival = 6 months if inoperable

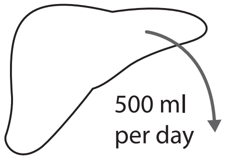
Endocrine – Islet cell APUDomas (10%)

α: Glucagonoma; *β:* Insulinoma; δ: Somatostatinoma, **G**astrinoma, VIPoma; PPoma

GALLSTONES

Physiology

Normal bile content =



10%: Bile salts (cholic and chenodeoxycholic acid) = *stone-preventing*
conjugate with glycine or taurine
5%: Phospholipid
1%: **Cholesterol**
1%: **Conjugated bilirubin**
also protein, drugs

Stone-forming

Types

Mixed cholesterol (75%)

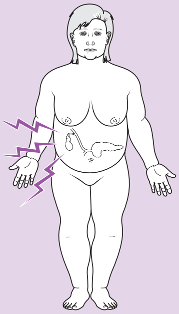
Composition: Monohydrate cholesterol (70%) + variable calcium salts (only 10% show on X-ray) + bile acids
Cause: Bile becomes supersaturated with cholesterol, relative to bile salt, due to:

- Excess hepatic secretion, e.g. HMG CoA reductase activity ↑
- Gallbladder concentration

Predisposing:

$A^2.F^3.F^2.L.I.C.T.S^2.$

Age (20% of females over 40) **+ A**mericans (native USA, Chile)
Females (3:1 ratio), **F**ertile (multiparous), **F**emodene (i.e. oral contraceptive pill), HRT
Fatty foods
Family history
Liver disease, chronic**:** Bile salt production ↓
Ileum, terminal disease: Crohn, lymphoma – bile salt recycling ↓
Congenital: Choledochal cyst, cystic fibrosis
Toxins: Clofibrate, ceftriaxone, cholestyramine + octreotide
Surgery: Vagotomy – gallbladder contraction ↓
Somatostatinoma: Gallbladder contraction ↓



Pigment (25%)

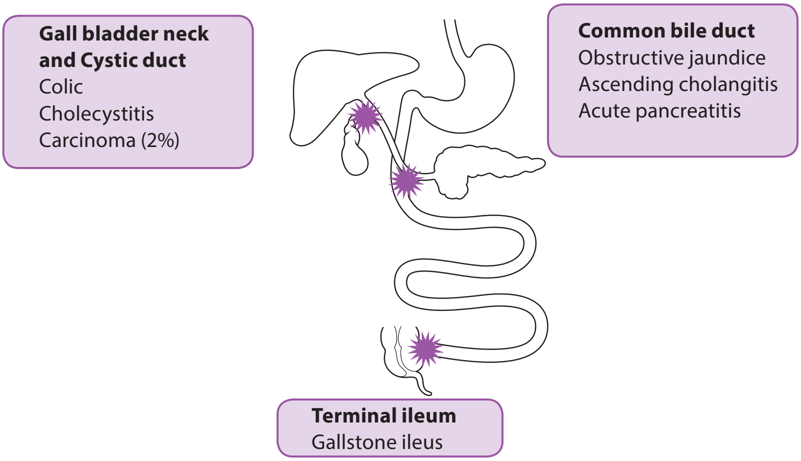
Composition: Calcium bilirubinate + PO_4, CO_3 salts
Cause:

- Haemolytic anaemia: Sickle cell, hereditary spherocytosis, malaria. Path: Excess RBC turnover → black stones
- Helminths:
  - Nematodes – *Ascaris lumbricoides* (human roundworm)
  - Trematodes – *Cionorchis sinensis* (liver fluke; esp. Japan)

  Path: Supervening *E. coli* infection produces β-glucuronidase, which deconjugates bilirubin diglucuronide (soluble) to bilirubin (insoluble) → brown stones

PC

Gallstones solely within the gallbladder fundus are asymptomatic – problems arise when they move out! Presentation subsequently depends on site of gallstone occurrence:



Gall bladder neck and Cystic duct
Colic
Cholecystitis
Carcinoma (2%)

Common bile duct
Obstructive jaundice
Ascending cholangitis
Acute pancreatitis

Terminal ileum
Gallstone ileus

Cholecystitis

Acute

Path: Sustained blockage of gall-bladder neck or cystic duct + secondary bacterial infection of stagnant gallbladder fluid (enterococci, coliforms)
PC: Acute abdomen or chest pain, N+V, septic shock
O/E: Right-upper quadrant tenderness + guarding, mass; Murphy Sx (tender on inspiration); Boas Sx (R loin hyperaesthesia)
Ix: USS, ERCP – cholangiography
Rx: NBM + IV hydration; IV cefuroxime + metronidazole; early or late cholecystectomy

Chronic

Path: Fibrous contraction of gallbladder following repeated bouts of gallbladder neck blockage and failure of gallbladder to concentrate fluid and contract
PC: Episodic biliary colic; flatulent dyspepsia; fat intolerance
Rx: High-dose bile salts; cholecystectomy

Complications:

- Empyema (pus collection)
- Mucocoele (mucus collection)
- Gangrene → perforation

Obstructive jaundice

Usually painless, unless stone is at sphincter of Oddi

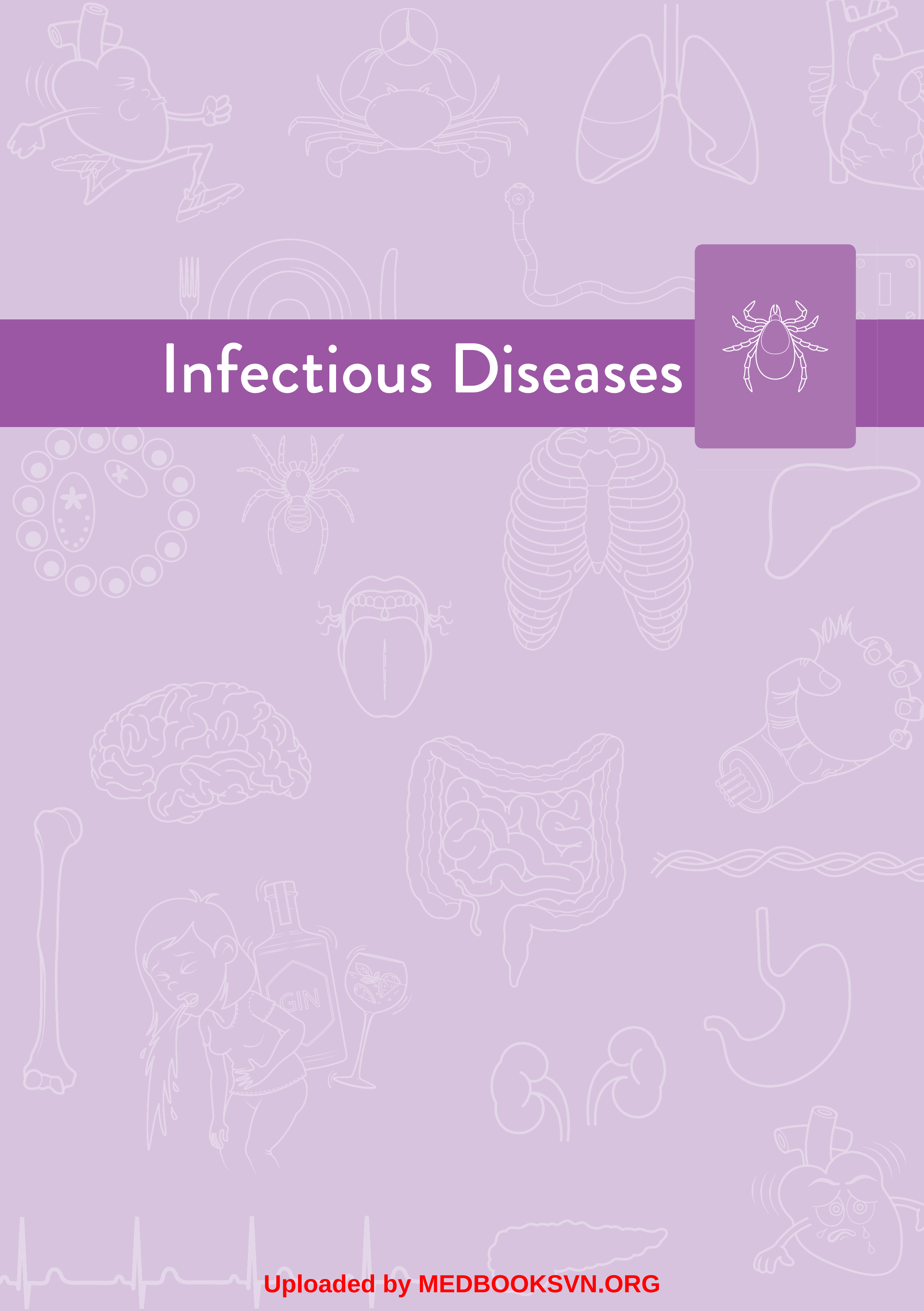
Ascending cholangitis

PC: Charcot triad = fever + colic + jaundice
Complications: Liver abscesses, septicaemia, ARF

Gallstone ileus

Stone erodes through gallbladder wall → penetrates duodenum → travels via small bowel to terminal ileum, i.e. narrowest point

Taylor & Francis
Taylor & Francis Group
http://taylorandfrancis.com



Infectious Diseases

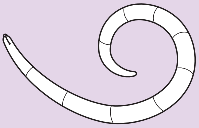
INFECTIOUS ORGANISMS – 1

Multicellular: Invertebrates

Helminths (worms)

Nematodes

= roundworms



S.N.A^2.K.E^2. FI.G.h.T^2.S

Intestinal

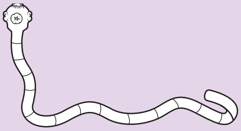
__S__trongyloides stercoralis
__N__ecator americanus/ __A__ncylostoma duodenale (human hookworm)
__A__scaris lumbricoides (human roundworm)
K: Anisa**K**iasis, capillarious
__E__nterobius vermicularis (threadworm)
Extra: Whipworm – *Trichuris trichuria*

Tissue

FIlariasis
  Onchocerca volvulus: River blindness
  Wuchereria bancrofti: Elephantiasis
  Loa loa
  Brugia malayi
Guinea worm: *Dracunculus medinensis*
__T__oxocara canis
__T__richinella spiralis
Skin: Hookworm: Cutaneous larva migrans:
- Animal hookworm, e.g. *Ancylostoma brasiliense*
- Human hookworm PC: Serpiginous rash

Cestodes

= tapeworms



P.H.D. P.E.T.S.

Intestinal

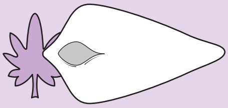
Pork and beef tapeworms = *Taenia solium* and *T. saginata*
__H__ymenolepis:
  H. nana (dwarf): Human-limited
  H. diminuata:
  - *Rodent-spread*
  - *Young children*
__D__iphyllobothrium latum:
  PC:
  - Diarrhoea, wt. loss
  - Vit B12 deficiency
  - Cholangitis/ cholecystitis

Tissue

Pork tapeworm:
  T. solium = 'cysticercosis'
  PC: Brain and cord inflammation → epilepsy, hydrocephalus
__E__chinococcus granulosus: 'Hydatid disease'
  PC: Lung + liver cysts
__T__. solium (cysticercosis)
__S__pirometra: 'Sparganosis'
  PC: Subcutaneous tissue and orbital swelling and destruction

Trematodes

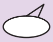
= flatworms



S.C.O.F.F.s HE.M.P.

Blood, veins

Schistosomiasis: Ova have characteristic shapes and organ sites
__S__chistosoma mansoni: Colon, brain

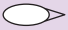


Dorsal spine: Charles Manson's knife

__S__. japonicum: Ileum, cord

Japanese *small willy!*

__S__. haematobium: Bladder



Terminal spine – terminal like the bladder

Liver

__C__lonorchis sinensis
__O__pisthorchis
__F__asciola hepatica

Intestine

__F__asciolopsis buski
__HE__terophyes heterophyes
__M__etagoniums yokogawai

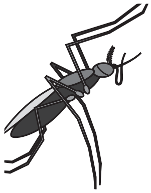
Lung

__P__aragonimus westermani
PC: Cutaneous nodules, epilepsy

Arthropods

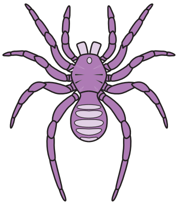
Insect

Fleas
  Siphonaptera
Flies (Diptera):
  Anopheles
  Tsetse
  Midges
  Gnats
Lice, bugs
  Pediculus (hair + body)
  Phthirus pubis (pubic: 'crabs)



Arachnida

Spiders, scorpions
Ticks
Mites
  = microscopic:
  - *Sarcoptes scabiei* (scabies)
  - Chigger: red larvae



Unicellular: Eukaryotes (organelles, nucleus)

Fungi/yeasts (rigid cell wall)

Superficial

Dermatophytes:
Ringworm = tinea:
Trichophyton, *Microsporum*
PC:
- Tinea capitis, corporis, cruris or pedis – athlete's foot
- Onychomycosis

Malassezia furfur
= *Pityrosporum orbiculare*
PC: 'Pityriasis versicolor'; seborrhoeic dermatitis; dandruff

Subcutaneous:
Madura foot (mycetoma), sporotrichosis, chromoblastomycosis

Superficial + Deep

***Candida albicans*:**
Thrush: Oral, genital
Systemic (in immunocompromised)
PC:
- Meningitis
- Endophthalmitis
- Osteomyelitis
- Liver, spleen, kidney
- Endocarditis

Deep

Pneumonia:
Pneumocystis jirovecii
Aspergillus (neutropenics)

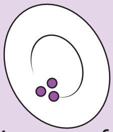
Pneumonia and/or meningitis:
Cryptococcus (AIDS)
Histoplasma capsulatum (endemic S. USA)
Coccidioides immitis
Blastomyces

Retro-orbital:
Mucormycosis (DM)

Protozoa

Sporozoa

= intracellular



Prisoners of **T**he **B**lood **C**ell

***P**lasmodium* – malaria:
Spread by Anopheles mosquito
Types:
- *P. falciparum*: Severe
- *P. vivax/ovale*: Benign, tertian
- *P. malariae*: Benign, quartan

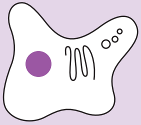
***T**oxoplasma gondii:*
Spread from cat and animal faeces
PC:
- Acute: lymphadenopathy
- Chorioretinitis
- Cerebral mass lesion
- Fetal malformation

Babesia – babesiosis:
Spread by ixodid tick similar to malaria
Types:
- *B. divergens*: cattle
- *B. microti:* rodents

Cryptosporidium + Microsporum
Isospora belli
PC: Chronic gastroenteritis in AIDS

Amoeboid

= simple



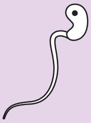
Entamoeba histolytica
PC:
- 'Amoebic dysentry', i.e. colitis
- Amoebic cyst

Acanthamoeba
PC:
- Contact-lens keratitis
- Cerebral abscess

Naegleria fowleri:
Found in swimming pools contaminated with soil, e.g. Roman baths
PC: Meningoencephalitis

Flagellate

= has flagellum



Looks like **T**.a.**G**.**L**.ia.**T**.elle

***T**rypanosoma brucei*
gambiense (W. Africa)
rhodesiense (E. Africa)
spread by *Glossina*, the 'tsetse fly'
PC: 'Sleeping sickness':
- Fever+ lymphadenopathy
- Encephalopathy

E**AS**t form: **A**cute, **S**evere
West form: Chronic, mild

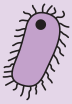
***T**rypanosoma cruzi* – autonomic neuropathy:
Spread by reduviid bug in South America
PC: 'Chagas' disease':
- Myocarditis
- Achalasia
- Megacolon, constipation

***G**iardia lamblia*
PC: Duodena-jejunitis

***L**eishmania*: Spread by sandfly
Types:
- Cutaneous – oriental sore: *L. mexicania or L. tropica*
- Nasal mucosa – 'espundia': *L. brasiliensis*
- Visceral – 'kala-azar': L. donovani

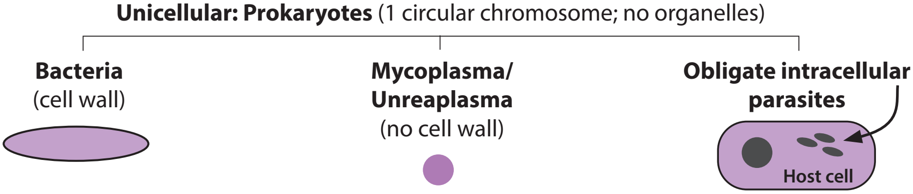
***T**richomonas vaginalis*
PC: Vulvo-vaginitis

Ciliate



The only pathogenic ciliate is *Balantidium coli*, which causes an amoebic dysentry-like picture

INFECTIOUS ORGANISMS – 2



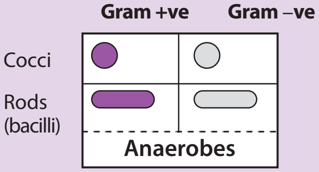
Unicellular: Prokaryotes (1 circular chromosome; no organelles)

Bacteria
(cell wall)

Mycoplasma/
Unreaplasma
(no cell wall)

Obligate intracellular
parasites

Typical bacteria (p. 172)



Mycobacteria (pp. 202–4)

Weakly-staining Gram +ve rods
Facultative intracellular parasites

T.A.X. S.L.U.M

Tuberculosis
A_vium intracellulare_ (MAI); *cheloni*
X_enopi; kansasii_
S_crofulaceum_
L_eprae:_ Leprosy
U_lcerans_: Buruli ulcer
M_arinum_: Fish-tank granuloma

Spirochaetes (pp. 206–8)

Helical-shaped

BO.L.T.

BO_rrelia:_
  Lyme disease: *B. burgdorferi*
  Relapsing fever:
  - *B. recurrentis:* louse-borne (epidemic)
  - *B. du**TT**oni:* **T**ick-borne (endemic)

  Vincent's angina: *B. vincentii* – necrotising gingivitis

L_eptospira interrogans:_ Weil disease
T_reponema:_
  Syphilis: *T. pallidum*
  Yaws: *T. pertenue*

Mycoplasma

M. pneumoniae:
  Atypical pneumonia
M. hominis: UTI

Ureaplasma

U. urealyticum: UTI

NB:
Smallest free-living organism

Small genome – limits biosynthesis and *in vitro* culture

No cell wall – so penicillins and cephalosporins are ineffective!

Rickettsiae (p. 210)

- Characterized by mammalian reservoirs and arthropod vectors
- All are small Gram –ve bacilli

Q.ua.R.T.i.L.E.S.

Q-fever (*Coxiella burnettii*):
  Epi: No vector required:
    spread by aerosol from uterus or mammary glands of peripartum farm animals, pets
  PC: Atypical pneumonia
Rocky-mountain spotted fever:
  Caused by *Rickettsia rickettsii* (tick-borne)
Tick-borne typhus – other:
  - *Ehrlichia chaffeensis:* monocytes
  - *E. phagocytophilia:* granulocytes
  - 'Mediterranean spotted fever' – *Rickettsia conorii*

Louse-borne:
Epidemic and endemic typhus:
  - 'Epidemic typhus' caused by *Rickettsia prowazekii,* humans are only host
  - 'Endemic murine typhus' caused by – *Rickettsia typhi*

Scrub typhus: *Orientia tsutsugamushi* (chigger-borne)

Chlamydia

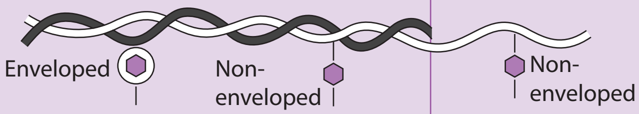
C. pneumoniae/C. psittaci:
  Atypical pneumonia
C. trachomatis:
  - PID/urethritis
  - Lymphogranuloma venereum
  - 'Trachoma': keratitis

Non-cellular

Viruses (p. 176) | **Prions**

DNA

Double-stranded | **Single-stranded**



Hepatitis B

Herpes
HSV-1, 2; VZV; EBV; CMV; HHV-6–8

Pox
Pox; **O**rf; **X**XX:
(i.e. AIDS-associated! – molluscum contagiosum)

Adenovirus

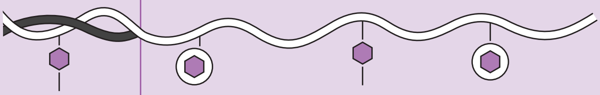
Papova
PApilloma: HPV
POlyoma: JC virus
VAcuolating: SV40

Parvovirus

Type B19
Adeno-associated viruses

RNA

Double-stranded | **Single-stranded**



Reovirus

Rotavirus

+ve strand

C.H.A.I.N. F.R.EE.
Coronavirus: Common cold; SARS
Hepatitis C,G, E
Astrovirus
Intestine: Calicivirus
Norwalk virus
Flavivirus
Rubella
EE: Eastern equine (alphavirus)

–ve strand

O.P.E.R.A. *is –ve!*
Orthomyxovirus
Paramyxoviruses
Ebola (arenaviruses)
Rabies
Arbovirus group C: Hantavirus

Picornaviruses

= small viruses, +ve strand

Rhinovirus – fits up nose!

Hepatitis D: 'Degenerate' virus, dependent on Hep B

Enteroviruses

ECHO, E.C.H.O, ...

ECHO: Meningitis
Enterovirus spp.
Coxsackie
Hepatitis A
O: p**O**li**O**

Lentiviruses

= reverse transcriptase, +ve strand

HTLV-I:
Tropical spastic paraparesis
Adult T-cell leukaemia/ lymphoma

HTLV-II

HIV-1/2: AIDS

Acquired

Kuru: Only ever found in the Fore population of Papa New Guinea, 2° to cannabalism
PC: Tremor, delirium

CJD – classical:
Iatrogenic transmission: growth hormone injection; corneal or dural implants; stereotactic brain surgery
PC: Myoclonus, ataxia, dementia
Ix: EEG – periodic spike-wave
CSF – protein 14-3-3

CJD – variant: Beef infected with BSE
PC: Depression, sensory symptoms predate usual classical CJD symptoms
Ix: MRI brain – pulvinar enhancement

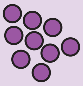
Hereditary

CJD – familial
Gerstmann–Straussler–Schenker disease
Familial fatal insomnia

BACTERIA

Gram +ve Cocci

Staphylococcus



– ***aureus*** (coagulase +ve): **S.T.A.P.H.**

Skin
Boil (furuncle/carbuncle): Becomes walled off due to coagulase
Cellulitis, impetigo, necrotising fasciitis

Toxin
Gastroenteritis: Heat-stable toxin
Toxic shock syndrome: Septic shock
Scalded skin syndrome: Desquamation of palms + soles

Arthritis/osteomyelitis

Pulmonary: Lung abscess

Heart: Acute endocarditis/**H**epatic: Abscess

– ***epidermidis*** (coagulase –ve): Iatrogenic infection – line-associated sepsis

Streptococcus

α-**haemolytic**: Plate appears green
S. viridans, e.g. *S. bovis*, *S. mitior*: Subacute endocarditis
S. pneumoniae (diplococci): Pneumonia, endocarditis, meningitis, otitis media

ß-**haemolytic**: Cause complete haemolysis – plate has 'punched-out holes'

Group A: *S. pyogenes* **S.T.R^2.E.P.**
Skin: Cellulitis, impetigo – spreads due to streptokinase and hyaluronidase
Tonsillitis: Quinsy, pharyngitis, otitis media, sinusitis
Rheumatic fever; **R**enal: Proliferative glomerulonephritis
Erythema nodosum
Puerperal sepsis; wound infections

immune phenomena

Group B: *S. agalactiae*: Puerperal sepsis, neonatal meningitis
Group G: *S. milleri*: Abscesses – cerebral, liver, lung

Enterococci: Endocarditis, peritonitis, UTI – non-haemolytic, lactose-fermenting
Anaerobic: Endocarditis

Gram +ve Rods

B.L.A.N.D. *bacteria*

B*acillus cereus*: Food poisoning from reheated Chinese food
L*isteria monocytogenes*: Meningoencephalitis in elderly, miscarriage, septic shock in immunocompromised
Anthrax (*Bacillus anthracis*): Cutaneous – eschar; pneumonia
N*ocardia*: 'No heart' – occurs with heart transplant/immunosuppressed
Diphtheria (*Corynebacterium diphtheriae*): Pharyngitis ('bull neck'), myocarditis, bulbar palsy

Gram +ve Rods – Anaerobic

Clostridium:
C. perfringens: Food poisoning, gas gangrene, puerperal sepsis
C. botulinum: Botulism
C. difficile: Pseudomembranous colitis
C. tetani: Tetanus

Actinomycosis: Dental-cervical; ileocaecal abscess
PATH: Form yellow sulphur granules, granulomas

Gram –ve Cocci

***N**eisseria – meningitides*: Bacterial meningitis (types A, B, C)
– *gonorrhoeae*: Urethritis, arthritis, pharyngitis
***M**oraxella catarrhalis*: Community-acquired pneumonia

Gram –ve Rods

S^2.P.Y. S.E.E.K.S. G.B.H., P.V^2.C. + LEATHER!

Enterobacteria: All cause gastroenteritis (except where indicated)

Non-lactose fermenting (plates contain lactose + pH indicator that turns pink):
S**almonella*/S**higella*: Bacillary dysentery
***P**roteus mirabilis*: UTI
***Y**ersinia enterocolitica* or pseudotuberculosis: Ilieocaecal mass/*Y. pestis*: Plague

Lactose-fermenting ('coliforms'):
***S**erratia*
***E**scherichia coli*
***E**nterobacteria* spp.
***K**lebsiella*: UTI; neonatal meningitis, severe, nosocomial pneumonia
***S**higella sonnei*: Only *Shigella* sp. that ferments lactose

Parvobacteria (small size – **all end in 'ella', except *Haemophilus***):
***G**ardner**ella** vaginalis*: Vaginitis
*Francis**ella** tularensis*: Tularaemia: ulcers, lymphadenopathy, pneumonia – from rabbits, deer
*Pasteur**ella***: Localized or systemic infection from animal-bite
***B**ruc**ella** melitensis/B. abortus*: Pneumonia, meningitis, endocarditis – contracted from farm animals
*Bordet**ella** pertussis*: Whooping cough
*Barton**ella***: Cat-scratch disease (*B. henselae*), Oroya fever, bacillary angiomatosis
***H**aemophilus holeraa*: Pneumonia, epiglottitis, meningitis
H. ducreyi: Chancroid

Other
***P**seudomonas aeruginosa*: **P^2.S.E.U.D.O.**
Pneumonia in cystic fibrosis or ITU
Septicaemia
Ecthyma gangrenosum in immunocompromised
UTI
Dermatological: Wound infection
Ophthalmology: Endophthalmitis 2° to trauma

*Burkholderia **p**seudomallei* (related bacteria): Melioidosis; glanders – pneumonia
***V**ibrio cholerae*: Cholera
***V**. parahaemolyticus*: Food-poisoning
***C**ampylobacteria jejuni*: Bloody diarrhoea
L*egion**ella** pneumophila*: Atypical, severe pneumonia

Gram –ve Rods – Anaerobic

Bacteroides: *B. fragilis*: Peritonitis 2° to bowel/gynaecological disease
B. oralis/Fusobacteria: Dental abscess-gingivitis/Lemierre disease
Helicobacter pylori: Peptic ulcer, gastric carcinoma, gastic MALToma

ANTIBIOTICS

Choice

Gram +ve Cocci

Staphylococci
Beta-lactams: Flucloxacillin, co-amoxiclav
Glycopeptides: Vancomycin, teicoplanin
Oxazolinedione: Linezolid
Special circumstances:

- Osteomyelitis: Clindamycin, fusidic acid
- Endocarditis: Gentamicin
- Penicillin-allergic: Macrolide – clarithromycin

Streptococci
Beta-lactams:
Penicillins:

- Benzylpenicillin (IV)
- Phenoxymethylpenicillin, 'Pen V' (PO)
- Amoxicillin, ampicillin

Cephalosporins:

- 1°: Cefalexin (PO)
- 2°: Cefuroxime (IV)

Carbapenems: Meropenem
Penicillin-allergic: Macrolide – clarithromycin

Gram +ve Rods

L.A.N.D.

__L__isteria: Amoxicillin + gentamicin
__A__nthrax: Penicillin/ciprofloxacin
__N__ocardia: Cotrimoxazole
Diphtheria: Anti-toxin

Gram +ve Anaerobes

Clostridia botulinum/C. perfringens: Benzylpenicillin, clindamycin, metronidazole
Clostridium difficile: Metronidazole, vancomycin
Actinomycoses: Co-amoxiclav

Gram –ve Cocci

Meningococci
Penicillins: Benzylpenicillin
Cephalosporin, 3°: Ceftriaxone, cefotaxime
Penicillin-allergic: Macrolide – erythromycin

Gonococci
Amoxicillin, ampicillin
Cephalosporins: 2°, 3°
Quinolone: Ciprofloxacin
Penicillin-allergic: Macrolide – erythromycin

Gram –ve Rods

Enterobacteria, e.g. *Salmonella, E. coli*
Trimethoprim
Aminoglycosides: Gentamicin, amikacin
Quinolone: Ciprofloxacin

Parvobacteria, e.g. *Haemophilus, Bordatella pertussis*
Amoxicillin, ampicillin
Cephalosporins: 2° , 3°

Pseudomonas aeruginosa
Beta-lactams:

- Temocillin, piperacillin
- Ceftazidime
- Aztreonam (monobactam)

Aminoglycosides: Gentamicin, amikacin
Quinolone: Ciprofloxacin
Brucella: Doxycycline + gentamicin/rifampicin
Legionella: Clarithromycin, ciprofloxacin

Gram –ve Anaerobes

Bacteroides: Metronidazole
Helicobacter: Metronidazole or clarithromycin, plus amoxicillin

Atypical bacteria

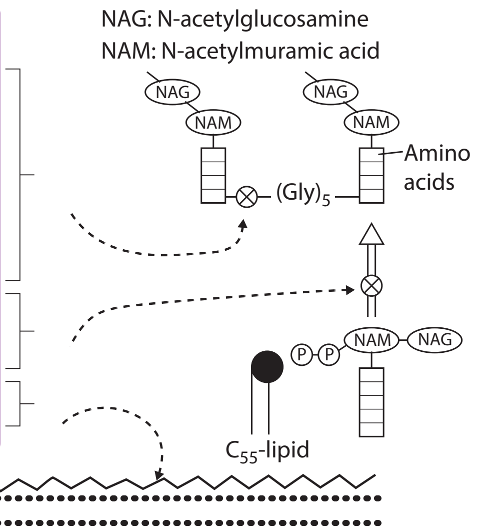
Mycoplasma, spirochaetes, Rickettsiae, Chlamydiae
Macrolides: Erythromycin, azithromycin, clarithromycin
Tetracyclines: Tetracycline, oxytetracycline

Mycobacteria
TB: **R.I.P.P.E.R.S^3.** (p. 203)
Leprosy: Rifampicin, clofazimine, dapsone
Atypical: Rifampicin, clofazimine, macrolide

Sites of action

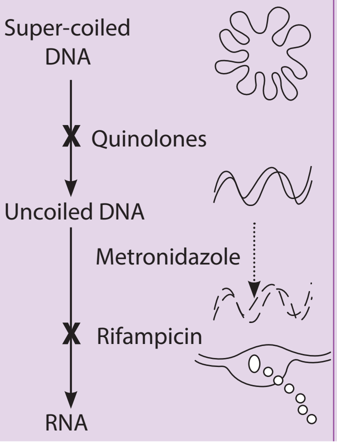
Peptidoglycan cell-wall

Beta-lactams:
Binds to penicillin-binding protein
Inhibit transpeptidation cross-link between peptide backbones
Inhibit autolysis inhibitor: Osmotic pressure ruptures plasma membrane
Cycloserine: Inhibits addition of final 2 alanine amino acids
Glycopeptides, bacitracin: Inhibits release of peptidoglycan building block from lipid carrier
Polymixin: Cationic detergents disrupt lipid bilayer


NAG: N-acetylglucosamine
NAM: N-acetylmuramic acid
NAG
NAM
NAG
NAM
(Gly)$_5$
Amino acids
P
P
NAM
NAG
C$_{55}$-lipid
Cell wall
Lipid bilayer

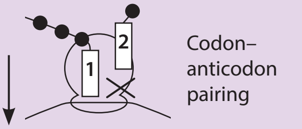
DNA/RNA synthesis

Quinolones (ciprofloxacin):
Inhibit DNA relaxation prior to transcription or replication
Inhibit DNA coiling prior to cell division
Metronidazole:
Fragments DNA via free-radicals
Inhibits nucleic acid synthesis
Inhibits reductase enzyme in anaerobic respiratn pathway
Rifampicin: Inhibits prokaryote RNA polymerase

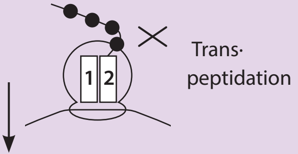

Super-coiled DNA
Quinolones
Uncoiled DNA
Metronidazole
Rifampicin
RNA

Protein synthesis

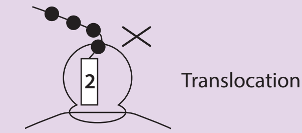
Tetracyclines:
Selective uptake into bacteria
Competitive inhibitors with incoming tRNA for amino site
Aminoglycosides:
Selective uptake
Causes misreading of codon (mRNA) anticodon


2
1
Codon–anticodon pairing

Chloramphenicol, clindamycin:
Inhibit transpeptidation

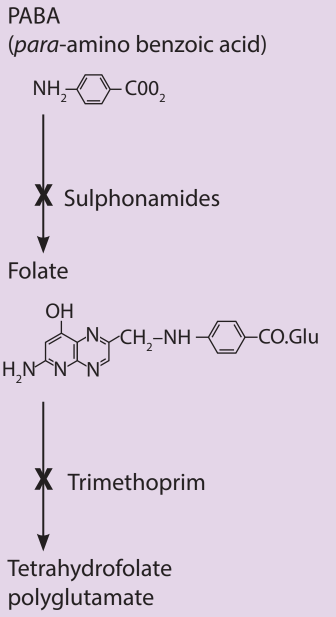

1
2
Trans-peptidation

Macrolides, fusidic acid:
Inhibit translocation


2
Translocation

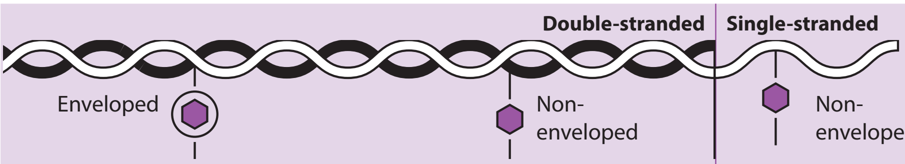
Folate synthesis

Sulphonamides:
Competitive inhibitors of dihydropteroate synthetase
Trimethoprim:
Competitive inhibitor of bacterial DHFR (dihydrofolate reductase)


PABA
(*para*-amino benzoic acid)
NH$_2$
C00$_2$
Sulphonamides
Folate
OH
H$_2$N
N
N
N
N
CH$_2$–NH
CO.Glu
Trimethoprim
Tetrahydrofolate polyglutamate

VIRUSES

DNA



Hepatitis B (p. 152)

Herpes (pp. 193–5)

HSV-1:
- Labial herpes
- Encephalitis

HSV-2:
- Genital herpes
- Meningitis, recurrent

VZV:
- Chicken pox (varicella)
- Zoster
- Brainstem encephalitis, myelitis

EBV:
- Glandular fever
- Lymphoma (esp. Non·Hodgkin)
- Nasopharynx carcinoma

CMV:
- Retinitis
- Colitis/hepatitis
- Pneumonitis (disease only occurs in immuno-supressed, esp. AIDS and organ transplant)

HHV-6:
- Roseola infantum (exanthema subitum)
- Meningoencephalitis

HHV-7

HHV-8: Kaposi's sarcoma

Pox

Pox:
- Cowpox (vaccinia)
- Smallpox (variola) both eradicated by vaccination

Orf: Pustules, acquired from sheep

XXX (assoc. with HIV) molluscum contagiosum: Pearly, umbilicated pustules

Adenovirus

Types 1-30:
Pharyngitis – bronchitis
Conjunctivitis
Meningitis

Types 40, 41: Diarrhoea

Papova

PApilloma:
Human papillomavirus (HPV)
- Types 6, 11:
  - Warts, condylomata acuminata
- Types 16, 18:
  - Carcinoma of cervix, vulva, penis, rectum

POlyoma
JC virus:
- Progressive multifocal leucoencephalopathy (PML)
- Occurs in AIDS or pts. given integrin inhibitors. e.g. as Rx for multiple sclerosis

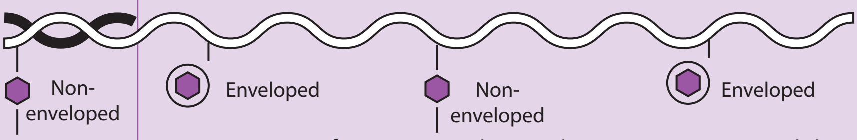
BK virus

VAcuolating, e.g. SV40: Used in recombinant genetic engineering

Parvovirus

Type 819: (p. 193)
Erythema infectiosum ('slapped cheek syn.' or 'fifth disease')
Aplastic anaemia crisis esp. in hereditary haemolytic anaemias, e.g. sickle cell disease
Adeno-associated viruses

RNA



Reovirus

Rotavirus:
Infantile gastroenteritis

+ve strand

C.H.A.I.N. F.R.EE.

Coronavirus: Common cold; SARS

Hepatitis:
- Hep C, G (flavivirus-like)
- Hep E (calicivirus-like)

Astrovirus: Gastroenteritis

Intestinal, other:
- Calicivirus
- 'Small-round structured viruses'

Norwalk virus

Flavivirus:
- Yellow fever
- Dengue haemorrhagic fever

Rubella

EE: Eastern equine encephalitis, Ross River virus (alphaviruses)

NB: Flaviviruses, rubella and alphaviruses are part of Togavirus family

–ve strand

O.P.E.R.A. is –ve!

Orthomyxovirus:
Influenza A–C

Paramyxoviruses:
- Parainfluenza
- RSV
- Measles
- Mumps

Ebola virus, other arena viruses, e.g. Lassa fever

Rabies (rhabdovirus)

Arbovirus group C:
Hantavirus

Picornaviruses

= small viruses, +ve strand

Rhinovirus: Fits up nose!

Hepatitis D:
'Degenerate' virus, dependent on Hep B

Enteroviruses

ECHO, E.C.H.O, ...

ECHO: Meningitis
Enterovirus spp.
Coxsackie
A:
- Meningitis
- Conjunctivitis (A24)
- Hand, foot & mouth disease (A16)
- Herpangina

B:
- Myopericarditis
- Bornholm disease

Hepatitis A
O: p**O**li**O**

Lentiviruses

= reverse transcriptase, +ve strand

HTLV-I:
Tropical spastic paraparesis
Adult T-cell leukaemia/lymphoma

HTLV-II: Hairy cell leukaemia?

HIV-1/2: AIDS (p. 196)

NB: These viruses infect non-dividing cells, therefore slow replicators ('lenti')

PNEUMONIA – PATHOGENS

Community-acquired

Typical

Lobar

Streptococcus pneumoniae (AKA pneumococcus)
  Epi: Recent viral upper-respiratory tract infection, winter
  PC: **R**apid onset, offset; **R**usty sputum; **R**igors (septicaemia); pleural, pericardial effusion; MR = 20%

Gram –ve: *Haemophilus influenzae* type b (rods) or *Moraxella catarrhalis* (cocci)
  Epi: COPD, elderly, infants, septicaemic
  PC: Insidious onset; purulent sputum; cor pulmonale

Cavities and empyema – patients are pretty SicK

***S**taphylococcus aureus*
  Epi: Influenza; measles; intravenous drug abusers; cystic fibrosis; MR = 30%

***K**lebsiella* (short, plump, capsulated, Gram –ve bacilli)
  Epi: Alcoholics, diabetes mellitus, COPD; S. Africa
  PC: Bloody sputum; CXR – bowing of fissures; reduced lung volume; sputum microscopy +ve for organism

Atypical – 1

Constitutional symptoms with normal chest auscultation, but CXR shows consolidation

Mycoplasma pneumoniae
  Epi: Winter epidemics every few years; young adults, esp. in army or college
  PC: **F.A.S.C.I.N.A.T.E.**
    Flu-like: Fever
    Arthralgia, arthritis
    Skin: Erythema multiforme, Raynaud (cold agglutinins)
    Cardiology: Pericarditis, myocarditis;
    Intestinal: D+V, pancreatitis
    Neurological: Headache common; Guillain–Barré syndrome, myelitis, meningo-encephalitis, cerebellar ataxia
    Anaemia: Cold agglutinin haemolytic anaemia; jaundice (NB: Normal white cell count)
    Throat, sore, injected; laryngitis or tracheitis – dry or mucoid cough
    Earache: Bullous myringitis

Legionella pneumophila
  Epi: Outbreaks, esp. on contact with stagnant fresh-water supply, air-conditioning, humidifiers, whirl-pools; summer; Mediterranean travel; middle-age, obese, alcoholic, smokers, diabetes
  PC: **P.A.N.I.C.K.E.R.**
    Pyrexia, esp. >40°C (with relative bradycardia); may be self-limiting without pneumonia ('Pontiac fever')
    Arthralgia, incl. marked pleuritic chest pain
    Neurological: Headache, encephalopathy
    Intestinal: D+V, abdominal pain
    Coagulopathy (DIC), CK ↑
    Kidney: Proteinuria, haematuria, renal failure
    Electrolytes: Na ↓, PO_4 ↓, ALT ↑, albumin ↓
    Respiratory failure, lung abscess

Chlamydia pneumoniae/psittaci
  Epi: *C. pneumoniae* – person-to-person spread; *C. psittaci* – parrots; sheep, turkey, duck, pigeon (ornithosis)
  PC: *C. pneumoniae*: Pharyngitis, otitis; dry or mucoid cough occurs late
    C. psittaci: Headache, myalgia; severe cough, haemoptysis, 2° bacterial infection; endocarditis

Coxiella burnetti (Q-fever)
  Epi: Sheep, goats, cattle-rearing areas, e.g. E. Canada, NW. Spain; contact with dairy products or faeces
  PC: Abrupt onset of flu-like illness; meningitis; endocarditis; hepatitis

Atypical – 2

Bacteria

TB
  Epi: Alcoholics, debilitated, Indian
  PC: Insidious symptoms – chronic cough, haemoptysis, weight loss
Meliodiosis; *Actinomyces israelii*; Tularaemia; plague; anthrax

Viruses:

Adenovirus, influenza, parainfluenza, RSV, measles – mainly children; causes interstitial pneumonitis
Hantavirus: rodents, deer in USA

Fungi

Histoplasmosis – Mid-west or SE. USA: bats, soil; coccidioidomycosis – SW. USA deserts; blastomycosis
Cryptococcosis – pigeon droppings

Nosocomial

Def

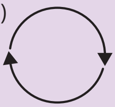
Pneumonia acquired in hospital ≥2 days after admission

Causes

C.I.R.C.U.L.AR. … *like the treatment of them*

Contact with other patients
Immunocompromise
Recumbency (basal atelectasis)
Catheters, incl.:
- **U**rinary
- **L**ines and ET tubes

Antibiotic **R**esistance

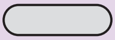


Organisms:

Gram +ve (30%)

Staphylococcus aureus, esp. MRSA
Streptococcus faecalis incl. vancomycin-resistant enterococci (VRE)
Streptococcus pneumoniae

Gram –ve (50%)



Pseudomonas aeruginosa – tubes
Acinetobacter
Legionella – nebulizer, ventilators
Enterobacteria: *Proteus, Serratia, Enterobacter*

Anaerobes: *Bacteroides, Fusobacterium*
Fungi

Immunocompromised

Innate

Aspiration, e.g. alcoholics, drug overdose, bulbar weakness incl. stroke, seizure: Anaerobes, e.g. *Bacteroides*, *Streptococcus milleri*
Cystic fibrosis: *Haemophilus, Staphylococcus, Pseudomonas aeruginosa/P. cepacia*
Bronchial obstruction, e.g. foreign body; carcinoma; lymph node, bronchopulmonary sequestration: Anaerobes, e.g. *Bacteroides, S. milleri*
Neutropenia: Coliforms, *S. aureus, Aspergillus*

B cell, e.g. splenectomy, hypogammaglobulinaemia: *S. pneumoniae, Haemophilus* (both encapsulated bacteria), *Mycoplasma*

T cell, e.g. AIDS:

Aspiration, e.g. alcoholics, drug overdose, bulbar weakness incl. stroke, seizure:
- Bacterial:
  - Community-acquired pneumonia – occurs early in AIDS; more severe
  - TB, MAI
- Fungi: PCP – 80% develop without prophylaxis; *Cryptococcus* – mild pneumonia
- Viruses: Herpes viruses: CMV, EBV, HSV, VZV, HHV-8 (Kaposi's sarcoma)
- Toxoplasmosis

B + T cell, e.g. post-transplant immunosuppression:

Nosocomial, e.g. *Legionella*
Nocardia (esp. heart transplant)
  PC: Pleurisy, cavitates, metastases
  Ix: Acid-fast hyphae
Candida; *Aspergillus*
CMV: Systemic disease

FOOD POISONING

Def

Caused by bacteria or toxin residing in food source
Derives from infection within animal, or contamination during food storage or preparation

Causes

Classified by:
Cause: Pre-formed toxin vs. bacterial multiplication (often with toxin secretion)
Incubation time: Hours (pre-formed toxin)–days (bacterial multiplication within gut)

Pre-formed toxin: 1–6 hours **S.i.C.k.**

S*taphylococcus aureus*: Heat-stable enterotoxins A–E
Food: Contaminated dairy or meat; septic lesion on hand of food-handler
PC: Vomiting (± diarrhoea)
Rx: Flucloxacillin if bacteria isolated
C*lostridium botulinum*: Heat-labile toxin (blocks pre-synaptic release of Ach)
Food: Tinned foods kept in anaerobic conditions, esp. home-canners, canned fruit
PC: Vomiting (± constipation); descending paralysis (ophthalmoplegia, ptosis, bulbar weakness)
Rx: Anti-toxin; nerves resprout in 2–3 months

Toxin/cell multiplication: 8–24 hours **S.i.C.k.**

Special foods:
Seafood, raw – *Vibrio parahaemolyticus*
Micro: Forms blue–green colonies on thiosulphate agar
PC: Vomiting; diarrhoea; abdominal pain
Rx: Tetracycline
Soups, sauces; or reheated, fried rice – *Bacillus cereus*
Micro: Forms 'curled hair' colonies on agar
PC: Early vomiting (rice); diarrhoea, abdominal pain (soup, sauce)
C*lostridium perfringens* (heat-labile toxin + bacterial multiplication)
Food: Reheated meat, e.g. meat pies, mincemeat, stew
Micro: Nagler reaction detects toxin (half the plate has anti-toxin, which inhibits growth)
PC: Colic (gas-producing –same organism as in gas gangrene!)

Cell multiplication: 1–10 days **S.i.C.k.**

S*almonella* spp. (2000 serotypes, incl. S. *enteritidis* phage type 4)
Food: Eggs, chicken, milk stored at room temp./nursing home outbreaks
Micro:
- Non-lactose fermenting on MacConkey medium
- Serotyped by antigens O (lipopolysaccharide) and H (flagella)

PC:
- Vomiting; diarrhoea (profuse, watery ± blood in 25%); abdominal pain
- Fever; septicaemia, due to invasion of wall; esp. immunocompromised, *S. virchow*
- Asymptomatic carriage

Rx: Ciprofloxacin or amoxicillin – only if septicaemia due to risk of prolonged carriage
C*ampylobacter jejuni* (cholera-like heat-stable toxin)
Food: Cooked meat, heated milk
Micro: Motile, curved spiral-shaped rods – like seagulls

PC:
- Prodrome: Fever, vomiting, headache, generalized aches
- Profuse watery, bloody diarrhoea (± mucus, pus); abdominal pain

Rx: Erythromycin (decreases excretion rate), ciprofloxacin

GASTROENTERITIS

Def

Bacteria spread between people, via faecal–oral route, e.g. food handling by case; in water supply
Bacteria cause colitis – except for *Vibrio cholerae* and *Salmonella typhi*, which cause ileitis

Causes

V.E.R.Y. S^2.i.C^2.k.

V*ibrio cholera*
E*scherichia coli*: **P.I.T.H.y.:**
  Pathogenetic – paediatric (neonatal and infantile gastroenteritis)
  Invasive (*Shigella*-like dysentery)
  Toxicogenetic – traveller's diarrhoea (cholera-like)
  Haemorrhagic – haemorrhagic colitis/haemolytic–uraemic syndrome
Rotavirus, and other viruses:
  Rotavirus (esp. group A) – double-stranded RNA
    Epi:
    - Occurs in infants or elderly in institutions (outbreaks), esp. in winter
    - Spread via respiratory secretions, as well as faecal–oral route

    PC: May cause respiratory symptoms, as well as D+V + abdominal cramps + fever
    Electron microscopy: Spherical particles with spoke-like surface
  Astrovirus, calicivirus, Norwalk-like viruses – single-stranded +ve RNA
    Epi: Outbreaks among children (esp. caliciviruses) or families
    Electron microscopy: 6-pointed star, small-round structured viruses (SRSVs)
  Adenovirus (esp. serotypes 40, 41) – DNA virus
    Epi: Endemic, due to prolonged faecal excretion by cases
    Electron microscopy: Icosahedral symmetry with round capsomeres
  CMV – DNA virus
    Epi: Immunocompromised, e.g. HIV
Y*ersinia enterocolitica/pseudotuberculosis*
S*almonella typhi* – 'typhoid fever'
S*higella dysenteriae* – 'bacillary dysentry'
C*lostridium difficile* – 'pseudomembranous colitis'
  Also *Clostridium septicum*: Neutropenic enterocolitis
C*ryptosporidium*, and other protozoa:
  Sporozoa: *Cryptosporidium*, *Microsporidium*, *Isospora belli* – HIV-related
    Plasmodium – malaria
  Amoeba: *Entamoeba histolytica* – 'amoebic dysentry'
  Flagellate: *Giardia lamblia*
  Ciliate: *Balantidium coli*

GASTROENTERITIS – ILEAL-BASED

Salmonella – 'Typhoid' or 'Enteric fever'

Salmonella typhi – severe; *S. paratyphi* – asymptomatic or mild, and less carriership

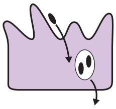
Epi

- Spread by cases <2 months post-infection, OR chronic carriers (2%), who excrete bacteria indefinitely
- Carriage assoc. with elderly women, gallstones, *Salmonella* Vi antigen +ve (capsule)
- Medium of spread: Water supply (excreted by faeces, urine), or carriers' hands on meat, eggs, milk
- Sporadic: 3/4 in UK acquired abroad; OR outbreaks, e.g. Croydon 1937; food-borne, e.g. Typhoid Mary
- Risk factors: Achlorhydria ↑ risk; sickle cell ↑ septicaemia

PATH

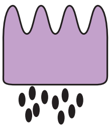
Bacteria cross ileal epithelium (cf. *Shigella* – remains within colonic epithelium)

Weeks 1–2

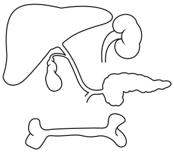


- Binds to mannose
- Distorts microvilli – 'actin splash'
- Transcytosis via endosome
- Transient bacteraemia

Weeks 2–3+

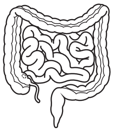


- Proliferates in lamina propria
- Spreads to lymph nodes

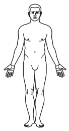


- Multiplies within macrophages of reticuloendothelial systems

Chronic cholecystitis reinfects bowel in Peyer patch



Bacteraemia



PC

G.O. S.A.L.M.O.N^2.E.L.LA.

GIT: 1st week – constipation; abdominal pain, distension, 3+ week – infectious diarrhoea
Complications: GIT haemorrhage; ileal ulceration, perforation
Organomegaly: Hepatosplenomegaly
Systemic: Fever (transient bacteraemia)/**S**kin: Rose spots
Arthralgia, arthritis; myalgia, myositis, necrosis
Lungs: Pneumonitis/URTI symptoms common, e.g. sore throat, epistaxis
Myocarditis: Bradycardia common
Osteomyelitis
Neurological: Headache common, meningo-encephalitis
Nephritis: Glomerulonephritis, pyelonephritis
Extra: DVT
Lymphocytes ↑; WBC ↓
LAte: Mortality 10% without Rx; 0.1% if treated

Ix

Culture
1st 10 days: Blood or bone marrow culture
2nd 10 days: Stool or urine culture
Non-lactose fermenting on MacConkey medium

Serology Widal test: Diluted patient's serum (Ig) + killed test bacteria in visible clumps

Rx

Amoxicillin, trimethoprim, ciprofloxacin, ceftriaxone (IV) – resistance common
Cholecystectomy: Cures carriage in 75%, but small risk of death
Vaccine: Killed monovalent IM or Vi-capsular polysaccharide Ag, live oral – 3 years' protection

Cholera

Vibro cholerae
Type 01; biotype classical (severe); serotype Ogawa, Inaba, Hikojima
Type 01; biotype El-Tor (mild)

Epi

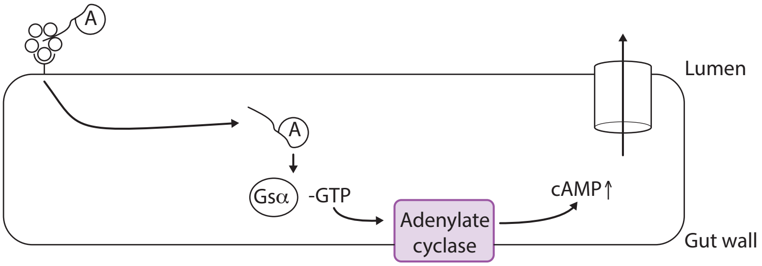
Spread by cases, and asymptomatic carriers that occur commonly in outbreaks
Medium of spread: Water supply, seafood, flies – but cooking destroys bacteria
Risk factor: Achlorhydria; epidemics and pandemics

PATH

Bacterial toxin binds to ganglioside receptors, in ileum, via B ('binding') subunit

Subunit A enters cell and permanently activates Gsα via ADP-ribosylation

Adenylate cyclase activated thereby ↑ cAMP, and leading to isotonic loss of water, NaCl, KCl, HCO_3^-



PC

Incubation period 5 hours – 5 days
D+V:

- Profuse, 'rice-water' stool (turbid, due to flecks of mucus and shed epithelium)
- Severe dehydration: 'Choleraic facies' = sunken eyes and cheeks; hypovolaemic shock, acute tubular necrosis

Ix

Bloods: Na^+ normal; K^+ ↓ (muscle cramps)
Metabolic acidosis
Stool microscopy/cultures:
No WBCs or RBCs seen
Culture: Sucrose-fermenting
Bacteria appear as small curved, comma-shaped , motile Gram –ve rods
Type, e.g. 01; biotype: Classical or El-Tor; serotype: slide agglutination; phage type

Rx

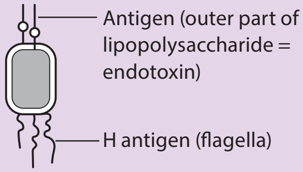
Tetracycline (PO/IV): ↓ fluid loss and ↓ infectivity
Killed vaccine: Only protects 50% (not 0139)

BACTERIAL GASTROENTERITIS – OTHER

Escherichia coli

Types

P^2.I.T^2.H.Y.



Paediatric
- Entero**P**athogenetic: Infantile gastroenteritis (0–2 years)
  - Epi:
    - Sporadic, or outbreaks in nurseries and resource-poor countries
    - Breast-feeding protects
  - PATH: Acts by combination of invasion and toxins
  - PC:
    - Profuse watery diarrhoea, dehydration, metabolic acidosis
    - High mortality rate
- Entero-aggregative: Neonatal gastroenteritis (0–6 months)

Invasive
- Entero**I**nvasive
  - Epi: All ages
  - PATH: Shiga-like toxin causes *Shigella*-like dysentry in colon
  - Ix: Stool microscopy – RBCs and WBCs

Traveller's diarrhoea
- Entero**T**oxicogenic: Travellers' diarrhoea, e.g. O6 type (local *E. coli* possess different antigen types to commensal bacteria)
  - Epi:
    - Adults recently arrived in foreign country ingesting contaminated water/food
    - Infants in resource-poor countries
  - PATH:
    - Colonisation factor antigen = special fimbriae or pili that allow ileal adherence
    - Heat-labile toxin or heat-stable toxin (activates guanylate cyclase)
  - PC:
    - Cholera-like: profuse watery diarrhoea, vomiting, abdominal pain, mild fever
    - Lasts for a few days, or rarely weeks
  - Rx: Doxycycline or ciprofloxacin in severe cases

Haemorrhagic
- Entero**H**aemorrhagic (Veroc**Y**totoxicogenic):
  - Haemorrhagic colitis
  - Haemolytic–uraemic syndrome
    e.g. 0157 antigen type, H7 serotype (as in the USA hamburger outbreak)
  - Epi:
    - All ages susceptible, but children and elderly most at risk
    - Sporadic (through contact with cattle that act as carriers)
    - Outbreaks, e.g. undercooked hamburgers, unpasteurized milk, nursing homes
  - PATH:
    - Attachment–effacement (eae)' gene = pilus that allows colonic binding via mannitol
    - Verocytotoxins' (VT1,2) = Shiga-like toxins
  - PC: Haemorrhagic colitis:
    - Profuse bloody diarrhoea with red and white blood cells in stool
    - Thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura
    - Usually apyrexial
  - Haemolytic–uraemic syndrome (in 10%):
    - Haemolytic anaemia or thrombocytopenia
    - Uraemia (red blood cells crenate and block glomeruli)
    - 5% die!
  - Rx: Fosfomycin?

Shigella – 'Bacillary dysentery'

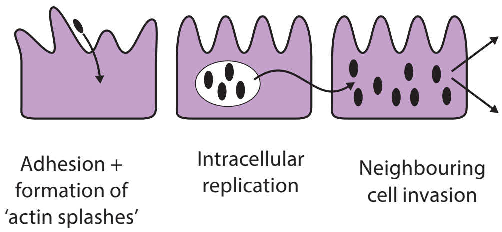
(in order of decreasing severity):
S. dysenteriae (epidemics) → *S. flexneri/S. boydi* (endemic in resource-poor countries) → *S. sonnei* (UK nursing home outbreaks)

Epi

Faecal–oral route. NB: Only a small infective dose is required, and cases continue to excrete for several months after infection

PATH

Infection confined to epithelium of terminal ileum and colon (as opposed to *Salmonella*)


Adhesion + formation of 'actin splashes'
Intracellular replication
Neighbouring cell invasion

Shiga toxin: Inhibits ribosomal function and protein synthesis

Apoptosis: Epithelial sloughing, ulceration and haemorrhage (sigmoidoscopy: denuded mucosa)

PC

Incubation period 1–7 days

S.H.I.G.A.

Systemic:
  Abrupt fever
  Septicaemia in 10%, esp. with *S. dysenteriae* in immunocompromised
Headaches: Meningism (but sterile CSF)
Intestinal:
  Diarrhoea – frequent, but scanty volume, with multiple white and red cells and mucus
  GI haemorrhage
  Abdominal pain and cramps
Glomerulonephritis: Haemolytic–uraemic syndrome
Arthralgia incl. reactive arthritis

Ix

Bloods: Haemolytic–uraemic syndrome; Na ↓, glucose ↓
Stool: Microscopy: ↑↑ WBC (cf. amoebic dysentry), ↑ RBC, ↑ mucus
  Culture: Non-lactose fermenting (except *S. sonnei*)

Rx

Amoxicillin, trimethoprim, ciprofloxacin; avoid anti-diarrhoeals

Yersinia enterocolitica/pseudotuberculosis

Epi: Milk, unpasteurized cheese, tofu; Fe-overload, e.g. thalassaemia, haemochromatosis; pets act as reservoirs
PATH: Terminal ileitis with local mesenteric adenitis (right iliac fossa mass)
PC:

- Early diarrhoea (incubation period 1–7 days)
- Immune reactions (erythema nodosum, reactive arthritis)
- **S.A.L.M.O.N.**ella-like systemic symptoms (**S**kin – cellulitis, **A**rthralgia, **L**ung, **M**yoendocarditis, **O**steomyelitis, **N**eurological)

Rx: Tetracycline, ciproflocxacin (PO); ceftriaxone or gentamicin (IV)

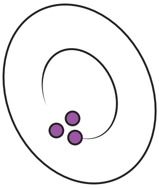
Clostridium difficile – 'pseudomembranous colitis'

Epi: Antibiotic therapy within 24 hours starting to 6 weeks after stopping; elderly, debilitated
PATH: Proctitis, later colitis; may progress to toxic megacolon with perforation; toxin-mediated
PC: Abdominal pain, tenderness; profuse diarrhoea; fever; neutrophilia
Rx: Vancomycin or metronidazole (PO)

PROTOZOAL GASTROENTERITIS

Sporozoa – intracellular organisms

Plasmodium falciparum – acute malaria
Cryptosporidia; Microsporidia; *Isospora belli*


Round, circular, organisms

PC

Immunocompetent: Self-limiting diarrhoea
Immunocompromised, incl. AIDS:
- Chronic diarrhoea
- Wasting

Ix

Ziehl–Nielsen staining (Cryptosporidia)
Electron (Microsporidia)
Bowel biopsy:
- Ileal (Cryptosporidia)
- Jejunal (Microsporidia)

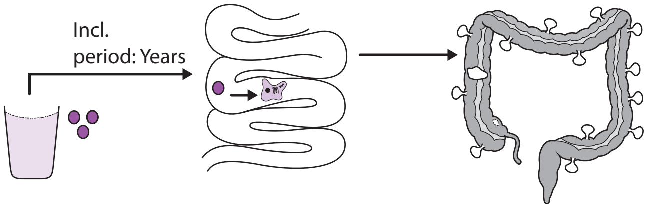
Rx

Chemotherapy: Nitazoxanide (Cryptosporidium), albendazole (Microsporidium)
Supportive: Rehydration, electrolyte correction

Amoebae – simple unicellular organisms

Entamoeba histolytica – 'amoebic dysentery"

PATH

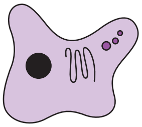


Cysts in uncooked food or water (survive for weeks)

Trophozoites emerge in duodenum-ileum ("excystation')

Trophozoites invade colon via flask-shaped ulcers ('encystment')

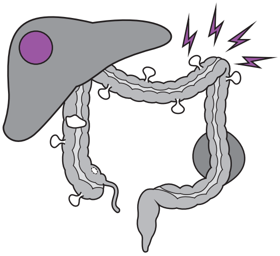
Feet-like 'pseudopodia'



PC

Amoebic colitis (variable):
- Asymptomatic carriage
- Mild, relapsing-remitting diarrhoea, rectal bleeding, colic, fever
- Acute, fulminant → toxic megacolon, perforation

Amoebic liver abscess (esp. men)
- Acute RUQ/R shoulder pain
- ↑ with inspiration, alcohol
- Perforation into cavities – peritoneal, pleural, pericardial, with high mortality
- Diarrhoea in only 10%



Amoeboma
Colonic or caecal inflammatory mass

Ix

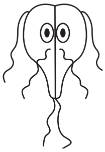
Bloods: Serology: Immunofluorescence or ELISA +ve in 90%, WBC ↑ (not eosinophilia), LFT normal unless abscess causes cholestasis
Micro: Fresh stool micro – cysts, trophozoites found in <40%; WBCs less than in bacillary dysentery
Radiol: USS or CT abdomen – liver abscess esp. right lobe
Special: Colonoscopy: Ulcer biopsy

Rx

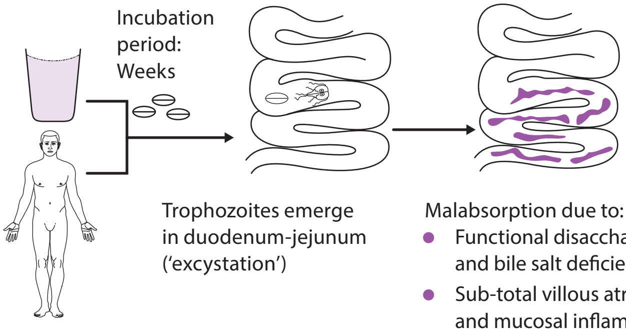
Metronidazole (tissue amoebicide) – first 10 days; diloxanide (luminal amoebicide) – second 10 days
Abscess: Aspiration, fluid appears like fish sauce!

Flagellata – motile unicellular organisms

Giardia lamblia (also called *G. intestinalis*) – giardiasis


Flagella (unidirectional)

PATH



Cysts in unboiled water (tropical or temperate zones); survive for 2 months

Faecal-oral contact:
- Men who have sex with men
- Nurseries

Immunodeficiency:
- Achlorhydria
- Hypogammaglobulinaemia

Incubation period: Weeks

Trophozoites emerge in duodenum-jejunum ('excystation')

Malabsorption due to:
- Functional disaccharidase and bile salt deficiency
- Sub-total villous atrophy and mucosal inflammation

PC

Patient may carry asymptomatically or present with malabsorption:
- Anorexia, weight loss
- Epigastric cramps, flatulence
- Chronic diarrhoea – pale stool, steatorrhoea

Ix

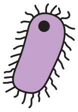
Stool – fresh microscopy: Cysts or trophozoites; 75% sensitivity if sample repeated; no WBCs or RBCs
– stool antigen test (ELISA): Sensitivity 90%, specificity 99%
Duodenal aspirate and/or biopsy: Demonstrates trophozoites with 90% sensitivity
NB: Treatment is often given empirically without need for +ve microscopy, on basis of travel history

Rx

Avoid milk; metronidazole

Ciliate – motile unicellular organisms

Balantidium coli – balantidiasis


Cilia (multidirectional)
Largest protozoan pathogen (100–200 μm)

Epi

Transmitted from pigs

PC

Resembles amoebic colitis

Ix

Fresh stool microscopy

Rx

Tetracycline

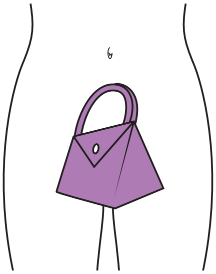
GENITAL DISCHARGE

Genital discharge

Causes

The following cause urethral or vaginal discharge:

G.U.C.C.I.'S. V.A.G.I.N.A.



Gonorrhoea
Ulcers, e.g. HSV, syphilis chancre
Chlamydia
Candida
Infections – other:
    UTI – Mycoplasma, Ureaplasma, enterobacteria, incl. 2° to pyelonephritis
S*taphylococcus aureus* ('toxic shock syndrome')
    Streptococcus pyogenes (scarletina vulvovaginitis)

V*aginalis, Trichomonas* = flagellate protozoa:
    O/E: Frothy green discharge, strawberry spots in vagina, vulval excoriation
Allergy, foreign body
G*ardnerella vaginalis* = Gram –ve bacillus
    O/E: Thin grey discharge, with fish-like odour after sex
Inflammatory: Crohn fistula
Neoplasia:
- Carcinoma of vulva, vagina, cervix/penile
- Wart (HPV)

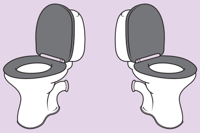
Age (physiological): Post-menopausal – atrophic vaginitis

Gonorrhoea *(Neisseria gonorrhoeae)*

Epi Women > men (5:1)

PC

C.R.A.P^2.P^2.E.R.S.!



Conjunctivitis
Rash:
- Maculopapular; vesicular; haemorrhagic; vasculitic-necrotic
- Limbs, esp. on same limb as arthritis

Arthritis (septic or reactive): Migratory polyarthritis or monoarthritis, tenosynovitis, e.g. wrist extensors
Pharyngitis
Penis – **P**rostatitis: Urethral gland and vesiculitis infection → discharge or stricture
Pelvic inflammatory disease – bartholinitis: Often asymptomatic, and so in women, initial infection goes untreated and so septicaemia is more likely
Epididymo-orchitis
Rectum: Asymptomatic; painful defaecation; bloody–purulent discharge
Septicaemia: Meningitis; perihepatitis with adhesions; carditis

Chlamydia *(Chlamydia trachomatis)*

Epi Men > women

PC

a real **G.O.A.**

Genital:
- Urethritis (discharge); prostatitis
- Pelvic inflammatory disease; cervicitis

Ophthalmic: Conjunctivitis; anterior uveitis
Arthritis: Lower limb; mono- or oligoarthritis

+ S.C.A.R.E.D. S.L.O.U.C.H.E.R.S.

Spondylosis
Chest: Thoracic spondylosis
Arthritis
Respiratory: Pulmonary infiltrates
Enthesopathy
Dactylitis

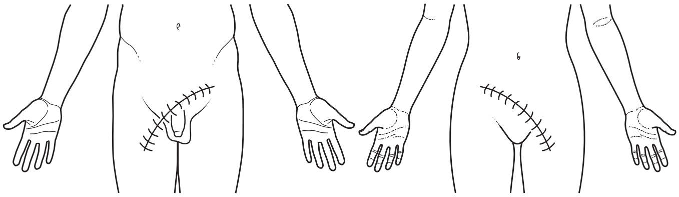
Systemic: Fatigue, low-grade fever, anorexia – weight loss
Liver: Fitz–Hugh–Curtis syndrome (perihepatitis + pleural effusion)
Ophthalmic: Conjunctivitis, iridocyclitis, episcleritis
Ulcers: Orogenital, incl. circinate balanitis
Cardiac: Aortic root fibrosis and regurgitation; pericarditis
Haematological: Anaemia of chronic disease
Extra: Meningo-encephalitis, peripheral neuropathy, lymphogranuloma venereum
Respiratory: Chest wall ankylosis, apical fibrosis
Skin: Keratoderma blenorrhagicum; nail ridging, onycholysis

GENITAL ULCERATION

Genital ulceration

Causes

S.H.A.G.G.I.N.' S.C.A.R.S.!!



Syphilis (p. 206)
  Primary chancre – single, painless ulcer
  Secondary – multiple, painful ulcers
  Gumma (latency stage between 2° and 3°) – single, painless ulcer
Herpes simplex virus-2/(rarely VZV)
Autoimmune:
  Behçet syndrome
    PC: Orogenital ulcers, uveitis, CNS disease
  Reactive arthritis
    PC: **G.O.A.** – genital (circinate balanitis – single, painless ulcer), ophthalmic, arthritis
  Crohn – single, painless ulcer
Gonorrhoea, chlamydia, candida, trichomonas – causes of urethritis
Granuloma inguinale and other granulomatous:
  Granuloma inguinale (Donovanosis) – *Klebsiella granulomatis*; tropical infection (esp. Papua New Guinea, Durban) – solitary or multiple painless ulcers
  Lymphogranuloma venereum – *Chlamydia trachomatis*; tropical infection (esp. Africa, Caribbean) – painless anal ulcer with inguinal lymphadenopathy
  Tuberculosis – single, painful ulcer
Injury: Trauma
Neoplasia: Squamous carcinoma; associated HPV; single, painless

Scabies, pubic lice; pediculosis; tinea cruris
Chancroid: *Haemophilus ducreyi* ; tropical infection, causing multiple, painful ulcers and inguinal lymphadenopathy ('buboes')
Allergy, e.g. drug reaction, erythema multiforme, Stevens–Johnson syndrome, contact dermatitis – history of particular soap or underwear
Rash – dermatological:
- Lichen sclerosus et atrophicus/leukoplakia – painless
- Lichen planus – itchy mauve papules or annular lesions
- Psoriasis – red + shiny patches, or scaly
- Seborrhoeic dermatitis – scalp, nose, chest also involved

Staphylococcus: Folliculitis, impetigo, *Borrelia vincentii*

Herpes simplex virus-2

Types:

- 1° infection: Extensive lesions, fever, malaise, meningism
- Recurrence: Milder and shorter course; no systemic symptoms; due to stress, illness, menses

PC:

- 1° infection: Extensive lesions, fever, malaise, meningism
- Prodromal symptoms: Tingling 1–2 days before painful ulcers appear
- Superficial dyspareunia: Cervical and vulval lesions
- Dysuria → urinary retention: Urethral; sacral autonomic plexus lesions
- Painful defaecation → constipation: Ano-rectal lesions

O/E:

- Erythema → pustular vesicle in centre → wet ulcer → dry crust
- Inguinal lymphadenopathy

Rx:

- Warm saline baths
- Antibiotics for 2° bacterial infection
- Aciclovir – effective only in 1st week

Granuloma inguinale and other tropical genital ulcers

Granuloma inguinale (Donovanosis) – *Klebsiella granulomatis* = intracellular Gram –ve rod

PC: Genital, anal, inguinal ulceration – deep red ' beefy', contact bleeding, well-circumscribed, painless

Lymphogranuloma venereum – *Chlamydia trachomatis* = obligate intracellular bacteria

PC:

- Commonly presents as painful inguinal lymphadenopathy (buboes), with 'groove sign' due to inelastic inguinal ligament
- Haemorrhagic proctitis, stricture or fistula
- Conjunctivitis, meningoencephalitis

Chancroid: *Haemophilus ducreyi*

PC: Tender, sharply demarcated ulcer, usually on prepuce or coronal sulcus in men, or fourchette or labia majora in women

Scabies and other infestations

Scabies: *Sarcoptes scabiei*

PC: Intense itching, worse at night
O/E: Red papules, scaling, ulceration, bleeding
Ix: Scrape a burrow with a scalpel blade → 10% KOH → microscopy to look for mite
Rx: BHC (benzene hexachloride); malathion; permethrin

Pubic lice/pediculosis (*Phthirus pubis*)

PC: Itch, but no direct rash
Ix: Microscopy
Rx: BHC, carbaryl shampoo

Tinea cruris (fungus: *Trichophyton/Epidermophyton*)

PC: Erythematous, scaly rash with distinct margin, in groin of men
Ix: Scrapings under microscope reveal mycelium
Rx: Benzoic acid ointment, clotrimazole cream

Lichen sclerosus et atrophicus/Leukoplakia

PC:

- White-purple plaques on thin, shiny, atrophic skin, with skin contraction
- Men: BXO (balanitis xerotica obliterans) – urethral pain; phimosis; urinary obstruction
- Women: Pruritus vulvae; superficial dyspareunia
- Complication: squamous cell carcinoma

Ix: Skin biopsy

Rx
Medical: Potent corticosteroid cream
Surgical: Meatal dilation, circumcision

VIRAL EXANTHEMA AND RELATED

Measles

PC Incubation period 2 weeks

M.E.A.S.L.E.S.

Mouth:
- Koplik spots – day 2: Salt-grain spots on buccal mucosa opposite molars
- Stomatitis (primary or secondary to herpes), gingivitis, cancrum oris

Eye:
- Keratoconjunctivitis – glassy red eye, swollen semilunar folds (Meyer's sign)
- Corneal scarring, xerophthalmia, vitamin A deficiency

Abdomen:
- Gastroenteritis: D+V
- Malabsorption from villous atrophy, esp. protein and energy

Skin (day 4):
- Maculopapular rash: post-auricular → face → descent over trunk until 7th day
- Confluent, blotchy; stains, doesn’t blanch; peels with healing
- DIC: Purpura – rare complication
- Coincides with peak fever (40°C)

Lung:
- Bacterial pneumonia, esp. staphylococcal, pneumococcal, due to lymphopenia
- Giant-cell pneumonitis: High mortality

Ears: Sinusitis, otitis media

SSPE etc.:

Acute meningo-encephalitis: Autoimmune demyelination post-infection (0.1%)
PC: Deafness; cognitive impairment in 25%; death in 10%
SSPE (subacute sclerosing panencephalitis): Due to persistent viral replication (rare)
PC: 3–12 years post-infection – cognitive impairment, ataxia, myoclonus, seizures

Mumps

PC Incubation period 2–3 weeks

M.U.M.P.S.

Mouth: Bilateral parotitis
Uro-genital: Orchitis, oophoritis (both associated with infertility), mastalgia
Meningo-encephalitis (lymphocytic CSF), deafness, otalgia
Pancreatitis, or just elevated serum amylase
Severe: Myocarditis

Rubella

PC Incubation period 2–3 weeks

R.U.B.E.L.I.A.

Rash:
- Discrete, pink, punctate macules that become confluent; spread from face to trunk
- Purpura: Due to thrombocytopenia

Unnoticed: Often asymptomatic, or only mild ‘cold’-like symptoms in children
Babies – congenital infection: Cataracts, cardiac, deafness, microcephaly
Eyes: Conjunctivitis; pharyngitis – usual first symptoms
Lymphadenopathy: Suboccipital
Arthralgia: Rheumatoid pattern

Varicella (chicken pox)

PC

Incubation period 2 weeks

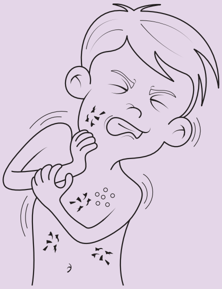
S.O.R.E.

Skin – vesicular rash:
- Day 0: Sparse, erythematous, maculopapular rash; coincides with low-grade pyrexia
- Day 2: Central distribution of itchy, elliptical vesicles and pustules, in 'crops', i.e. different areas at different stages of development
- Day 5: Crusts – separates from lesion without scarring, by 10th day temperature recedes
- Complications: Haemorrhagic rash scarring due to scratching or secondary staphylococcal infection

Oral ulcers: Pharynx and oesophagus – dysphagia

Respiratory: Pneumonitis due to ulcers spreading to upper respiratory tract
PC: Acute: Severe pulmonary oedema, chest pain, haemoptysis
Chronic: Lung fibrosis (CXR – diffuse nodular opacification)

Encephalitis, meningo:
- May just present as headache (common)
- Associated with cerebellar ataxia that recovers



NB: More severe in adults, neonates and immunocompromised

Rx

Supportive: Avoid scratching; daily chlorhexidine washes; flucloxacillin if spots are infected
Aciclovir or famciclovir: For adults or infants, within 24 hours of rash
VZV Ig: For exposed non-immune pregnancies and to subsequent newborns; immunocompromised

Parvovirus B19 (erythema infectiosum)

Epi

Occurs in 2-yearly epidemics, every 4 years, during winter–spring
Immunity occurs in 70% of population (one attack confers lifelong immunity)

PC

Incubation period 2 weeks

F.A.C.E. *(cheeks)*

Fever, mild and 'cold'-like symptoms during 1st week of infection

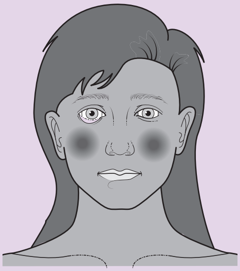
Arthralgia: Commonest symptom in adults, esp. women; lasts weeks

Cheeks: 'Slapped-cheek' syndrome – lacy, reticular erythema over face

Extreme:

Aplastic crisis or chronic anaemia:
- Esp. in sickle cell disease, thalassaemics, immunocompromised
- Due to viral replication in erythroid progenitor cells
- Rx: IVIg

Miscarriage or hydrops fetalis if acquired *in utero*: Rx: Intrauterine blood transfusion



HERPES SIMPLEX VIRUS

PC

G.O. S.O.O.N.

Genital/anal, cervical ulcers usually HSV-2 (unless oral sex with HSV-1 carrier) – see p. 191

Oral: Usually HSV-1

- **Herpes labialis** ('cold sore'):
  - PATH: Virus resides in trigeminal dorsal root ganglion; reactivation causes centrifugal migration to skin
  - Epi: Recurrence assoc. with stress, menses, infections (e.g. pneumococcus, malaria), UV-light
  - PC: Prodrome of skin tingling 1–2 days pre-eruption
- **Gingivostomatitis**:
  - Epi: Children – severe disease; adults – mild
  - PC: Sore throat → drooling; perioral vesicles; fever, lymphadenopathy
  - O/E: Extensive ulcers with yellow slough over entire oral cavity

Skin

- **Herpetic whitlow**:
  - Epi: Children, medical personnel (due to excretion from ill patients)
  - PC: Minor trauma to hand results in painful, red finger; vesicles; fever, lymphadenopathy; may recur with pain and oedema
- **Herpes gladiatorum**:
  - Epi: Contact sports players
  - PC: Virus pressed into skin by force, similar to whitlow
- **Eczema herpeticum**, or superinfection of other skin disease (e.g. burns):
  - Epi: Children or immunosuppresssed (incl. steroid Rx)
  - PC: Extensive, painful vesicles occur on eczema
- **Erythema multiforme**

Ophthalmic

- Keratoconjunctivitis:
  - PC:
    - Acute: Painful, red eye; lacrimation, photophobia; chemosis (subconjunctival oedema)
    - Chronic: Corneal 'dendritic' ulcers (appear as many branches under fluorescein staining)

Organs: Pneumonitis, hepatitis, oesophagitis, DIC – in immunocompromised

Neurological:

- **Encephalitis**:
  - Epi: Occurs sporadically without apparent risk factors
  - PATH: Haemorrhagic necrosis of temporal lobes, orbitofrontal cortex, due to HSV-1
  - PC: Fever, headache, N+V; complex partial seizures; confusion; coma
  - Ix: MRI – temporal lobe oedema; CSF – lymphocytes, PCR; EEG – periodic lateralized discharges
  - Rx: IV aciclovir; carbamazepine or other AEDs
- **Meningitis**:
  - Occurs as part of 1° HSV-2 infection with genital ulcers
  - Recurrent, mild, self-limiting, Mollaret's meningitis (probably HSV-2-mediated)
- **Bell's palsy**

EPSTEIN–BARR VIRUS

PC

G.O.E.S. S.L.O.W.L.Y^5.

Glandular fever

Oral: Pharyngo-tonsillitis – pearly, white **E**xudate, with petechiae at junction of hard and soft palate (oral hairy leukoplakia – white plaques that form on side of tongue in AIDS)

Systemic: Fever

Skin:

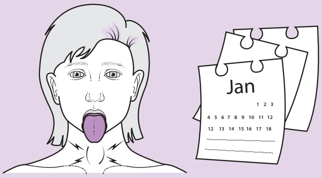
- Maculopapular rash esp. if patient inadvertently given amoxicillin (90% pts. get in this case)
- Periorbital oedema

Lymphadenopathy: Generalized

Organomegaly: Hepatosplenomegaly (± splenic rupture)

White blood cell count:

- Lymphocyotsis: WCC = 10–50 × 10^9/l
- 'Atypical lymphocytes' on blood film – also seen in:
  - Other infections: CMV, hepatitis A, HIV, rubella, brucella, toxoplasmosis
  - Non-infective: CLL, mycosis fungoides; drug reaction



Liver: Hepatitis (jaundice may occur due to both hepatitis and haemolytic anaemia)

Y: c**Y**topenias:

- Thrombocytopenia – due to splenomegaly
- Autoimmune haemolytic anaemia (IgM cold agglutinins)

m**Y**elitis, transverse + other neurological: Menigoencephalitis; peripheral neuropathy; Guillain–Barré syndrome

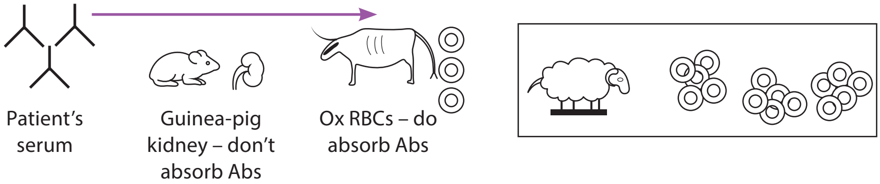
ps**Y**chiatric: Prolonged malaise for several months post-infection, or rarely, 'chronic fatigue syndrome'

m**Y**ocarditis, pericarditis, pneumonitis

l**Y**mphoma: Associated with EBV esp. Burkitt lymphoma (occurs in African children immunosuppressed with malaria. PC: jaw mass)
EBV is also associated with nasopharyngeal carcinoma

Ix

Heterophile antibodies, e.g. Monospot – relies on differential absorption of antibodies by different test cells:



(also seen in: rubella, malaria; hepatitis; SLE; lymphoma, adenocarcinoma)

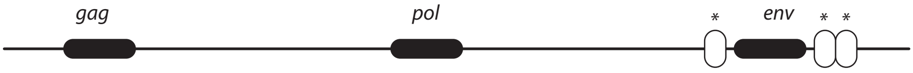
HIV – PATHOGENESIS

PATH

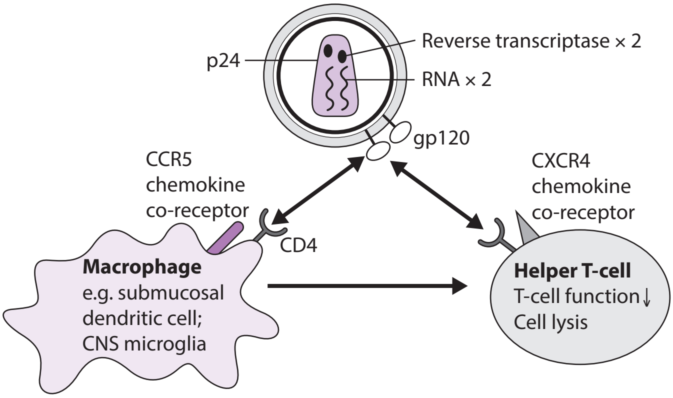
The RNA genome of HIV is converted to dsDNA within the host cell, and is there integrated within the host genome to form a DNA 'provirus'

This may later be transcribed and translated back to form numerous virions

The genome codes for 3 structural/enzyme proteins and 3 regulatory proteins:



Nucleocapsid	Polymerase enzymes etc.	Envelope	Regulatory proteins*
p24 capsid protein + p17 matrix protein + nucleocapsid protein that coats diploid RNA	**Reverse transcriptase:** Converts viral RNA into dsDNA **Integrase:** Integrates dsDNA into host genome **Protease:** Enables budding of new virion from host cell	Gp120 = surface glycoprotein gp41 = transmembrane glycoprotein	Tat: ↑ transcription Rev: ↑ transfer to cytoplasm Nef (negative factor): ↓ CD4, MHC-I


p24
Reverse transcriptase × 2
RNA × 2
gp120
CCR5 chemokine co-receptor
CD4
CXCR4 chemokine co-receptor
Macrophage
e.g. submucosal dendritic cell; CNS microglia
Helper T-cell
T-cell function ↓
Cell lysis

Entry

- Virus enters macrophages or helper T cells via gp120–CD4 interaction, facilitated by co-receptor
- HIV genome evolves to use CXCR4 co-receptor more efficiently, during course of infection

Integration

- RNA homes in on nucleus via nuclear transport signals, e.g. p. 177
- Integration of viral RNA into host genome enabled via viral 'integrase', even in cells not actively dividing

Latency: Viral DNA remains inactive for a variable period, depending on immune surveillance

Transcription–translation

- Cellular DNA polymerase begins transcription of 'instability' sequences that code for Tat regulatory protein
- Tat re-enters nucleus and binds to specific Tat-responsive elements, which amplifies transcription

Capsid assembly – budding

- Proteins assembled on rough ER and free ribosomes before being packaged
- Incorporates host protein called 'cyclophilin' (essential for replication); protease required for budding

HIV – NATURAL HISTORY

1. Inoculation: 3 weeks – 3 months

2. Seroconversion (70% are symptomatic)**: G.A.I.N.**

Glandular-fever-like: Maculopapular rash, sore throat, aphthous ulcers, fever, lymphadenopathy
Arthralgia, myalgia
Intestinal: Diarrhoea, weight loss
Neurological: Meningo-encephalitis, retro-orbital pain, peripheral neuropathy, myelopathy

Ix: p24 antigenaemia, lymphopenia (initially all lymphocyte types; later CD4 ↓, CD8 ↑)

90% enter asymptomatic stage; 10% progress immediately and rapidly

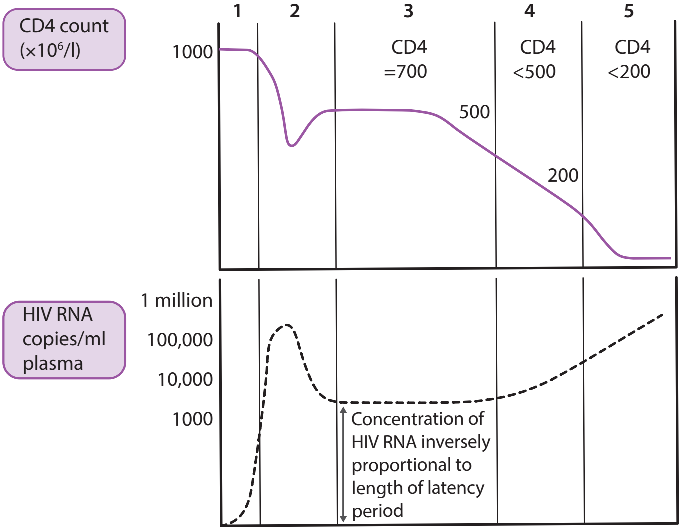
3. Latency stage: 1–5% patients are long-term non-progressors = up to 8 years without symptoms or drop on CD4 count

4. Persistent generalized lymphadenopathy (PGL): Enlarged lymph node (>1 cm), in 2 or more extra-inguinal sites for >3 months, without obvious cause

AIDS-related complex (ARC) – early symptomatic disease: **G.O.S.H.**

General: Wasting, fever, diarrhoea
Oral: Candida, oral hairy leukoplakia (EBV), aphthous ulcers
Skin: Molluscum contagiosum, shingles, HSV, seborrhoeic dermatitis, psoriasis, condylomata accuminatum
Haematology: ITP (assoc. anti-gpl20), anaemia

5. AIDS



Concentration of HIV RNA inversely proportional to length of latency period

HIV – CLINICAL

PC

Neurological – ophthalmological

CNS:
- Meningitis: HIV ('aseptic') – at seroconversion or during early AIDS
- Cryptococcus, TB, histoplasmosis, coccidioidomycosis, syphilis
- Mass lesion: Toxoplasmosis, lymphoma, Kaposi's sarcoma, tuberculoma, cryptococcoma
- Cerebral atrophy: HIV-dementia complex in 25% AIDS
- White-matter: Progressive multifocal leucoencephalopathy (PML) – polyoma JC virus
- Cord: HIV vacuolar myelopathy (dorsal columns), HtLV-I, HSV, VzV, CMV, syphilis, TB

PNS:
- Roots: CMV polyradiculopathy, esp. lumbosacral – sacral pain, incontinence, paraparesis
- Peripheral nerves: Guillain–Barré syn.; glove and stocking or mononeuritis multiplex due to HIV, e.g. facial nerve palsy
- Myopathy

Retinitis:
- HIV 'cotton wool spots'; CMV retinitis – 'cheese + tomato pizza'; HSV, VZV – necrosis
- Toxoplasmosis, *Pneumocystis carinii*, candida, syphilitic papillitis

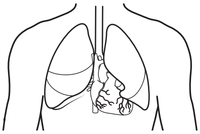
Respiratory

Bacterial:
- Community-acquired pneumonia, sinusitis
- TB, multidrug-resistant TB, MAI

Fungal:
- *Pneumocystis jirovecii* pneumonia – 80% develop without prophylaxis
- *Cryptococcus, Candida, Histoplasma, Aspergillus*

Viral: CMV; HSV, VZV, EBV – lymphocytic pneumonitis
Neoplasm: Kaposi's sarcoma (HHV-8), lymphoma
Pulmonary hypertension

Cardiac



Pericardial effusion
Myocarditis:
- Due to HIV or *Cryptococcus*
- Results in arrhythmias, dilated cardiomyopathy

Marantic endocarditis

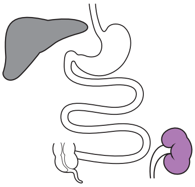
GIT

Mouth: Aphthous ulcers, HSV, VZV
Oesophagitis: *Candida,* CMV, HSV, VZV
Gastroenteritis:
- HIV enteropathy = diarrhoea >1 month, no other cause
- *Cryptosporidium/Microsporidium/Isospora belli*
- *Entamoeba histolytica*/giardiasis
- *Shigella, Salmonella, Campylobacter,* atypical TB (MAI)
- CMV colitis

Neoplasia: Kaposi's sarcoma (HHV-8), lymphoma

Abdominal – other

Liver – MAI: Hepatitis; ALP ↑
Pancreas: Acute pancreatitis (often 2° to Rx)
Renal: Focal segmental glomerulosclerosis – nephrotic syndrome



Skin/Genito-urinary

Skin:
- Viral:
  - VZV: severe chickenpox, multifocal zoster
  - HHV-8: Kaposi's sarcoma
- Bacteria: *Bartonella henselae* – bacillary angiomatosis
- Fungi: Umbilicated rash (cryptococcosis), tinea

Mucosa (penis, vagina, cervix, anus):
- HSV, HPV: Cervical or anal carcinoma, esp. invasive
- Other STDs: *Candida, Chlamydia, Trichomonas*

Other

Arthritis: HIV, *Cryptococccus*, reactive, Sjögren
Endocrine: Primary weight loss, hypogonadism
Cytopenias due to:
- Bone marow suppression due to HIV, TB, MAI
- Autoimmune: ITP, haemolysis
- Lymphoma, drug-related

Rx

Highly-active anti-retroviral therapy (HAART)

NARTIs (nucleoside analogue reverse transcriptase inhibitors):
- Drugs: Zidovudine (AZT), didanosine (ddI), zalcitabine (ddC), lamivudine (3TC), stavudine
- Mechanism: Phosphorylated to triphosphate, and are then incorporated into growing DNA chain, thereby blocking further chain extension

NNARTIs (non-nucleoside analogue reverse transcriptase inhibitors):
- Drugs: Nevirapine, efavirenz
- Mechanism: Do not require phosphorylation

PIs (protease inhibitors):
- Drugs: Indinavir, ritonavir, saquinavir
- Mechanism: Prevent viral budding

Combination: (2 NARTIs and 1 NNARTI) or (2 NARTIs and 1 or 2 PIs)

Indications:
Primary infection (i.e. within 6 months of contracting)
CD4 count <500/μl, or viral load >30,000 copies/ml
Symptoms, esp. dementia
Pregnancy: ↓ risk of transmission (also use caesarean, formula-feed)

Side-effects:

A.N.G.R^2.Y.

Anaemia macrocytic (+ other cytopenias); Acidosis, lactic
Neurological: Peripheral neuropathy, myopathy (lamivudine), cognitive (efavirenz)
GIT: Anorexia, N+V, diarrhoea (ritonavir); renal stones (indinavir); pancreatitis (ddI)
Resistance: With NNARTI, cross-resistance occurs between drugs
Reconstitution: Immune syndrome – flare-up of subclinical infection on starting or on withdrawal, e.g. hep B with lamivudine
Y: lipod**Y**strophy syndrome: Fat redistribution

Opportunistic infection – Treatment

Neurology:
- TB meningitis: As for pulmonary TB, but for 1-year duration
- *Cryptococcus*: Amphotericin + 5-flucytosine IV, fluconazole
- *Toxoplasma*: Pyrimethamine + sulphadiazine, or clindamycin
- Lymphoma: Dexamethasone and radiotherapy
- CMV retinitis: Ganciclovir IV (Ix: FBC, LFT), foscarnet IV (Ix: U&E)

Pneumonia:
- TB: **R.I.P.E.** (p. 203) – NB: Interaction with HAART; multi-drug resistance common
- *Pneumocystis*: Co-trimoxazole (trimethoprim + sulphamethoxazole)/dapsone + pentamidine

GIT:
- Oesophagitis: *Candida* – fluconazole; CMV – ganciclovir; HSV – acyclovir
- *Cryptosporidium*: Paromomycin – decreases stool volume, but doesn't eradicate
- *Salmonella* or *Campylobacter*: Ciprofloxacin
- MAI: Azithromycin or clarithromycin

Opportunistic infection – Prophylactic

Pneumocystis: Cotrimoxazole or dapsone
Candida: Amphotericin lozenges or oral fluconazole
TB/MAI: Rifabutin

Other

Aphthous ulcers of mouth and oesophagus: Corticosteroids, thalidomide
Weight loss: Testosterone or anabolic steroids, growth hormone

TUBERCULOSIS – CLINICAL

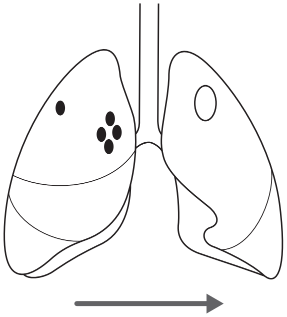
Epi

Inc: Resource-rich countries: 5/100,000 p.a.; resource-poor: 500/100,000 p.a.
Most important disease in world: Prevalence: 1/3 world population; 3 million die of TB p.a.
Increasing incidence, due to AIDS; drug resistance ↑ ; vaccination ↓
Age: Children and elderly most at risk, as cell-mediated immunity impaired
Geo: Asian immigrants: Come from endemic areas
Inner city homeless: Due to malnutrition, alcohol; overcrowding; BCG uptake ↓
Black ethnicity: Genetic predisposition?
Aet: *Mycobacterium tuberculosis:* Spread by aerosol or dust
M. bovis: Spread by unpasteurized milk (mainly children) – GIT, bone, renal disease
Pre: Any impairment of cell-mediated immunity – **5 Ds**:
Drugs: Steroids, chemotherapy/BCG not given
Drug addicts, intravenous, esp. because of AIDS; alcoholics
Debility: Dementia, diabetes, renal failure
Deficiency: Malnutrition, esp. vitamin D deficiency; malabsorption, e.g. post-gastrectomy
Dust: Silicosis (metal or quarry workers); medical personnel

PATH

1° infection

Ghon focus = midzone, subpleural, acute inflammatory lesion
Regional hilar lymph nodes → may cause obstruction and lobar collapse



Post-1° infection

Assmann focus = caseating granuloma
Granuloma may:

- Fibrose and simply calcify, or
- Cavitate (coalesces with others)
- Invade lung

PC

Asymptomatic or self-limiting, e.g. slight cough, fever, fatigue
Delayed type hypersensitivity (2–3 weeks post-infection):

- Phylectenular conjunctivitis
- Erythema nodosum
- Lymphadenopathy

Lung invasion or miliary spread occurs in only 5% at this stage

Reinfection or reactivation due to:

- Genetic predisposition
- Virulent strain
- Cell-mediated immunity ↓, e.g. steroid therapy

PC

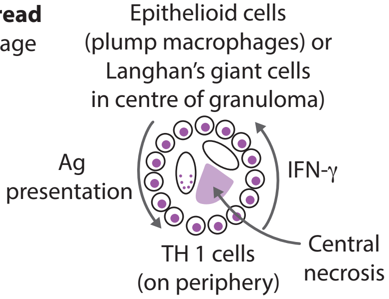
Constitutional: Due to cytokines:

- Fatigue, malaise (IFN-γ)
- Anorexia, weight loss (TNF-α)
- Fever, night sweats (IL-1)

Lung invasion:

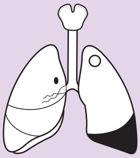
- Due to granuloma invasion of bronchus or pulmonary artery, or lymphatics (→ SVC)
- Presents as cough, esp. with green sputum or haemoptysis; chest pain

Miliary spread due to granuloma invasion of pulmonary vein


Epithelioid cells (plump macrophages) or Langhan's giant cells in centre of granuloma)
Ag presentation
IFN-γ
TH 1 cells (on periphery)
Central necrosis

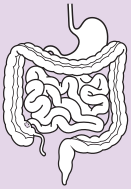
PC

R.A^7.N.S.A.C.K.S. *the whole body!*



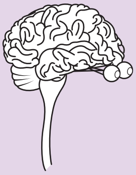
Respiratory **P.O.P^2.U.L.A.r. presentations!**

- **P**neumonia: Lobar or bronchial
- **O**bstruction, bronchial:
  - Lobar collapse (1° infection)
  - Bronchiectasis (post 1°)
- **P**leurisy/**P**leural effusion/empyema; if left for long, forms chest wall sinus ('empyema necessitans')
- **U**pper respiratory tract: Laryngitis, tonsillitis, otitis media
- **L**ymphadenopathy, cervical
- **A**bscess, upper zone:
  - Cavitation → massive haemoptysis/mycetoma
  - Fibrocalcification: tracheal deviation



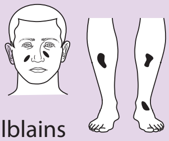
Abdominal

- **A**cute peritonitis: Diffuse, abdominal pain, due to disseminated miliary tubercules
- **A**denitis, mesenteric: Right iliac fossa pain and mass (ileo-caecal lymph nodes)
- **A**bscess, psoas: Painful or painless groin swelling; femoral neuropathy
- **A**scites: High protein content
- **A**dhesions: Bowel obstruction
- **A**ddison crisis: Due to adrenal granulomas
- PATH: Colonisation occurs via:
  - Swallowing sputum or milk *(M. bovis)*
  - Blood or transcoelomic spread (i.e. from ovaries)



Neurological

- Basal meningitis-encephalitis:
  - Headaches, confusion, hydrocephalus, SIADH
  - Focal neurology (cranial neuropathy), tuberculoma, infarct
- Fundus: Choroiditis (miliary tubercles), papilloedema
- Cord: Spinal meningitis, block



Skin

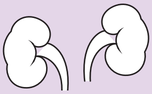
- Lupus vulgaris: Red-brown scaly plaques, scars
- Erythema nodosum: Tender
- Erythema induratum (Bazin disease): Deep purple, ulcerating nodules; assoc. chilblains
- Papulo-necrotic tuberculides: Firm, dusky, ulcerating papules on elbows, knees

Arthritis-osteomyelitis

- PATH: Subchondral osteomyelitis → cartilage invasion: synovitis → may form sinus
- Types:
  - Spine: Discitis, vertebral collapse (kyphosis or 'gibbus') – esp. children
  - Knee, hip, ankle, esp. adults

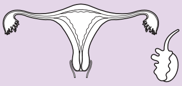
Cardiac

- Pericardial effusion, constrictive pericarditis; O/E: Pulsus paradoxus; Kussmaul's sign; knock



Kidney

- Nephritis – cortex granulomas: PC: Painless haematuria, loin pain
- Ureter blockage → hydro- or pyonephrosis; chronic renal failure
- Cystitis



Sexual organs

- Salpingitis: PC: Fever, peritonitis, cervical excitation, amenorrhoea, infertility
  Complications: Endometriosis, oophoritis, vulvitis
- Epididymo-orchitis: Unilateral, hard painless testis swelling; 'string of beads' vas

TUBERCULOSIS – IX AND RX

Ix

Bloods: FBC: Monocytosis
ESR: ↑ ↑
Urine: 3× early-morning urines (EMUs) – see Micro
Micro:

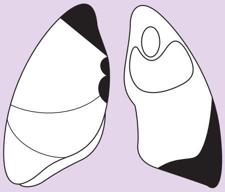
Pulmonary:
- Sputum, early morning: Induce with hypertonic saline or gastric lavage, ×3
- Bronchoscopy: Bronchoalveolar lavage (BAL), transbronchial biopsy (TBB)
- Pleural: Aspirate, biopsy
- Mediastinal lymph node biopsy, via mediastinoscopy or thoracotomy

Extrapulmonary:
- Skin: Lymph node, rash, sinus
- Urine: Early morning ×3
- Blood (special culture bottles); bone marrow biopsy

Laboratory:
- Staining: Alcohol + acid fast bacilli – Ziehl-Nielsen/auramine stain
- Culture: Lowenstein–Jensen medium:
    - Slow growth: 1–8 weeks (each round of replication takes 24 h)
    - Cultures appear ‘rough, tough + buff’: Dry, crumbly, not easily smeared
- Serology (ELISA/haemagglutination): Protein Ags 5, 6; plasma membrane Ag
- PCR/RFLP: Tracks different strains, e.g. outbreaks, multi-drug resistance

Radiol: CXR

1° infection:
Mediastinal lymphadenopathy
Bronchial obstruction:
- Lobar collapse
- Bronchiectasis (long-standing)

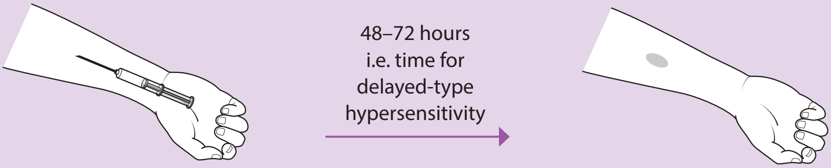


Post-1° infection:
Fibrocalcification
Cavitate
Invasion: Pneumonia

Skin test – Tuberculin:

Mantoux: Needle injection
Heaf: Circle of needles
Ingredient: Intradermal injection of PPD
(purified protein derivative)
Dose: 1 unit if TB expected, or
10 units if high sensitivity required

Mantoux: Disc diameter >10 mm = +ve
or >15 mm if previous BCG)
measure induration, not erythema
Heaf: Ring of induration = +ve
(or confluent disc if previous BCG)



False –ve ('anergy'): Miliary TB; co-existent HIV, measles, EBV
False +ve: Previous BCG/infection; atypical mycobacteria
Side-effect: Ulceration, abscess, lymphadenopathy

Rx

R.I.P.P.E.R.S^3.!!

Rifampicin: RNA polymerase inhibitor
Isoniazid: Mycolic acid + metabolism inhibitor
+ Pyridoxine (vitamin B6): Protects against isoniazid-induced, neuropathy esp. in alcoholics, diabetics
Pyrazinamide
Ethambutol

Course

6 months: **R.I.P.E.** for 2 months → **R.I.** for further 4 months (as these 2 drugs are bacterio**cidal**)
9 months: Immunocompromised or multi-drug-resistant TB
12 months: Extrapulmonary or miliary TB
Compliance must be ensured: Check urine is orange; use 'directly-observed therapy' (DOTS)
☠ TB drugs can cause rash, N+V and hepatitis, but the following side-effects are drug-specific:
Rifampicin: Diarrhoea, stains bodily fluids orange, incl. contact lenses, liver inducer (e.g. reduces effectiveness of some medications)
Isoniazid: Fulminant liver failure, peripheral neuropathy, optic neuritis, SLE, ITP (NB: If patient has slow-acetylator status then ↑ efficacy, but ↑ side-effects)
Pyrazinamide: Vomiting prominent, gout (↓ urate excretion), sideroblastic anaemia
Ethambutol: Optic neuritis (colour vision must be checked at start and during follow-up), gout

Resistant TB (multi-drug resistant TB [MDR-TB]):

High-risk groups:

- AIDS or IVDU; alcoholics; children
- Travel from MDR-endemic area, e.g. Africa, Korea; or nosocomially acquired
- Inadequate previous anti-TB Rx , esp. if prolonged

Rx: **R.I.P.E.** + **M**acrolide: Azithromycin, clarithromycin
Aminoglycoside: Capreomycin ☠ Vertigo, deafness, renal toxicity
Cycloserine (+ pyridoxine) ☠ Vertigo, fits, psychosis; megaloblastic anaemia
Ciprofloxacin

Steroids: Oral glucocorticoids used in TB meningitis or CNS tuberculoma; pericardial or pleural effusions
Surgery, e.g. for spinal disease: Osteomyelitis/orchidectomy
Source isolate or face-mask while still has +ve sputum smears (usually within 1 week of starting Rx) + contact-trace + notify CDC

Prophylaxis

BCG:

- **Intramuscular** injection of live, attenuated *Mycobacterium bovis*
- Given in UK only to neonates at risk (e.g. immigrants from high-prevalence areas); health-care workers

Isoniazid in exposed children with +ve Heaf test

MYCOBACTERIA

The following types of mycobacteria occur:

T.A.X. S.L.U.M.

Mycobacterium	***T****uberculosis* (see p. 200) ***A****vium intracellulare/cheloni* ***X****enopi/kansasii* ***S****crofulaceum* ***L****eprae:* Leprosy (see p. 205) ***U****lcerans:* Buruli ulcer ***M****arinum*: Fish-tank granuloma

Atypical Mycobacteria

M. avium intracellulare* (MAI)/*M. cheloni

Epi: Immunocompromised – terminal phase of AIDS (CD4 count <50/mm^3); elderly

M.A.I.

Megaly: Hepatosplenomegaly (ALP ↑), lymphadenopathy
Anaemia: Bone marrow infiltration
Intestine: Chronic diarrhoea, weight loss + systemic – fever, night sweats

Ix: Cultures from urine, stool; blood; bone marrow; liver; lymph node

Rx:

Needs **C.A^2.R^2.E.**

Clofazimine, Ciprofloxacin
Azithromycin (or clarithromycin), **A**mikacin
Rifampicin, **R**ifabutin (also used as prophylaxis in AIDS)
Ethambutol

***M. xenopi/kansasii*/MAI**

Epi: Occurs in pre-existing lung lesions, e.g. bronchiectasis, fibrosis
PC: Lung cavities (but note that sputum cultures may be +ve in healthy people)

***M. scrofulaceum*/MAI**

Epi: Children
PC: Lymphadenitis

M. ulcerans: 'Buruli ulcer'

Epi: Tropics
PC: Indurated, fluctuant nodule that breaks down to form painless ulcer with necrotic base and extensive scarring

M. marinum: 'Fish-tank granuloma'

Epi: Fish collectors, swimming pools
PC: Painless nodular ulcer

LEPROSY

Epi

Inc: 10 million cases worldwide
Age: In endemic areas, acquired in childhood, but not manifest until teens – 30s
Geo: Tropics, Mediterranean, Southern USA
Aet: *M. leprae* spread by nasal aerosol from lepromatous leprosy patients; prolonged contact required, but bacteria may survive for <7 days outside of body

PC

Incubation period 2–15 years, as leprosy has slowest bacterial replication (12 days per cycle!)

Tuberculoid leprosy

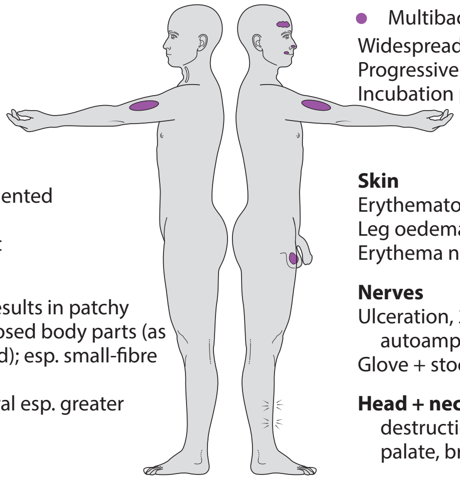
(**TT** – *Thickened nerves*)
Good host cell-mediated immunity:

- Strong immune response
- Paucibacillary

Benign lesions
Self-healing
Incubation period: 4 years

Skin
Erythematous or hypopigmented
Annular macules, plaques
Patches may be anaesthetic

Nerves
Mononeuritis multiplex – results in patchy anaesthesia, esp. on exposed body parts (as bacteria grow best in cold); esp. small-fibre sensory + sweat
Thickened nerves – unilateral esp. greater auricular nerve, ulnar



Lepromatous leprosy

(**LL** – *i.e. twice as bad*)
Poor host cell-mediated immunity:

- Activates T suppressor cells
- Multibacillary

Widespread, destructive lesions
Progressive
Incubation period: 10 years

Skin
Erythematous macules; pigmentation
Leg oedema and waxiness
Erythema nodosum

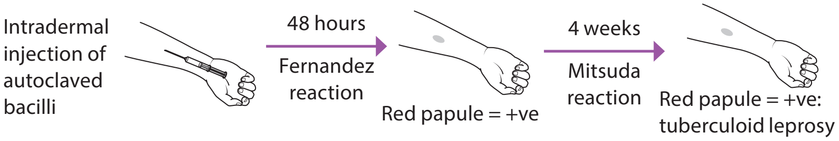
Nerves
Ulceration, 2º infection; distal bone erosion; autoamputation
Glove + stocking peripheral neuropathy

Head + neck: Nodular thickening and destruction: nasal bridge, pinna, cheek, palate, brow – 'leonine facies'; larynx

Testes: Atrophy

Ix

Bloods: IgM ↑, ESR ↑ ; TPHA, Rh factor, ANA are often +ve
Lepromin tests:


Intradermal injection of autoclaved bacilli
48 hours
Fernandez reaction
Red papule = +ve
4 weeks
Mitsuda reaction
Red papule = +ve: tuberculoid leprosy

Biopsy: From skin scraping (either type); nerve biopsy (TT only); nasal septum scraping (LL only)
Laboratory:

- Acid-fast bacilli smear for *M. leprae*
- Inoculation: In armadillo or mouse foot pad (can't culture on artificial media!)

Rx

Medical: Dapsone + clofazimine + rifampicin

- Duration: 6 months (tuberculoid leprosy); 2 years or more (lepromatous leprosy)
- Dapsone: Neuropathy, erythema nodosum; N+V; Clofazimine: Blue-black skin lesions, red urine
- Steroids may be needed if lesions worsen acutely on starting Rx ('reversal reaction')

Surgical: Amputation
Prophylaxis: BCG may protect, esp. in children

SYPHILIS

Treponema pallidum

Epi

Transmitted sexually (horizontal) and transplacentally (vertical); rarely via blood products or fomites

PC

C.L.O^2.U^2.D.Y. A.G.A^3.I.N.

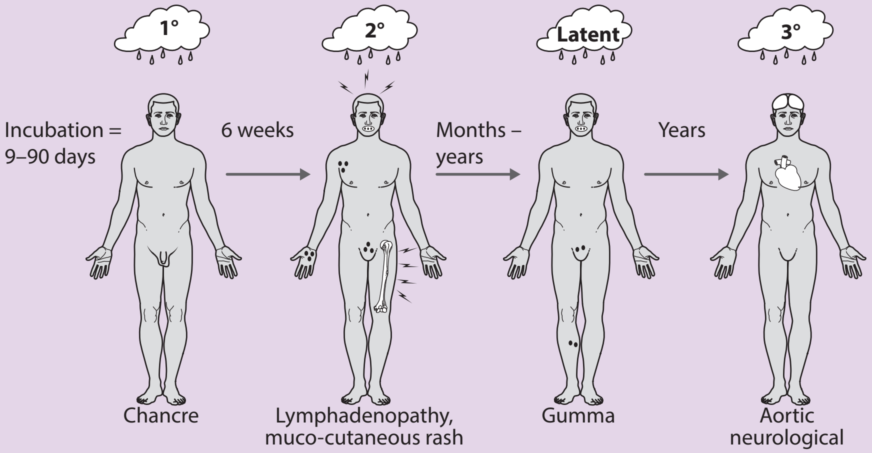
Chancre: Painless papule, breaks down to ulcer and erythematous ring on genitals, anus or mouth
Lymphadenopathy (generalized), fever, headache
Oral ulcers: 'Snail-track'
Organomegaly: Hepatomegaly, hepatitis
Uveitis
Urine: Protein-nephrotic syndrome
Dermatological:

- Non-pruritic, maculopapular rash on palms, soles, trunk
- Scarring alopecia

Y: cond**Y**lomata lata = large pink–grey discs around vulva, anus or under breasts (highly infectious)

Arthralgia, nocturnal bone pain (periostitis), meningism
Gumma: Granulomatous swellings in skin (e.g. leg, foot, periorbital), oropharynx (tongue, palate), viscera (testis, liver, lung)
Aortic: **A**scending aortic aneurysm; **A**ortic regurgitation
Immune: Paroxysmal cold haemoglobinuria
Neurological – classified according to onset of signs:

- 2 months–2 years:
  - Meningitis (may occur during secondary stage)
  - Cranial nerve palsies, incl. deafness, vertigo, optic neuritis
- 2–5 years: Strokes (Heubner endarteritis)
- 5–15 years: General paresis of insane = dementia, psychosis, Argyll–Robertson pupils
- 10+ years: Tabes dorsalis = rombergism, Charcot joints, numbness and lightning pains



PC

Congenital syphilis

S^2.H.O^2.C^2.K.

Sniffles (watery nasal discharge)
Saddle-shaped nose (also sunken maxillae and frontal bossing)
Hutchinson incisors – notched, widely spaced;
  + Mulberry molars – multiple cusps
  + Linear rhagades – scars around mouth
Optic atrophy, salt + pepper choroidoretinitis; keratitis – blindness
Otitic: Sensorineural deafness
Clutton joints (painless knee effusions); sabre shins
Cold haemoglobinuria, paroxysmal
Kills: 50% babies die pre- or perinatally!

my baby comes as
something of a
S.H.O.C.K.

Ix

Micro: Chancre swab with dark-ground microscopy – characteristic spiral-shaped bacterium
Serology:

- Non-specific: Anti-cardiolipin, e.g. VDRL (Venereal Diseases Research Lab) or RPR (rapid plasma reagin):
  - Advantage: Becomes –ve with Rx
  - False +ve = infections (e.g. herpes, HIV, TB), SLE, pregnancy, elderly (10%)
  - False –ve, esp. in late syphilis, HIV
- Specific: TPHA (*Treponema pallidum* haemagglutination assay), FTA (fluorescent treponemal assay), or TPI (TP immobilisation)
  - Advantage: More specific, but remains +ve even when successfully treated
  - False +ve = non-venereal treponemes, leptospirosis, Lyme
- CSF: Pleocytosis + protein ↑ + antibody tests +ve

Rx

- Procaine penicillin IM 600 mg od × 10 days (2–3 weeks if tertiary disease)
  ☠ Jarisch–Herxheimer reaction = septic shock on initiating Rx, due to endotoxin release, which is most likely in 2° syphilis, but most dangerous in 3° syphilis. Risk can be reduced by administering steroids at same time
- Contact-trace

Non-venereal Treponemes

Def

These diseases are characterized by being:

- Non-venereal: Transmitted skin-to-skin, esp. as children; shared kitchen utensils
- Endemic to Africa, S. and Central America

Types

- Yaws (*T. pallidum* subsp. *pertenue*) – West-Central Africa, S. America, SE. Asia
- Pinta (*T. carateum*) – S. and Central America
- Endemic syphilis (*T. pallidum* subsp. *endemicum*) – Central Africa

PC

1°: Raspberry-like papules (‘framboesia’)
2°: Lymphadenopathy; periostitis
Latent: Bone gummae – destroy facial bones

BORRELIOSIS

Lyme disease

Borrelia burgdorferi (USA, esp. New England [Lyme, Conneticut]), *B. afzelii*, *B. garinii* (Middle Europe and Asia)

PC

S.N.A.C.K.

Skin

Erythema chronicum migrans in initial phase (days after infection):

- Annular erythema that expands from centre
- Accompanying fever/lymphadenopathy/headache
- Organism can be cultured from rash on Kelly medium

Neuro

Meningo-encephalitis:

- Cranial neuropathy, esp. VII
- Peripheral neuropathy
- Lymphocytic meningo-radiculitis (Bannwarth syndrome)

Arthritis: Oligoarticular, esp. knees

Cardiac: Heart block, incl. 3° (temporary – does not need pacing)

K: Acrodermatitis chronica atrophicans – only sign of *B. afzelii/B. garinii*

Vector: Deer tick *(Ixodes scapularis)*

Ix

ELISA

Rx

- Rash: Tetracycline, doxycycline, amoxicillin
- Systemic: Benzylpenicillin, ceftriaxone

Relapsing fever

Louse-borne: *B. recurrentis* **–** Ethiopia (body lice occur with poor hygiene and overcrowding)
Tick-borne: *B. duttoni* – Sub-Saharan Africa (or *B. hermsii* **–** NW. USA)

PC: Leptospirosis-like (see p. 209):

- Flu-like symptoms with fluctuating high temperature (>40°C), myalgia–arthralgia, headache
- Injected conjunctivae
- Respiratory (dry cough), neuro. (lymphocytic meningitis), gastro. (abdominal pain, vomiting)

Vincent angina

B. vincenti; PC: Acute gingivitis

LEPTOSPIROSIS

Leptospira interrogans (serotype *icterohaemorrhagie* or *copenhageni* = 'Weil disease')

Epi

Transmitted by contact of rats' urine with skin abrasions or mucous membranes, e.g. sewerage workers

PC

Types:
- Anicteric (90%): Flu-like, aseptic meningitis
- Icteric (10%): Additional liver and renal failure, and DIC = 'Weil disease'

M.O.U.R.N.S.

Myalgia: Severe calf, back, abdominal pain (flu-like with high fever)

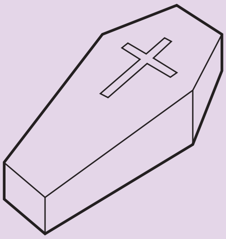
Ophthalmic:
- Injected conjunctivae
- Uveitis: Iritis or retinochoroiditis – present several weeks to months later
- Deeply jaundiced due to hepatitis (Weil disease)

Urine:
- Proteinuria, red cells, white cells, granular, hyaline casts – invariable!
- Tubulointersitial nephritis; acute tubular necrosis (2nd week)

Respiratory: Cough, haemoptysis, chest pain

Neurology:
- Aseptic meningitis – CSF: Early neutrophilia, late lymphocytosis; high protein
- Encephalopathy

Skin:
- Maculopapular rash
- Purpura, bruising due to vasculitis or DIC
- **S**pleno-/hepatomegaly/lymphadenopathy



Anicteric: Mortality rate <1%
Weil: Mortality rate 10%

Ix

Bloods: CK ↑
U&E – urea ↑, creatinine ↑ – in Weil
LFT – bilirubin ↑, ALP ↑
FBC – neutrophilia, thrombocytopenia, haemolytic anaemia, deranged clotting, CK ↑
(NB: Viral hepatitis: ALT ↑ ↑, leucopenia and normal CK)

Urine: Active urine sediment

Micro: **1st week –** blood/CSF culture; **2nd–4th weeks –** urine culture (EMJH medium)
MAT (microscopic agglutination test) – rise in titre at 2nd week
Hanta virus serology – similar presentation with myalgia and meningism

ECG, **E**CHO: Associated myocarditis, pericarditis

Radiol: CXR – lower-zone air-space shadowing

Rx

Antibiotics:
- Mild: Doxycycline or amoxicillin
- Severe: Benzylpenillicin, ampicillin or erythromycin
  ☠ Jarisch–Herxheimer reaction (fever, myalgia)

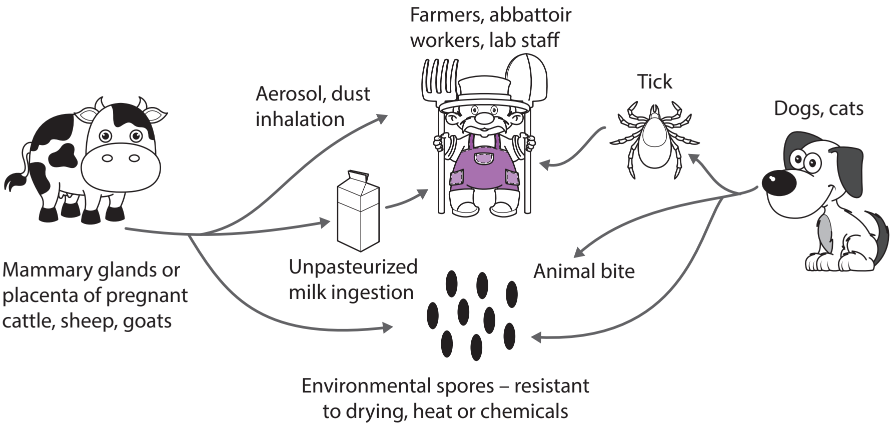
Renal dialysis

Prophylaxis: Doxycycline 200 mg × 1/week, or vaccine – in exposed personnel

RICKETTSIA

Q.ua.R.TI.L.E^2.S.

Q-Fever
Coxiella burnetii
Epi: Acquired from pregnant farm animals or pets, and rarely from other affected humans


Farmers, abbattoir workers, lab staff
Aerosol, dust inhalation
Tick
Dogs, cats
Mammary glands or placenta of pregnant cattle, sheep, goats
Unpasteurized milk ingestion
Animal bite
Environmental spores – resistant to drying, heat or chemicals

PC

F.R.I.C.T.I.O.N.

Flu -like symptoms: Fever, myalgia
Respiratory: Atypical pneumonia, i.e. mild, dry cough, but CXR shows consolidation or masses
Intestine (1): D+V
Cardiac: Acute phase – myocarditis, pericarditis; chronic – aortic valve endocarditis
Thrombosis: DVT, miscarriage; early, platelets ↑ → later, platelets ↓
Intestine (2): Granulomatous hepatitis
Organomegaly: Hepatosplenomegaly
Neurological: Headache common, meningoencephalitis, optic neuritis, parkinsonism

Ix

Serology: Exists in 2 antigenic forms due to 'phase variation' of lipopolysaccharide:
- Phase I Ag = chronic infection: Highly infectious
- Phase II Ag = acute infection: Avirulent

Rx

Tetracycline ± rifampicin, or ciprofloxacin

Typhus

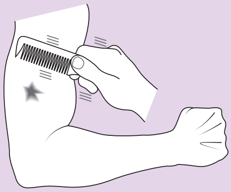
Rocky mountain spotted fever
  Organism: *Rickettsia rickettsii*
  Vector: Rocky Mountain wood tick, American dog tick
  Geog: SW. USA, Mexico
TIck-borne typhus – other
  Ehrlichiosis
    Organism: *Ehrlichia chaffeensis* (monocytes), *E. phagocytophilia* (granulocytes)
    Vector: Deer tick
    Geog: USA
  Mediterranean spotted fever
  Organism: *Rickettsia conorii*
Louse-borne:
Epidemic and **E**ndemic typhus
  Epidemic typhus
    Organism: *Rickettsia prowazekii*
    Vector: Body lice *(Pediculus humanis)*
    Geog: Poor hygiene, overcrowding, e.g. prisons, famine
  Endemic typhus
    Organism: *Rickettsia typhi*
    Vector: Flea; rats, cats, opossums act as reservoir
    Geog: S. USA
Scrub typhus
  Organism: *Orientia tsutsugamushi*
  Vector: Larval mite
  Geog: SE. Asia, Australia

PC

F.R.I.C.T.I.O.N.

Flu -like symptoms: Fever, myalgia
Rash:
- Eschar of original bite
- Vasculitic: Maculopapular, purpura, haemorrhagic, esp. palms, soles (on 4th day)

Intestine (1): D+V, enterocolitis, GIT bleeding
Cardiac: Arrhythmias
Thrombosis: DVT; limb gangrene – thrombocytopenia
Intestine (2): Transaminitis
Oedema, peripheral and pulmonary: Due to widepread increased vascular permeability, leads to sh**O**ck
Neurological: Headache common, meningoencephalitis, ataxia, deafness


Eschar from tick or larval bite, in tick or scrub typhus

Ix

Serology: Indirect IF (the 'Weil–Felix heterophile antibody test' is less sensitive and specific)
PCR, esp. *Rickettsia typhi*
Skin biopsy, esp. Rocky Mountain spotted fever

Rx

Tetracycline or chloramphenicol

MALARIA

Plasmodium falciparum

Incubation period 1–2 weeks (but may be up to 1 year)
Duration: 3 weeks, but mortality rate = 20%
Relapses do not occur – if successfully treated

F.A.L.C.I.P.A.R.U.M^2.S.

Flu-like:
- Fever: Continuous, daily or paroxysmal (subtertian – every 36 h, or tertian – every 48 h)
- Other: Myalgia, lymphadenopathy

Anaemia: Intravascular haemolytic anaemia causes haemoglobinuria ('Blackwater fever')
Leucopenia/thrombocytopenia:
- Leucopenia:
  - Although B cells and IgM increased (incl. cryoglobulinaemia)
  - Imunodeficiency → herpes labialis, septicaemia, Burkitt lymphoma (EBV)
- Thrombocytopenia (due to malaria or quinine)/DIC

Cerebral malaria (causes 80% deaths):
- Headache common
- Encephalopathy, cerebral oedema: Drowsiness, seizures, pyramidal signs, psychosis
- Retinal haemorrhages, papilloedema, nystagmus

Intestine: D + V common
Pulmonary oedema: Due to ARDS, uraemia or injudicious rehydration
Acidosis, lactic: Due to hypotension/parasite occlusion of tissue vessels
Renal: Acute tubular necrosis 2° to shock ('algid'), or mesangiocapillary glomerulonephritis
Uraemia
Metabolic:
- Na ↓
- Glucose ↓ due to reduced hepatic gluconeogenesis, or quinine

Miscarriage
Splenomegaly/splenic rupture/hepatosplenomegaly: Repeated infections over long time

Non-falciparum malaria

Incubation period :	*P. vivax* or *ovale*: 2–3 weeks
	P. malariae: 3–6 weeks, although 10% present after 1 year
Duration:	*P. vivax* or *ovale*: 1–2 months
	P. malariae: 1–6 months, with recrudescences over 20 years
Rx:	Oral artesunate or chloroquine

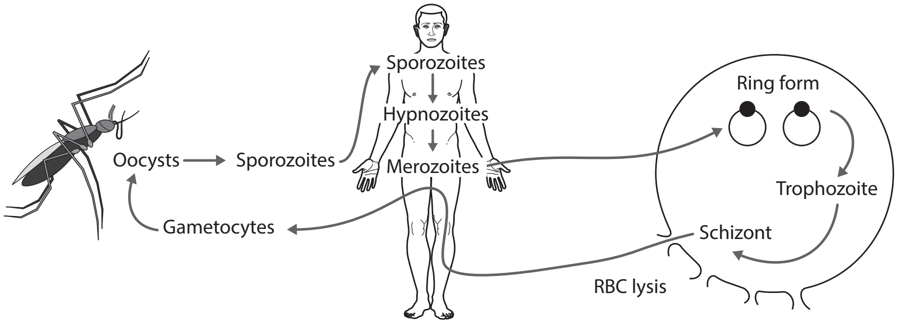
F.A.R.

Fever, paroxysmal:
- *P. vivax/ovale* – tertian (i.e. every 48 h); *P. malariae* – quartan (i.e. every 4th day)
- Due to dormant hypnozoites in liver (*P. ovale/vivax*), or blood (*P. malariae*)
- Fever regularity not seen in early infection

Anaemia, haemolytic: *P. vivax*
Renal – nephrosis: *P. malariae* (esp. in children)

Life-cycle

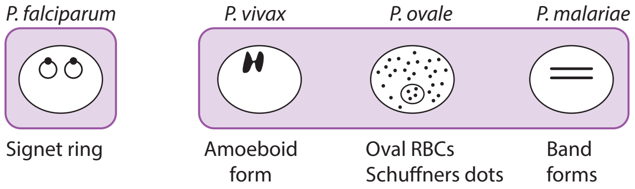
Alternates between **spores** (products of asexual reproduction) and **gametes** (products of sexual reproduction)


Sporozoites
Hypnozoites
Merozoites
Oocysts
Sporozoites
Gametocytes
Ring form
Trophozoite
Schizont
RBC lysis

Ix

Thick and thin films ×3:

- Parasitaemia >2% = symptomatic; >10% = exchange transfusion required
- May take several days to rise to true level after becoming symptomatic, so repeat films over 3 days
- Parasites may persist in blood for weeks to months after cure


P. falciparum
P. vivax
P. ovale
P. malariae
Signet ring
Amoeboid form
Oval RBCs Schuffners dots
Band forms

Bone marrow smear: May be needed in partially treated patients, with –ve blood smears

Rx

P. falciparum

- Artesunate OR
- Quinine for 7 days (PO or IV) OR
  ☠: Cinchonism: Tinnitus, visual loss, abdominal pain, headache + thrombocytopenia; glucose ↓; renal failure
- Malarone (proguanil + atovaquone)

Prophylaxis

Conservative: Drain swamps; long sleeves; permethrin-impregnated nets; DEET lotion
Chemoprophylaxis: Start 1–3 weeks pre-visit to endemic area; stop 4 weeks post-visit:

- Weekly chloroquine (☠: Visual loss, fits, blood dyscrasia) + daily proguanil
- Weekly mefloquine (☠: Acute psychosis, fits, arrhythmias)
- Daily doxycycline

NEMATODES (ROUNDWORMS)

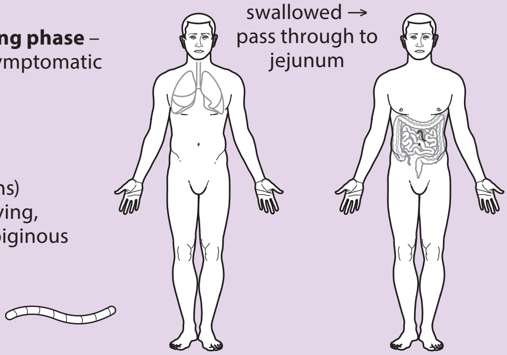
Intestinal

S.N.A^2.K.E^2.

__S__trongyloides stercoralis

Inc: 1 month, and may last for decades due to autoinfection

PC: Worms penetrate skin from soil



Bronchial secretions swallowed → pass through to jejunum

Lung phase – asymptomatic

Skin phase
(larva currens)
Rapidly moving, pruritic serpiginous tract;
urticaria

GIT phase
Epigastric pain (worsened by eating),
diarrhoea;
PR bleeding (colitis);
malabsorption

'Autoinfection'
Larva invade jejenum (internal)
Perianal skin (external)

'Hyperinfection': Severe autoinfection due to immunocompromise, e.g. steroids, that may occur after many years of asymptomatic infection

__N__ecator americanus/__A__ncylostoma duodenale ('hookworm')

Inc: 1-3 months, and can last for several years (<8 years for *A. duodenale)*

PC: Skin phase: Worm penetrates toe furrow – pruritus; serpiginous tract (cutaneous larva migrans)

Lung phase: Mild pneumonitis

GIT phase: Fe-deficiency anaemia; hypoalbuminaemia

__A__scaris lumbricoides ('human roundworm' – largest!)

Inc: 2 months, and lasts up to 1 year

PATH: Eggs are ingested → larvae invade jejunal mucosa → enter portal vein and lymphatics → lung phase → swallowed to re-enter jejunum, where mature worm develops

PC: Lung phase: Dry cough, wheeze; CXR shows transient, round infiltrates (Loffler pneumonitis)

GIT phase: Bowel, biliary, pancreas obstruction (esp. heavy infestation in children)

K: Anisa**K**iasis, capillariasis – raw fish; trichostrongyliasis – vegetation; abdominal angiostrongyliasis

__E__nterobius vermicularis ('pinworm' or 'threadworm')

PATH: Larvae colonize appendix and caecum → worms migrate nocturnally to release eggs perianally

PC: Pruritus ani in children; abdominal pain, weight loss; vulvovaginitis; pelvic granulomas

Extra: Rectal prolapse-causing **–** *Trichuria trichuris* ('whipworm')

Inc: 2–3 months, and may last for 5 years

PATH: Eggs hatch in duodenum → larvae migrate and mature in caecum and colon

PC: Abdominal pain, PR bleeding (colitis); rectal prolapse esp. in children

For all:

Ix

Stool samples for ova or larvae
Eosinophilia (during migration phase of hookworm, *Ascaris*, *Strongyloides)*
ELISA: *Strongyloides*

Rx

Albendazole, mebendazole; thiabendazole (*Strongyloides*)

Tissue

FI.G.h.T^2.S.

FIlariasis – lymphatic nematodes:

- *Onchocerca volvulus* – 'river blindness'

  Vector: *Simulium* blackfly
  PC: Keratitis, choroidoretinitis, secondary optic atrophy
  Rash: Generalized papular, pruritic
  'Hanging groin' = inguinocrural lymph node blockage
  Ix: Skin snip – motile microfilariae

- *Wuchereria bancrofti* **–** 'elephantiasis'

  Vector: Mosquitoes – *Aedes aegypti* or *Anopheles* spp.
  PC: Systemic: Fever, myalgia, photophobia, diffuse lymphangitis, lymphadenopathy
  Local: Leg lymphoedema, hydrocoele, pleural effusion, ascites
  Ix: Blood film: Parasites present

- Loa loa

  Vector: Deerfly – *Chrysops* spp.
  PC: Calabar swellings of limbs (= evanescent angioedema)
  Subconjunctival worm
  Endomyocardial fibrosis

- Brugia malayi

  Vector: Mosquitoes – *Mansonia* or *Anopheles* spp.
  Rx for all: Diethylcarbamazine (onchocerciasis: Add suramin, ivermectin)
  Nodulectomy: Prevents continued production of microfiariae

Guinea worm (*Dracunculus medinensis*)

PATH: Larvae swallowed in drinking water contaminated with vector *Cyclops* spp. (freshwater crustacean) → invade stomach → migrate subcutaneously or to joints → female penetrates skin and release larvae into water
PC: Painful vesicle; subcutaneous nodule; arthritis

***T**oxocara canis/cati* ('visceral larva migrans')

PATH: Eggs in soil contaminated by dog or cat faeces ingested by children → larvae migrate to liver and lungs → systemic spread
PC: Migration: Asthma, fever, dermatitis
Chronic: Choroidoretinitis; hepatosplenomegaly
Ix: Serology
Rx: Albendazole

***T**richinella spiralis*

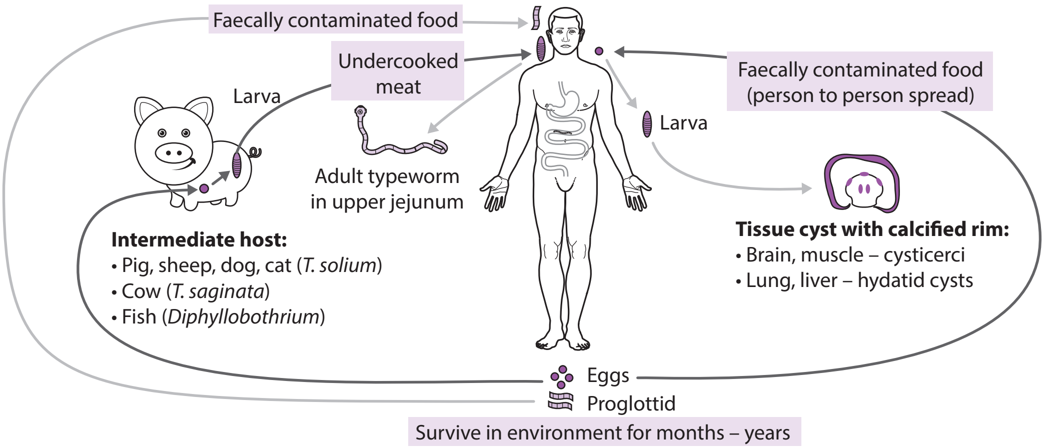
PATH: Larvae swallowed in infected pork → invade small intestine, portal circulation → systemic spread
PC: Migration: Periorbital oedema, fever, diarrhoea (+ eosinophilia)
Muscles: Myalgia, myopathy, myocarditis
Other: Meningo-encephalitis, gastroenteritis, pneumonia
Ix: Muscle biopsy, serology
Rx: Thiabendazole (intestinal phase) + steroids for systemic infection

Skin: 'Cutaneous larva migrans'

e.g**.** *Anclyostoma brasiliense*, *A. caninum*, *Uncinaria stenocephalia*, *Bunostomum phlebotomum*
PATH: Animal hookworms that cannot develop further in humans (human hookworms also cause initially)
PC: Serpiginous, erythematous, pruritic, vesicular rash, esp. in children, and on feet; eosinophilia
Ix: Skin biopsy

CESTODES (TAPEWORMS)

There are 2 main types of disease, depending on which stage of the worm's life-cycle is ingested:
Larvae or proglottid segments: Matures to produce adult tapeworm within the intestine
Eggs: Penetrate intestine (as an 'oncosphere') and spread to brain, muscle, liver and lung


Faecally contaminated food
Undercooked meat
Larva
Adult typeworm in upper jejunum
Faecally contaminated food (person to person spread)
Larva
Intermediate host:
• Pig, sheep, dog, cat (*T. solium*)
• Cow (*T. saginata*)
• Fish (*Diphyllobothrium*)
Tissue cyst with calcified rim:
• Brain, muscle – cysticerci
• Lung, liver – hydatid cysts
Eggs
Proglottid
Survive in environment for months – years

Intestinal tapeworms

P.H.D.

Pork tapeworm – *Taenia solium*
Epi: *T. solium* – pork: Africa, Latin America, SE. Asia
T. saginata – beef: Africa, Middle East
PC: Perianal pain, incl. faecal passage of proglottids
Epigastric pain, nausea, diarrhoea
Appetite ↑, weight ↓
Ix: Stool microscopy: Eggs, proglottids
Perianal swab with cellophane tape: Detects eggs
FBC: Eosinophilia; IgE ↑
Rx: Praziquantel – single dose

***H**ymenolepis nana* (dwarf tapeworm)
Epi: Commonest cestode infection – endemic in temperate and tropical regions
Doesn't require intermediate host – auto-infection with eggs common
PC: Asymptomatic, or anorexia, abdominal pain, diarrhoea

***D**iphyllobothrium latum* (fish tapeworm)
Epi: Eggs are eaten in raw freshwater fish, e.g. Finland
PC: Abdominal pain, diarrhoea, bowel obstruction
Cholangitis, cholecystitis
Vitamin B12 deficiency – due to consumption by worm

Tissue tapeworms

P.E.T.S.

Pork tapeworm – *Taenia solium*
PC: Cysticerci form in brain, muscle, subcutaneous:
- Focal seizures, weakness
- Obstructive hydrocephalus, meningitis
- Subretinal: Ocular parasite

Ix: MRI brain: Ring-enhancing cysts with scolex
X-ray: 'Cigar-shaped' calcifications in muscle
ELISA of serum, CSF; tissue biopsy
Rx: Praziquantel/albendazole; prednisolone + anti-convulsants; CSF shunt

***E**chinococcus granulosus* (dog tapeworm)
Epi: Dog-handlers, ingesting eggs in vegetables or water
PC: Hydatid cysts expand:
- Hepatic: RUQ pain, obstructive jaundice
- Lung: Chest pain, haemoptysis
- Other organs: Bone, brain, myocardium

Ix: Serum ELISA (fluid aspiration risks anaphylaxis!)
Rx: Cyst excision, with albendazole cover

***T**aenia solium* (pork tapeworm) – see Intestinal

Sparganosis (spirometra tapeworm)
Epi: Water contains infected crustacean *Cyclops* spp.
PC: Periorbital – orbital destruction

TREMATODES (FLUKES)

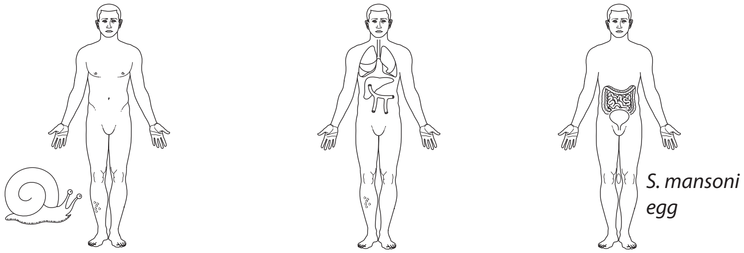
Liver flukes

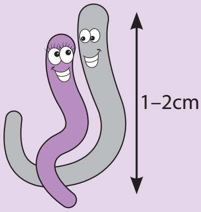
S.C.O.F.F.s H.em.P.

Schistosomiasis (blood fluke = 'bilharzia')

Epi: Fluke (*Schistosoma* sp.) acquired from being bitten by freshwater snails, e.g. in Lake Victoria, S. America

PC: Has acute and chronic manifestations, depending on which part of the life-cycle



Skin penetration	**Migration**	**Egg deposition**	**Systemic spread**
Freshwater snail eats fluke larvae ('miracidia') and releases cercariae ('freshwater bodies') Cercariae attach to skin, lose tails, and penetrate to form 'schistosomulae', PC: 'Swimmers' itch': Dermatitis, papules generalized urticaria *Occurs on day 1, and may persist for 2 weeks*	Skin → lung → portal vein PC: 'Katayama fever': ● Lymphadenopathy ● Hepatosplenomegaly ● Cough, myalgia ● Headache, diarrhoea ● Encephalopathy, death *Occurs within first month; worst for S. japonicum* Outcome of migration: 	Schistosomulae settle in portal vein, and mature to form adult male and female pairs, which copulate for many years, and release eggs that are deposited in venules and incite local granulomatous reactions PC: ● Colon: *S. mansoni* – polyps, bleeding, protein-losing enteropathy; *S. japonicum* – colon carcinoma ● Ileum: *S. japonicum* – colic, malabsorption ● Bladder: *S. haematobium* – haematuria, squamous cell carcinoma	Liver: ● Hepatosplenomegaly ● Portal hypertension, due to periportal pipestem fibrosis Lung: ● Fibrosis ● Cor pulmonale CNS: ● Brain (*S. japonicum*) – focal seizures ● Transverse myelitis/cauda equina syndrome (*S. mansoni/ haematobium*) Renal: Glomerulonephritis

***C**lonorchis, **O**pisthorchis, **F**asciola* spp. (liver flukes)

Epi: Raw fish in SE. Asia (*Clonorchis, Opisthorchis*); raw liver or watercress in S. America (*Fasciola*)

PC: RUQ pain; cholangitis with secondary hepatitis or obstructive jaundice; cholangiocarcinoma

***F**asciolopsis, **H**eterophyes* (liver flukes)

Epi: Aquatic plants in SE. Asia (*Fasciolopsis*); raw freshwater fish in Nile, China (*Heterophyes*)

PC: Abdominal pain, mucoid diarrhoea

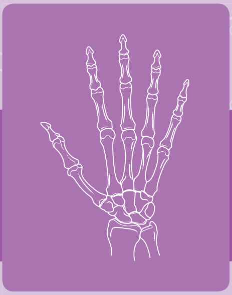
***P**aragonimus westermani* (lung fluke)

Epi: Crayfish, crab ingestion

PC: Lung – haemoptysis, bronchiectasis, bronchitis; brain – focal seizures, weakness

Taylor & Francis
Taylor & Francis Group
http://taylorandfrancis.com

Rheumatology



OSTEOARTHRITIS – CAUSES

Def

Common final pathological pathway of synovial joints, arising from variety of insults (although commonly refers only to age-related '1° osteoarthritis', with no identifiable insult)

Causes

I.T.'S. A.C.H.I.N.G. M.E^2.

I.T'S.
A.C.H.I.N.G
M.E^2.

Idiopathic (1°**),** i.e. age-related – *see pp. 221*

Trauma – old fracture: due to abnormal joint loading after healing, ± articular surface damage

Softened bone, *see p. 221*:

- Developmental – congenital dislocation of hip, Perthes disease, slipped capital femoral epiphysis
- Osteochondritis
- Osteonecrosis (avascular necrosis)

The remainder occur due to weakened cartilage:

Autoimmune: Rheumatoid arthritis; seronegative arthropathies, SLE, polymyalgia rheumatica

Crystal: Gout, pseudogout, hydroxyapatite, hypercholesterolaemia

Haemorrhage: Haemophilia, previous AML

Infection:

- Septic arthritis, incl. viral, gonococcal, TB – Lyme; congenital syphilis (Clutton joints)
- Reactive: Endocarditis, rheumatic fever
- Foreign body arthropathy, e.g. rosethorn → symmetrical polyarthritis

Neuropathic ('Charcot joints' – gross changes of dislocation, disorganisation and debris):

- Cord: Syringomyelia (shoulders), syphilis, vitamin B12 deficiency (hip, knee)
- Neuropathy: Diabetes, leprosy, Charcot–Marie–Tooth disease (ankle, feet)

Genetic:

- Osteogenesis imperfecta, Marfan, homocystinuria, hyperlysinaemia
- Immunodeficiency: Bruton agammaglobulinaemia or common variable

Malignancy:

- Infiltration, incl. leukaemia, amyloid
- Paraneoplastic: Giant-cell arteritis-like syndrome, HPOA (squamous cell carcinoma)

Endocrine – metabolic:

O.W.T.C.H.A. – *see p. 221*

Exogenous:

- Vitamin deficiency: D (rickets), C (scurvy)
- Kashin–Beck disease: Fungal infestation of wheat in China

Idiopathic

Inc: 10% over-60s
Age: Linear increase with age (radiographic progression)
Sex: F > M (esp. knee, hand); M > F (elbow); M = F (hip)
Geo: More common in Caucasians
Aet: Genetic, i.e. family history
Cumulative repetitive movements, i.e. age
Excess loading, i.e. obesity

Softened bone

Developmental

Congenital dysplasia of hip – posterior hip dislocation due to acetabular flattening or joint laxity
PC:

- Neonate: Failure to abduct flexed hips to 90°, and difficulty reducing head (Ortolani test)
- Child: Waddling gait, hyperlordosis (bilateral), asymmetrical skin crease (unilateral)

Perthes disease – avascular necrosis of femoral head secondary to minor trauma
PC: Painful hip in 5–10-year-old, esp. boys
Slipped capital femoral epiphysis – insufficiency fracture of physeal growth plate
PC: Painful hip or knee at puberty, esp. obese, hypogonadal boys

Osteochondritis

Crushing – necrosis of cuboidal bone in hand or feet, esp. during puberty
Types: Hand – lunate or capitulum; feet: metatarsal head or navicular
Splitting (dissecans – osteochondral fracture of convex joint, due to repeated minor trauma
Types: Medial femoral condyle, talus, capitulum (humeral part of elbow joint)
Pulling (traction apophysitis) – bone that receives tendon insertion is pulled off during puberty
Types: Tibial tuberosity (Osgood–Schlatter), calcaneum (Sever)

Osteonecrosis (‘avascular necrosis’)

F.I.N.A.L.I.T.Y.

Fractured: Neck of femur, carpal (scaphoid, lunate), foot (talus, metatarsal head)
Infection: Septic arthritis or osteomyelitis, TB, endocarditis
Nitrogen: Following rapid decompression N_2 bubbles act as emboli, e.g. in deep-sea divers
Autoimmune: Rheumatoid arthritis, SLE, vasculitis
Lipodystrophy: Gaucher disease
Ischaemic: Sickle cell anaemia, polycythaemia, diabetes, shock (e.g. acute pancreatitis)
Toxins: Steroids (incl. pregnancy, Cushing), alcohol
Young: Perthes – as above

Endocrine – metabolic

O.W.T.C.H.A.!

Ochronosis (homogentisic acid oxidase deficiency – alkaptonuria); PC: Black cartilage
Wilson disease
Thyroid: Graves disease – acropachy, hypothyroidism
Calcium: Hyper- or hypoparathyroidism
Haemochromatosis
Acromegaly

OSTEOARTHRITIS – PC

PC

1° OA

Distribution: Localized (1–2 joints) or generalized (≥3 classes of joints)

History:

- Pain ↑ by movement; evening–night; stiffness ↑ after rest
- Slow onset → flares every few months → deformity occurs late

O/E: Crepitus felt on movement, due to osteophytes; locking; effusions

A. Foot/Hand

1st MTP joint affected first

DIP and PIP joints (Heberden and Bouchard nodes):

O/E: Binodular (cf. scleroderma – uninodular)

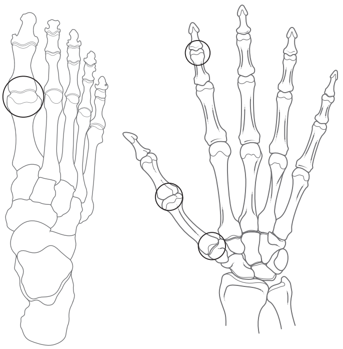
- DIP only: Mild disease; post-menopausal; familial
- PIP: 'Erosive DA' with synovitis
  Associated large-joint DA and cervical spondylosis

Thumb base: 1st MCP and CMC joints:

O/E: Stiffness, subluxation and squaring of thumb base

Familial 'persistent generalized osteoarthropathy' =

- CMC + DIP + knee DA
- Assoc. carpal tunnel syndrome, ulnar neuropathy



B. Hip

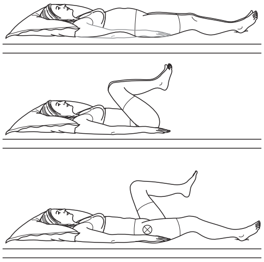
Pain inguinal; buttock; thigh, radiating to knee; limited passive internal rotation (normal: 50° external; 40° internal)

Fixed-flexion deformity: Thomas test (see diagram):

- Legs flat on bed – hyperlordosis apparent
- Flex both hips to straighten back
- Extend one hip, while holding pelvis straight → fixed-flexion deformity
- apparent in hip

True shortening of leg:

- Distance between ASIS and trochanter decreases
- Telescoping may occur with severe instability



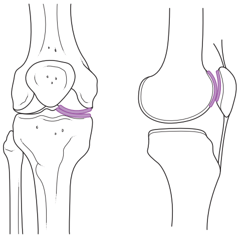
C. Knee

Medial compartment osteoarthritis

- Varus and fixed flexion deformity
- Gait disturbance:
  - Bilateral: waddles
  - Unilateral: Trendelenburg's sign +ve: pelvis sags on diseased side, on standing on one leg

Patella-femoral osteoarthritis

Baker's cyst

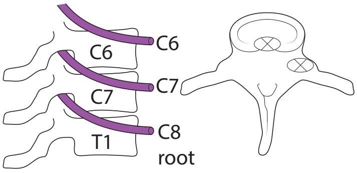


D. Spine

Cervical spondylosis – facet joints: Radiculopathy; myelopathy

Lumbar spondylosis – posterior disc and facet joints: Radiculopathy; cauda equina syndrome, spinal stenosis, spondylolisthesis

Other: Sacro-iliitis, skeletal hyperostosis (ligament ossification)



Other: Shoulder (glenohumeral, acromioclavicular, sternoclavicular), tibio-talar, temporomandibular

OSTEOARTHRITIS – IX AND RX

Ix

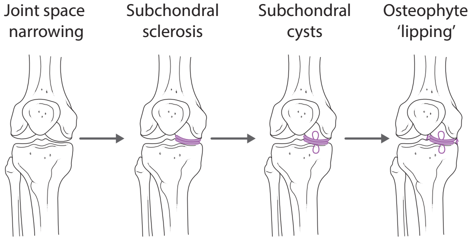
Radiol: X-ray

☠ Complications

Soft tissue swelling and effusion → acute pain;
locking due to:

- Osteophyte separation
- Synovitis in 'erosive OA'
- Crystal deposition

Bone marrow vascular congestion → chronic pain
Capsular fibrosis, bony ankylosis → stiffness
Osteoporosis, 2° to immobility → fracture



Rx

Conservative

- Physiotherapy:
  - Exercise – pain ↓, function ↑, power ↑
  - Hydrotherapy – joint load ↓, mobility ↑; heat or ice therapy – for acute flares
  - Serial splintage – fixed flexion deformity (e.g. knee), stabilizes joints
- Orthotics and occupational therapy:
  - Stick, frame – joint load ↓, mobility ↑; shoe-raiser for shortened leg
  - Home appliances – stair + bath rail, firm chairs, high toilet-seat ('doughnut')

Medical

- Effusion: Joint aspiration and injection of steroid (e.g. triamcinolone), hyaluronic acid, osmic acid
- Analgesia:
  - Mild: Paracetamol, co-dydramol
  - NSAIDs: Ibuprofen, diclofenac, COX-2 inhibitors (if no arteriopathy) – for acute flares
    ☠: Gastritis, peptic ulceration, renal disease
  - Other: Capsaicin cream, TENS

Surgical

- Arthroscopy:
  - Debride unstable cartilage and osteophytes (but recurrence common)
  - Drilling exposed bone causes cartilage remodelling
- Osteotomy:
  - Genu varum
  - Realign tibial plateau by removing wedge from lateral tibia
  - Divide meduallary veins, which reduces pain
  - 1st MTP joint: Keller osteotomy – excision of proximal MTP and proximal phalanx
- Arthroplasty:
  - Hip, knee, elbow – replacement hemi or total
  - 1st MTP joint – joint excision or insertion of Silastin sponge
- Arthrodesis: Fusion of joint removes pain and can improve resting position, but requires neighbouring joints to be normal to allow compensation

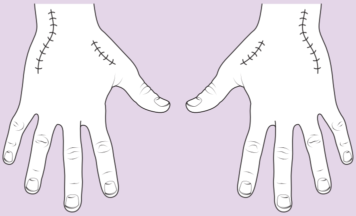
RHEUMATOID ARTHRITIS – PC

Def

Multisystemic cell-mediated immune autoimmune disease, characterized by chronic synovitis

PC

A.N.N.O.Y.I.N.' S.C.A^2.R.S^2.



Arthritis:
- Small-joints, symmetrical + generalized (≥3 joint areas)
- Pain + stiffness: ↑ with rest, e.g. early morning stiffness
- Subacute onset → periodic + progressive; flare frequency ↓, deformity ↑ → quiescence

Nodules (25%):
- Elbows, feet, ischial tuberosity; Achilles tendon; periosteal; visceral (e.g. lung, eye, bowel)
- EPI: Elderly men; sero +ve; serositis, e.g. pleural effusions; may ulcerate and become infected

Nails and skin:
- Longitudinal ridges, clubbing (if lung fibrosis), splinter haemorrhages (if vasculitis), palmar erythema
- Vasculitis (10%), incl. dusky cyanotic digits, Raynaud syndrome, cryoglobulinaemia livedo reticularis
- Leg ulcers, incl. pyoderma gangrenosum; ankle oedema

Ophthalmology:
- Keratoconjunctivitis sicca: 2° Sjögren syndrome (40%) – associated lethargy + lymphoma
- Episcleritis (also scleromalacia perforans); scleral nodules
- Vasculitis: Central retinal; anterior ciliary arteries (obliterative endarteritis)

Y: L**Y**mphadenopathy – proximal to affected joints; resembles giant follicular-cell lymphoma on histology

Immunocompromise: Due to disease and immunosuppressive drugs

Neurology:
- Peripheral – entrapment neuropathy, e.g. carpal tunnel syndrome; vasculitic mononuritis multiplex
- CNS: Ischaemic stroke due to medium-vessel vasculitis
- Myositis: Polymyositis or vasculitis (also hand wasting due to disuse atrophy)

Systemic: Fatigue, low-grade fever, anorexia, weight loss, steroid side-effects (e.g. skin thinning)

Cardiac: Pericarditis ± effusion, myo- or endocarditis, mitral regurgitation, coronary arteritis

Anaemia of chronic disease/**A**myloid AA (hepatosplenomegaly, malabsorption; renal failure)

Respiratory:
- Pulmonary fibrosis: Lower zone ± 2° pulmonary hypertension
- Pleurisy, pleural effusions
- Rare: Lung nodules, pneumonitis (esp. with methotrexate), bronchiolitis

Syndrome, Felty (1%) – severe arthritis, splenomegaly, low platelets and neutrophils (leg spots, ulcers)

Still disease ('juvenile chronic arthritis'): PC: Evening rash coincident with fever

Arthritis

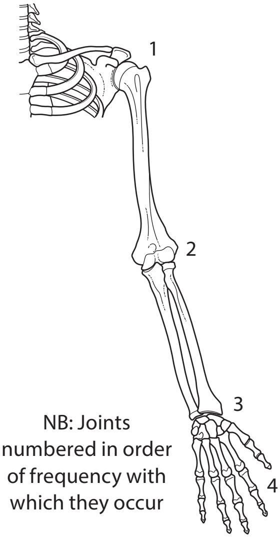
Upper limb

1 Shoulder/clavicle
Shoulder: Unable to abduct; rotator cuff tears, superior subluxation
Acromioclavicular, sternoclavicular arthritis, subacromial bursitis

2 Elbow: Unable to extend, olecranon bursitis

3 Wrist
Extensor tenosynovitis and effusion: Tender, hot, red, boggy swelling
Volar subluxation of wrist joint, dorsal subluxation of distal radio-ulnar joint
Prominent distal radius and ulnar: 'Piano-key deformity' (radius), tendon rupture

4 PIP/MCP joints
PIP: Fusiform or sausage-shaped fingers. effusions, 2° osteoarthritis
MCP: Ulnar deviation of fingers, volar subluxation, Z-shaped thumb
Deformities: Swan-necking, bouttonière (tendon rupture), trigger finger



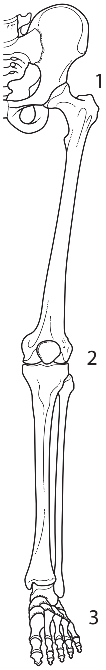
NB: Joints numbered in order of frequency with which they occur

Lower limb

1 Hip
Osteoporosis
Avascular necrosis, incl. due to steroids
Protrusio acetabula
Trochanteric bursitis – anterior thigh pain

2 Knee
Genu valgus
Baker's cyst – popliteal bursitis ruptures to cause acute pain and swelling in calf

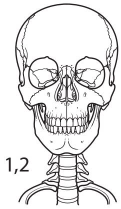
3 Foot
Toe clawing and hallux valgus
Metatarsal callosities
Volar subluxation of metatarsal heads – 'walking on pebbles'
Talar, subtalar joint synovitis



Cervical spine/other head–neck

1 Atlanto-axial dislocation
Odontoid peg – atlas synovitis:
when separation ↑ to >2 mm, on flexion:
- Cord compression (limb paraesthesia)
- Paroxysmal medullary dysfunction (e.g. vertigo, dysphagia, LOC) or vertebral artery TIA or stroke
- Head feels like falling forwards on flexing

2 Neurocentral joints of Luschka (C3–7) synovitis
Def: Synovial joints occur at upturned lateral lips of vertebral bodies
PC: Neck + head pain and stiffness, cord compression



Uncommon:
Superior oblique tenosynovitis
TMJ – esp. young women
Crico-arytenoid – hoarseness

RHEUMATOID ARTHRITIS – EPI, IX AND RX

Epi

Inc: Prevalence 3% (women), 1% (men)
Age: Presents between 40 and 60 y
Sex: F:M = 3:1
Geo: Urban > rural
Aet: Cell-mediated immunity: CD8 **+** T cells
Pre: Genetic: HLA-DR4 or -DR1 (relative risks of 6 and 2, respectively)
Smoking

Ix

Bloods:

Anti-cyclic citrullinated peptide (anti-CCP) antibody: High specificity, low sensitivity

Rheu**M**atoid factor = Ig**M** (± IgG) directed against Fc of IgG, found in serum and synovial fluid: High sensitivity, low specificity

Other autoantibodies, or markers of inflammation:

- ANA +ve in 30%
- ESR, CRP ↑ (correlates with severity)
- C3, C4, IgG ↑ or normal (unlike SLE)

Routine bloods:

FBC:

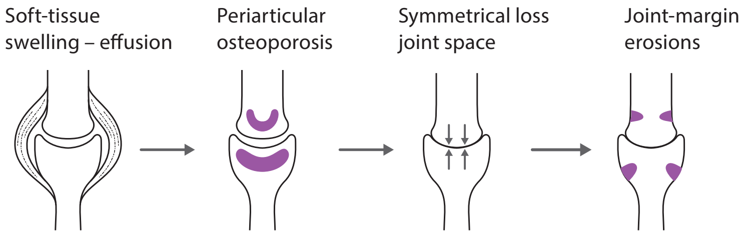
- Hb – normochromic, normocytic anaemia (ferritin ↓ if Fe-def.; ↑ if active inflammation)
- WBC – eosinophilia, lymphocytosis in severe RA (except in Felty syndrome – leucopenia)
- Plt – thrombocytosis (except in Felty syndrome – thrombocytopenia)

LFT: ALP ↑, LDH ↑, albumin ↓

Micro – aspirate of synovial or serosal fluid:

Straw-coloured, turbid, low viscosity
Neutrophilia; CD8 + T cells ↑
Complement Ig ↑, glucose ↓

Radiol:


Soft-tissue swelling – effusion
Periarticular osteoporosis
Symmetrical loss joint space
Joint-margin erosions

☠
Subluxation + deformity

Arthritis mutilans = telescoped digits

2° OA,
e.g. Bouchard nodes

Cervical X-ray: Atlanto-axial distance should be <2 mm on flexion
MRI: Cervical cord compression by synovial hypertrophy
CXR: Lower-zone fibrosis

Surgical – biopsy, e.g. of skin, nerve:

Vasculitis:

- Obliterative endarteritis, e.g. retina, nailbeds
- Necrotising arteritis (large vessel), e.g. ischaemic colitis, CVA, PVD (limb)
- Subacute arteritis (medium and small vessel), e.g. nerves (vasa nervorum), muscles

Rx

Conservative

- Physiotherapy: Stretching (decreases joint contractures); hydrotherapy; heat or ice therapy; orthotics, aids, incl. collar; neck protection during surgery
- Diet: Low-fat, high in omega-3 fatty-acids

Medical

Anti-inflammatories

Ind: Steroids:

- Acute flares: Intra-articular; short oral course; IM or IV pulse
- Maintenance (<7.5 mg prednisolone od): Decreases erosion and systemic disease
  ☠Steroids: Add bisphosphonate and omeprazole; check glucose, ABP
  NSAIDs: Peptic ulcer; hypertension; fluid retention; renal failure; asthma

Disease-modifying anti-rheumatoid drugs (DMARDs)

1. Should always be used; 2. Takes several months to start working; 3. Efficacious for 1–2 years

Synthetic DMARDS

Sulphasalazine:

☠: Oligospermia; headache, nausea, dizziness; rash

Antimalarials – chloroquine, hydroxychloroquine:

☠: Retinopathy (annual fundoscopy and visual fields); rash

Methotrexate (purine antagonist) – weekly PO or IM:

1st choice as quicker onset of action: 1–2 months; and longest-lasting efficacy of approx. 6 years

☠: Liver failure; lung fibrosis, acute pneumonitis; cytopenia; nausea

Azathioprine (purine synthesis inhibitor)

☠: Immunosuppression; cytopenia; lymphoma and haemorrhagic cystitis (cyclophospamide)

Biological DMARDS

Infliximab or etanercept (TNF-α antagonists)

(etane**RCEPT** = receptor antagonist; inflixim**AB** = anti-TNF antibody)

☠: Opportunistic infections – TB, fungal, bacterial septicaemia; autoimmunity – SLE or MS

Surgical: Arthroplasty (hip, knee, elbow); arthrodesis (wrist, atlanto-axial); osteotomy (e.g. radial head, forefoot) + tendon transposition; synovectomy

SERONEGATIVE ARTHROPATHIES – 1

Def

Generalized arthropathy centred on axial skeleton, with systemic features
Negative rheumatoid factor/anti-CCP antibody
Familial component, esp. via association with HLA-B27

Types

R.A.P.p.E.R.S.

Reactive arthritis: Large joint arthritis in response to infection elsewhere
  PC: Classic triad = monoarthritis, urethritis, conjunctivitis; may also have banalitis and keratoderma blennorrhagicum
Ankylosing spondylitis:
  Assoc: HLA-B27 – strongest association
  PC: Spondylosis, chest, arthritis, enthesopathy
Psoriatic arthropathy:
  Assoc: Psoriasis, nail pitting
  PC: Arthritis – may precede skin problems
Enteropathic:
  Assoc: IBD, Whipple or Behçet syndrome
  PC: Arthritis – may precede bowel problems
Rheumatic fever:
  Assoc: *Streptococcus pyogenes* (not HLA-B27)
  PC: Pancarditis, arthritis, subcutaneous nodules, Sydenham chorea, erythema marginatum, streptococcal infection in past
Still disease, adult-onset:
  PC: Arthritis, serositis, rash, organomegaly

PC

S^2.C.A.R.E.D. S.L.O.U^2.C.H.E.R.S.

What's going to happen to me?!!

Sacro-iliitis/**S**pondylosis:
- Sacro-iliitis:
  PC: Painful buttocks, hamstrings; thighs: ↑ in morning or with rest; difficult high-stepping
  O/E: Tender over SI joints – induced by pressure on sacrum centre and both iliac crests
- Spondylosis (fibrous bony ankylosis):
  PC: Stiff, painful back and neck
  O/E: Restricted lateral or anterior flexion; lumbar flattening or lordosis on forward flexion; thoracic kyphosis (wall–tragus distance ↑);
  Schober test: max. excursion of two points, 10 cm apart upwards from L5, is <15 cm

Complications: Spinal fracture (incl. end-plate collapse); cauda equina syndrome; spinal fusion

Costochondritis: Sternocostal and costovertebral enthesitis, resulting in ankylosis; thoracic spondylosis
O/E: Max. inspiratory excursion below breasts <5 cm circumference increase

Arthritis: Asymmetrical, mono- or oligoarthritis, esp. women; knee, ankle, TMJ

Respiratory:
- Chest wall ankylosis – restricted excursion and pain
- Apical fibrosis (*Aspergillus* may infect fibrotic lung)

Enthesopathy (painful inflammation of tendon and ligament insertions): Pelvis (iliac crests, ischial tuberosity, greater trochanter), patella, Achilles, plantar fasciitis

Dactylitis

Systemic: Fatigue, low-grade fever, anorexia – weight loss; ESR, CRP ↑

Liver and GIT:
- Fatty change, chronic active hepatitis, cirrhosis (ALP ↑), sclerosing cholangitis
- Inflammatory bowel disease, incl. silent ileal ulcers

Ophthalmology: Iridocyclitis (anterior uveitis), phlyctenular conjunctivitis, episcleritis

Ulcers/**U**rethritis: Orogenital ulceration, incl. circinate balanitis

Cardiac: Aortic root fibrosis and regurgitation; myocarditis – arrhythmias

Haematology: Anaemia of chronic disease; DVT; Sweet syndrome (purple plaques, fever, neutrophilia)

Extra: Hepatosplenomegaly due to AA amyloid or adult-onset Still disease (also lymphadenopathy)

Renal: IgA nephropathy, plasma IgA↑

Skin:
- Pyoderma gangrenosum (esp. UC): O/E: Violaceous everted edge
- Erythema nodosum or multiforme
- Vasculitis or Raynaud syndrome

SERONEGATIVE ARTHROPATHIES – SPECIFIC

Ankylosing spondylitis

Epi

Inc: Prevalence = 0.5% population
Age: Onset in teens to 30s
Geo: Native Americans, e.g. Pima (high HLA-B27 occurrence)
Sex: M:F = 3:1; M – spondylosis, psoriasis; F – peripheral arthritis, Crohn disease
Aet: **A**utoimmune attack against a cartilage glycoprotein, e.g. 'aggrecan'
Pre: 1. HLA-B27 in 95% (but B27 prevalence = 10%; so only 5% of people with HLA-B27 have ank. spond.)
2. MZ/DZ = 70:25; familial forms – milder severity
3. Infective: *Klebsiella pneumoniae, Campylobacter* spp. (serology often +ve)

PC

S^2.C.A.R.E.D. S.L.O.U.C.H.ers.

Sacro-iliitis/**S**pondylosis: Back and buttock pain, stiffness
Costochondritis and thoracic ankylosis
Arthritis: Mainly women sufferers – knees, ankles, shoulder
Respiratory: Apical fibrosis; chest wall ankylosis (restricted excursion and pain)
Enthesopathy: Ligament insertion inflammation, e.g. plantars, Achilles, knees (also responsible for spondylosis and sacro-iliitis)
Dactylitis

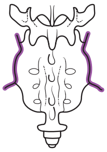
Systemic: Fatigue (esp. elderly); fever (low-grade); anorexia; weight loss
Liver/GIT: Liver fatty change, ALP ↑, silent ileal ulcers
Ophthalmic: Acute iridocyclitis (commonest complication) – poor prognosis
Urethritis
Cardiac: Aortic regurgitation; heart block
Haematology: Anaemia of chronic disease

What's going to happen to me?!!

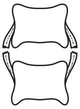
Ix

Bloods: ESR, CRP ↑; IgA ↑; CK; ALP ↑
Radiol: X-ray

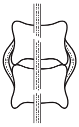
Sacro-iliac joints
Blurred cortical margins
Erosions ('pseudowidening')
Sclerosis (esp. lower half)



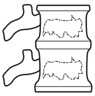
Spine
Initially upper lumber spine
Calcification of annulus fibrosus ends = 'syndesmophytes'



Ossification of annulus and posterior longitudinal ligament ('bamboo spine')
Loss of joint space



Squared-off bodies
Sclerotic end-plate
Osteoporosis



MRI – spinal arachnoid cysts

Rx

Conservative: Physiotherapy; swimming; avoid contact sports
Medical: NSAIDs: Esp. indomethacin, phenylbutazone (most efficacious, but ☠ cytopenias!)
Steroids: Pulsed methylprednisolone, CT-guided sacro-iliac injection, eye-drops for iritis
DMARDs: Sulphasalazine, methotrexate (for peripheral arthritis), infliximab, thalidomide
Surgical: Total hip arthroplasty; spinal osteotomy – in severe cases only

Reactive arthritis

Def

Arthritis following bacterial infection of any kind
May have classical triad of **G.O.A.** – see below (if arthritis alone, then it is called 'reactive arthritis')
Systemic autoimmune reaction, secondary to cross-reactivity with Gram-negative bacteria: gastroenteritis (e.g. *Yersinia, Salmonella spp., E. coli);* STD (*Chlamydia spp.,* gonococcus)

Epi

Occurs in 1–2 % of those with associated infections, esp. in young, with equal sex distribution

PC

A real **G.O.A.**

Genital:
- Urethritis (discharge), prostatitis
- Pelvic inflammatory disease, cervicitis
- Orogenital ulcers, incl. circinate balanitis

Ophthalmic: Conjunctivitis, anterior uveitis
Arthritis:
- Lower limb, mono- or oligoarthritis
- Resolves within 6 months, although 1/3 relapse
- Enthesopathy, incl. Achilles tendonitis, plantar fasciitis

+ Keratoderma blenorrhagica – pustular psoriasis on soles or palms
+ Diarrhoea

Ix

Micro: Microscopy and culture of blood; stool; urine; urethral, cervical + rectal swabs
Serology: Ligase chain reaction for *Chlamydia spp.,* HIV, syphilis (if STD suspected)
Joint aspirate: Neutrophil or monocyte exudate, but sterile

Rx

Acute: Rest initially, physio, later; aspirate effusions; NSAIDs ± steroids
Chronic: Sulphasalazine, methotrexate or azathioprine (but must exclude HIV first!)

Psoriatic arthropathy

Epi

2% population have psoriasis, of whom 7% develop arthropathy, esp. young men

PC

Arthritis
Small-joint, esp. DIP joints – commonest
Large-joint – symmetrical or asymmetrical
Sacro-iliitis; spondylitis
'Arthritis mutilans' = telescoping of digits

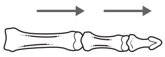
Skin
Psoriasis: Poor correlation with arthritis
Nail pitting; onycholysis; horizontal ridging: esp. on same digits with DIP arthritis

Iritis

Distinction from rheumatoid arthritis
DIP joints (rheumatoid = PIP joints)
Asymmetrical, oligoarthritis (rheumatoid = symmetrical, polyarthritis)
Sacro-iliitis, spondylitis (rheumatoid = atlanto-axial disease)
Dactylitis – uniform-swelling (rheumatoid = spindle-shaped fingers)

Ix

Radiol: X-ray: osteolysis of phalanx ends – 'pencil-in-cup' deformity



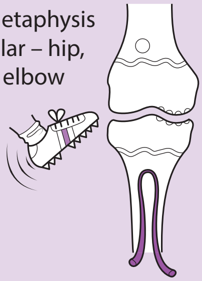
Rx

NSAIDs: Avoid steroids (worsen psoriasis on withdrawal)
DMARDs: Sulphasalazine, methotrexate, infliximab, etanercept (avoid antimalarials worsen psoriasis)

SEPTIC ARTHRITIS

Predisposing

All the **I's**



Infected bone
(osteomyelitis)
esp. when metaphysis
is intracapsular – hip,
shoulder, elbow

Inflammation
(synovitis)
RA, OA

Injury
Open fracture
Arthroscopy

Immunocompromised,
haematogenous spread:

- Children, elderly
- DM, cirrhosis
- HIV, immunosuppressed

Injection, esp. steroids

Organisms

Gram +ve cocci
Staphylococcus aureus: 80%
Streptococcus viridans: SBE
Streptococcus pneumoniae: Immunocompromised

Gram –ve rods
Salmonella: Sickle cell, elderly
Brucella: Endemic areas
Haemophilus: Children <5 y

Gram –ve cocci
Neisseria gonorrhoea
Neisseria meningitidis

Atypical bacteria
Mycobacterium tuberculosis:

- Children: Discitis, vertebral body collapse; adults: painful large-joint synovitis
- Poncet disease (reactive non-septic arthritis)

Mycobacterium bovis: Carpal tunnel infection
Lyme disease: Rash followed by recurrent large-joint arthritis

---

Viruses

DNA	**RNA**
Parvovirus	Rubella
EBV	Mumps
Hep B	Enteroviruses: Coxsackie, hep A

Patterns

Monoarthritis: Pyogenic, TB
Polyarthritis:

- Virus (rubella = rheumatoid-pattern in hands that lasts months)
- Lyme

Migratory: Gonoccoccus – occurs several weeks after acute infection; moves between hand, wrist and knee, before settling in 1 or 2 joints
Vertebral: TB (painless), staphylococal (painful); cause discitis, vertebral body collapse, psoas abscess, radiculopathy

PC

Arthritis
Acute, severe pain; tender, hot effusion; muscle spasm (pseudoparesis)
Secondary osteomyelitis (tender along bone), sinus, abscess
Chronic immobility due to:

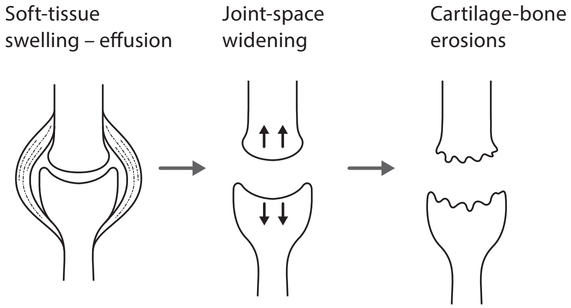
- Fibrous-bony ankylosis: Begins within 24 h of infection!
- Secondary wasting and osteoporosis

Systemic
Fever, N+V
Associated: Rash (virus, incl. parvovirus, gonococcus, Lyme), diarrhoea (parvovirus, enterovirus)
Risk groups: Sickle cell anaemia, sexually active (gonorrhoea, HIV)

Ix

Bloods: FBC, ESR, CRP
Uric acid, rheumatoid factor, ANA (acute gout and rheumatoid are differential diagnoses)
Urine: Microscopic haematuria – SBE
Micro: Blood cultures and serology: For suspected viral infections
Synovial aspirate: Urgent Gram stain
Radiol:

X-ray



☠
Osteomyelitis:
Metaphyseal mottling
Perisoteal elevation
(involucrum + sequestrum)
Fibrous or bony ankylosis
Dislocation – tense effusion

Radio-isotope scan: Reveals adjacent osteomyelitis, even in absence of X-ray changes

Rx

Medical – Antibiotics:
S. aureus – flucloxacillin, vancomycin, clindamycin (fusidic acid if osteomyelitis)
Coliforms – gentamicin (IV for first 2 weeks, PO for 6 weeks thereafter)
Surgical: Arthroscopy and drainage – indicates whether synovial damage and osteomyelitis
Supportive:
NSAIDs, e.g. indomethacin
Daily aspiration – relieves pain
Physio: 1st – splint or cast in appropriate position (hip: 30° flexion + adduction); rest
2nd – gradual exercise from 1 week after acute stage

CRYSTAL ARTHROPATHIES

Gout

Def

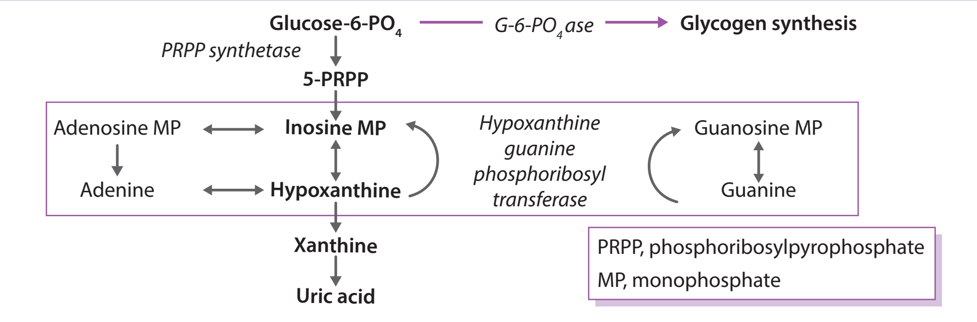
Precipitations of NaH urate (monosodium urate monohydrate) and uric acid crystals, in synovial joints and soft tissue (cf. 'Pseudogout' = calcium pyrophosphate crystals)

Occurs acutely and chronically against a background of hyperuricaemia, that is caused by:

Causes

G.O.U.T.Y².

Genetic: Enzyme defects in purine metabolism


Glucose-6-PO4
G-6-PO4ase
Glycogen synthesis
PRPP synthetase
5-PRPP
Adenosine MP
Inosine MP
Hypoxanthine guanine phosphoribosyl transferase
Guanosine MP
Adenine
Hypoxanthine
Guanine
Xanthine
Uric acid
PRPP, phosphoribosylpyrophosphate
MP, monophosphate

- Lesch–Nyhan syndrome (X-linked) = HGPRT deficiency
  PC: Spasticity, developmental delay, self-mutilation
- PRPP synthetase overactivity
- Glycogen storage disease, type 1: Glucose-6-phosphatase deficiency

Overproduction of uric acid:

- Ingestion of purines – offal, oily fish
- Increased cell turnover:
  - Myeloproliferative disease, leukaemia, myeloma, carcinomatosis – esp. with chemotherapy
  - Chronic haemolytic anaemia
  - Severe psoriasis
- Hypoxia, e.g. cyanotic congenital heart disease, incl. Down syndrome;
  ATP production ↓ → inosine → xanthine production ↑

Underexcretion of uric acid:

- 'Idiopathic' (95% cases) – often have positive family history
- Chronic renal failure – due to decreased glomerular filtration rate, and hence urate clearance:
  - Esp. with hypertension
  - Tubular disease: uric acid may be lost excessively (hypouricaemia)
- Acidosis: urate → uric acid → resorbed in renal tubules, e.g. starvation, alcoholism (lactic acidosis)

Toxins:

- Alcohol
- Diuretics: Thiazide, loop
- TB Rx: Pyrazinamide; ethambutol
- Other: Salicylates (so don't treat pain with aspirin!), cyclosporin, metformin

Y: h**Y**pothyroidism or h**Y**perparathyroidism

Epi

Inc: 5% hyperuricaemia → of which 15% have gout
Age: Middle-age or elderly – urate levels increase until 30 y (men) or menopause (women)
Sex: Men: 10–20 ×↑
Pre: Alcohol-drinking, meat-eating, obese; hypertensive-IHD

PC

Acute:

Arthritis
Location:
- Small-joint monoarthritis
- 75% = 1st MTP ('podagra')
- 10% = >1 joint

Painful, red, shiny, desquamates
Fever

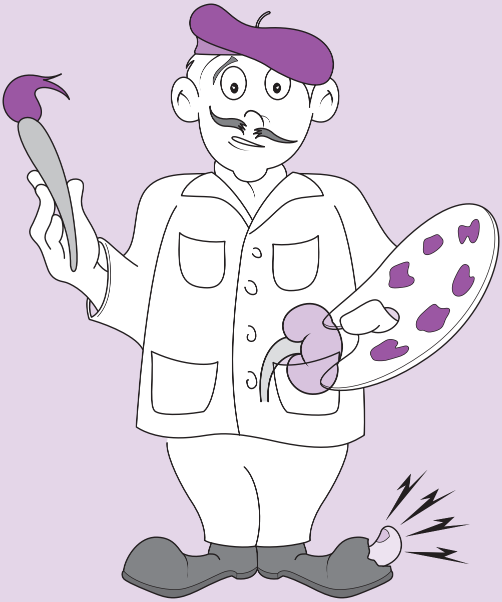
Triggers of **A.T.T.A.C^2.K.**

Acute illness: Infection, trauma, dehydration, exertion
Toxin-1: Allopurinol, uricosuric
Toxin-2: Diuretic, chemotherapy
Alcohol: Esp. binge, withdrawal
Cold, **C**onsumption of high-protein meal
Ketoacidosis: DKA, starvation

Chronic:

A.R.T.

Arthritis: Irregular nodules, recurrent flares; tenosynovitis, olecranon bursitis
Renal: Tubulointerstitial nephritis
Tophi: Crystal deposition and calcification in skin (finger tips); pinna; eyes; cartilage, bone, bursae, tendon



Ix

Bloods: Uric acid (<480 µmol – males; <390 µmol – females); but levels do not correlate with acute attack – an attack may be precipitated by a **reduction** in levels!

Urine: 24-h uric acid, collected after a 70 g protein, purine-free diet; distinguishes 'overproducers' (high urinary uric acid) from 'underexcretors'

Micro: Synovial aspirate microscopy:

- Polarized light: Strongly negative birefringence (cf. pseudogout = weakly positive birefringence)
- Neutrophils contain crystals
- Blood-staining suggests pseudogout,or hydroxyapatite crystals (e.g. Milwaukee shoulder)

Radiol: Bone X-ray: Subcutaneous calcification; 'moth-eaten' phalanges; 'punched-out' erosions
Abdominal X-ray: Calculi – radiolucent, unless mixed with calcium

Rx

Acute:

NSAIDS, high-dose – e.g. indomethacin, diclofenac, azapropazone (but not aspirin!)
Colchicine: Microtubule assembly inhibitor; ☠ Diarrhoea, N+V, neuropathy

Chronic:

Strategy: Wait >1 month after acute attack; cover for 3 months with NSAID or colchicine; continue indefinitely, incl. during attacks

- Allopurinol (xanthine oxidase inhibitor): Indicated in 'overproducers' or severe disease
  ☠: Hypersensitivity reaction or rash – necessitates withdrawal; dyspepsia
- Rasburicase = oxidases uric acid into allantoin
- Uricosuric (probenecid; NSAIDs, e.g. sulphinpyrazone, phenylbutazone):
  - Indicated in 'underexcretors', mild disease, preserved renal function ☠: Renal stones (ensure high fluid intake, render urine alkali, e.g. K citrate)

PYROPHOSPHATE ARTHROPATHY

AKA Calcium pyrophosphate dihydrate crystal deposition disease
AKA Pseudogout

Def

Precipitation of calcium pyrophosphate dehydrates crystal in synovial joints

Causes

Unclear – familial cases are rare

Epi

Mostly elderly patients >80 y, equal M:F

PC

Either:
  Acute large joint monoarthritis (50% knee joint)
  Chronic/insidious polyarthritis
May be associated with carpal tunnel

Ix

Micro: Rhomboid crystals, weakly positively birefringent on polarized light microscopy
Radiol: Evidence of chondrocalcinosis on plain X-ray

Rx

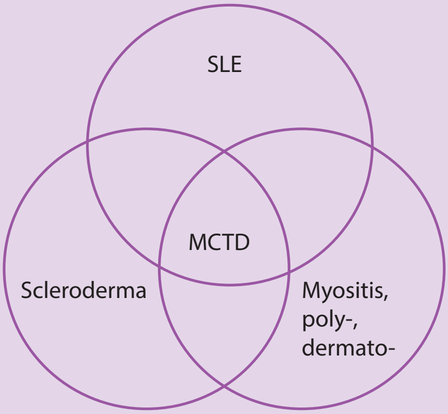
Steroids – oral or intra-articular injection
NSAIDS or colchicine for acute flares

MULTISYSTEMIC AUTOIMMUNE DISEASES

Classification

Rheumatoid arthritis
Sjögren syndrome

Connective tissue diseases



Associations

1. Anti-phospholipid syndrome (recurrent thromboses and miscarriages) – associated with SLE
2. Raynaud disease/cryoglobulinaemia
3. Primary biliary cirrhosis – both 2 and 3 associated with connective tissue diseases, rheumatoid arthritis and Sjögren

Vasculitides

Primary

Large	PMR, GCA, Takayasu arteritis
Medium	Buerger disease, Kawasaki disease, PAN
Small	Granulomatosis with polyangiitis Eosinophilic granulomatosis with polyangiitis HSP Behçet

Autoimmune: connective tissue disease
Infection:
- HBV – PAN
- HCV – 'essential mixed cryoglobulinaemia'
- HIV, parvovirus B19, rickettsia

Neoplasia: Lymphoma, carcinoma – paraneoplastic
Toxins

GCA, giant-cell arteritis
HSP, Henoch–Schönlein purpura
MCTD, mixed connective tissue disease
PAN, polyarteritis nodosa
PMR, polymyalgia rheumatica
SLE, systemic lupus erythematosus

Auto-antibodies

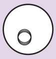
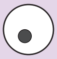
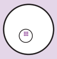
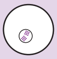
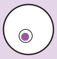
Anti-Cardiolipin IgG: Anti-phospholipid syndrome ± SLE
Anti-RBC, -platelet or -lymphocyte Abs: Respective cytopenia ± SLE

RheuMatoid factor

Def: Ig**M** directed against Fc portion of IgG
Positive: 1. Rheumatoid arthritis, Sjögren, connective tissue disease (in 50%)
2. Malaria, leprosy, rubella
False –ve: Other Ab serotypes, e.g. IgG or IgA

ANA (anti-nuclear abs)

High sensitivity (SLE 95%), but poor specificity:
False +ve: Rheumatoid arthritis, PBC, drugs, elderly
False –ve: Complement deficiency, subacute cutaneous LE
Types: Classified according to:

Indirect immunofluorescence (HEP-2 cells)	**ENA**
Rim = **R**egular SLE 	Double-stranded DNA Smith (Sm) antigen: - Small nuclear RNP
Diffuse = **D**rug-induced or regular SLE 	Histone
Speckled = **S**ystemic: - Myositis - Raynaud - Cardio-pulmonary 	U_1 ribonucleoprotein: - MCTD Jo-1 (histidyl tRNA synthetase): - Myositis + pulmo. fibrosis
Speckled = **S**jögren syndrome 	SS-A (Ro); SS-8 (La): - Sjogren syndrome - Subacute cutaneous LE, or lupus nephritis (Ro) - Neonatal heart block
Nucleolar = scleroderma 	Anti-Scl-70: - Diffuse cutaneous Anti-centromere: - Limited CREST

ANCA (anti-neutrophil cytoplasmic abs)

p-ANCA

Def: Abs against perinuclear antigens – myeloperoxidase, cathepsin, elastase, lactoferrin, lysozyme
Diseases: **P.U.R.G.E**
- **P**AN, micro**PAN** (70% sensitivity) or eosinophilic granulomatosis with polyangiitis (EGPA)
- **U**lcerative colitis, or:
  - Chronic active hepatitis
  - Primary biliary cirrhosis
  - Primary sclerosing cholangitis
- **R**heumatoid arthritis with vasculitis
- **G**lomerulonephritis, idiopathic crescentic
- **E**ndocarditis, HIV

c-ANCA

Def: Abs against cytoplasmic antigens, esp. proteinase-3 (neutral serine protease)
Diseases:
- Granulomatosis with polyangiitis
- α_1-anti-trypsin deficiency

NB: ANCA titre indicates disease severity better than ESR or CRP

SYSTEMIC LUPUS ERYTHEMATOSUS (SLE)

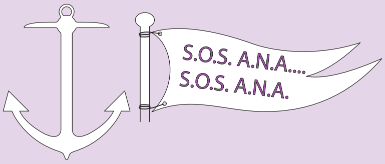
PC

S.O.S. A.N.A. ...
S.O.S. A.N.A

Skin
- Photosensitivity due to IL-1 secretion from keratinocytes:
  - Malar, 'butterfly', rash: Erythematous maculopapular rash involving chin and ears
  - Discoid LE: Hyperkeratotic, follicular plugs; atrophic scars, raised erythematous rim
  - Subacute cutaneous LE: Extensive papules, annular, hypopigmented rash; fatigue
- Alopecia: Patchy or total
- Vasculitis: Purpura, cryoglobulinaemia, Raynaud, nail fold infarcts, ulcers–nodules
- Other: Urticaria, bullae, erythema multiforme, lichen planus, panniculitis

Oral ulcers**,** or nasopharyngeal ulcers: aphthous – white base with red surround

Serositis:
- Pleural effusions, pericarditis, peritonitis
- Other respiratory: Basal fibrosis, linear atelectasis, pulmonary hypertension
- Other cardiac: 'Libman-Sacks endocarditis', myocarditis
- Other GIT: Abdominal pain, N+V+D


S.O.S. A.N.A....
S.O.S. A.N.A.

Arthritis:
- Non-erosive arthritis of ± 2 joints: 'Jaccoud arthropathy'
- Joint effusions, contractures, avascular necrosis; tendonitis
- Myalgia, myositis

Neurological:
- Headaches: Common
- Seizures, psychosis, dementia, encephalopathy, cerebellar ataxia
- Transverse myelitis, peripheral neuropathy

Anaemia and other haematological:
- Haemolytic: direct Coombs' test +ve, warm agglutinins
- Lymphopenia – immunosuppressed: Miliary TB; toxoplasmosis; histoplasmosis, candida
- Thrombocytopenia

Splenomegaly, hepatomegaly (fatty change), lymphadenopathy
Ophthalmic: Sicca, conjunctivitis, episcleritis, retinal vasculitis, cytoid bodies
Systemic: Fever, fatigue, LOW

Acute **N**ephritis (or chronic): Proteinuria (3+; >0.5 g/24 h)/cellular casts
Antibodies:
- ANA+ve incl. dsDNA, anti-Sm, false +ve VRDL (or LE cell prep. +ve)
- Anti-cardiolipin (or lupus anticoagulant) → 'anti-phospholipid syndrome' = arterial and venous thromboses (incl. recurrent miscarriages), thrombocytopenia, liveo reticularis, nephritis, cerebral disease, endocarditis

Disease-defined by presence of any 4 of SOS, ANA and ANA

Epi

Inc: Prevalence = 1/10,000
Age: Onset 15–30 y
Sex: F:M = 9:1 (discoid LE = 2:1)
Geo: Black:White = 9:1; SLE also highly prevalent in Chinese
Aet: Inherited: C2, C4 deficiency (5%)
Oestrogen: OCP pregnancy, menses worsen SLE
Drug-induced:

- Fast acetylators: Hydralazine
- **SL**ow acetylators: **SL.I.P^2.P^2.E.D.**
  - **I**soniazid
  - **P**henytoin, **P**henothiazine (chlorpromazine)
  - **P**rocainamide, **P**enicillin (or tetracycline)
  - O**E**strogen (oral contraceptive)
  - **D**iuretic (thiazide)
  - PC: Rash, serositis, pulmonary fibrosis (**NOT** neurological or nephritis)

Ix

ANA (anti-nuclear antibodies):

- ENA: Anti-Ro, anti-La, anti-Sm, Anti-scl-70, anti-Jo
- Anti-dsDNA – very specific for SLE
- Anti-histone antibodies – strongly assoc. with drug-induced lupus

Other auto-antibodies:

- Rheumatoid factor +ve in 40%
- Anti-cardiolipin ELISA IgG; or lupus anticoagulant assay (APTT ↑)
- Direct Coombs' test (warm agglutinins); anti-neutrophil, -lymphocyte, -platelet abs

Other:

- ESR ↑ but CRP normal (unless superimposed infection or active serositis)
- Complement: C3, C4 ↓ (C3 normal in C1, C4 deficiency, or drug-induced SLE); CH50 ↓
- Biopsy, e.g. rash, renal, brain: Fibrinoid necrosis; small-medium–vessel vasculitis

Rx

Acute flares:
Steroids
NSAIDS
Opioids
DMARDS:

- Hydroxychloroquine
- Azathioprine
- Methotrexate
- Cyclophosphamide for severe lupus nephritis

Surgical:
Splenectomy, esp. if ITP
Kidney transplant for severe renal disease

Other: Anticoagulation, e.g. warfarin for recurrent thromboembolic disease

SCLERODERMA

Types

Scleroderma – Localized

Morphoea: Plaque of thick, waxy skin
Linear scleroderma: En coup de sabre (linear alopecia), facial hemiatrophy
Eosinophilic fasciitis:

- Acute inflammation, and cobblestone-like induration of all extremities, after exertion
- Flexion contractures, carpal tunnel syndrome, myositis (CK normal)
- Aplastic anaemia, myelodysplasia

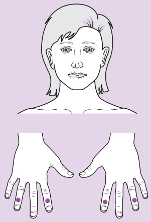
Systemic sclerosis – Limited

PC

C.R.E.S.T.

Calcinosis, subcutaneous
Raynaud phenomenon: May precede CREST by several years
O**E**sophageal dysmotility: PC: Dysphagia (present in 50%)
Sclerodactyly: Tight, tense, thick, tender, tanned skin (oedema and fibrosis); ulcers; claw hand
Telangiectasia: No central arteriole, cf. liver disease

NB: Cutaneous disease is confined to forearms and face



Systemic sclerosis – Diffuse

PATH

Organ fibrosis

PC

C.R.A.C.K.I.N.G.

Cutaneous disease spreads to entire body
Respiratory:

- Pulmonary fibrosis
- Pulmonary hypertension

Arthritis:

- Non-erosive arthritis
- Tapered fingers; phalangeal tuft erosion and osteolysis

Cardiac:

- Restrictive cardiomyopathy
- Pericardial effusion

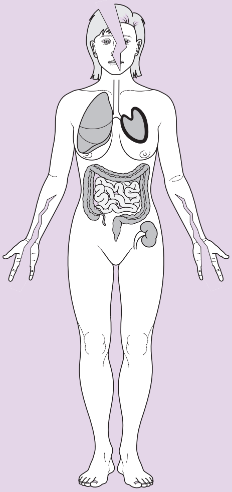
Kidney:

- Rapidly progressive renal failure, or chronic renal failure (PATH: Intimal proliferation + medial fibrinoid necrosis)
- Malignant hypertension, flash pulmonary oedema
- Microangiopathic haemolytic anaemia (MAHA)

Intestine:

- Small bowel: Dysmotility, bacterial overgrowth, malabsorption
- Large bowel: Constipation, diverticulae, pseudo-obstruction, pneumatosis coli

Neurological: Polymyositis
Gastric: Oesophageal dysmotility – peptic oesophagitis



Epi

Inc: Prevalence = 50/100,000
Age: 20–40 y
Sex: F:M = 3:1 (esp. limited systemic sclerosis)
Geo: Choctaw Native Americans (Oklahoma) – highest incidence
Aet: Limited systemic sclerosis: Small-vessel vasculitis
Diffuse systemic sclerosis: Necrosis → overproduction of collagen and ground substance → fibrosis
Pre: Industrial toxins: Vinyl chloride, aromatics, epoxy resins – scleroderma-like disease
Iatrogenic – bleomycin; breast implants – localized scleroderma around silicon implants
Autoimmunity: Sjögren, primary biliary cirrhosis, vitiligo

Ix

Bloods:
  Routine:
    Hb ↓: Normocytic, due to chronic inflammation or microangiopathic haemolytic anaemia
      Macrocytic, due to vitamin B12 deficiency (bacterial overgrowth)
    ESR ↑; urea and creatinine ↑
  Autoantibodies:
    Limited systemic sclerosis: ANA: anti-centromere pattern
      ENA: Anti-centromere
    Diffuse systemic sclerosis: ANA: anti-nucleolar pattern
      ENA: anti-Scl-70 (topoisomerase)
    Others: Rheumatoid factor, cryoglobulins
Urine: RBC and WBC casts
ECG, **E**CHO
Radiol:
  CXR, high-resolution CT
  Barium swallow, meal + follow-through: Abnormal in 90% systemic sclerosis dilated 2nd part of duodenum
Special:
  Oesophageal manometry
  Wide-angle microscopy (or ophthalmoscopy) of nail fold:

- Limited systemic sclerosis: Capillary enlargement
- Diffuse systemic sclerosis: Capillary enlargement and areas of capillary loss

Rx

Immunosuppressive:
Azathioprine, mycophenolate, methotrexate, cyclophosphamide
Tyrosine kinase inhibitors – imatinib
Autologous bone marrow transplant

Symptomatic:
cR.E.S.t
Raynaud: Nifedipine, IV prostacyclin
O**E**sophageal dysmotility: Metoclopramide, domperidone, proton-pump inhibitor
Sclerodactyly: Emollients (keep skin moist), subcutaneous relaxin (pregnancy hormone)

Diffuse
GIT: Laxatives, cyclical antibiotics (bacterial overgrowth)
Respiratory – pulmonary hypertension: IV prostacyclin
Kidney: ACE inhibitors, beta-blockers

SJÖGREN SYNDROME

Def

Autoimmune destruction of exocrine glands that is either primary, or secondary to:

- Rheumatoid arthritis (30% of RA pts.); SLE, scleroderma, polymyositis; vasculitides
- Organ-based autoimmunity: Chronic active hepatitis, primary biliary cirrhosis, thyroiditis

Epi

Inc: Prevalence = 0.5–1% (primary SS)
Age: Onset commonest in 30s–40s
Sex: F:M = 9:1 (*same as SLE*)
Pre: HLA-B8, -DR3 – associated with extraglandular involvement and auto-antibodies

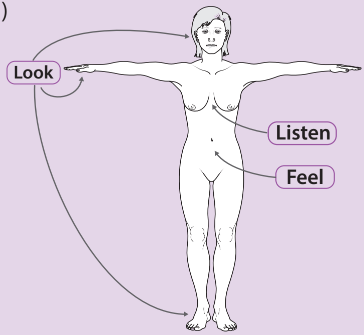
PC

X.X.X. S.U.R.R.O.U.N.D.I.N.G.S.

Xerophthalmia (dry eyes):
- Grittiness, soreness, photophobia, every day for >3 months
- O/E: Keratitis, conjunctivitis, corneal ulcers (Rose Bengal stain)

Xerostomia (dry mouth):
- Dysphagia: Need to take water to swallow ('cream cracker Sx'); awakes at night to drink water
- Bilateral parotid enlargement (uncommon in secondary Sjögren, massive in HIV)
- Angular stomatitis, dental caries, fissured tongue; atrophic filiform papillae, oral candida

X: Ix: 2 out of 4 must be positive to establish diagnosis, see p. 245



Skin:
- Dry skin + dry hair
- Vasculitis, incl. Raynaud syndrome, ulcers, urticaria, livedo reticularis

Ulcers: Orogenital, corneal, leg ulcers (incl. pyoderma gangrenosum)
Rheum: Reversible deformity, e.g. swan-necking PIP joints (Jaccoud arthropathy)
Respiratory:
- Dry respiratory passages: Xerotrachea, bronchitis (dry cough), sinusitis
- Basal pulmonary fibrosis

Ophthalmic: Xerophthalmia causes keratoconjunctivitis sicca and corneal ulcers
Urine:
- Tubulointerstitial nephritis, renal tubular acidosis – nephrocalcinosis, osteomalacia
- Glomerulonephritis (vasculitis-associated)

Neurology:
- Central nervous system vasculitis: Seizures, multiple sclerosis-like syndrome
- Peripheral neuronopathy: Sensory, painful, facial numbness, Rombergism

Deafness: Sensorineural
Intestine:
- Atrophic oesophagitis–gastritis (due to lack of mucosal barrier), achlorhydria
- Pancreatitis (subclinical)

Neoplasia: Lymphoma or Waldenstrom macroglobulinaemia (5% risk)
Genital: Dyspareunia (dry secretions) – 30% (often presenting complaint)
Systemic: Fatigue, anorexia, loss of weight, low-grade fever, lymphadenopathy

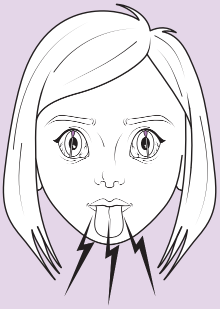
Differential diagnosis

Causes of dry eyes and dry mouth

S.A.L^2.I.V.A.T.E.

Sarcoidosis
Autoimune: Sjögren (primary or secondary)
Lymphoma or **L**eukaemia (CLL) or graft-versus-host disease
Infection: TB
Virus: HIV 'sicca syndrome'
Amyloid
Toxin: Anticholinergics, incL. tricyclic antidepressants
Endocrine: Diabetes mellitus

NB: Glandular enlargement (Mikulicz syndrome) is common with these conditions



Causes of dry, gritty eyes
Ocular: Blepharitis, conjunctivitis, corneal ulcers, proptosis
Neurological: 5th or 7th cranial nerve palsies, myopathy
Vitamin A deficiency

Causes of bilateral parotid enlargement
Viral: Mumps, EBV, influenza
Gastroenterological: Cirrhosis, chronic pancreatitis, hyperlipoproteinaemia
Bulimia nervosa (painless)

Ix

1. Autoantibodies:
   ENA: SS-A (Anti-Ro), SS-B (Anti-La): Associated with severe disease and extraglandular symptoms
   ANA (immunofluorescent staining = speckled), rheumatoid factor, thyroid auto-antibodies
2. Schirmer test <5 mm in 5 min (usual >15 mm)
3. Salivary function tests: Salivary scintigraphy, parotid sialography, salivary flow test
4. Labial minor salivary gland histology:
   Clusters of CD4+ lymphocytes around salivary acini (↑ 'focus' >50 lymphocytes)
   + gland destruction; duct dilation
   (cf. HIV: CD8+ lymphocytes in glands; sarcoid: granulomas)

Rx

Symptomatic:
Sicca symptoms – artificial tears and saliva; oral pilocarpine; avoid anticholinergics or diuretics
Arthralgia: Hydroxychloroquine

Immunosuppressants:
Steroids, IVIg or cyclophosphamide – used for extraglandular disease, e.g. vasculitis, respiratory

AUTOIMMUNE MYOSITIS

Dermatomyositis

Epi

Inc: 1/100,000 p.a.
Age: Adults and children
Sex: F:M = 3:1
Aet: Primarily a vasculitis of muscle and skin capillaries → ischaemia + CD4 infiltration
Pre: Malignancy:
Present in 10%: Bronchial, breast, ovary, GIT, lymphoma (non-Hodgkin)
May pre-date or post-date malignancy by 2 years

PC

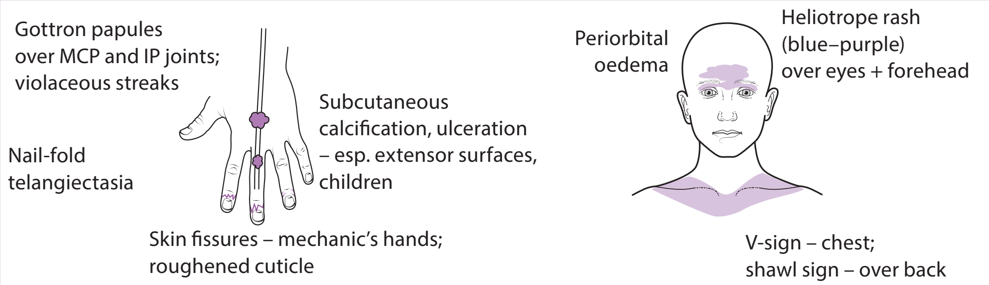
Similar organ involvement as for diffuse systemic sclerosis:

C.R.A.C.k.I.N.G.

Cutaneous
Respiratory:
- Pulmonary fibrosis: Assoc. anti-Jo-1 (tRNA synthetase); anti-KL6 (mucin-like glycoprotein)
- Respiratory muscle weakness

Arthritis: Arthralgia; flexion contractures (children)
Cardiac: AV-conduction block, arrhythmias, myocarditis
Intestine: Visceral myopathy – constipation, dysphagia
Neurological:
- Proximal myopathy develops acutely over days–weeks
- Bulbar and respiratory weakness

Gastro-oesophageal – dysphagia, due to involvement of striated muscle of oropharynx, upper oesophagus


Gottron papules over MCP and IP joints; violaceous streaks
Nail-fold telangiectasia
Subcutaneous calcification, ulceration – esp. extensor surfaces, children
Skin fissures – mechanic's hands; roughened cuticle
Periorbital oedema
Heliotrope rash (blue–purple) over eyes + forehead
V-sign – chest; shawl sign – over back

Ix

Bloods: CK ↑↑
Auto-abs: Anti-Jo1 (histidyl tRNA synthetase), anti-SRP (signal recognition particle)
EMG: Small-amplitude, polyphasic potentials; positive sharp-waves; fibrillations
Radiol: Plain X-rays – subcutaneous calcification
CT thorax–abdomen–pelvis, or PET scan – search for occult malignancy
Special – muscle biopsy (site can be guided by prior MRI)

Rx

Steroids: 80 mg od, taper over 10 weeks
Steroid-sparing drugs: Methotrexate (acts faster), azathioprine, mycophenolate, IVIg

Polymyositis

Epi

Inc: 0.5/100,000 p.a.
Age: Adults only
Sex: F:M = 3:1
Aet: Primarily myositis → CD8 infiltration
Pre: Autoimmunity: SLE, Sjögren syndrome, RA
Infection: HIV

PC

As for dermatomyositis, except:

- No cutaneous features
- Myopathy develops sub-acutely over weeks–months (cf. acutely for dermatomyositis)

Ix

As for dermatomyositis, except no need to hunt for neoplasia, but do HIV test

Rx

As for dermatomyositis

Inclusion body myositis

Epi

Inc: Commonest myopathy of 50+s
Age: Elderly
Sex: F:M = 1:3
Geo: Caucasians
Aet: Myositis + degenerative components:
Myositis: Similar to polymyositis
Degenerative: Vacuolated fibres, amyloid-positive inclusions, mitochondrial DNA deletions
Pre: Autoimmunity
Family history

PC

Myopathy:

- Distal (foot extensors, wrist extensors, finger flexors), or quadriceps weaknesss
- Dysphagia in 60%
- Sub-acute onset over weeks–months
- Unresponsive to steroids

Ix

Bloods: CK normal or slightly ↑
EMG: As for dermatomyositis
Special – muscle biopsy: Distinguished from DM and PM due to rimmed vaculoes, amyloid-positive inclusions and abnormal mitochondria (ragged-red fibres and cytochrome oxidase-negative fibres)

Rx

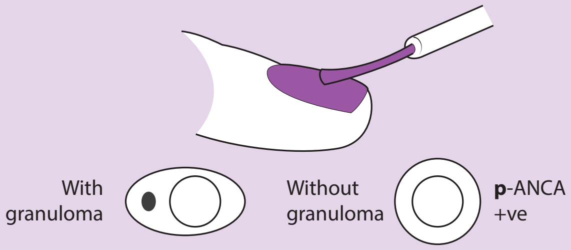
Immunosuppressants (steroids, azathioprine, IVIg) can be tried, but no or little response is often found – in contrast to other inflammatory myopathies

VASCULITIS

Types

P.A.I.N.T.

Primary



Autoimmune: SLE, Sjögren, rheumatoid arthritis, polymyositis, scleroderma
Infection: HBV – PAN; HCV – 'essential mixed cryoglobulinaemia'; VZV, CMV, syphilis – isolated CNS vasculitis; HIV; parvovirus B19; *Streptococcus* (Behçet, 'erythema elevatum diutium'); TB; rickettsia; histoplasmosis
Neoplasia: Lymphoma, carcinoma (bronchus, ovary, renal cell)
Toxins: Propylthiouracil, amphetamine, leflunomide (NB: ANCA may be +ve)

Typical presentations of primary vasculitides

GCA:
Epi: Elderly (>60), women (2:1)
PC: Headache, proximal weakness, optic neuropathy

Takayasu disease
Epi: Young, Asian women
PC: CVA, PVD, renal failure

Buerger disease
Epi: Middle-aged, Mediterranean men; smoking, HLA-B5 (B51)
PC: CVA, PVD, Raynaud

Eosinophilic granulomatosis with polyangiitis (EGPA - formerly Churg–Strauss syndrome)
Epi: Any age, M:F = 1.3:1
PC: Asthma, mononeuritis multiplex, eosinophilia

Granulomatosis with polyangiitis (GPA – formerly Wegener's granulomatosis/Wegener disease)
Epi: Caucasian, any age, M:F = 1:1
PC: ENT, pulmonary infiltration, renal failure

Kawasaki disease
Epi: **C**hildren
PC: **C**ervical lymph nodes, **C**onjunctivitis,
Cutaneous (rash), **C**oronary microaneurysms

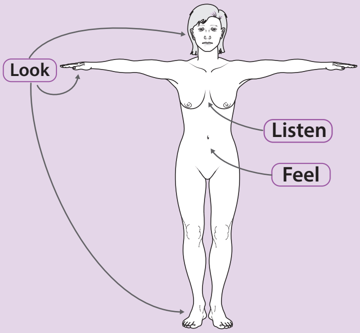
Polyarteritis nodosa (PAN)
Epi: HBV-infection PC: see p. 249

MicroPAN: As for PAN

Henoch–Schönlein purpura
Epi: Children (4–11), boys, post-URTI; IgA ↑
PC: Maculopapular rash on extensor surfaces
Haematuria (IgA nephropathy)
PR bleeding (ischaemic bowel, intussusception)

PC

Examine the **S.U.R.R.O.U.N.D.I.N.G.S.**



Skin:	PAN, GPA: Purpura, nodules, Raynaud syndrome, infarcts, livedo reticularis
Ulcers:	Orogenital ulcers, esp. Behçet
Rheumatology:	Arthralgia or myalgia (esp. PMR – morning stiffness); arthritis
Respiratory and Cardiac	
Respiratory:	PAN, microPAN: Pulmonary infarction, haemorrhage
	GPA: Haemoptysis; pulmonary infiltrates, atelectasis, nodules, cavitation
	EGPA: Asthma, fleeting eosinophilic infiltrates
Cardiac:	Takayasu, PAN: MI, CCF, pericarditis, aortic regurgitation, aortic dissection, aneurysm
Ophthalmic:	Retinal infarcts ('cotton-wool spots'), uveitis, scleritis, conjunctivitis
	GPA: Orbital pseudotumour with proptosis
Urine:	Glomerulonephritis: Proliferative or crescentic
Neurological:	CNS: Headache, stroke (both infarction and haemorrhage), fits, dementia, psychosis
	PNS: Neuropathy, mononeuritis multiplex (esp. EGPA, GPA, PAN), myopathy (GCA)
Deaf (ENT)	GPA: Deafness due to otitis media (conductive) or sensorineural; nasopharynx necrosis (epistaxis, sunken nasal bridge); sinusitis; subglottic stenosis (hoarseness, stridor); dacrocystitis
Intestine	PAN, HSP: Mesenteric ischaemia (pain, perforation, PR bleeding, intussusception)
	PAN: Cholecystitis; pancreatitis; hepatic infarction
Neoplasia:	Cyclophosphamide side-effect
Genito-urinary:	PAN: Ovarian, testicular–epididymal pain; Behçet: ulcers
Systemic	Fever, weight-loss and anorexia, depression-fatigue
	Hypertension (suggests glomerulonephritis)
	Bloods: Normocytic anaemia, CRP ↑, ESR ↑; polyclonal Ig ↑; complement normal

Ix

ANCA: p-ANCA +ve in PAN, microPAN, HSP, EGPA
c-ANCA +ve in GPA (level indicates severity)

Angiogram (e.g. renal, cerebral, retinal): Aneurysms, stenosis, beading, corkscrew collaterals

Biopsy: Skin, renal, liver, nerve, muscle, brain: Immunofluorescence for immune complexes, IgA
Superficial temporal artery (may be negative due to skip lesions)

Rx

Immunosuppression: Steroids, cyclophosphamide, methotrexate, plasma exchange, IVIg

Anti-platelet/anti-coagulation: Kawasaki, giant-cell arteritis if ischaemia, optic neuropathy

Surgical: Angioplasty (Takayasu), renal transplant (GPA, PAN)

Prog

Poor: PAN, microPAN, EGPA: 5-y SR = 50% treated; 10% untreated

Intermediate: GPA – 75% achieve remission, of whom 50% relapse: Takayasu (variable)

Good: HSP (self-remitting usually), GCA (if steroids given promptly), Kawasaki

RAYNAUD PHENOMENON

Def

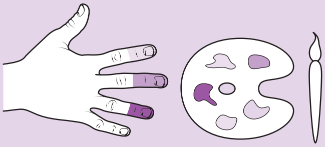
Episodic vasospasm of extremities (digits, pinnae, nose) in normal arterioles (idiopathic form)

PC

Pain
Characteristic pattern of colour change: white → blue → red
Chronic: Ulcers and necrosis (not in idiopathic form)

Causes

P^2.A.I.N.T. P^2.O.T.



Primary ('Raynaud disease')/**P**ulmonary hypertension:
Epi: Accounts for 50% of Raynaud phenomenon
Women in 20–40s. Assoc: Primary pulmonary hypertension
PC: Triggered by cold, emotion, smoking

Autoimmune:
- Scleroderma (90% pts. have Raynaud – due to digital vessel calcification)
- SLE, RA, poly- or dermatomyositis

Injury:
- Repetitive injury: Pneumatic drills, chainsaws, drums, piano
- Frostbite

Neurological: Reflex sympathetic dystrophy, following trauma ('Volkmann ischaemia')

Toxins:
- Migraine Rx: Beta-blockers (β_2-mediated), ergotamine; methysergide
- Bromocriptine (ergot derivative)
- Chemo Rx: Bleomycin, cisplastin
- Heavy metals/vinyl chloride

Paraproteinaemia; **P**olycythaemia; cold agglutinins – hyperviscosity
- Paraproteinaemia (myeloma, Waldenstrom), esp. cryoglobulinaemia
- Cold agglutinins (e.g. mycoplasma, EBV, lymphoma), typhoid

Outlet obstruction, thoracic:
- Cervical rib; fascial band behind scalenus anterior; prominent transverse process C7
- Fractured 1st rib or clavicle; sleep-related

O/E: Symptoms ↑ and radial pulse ↓ with shoulder abduction to 90°, and external rotation
Supraclavicular fossa bruit

Thromboembolism:
- Atherosclerosis
- Buerger disease (thromboangiitis obliterans)

Rx

- Conservative: Avoid cold; mittens and coats (cold induces generalized vasospasm); stop smoking
- PO meds: Ca antagonists (nifedipine), α_1-blockers (prazosin), losartan, fluoxetine (via platelet 5-HT effect)
- IV prostacyclin
- Surgical: Sympathectomy

CRYOGLOBULINAEMIA

Def

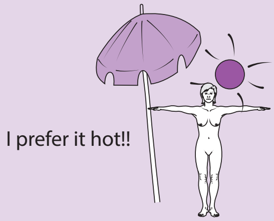
Immunoglobulins that precipitate at 4°C

PC

S.A.U.N.A.

Skin:
- Palpable purpura (leucocytoclastic vasculitis)
- Raynaud, with digital ulcers
- Cold urticaria

Arthralgia: Rheumatoid arthritis-like
Urine: Mesangiocapillary glomerulonephritis
Neurology: Mononeuritis multiplex, cranial nerve palsies
Additional: Pericarditis, thyroiditis


I prefer it hot!!

The full syndrome is typical of mixed essential cryoglobulinaemia; other causes result predominantly in rash

Causes

P.A.I.N.

Primary – ‘mixed essential cryoglobulinaemia’: Most cases have chronic hepatitis C
Autoimmune:
- SLE, RA, systemic sclerosis
- Primary biliary cirrhosis

Infection:
- Hepatitis C, B virus: 5% chronic hepatitis C patients develop cryoglobulinaemia
- Herpes (EBV, CMV)
- Bacteria:
  - Endocarditis
  - *Streptococcus* (esp. post-acute glomerulonephritis)
  - Leprosy, kala-azar, malaria (hyper-reactive form with splenomegaly)

Neoplasia:
- Myeloma, granulomatosis with polyangiitis, amyloid
- CLL, Hodgkin lymphoma

Ix

Type 1: Monoclonal Ig – myeloma
Type 2: Polyclonal IgG (e.g. specific to hep C) + monoclonal rheumatoid factor
Type 3: Polyclonal IgG (e.g. to herpes, bacteria) + polyclonal rheumatoid factor

Differential diagnosis

Acrocyanosis:
PC: Cyanotic digits irrespective of ambient temperature
Epi: Women in 20s

Erythromelalgia:
PC: Burning, erythematous extremities; feet > hands; worse in warmth and dependency; normal pulses
Epi: Middle-aged men; myeloproliferative disease, nifedipine, bromocriptine
Rx: Aspirin

CARPAL TUNNEL SYNDROME

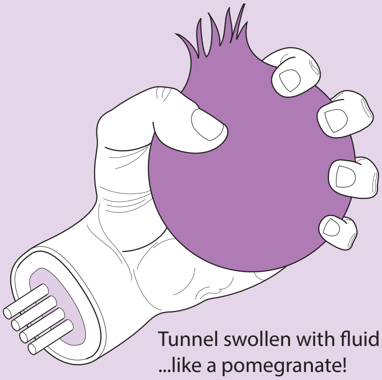
P.O.M.E.G.R.A.N.A.T.E.

Pregnancy
OCP (oral contraceptive pill)
Menopause, pre-menstrual
Endocrine:
- Acromegaly
- Hypothyroidism
- Diabetes mellitus

Gout
Renal:
- Nephrotic syndrome (fluid overload)
- Chronic renal failure or congestive cardiac failure (fluid overload) (and, as in CCF, symptoms worsen at night)
- Haemodialysis: Accumulation of β_2-microglobulin
- AV – fistula: Steals blood from median nerve vasa nervorum

Amyloid, multiple myeloma
Neuropathy: Hereditary neuropathy with liability to pressure palsies (autosomal dominant)
Arthritis:
- Rheumatoid arthritis with associated wrist tenosynovitis
- Osteoarthritis, esp. familial 'persistent generalized osteoarthropathy'

Trauma: Carpal fracture or anterior dislocation of lunate
Extra: TB, sarcoid


Tunnel swollen with fluid
...like a pomegranate!

PATH

Swelling of flexor synovial sheaths beneath flexor retinaculum, due to generalized fluid accumulation, or synovitis

PC

Pain and paraesthesia in hand – often more extensive than just lateral 3½ fingers!

- Radiates up medial forearm and towards shoulder (thus mimicking a cervical root lesion)
- Worse at night; relieved by shaking hand

Clumsy hand or weak grip

O/E

Motor: Wasting and weakness of hand muscles supplied by the median nerve:

L.O.A.F.

Lumbricals 1 + 2
Opponens pollicis
Abductor pollicis brevis (most sensitive)
Flexor pollicis brevis

Sensory: Sensory loss over palmar aspect, and tips, of lateral 3½ fingers, and adjacent palm (but not over thenar eminence, which is supplied by superficial palmar branch that traverses over the transverse ligament!)

Special: **T**inel test = **T**apping gently over carpal tunnel reproduces paraesthesia
Phalen test = **F**lexing wrist maximally for 1 min reproduces symptoms

Distinguish this pattern from diffuse wasting of hand muscles, whose causes are:

- Upper motor–neuron: CVA, Parkinson (disuse atrophy)
- Cervical cord: Syringomyelia
- Anterior horns: Motor neurone disease, polio
- Roots: Cervical spondylosis
- Brachial plexus: 'Klumpke's palsy'
- Neuropathy:
  - Brachial neuritis (viral)
  - Mononeuritis multiplex (e.g. vasculitis)
  - Generalized neuropathy (CIDP, multifocal motor neuropathy)
- Joints, e.g. rheumatoid arthritis
- Constitutional, e.g. carcinoma, malnutrition

Ix

EMG: Slowing of median nerve across wrist

Rx

S.I.D.S.

Splint wrist
Injection of hydrocortisone
Diuretics
Surgical decompression

COLLAGEN AND ELASTIC-TISSUE DISEASES

Defects in collagen

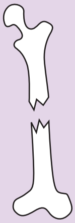
Genetics: All are **autosomal dominant**, except severe forms of osteogenesis imperfecta and severe epidermolysis bullosa (autosomal recessive), and Alport disease (X-linked)

Type I: Osteogenesis imperfecta

PC

O.S.T.E.OC.L.A.S.T.

Osteopenia: Frequent fractures; kyphoscoliosis; *in utero* fractures – short stature; perinatal death
Skin: Thin
Teeth: Dentinogenesis imperfecta
Eyes: Blue sclera – also seen as familial trait, Ehlers–Danlos, Marfan; PXE, pseudohypo-PTHism
Otos**C**lerosis, and sensorineural deafness >20 y
Ligament laxity: Joint dislocations
Aortic regurgitation; mitral regurgitation
Systemic hyperthermia
Thyroid, hyper

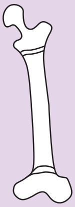


Type II: Achondroplasia

PC

C.H.O.N.D.R.O.

Craniofacial: Frontal bossing, midface hypoplasia
Height: Short – due to short thighs (rhizomelic), but normal trunk size
Orthopaedic: Hip, pelvic abnormalities due to metaphyseal flaring
Neurological: Spinal stenosis, cervicomedullary compression, hydrocephalus
Deafness: Recurrent otitis media, partly due to cleft palate
Respiratory: Restrictive defect; obstructive sleep apnoea, incl. central apnoea
Ophthalmic: Cataracts, vitreal degeneration, retinal detachment

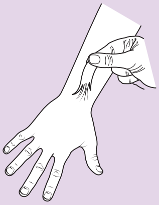


Type III: Ehlers–Danlos syndrome

PC

E.L.A^2.S.T.I.c.

Eyes: Keratoconus; ocular rupture (lysyl hydroxylase def. variant – AR)
Ligament laxity: Hypermobile joints, osteoarthritis
Aortic regurgitation; **A**ortic dissection–aneurysm; mitral valve prolapse
Skin: Hyperextensible (cutis laxis), fragile (cigarette paper), purpura
Thoracic: Kyphoscoliosis
Intestine: Bowel or uterine perforation



Type IV: Alport disease

PC

Glomerular and interstitial nephritis (recurrent haematuria), sensorineural deafness, lenticonus

Type VII: Epidermolysis bullosa

PC

Epithelial blisters and breaks following minor trauma:
Mild: Epidermal keratin
Severe: Dermal collagen VII, or junctional laminin

Defects in elastic tissue

Fibrillin: Marfan syndrome

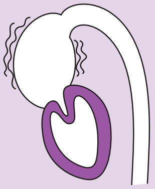
PATH

Fibrillin mutation in epidermal growth factor-like regions of gene (chromosome 15)
Fibrillin is a constituent of **elastic** tissue and microfibrils, incl. suspensory ligaments of lens
Autosomal dominant (as opposed to phenotypically-similar homocystinuria: AR)

PC

$E^2.L^2.A^2.S^2.T^2.I.C.$

Eyes: Ectopia lentis (upward displacement, cf. homocystinuria – downwards)
Elevated (high-arch) palate
Limbs: Long arms, fingers (arachnodactyly) and toes
    Long trunk, i.e. upper:lower segment ratio increased
Ligament laxity: Hypermobile joints (thumb sign, Walker–Murdoch's wrist sign)
Aortic regurgitation; mitral regurgitation or mitral valve prolapse
Aortic: Aneurysm–dissection (esp. ascending aorta)
Skin: Striae
Skin: Purpura on buttocks, shoulders
Thorax: Pectus excavatum or carinatum, kyphoscoliosis; dural sac dilatation
Thorax: Pneumothorax
Intestine: Herniae
Circulation: Varicose veins



Aortic aneurysm

Elastin (1): Pseudoxanthoma elasticum

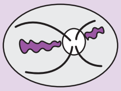
PATH

Calcium deposition in elastic fibres of skin; arteries and retina–choroid Bruch membrane
Autosomal recessive/dominant, or as an effect of penicillamine; worsened by steroids!

PC

E.L.A.S.T.I.C.

Eyes: Angioid streaks (also seen in Paget, sickle cell disease, Ehlers–Danlos) – blindness
Ligament laxity: Hypermobile joints; osteoarthritis
Aortic regurgitation; mitral regurgitation
Skin: 'Plucked-chicken' = coalesced yellow maculopapules; spares follicles
    Hanging, lax skin folds, esp. neck, axillae, antecubital fossae
    Purpura on buttocks, shoulders
Thorax: Scoliosis, pneumothorax
Intestine: Haematemesis
Circulation: Hypertension, ischaemic heart disease, peripheral vascular disease; and haemorrhage – subarachnoid, GIT, genito-urinary; haemoptysis



Angioid streaks

Elastin (2): Williams syndrome

PATH

Sporadic large deletion on chromosome 7, incorporating elastin and actin-regulator *LIMK* genes

PC

WI.L.L.I.A.M.

WIde mouth, short, upturned nose. **L**ow growth. **L**ow **I**ntelligence but gregarious (opposite of autism)
Aortic stenosis – supravalular. **M**etabolic – hypercalcaemia

BACK PAIN

Epi

Commonest cause of chronic disability in under-50s
1% of general population are chronically disabled by back pain
2nd most common primary care consultation (after viral URTIs)

Causes

M.A.D.D.E.N.I.N.G^3. P.A.I.N.

Mechanical: Injury-related – ligament strain; also fracture
Autoimmune:
- Seronegative arthropathies – ankylosing spondylitis, enteropathic, etc.
- Rheumatoid arthritis

Disc prolapse/**D**egenerative – other:
- Adults: Spondylosis, canal stensosis
- Adolescents: Kyphosis, spondylolisthesis, spondylolysis

Endocrine–metabolic: Osteoporosis (microfractures, verterbral compression), osteomalacia, Paget
Neoplasia – vertebral or cord
Infection: Discitis, epidural spinal abscess, osteomyelitis – pyogenic, TB
Neurological: Guillain–Barré syndrome, meningoradiculitis, haematomyelia (e.g. subarachnoid haemorrhage, AVM), spina bifida occulta
Gastroenterological or **G**ynaecological or **G**enito-urinary:
- Gastroenterological: Duodenal ulcer, pancreatitis
- Gynaecological: Endometriosis, pelvic inflammatory disease, ovarian cyst
- Genito-urinary: Prostatitis, pyelonephritis

Psychological
Aortic aneurysm or retroperitoneal haematoma
Ischaemic – sickle crisis
Neurofibromatosis

Maddening
Pain

Mechanical

Cause: Minor injury, e.g. lifting heavy object or sudden deceleration in car accident
PC: Pain confined to lower back or neck, but no radiation to buttocks or legs
O/E: Paraspinal muscle spasm – if unilateral, causes scoliosis to that side

Autoimmune

Ankylosing spondylitis

PC: Lower back and buttock pain and stiffness, worse at night or morning; better with exercise
O/E: Loss of lumbar lordosis and exaggeration of thoracic kyphosis; reduced chest expansion

Rheumatoid arthritis

PC: Painful limitation of movement due to facet joint involvement

Disc prolapse

PATH:
- Disc prolapse most common at L4–5 or L5–S1, although may occur at any level
- Affected nerve root lies lower than affected disc space, e.g. L4–5 causes either L5 or S1 radiculopathy
- Lateral disc prolapse causes radicular pain; central disc prolapse causes cauda equina syndrome

PC:
- Lower back and leg pain, with variable sensory symptoms in leg; worsened by cough or sitting
- Bilateral leg pain, saddle anaesthesia, or sphincter–erectile dysfunction suggest cauda equina syndrome

O/E:
- Ipsilateral scoliosis; hip and knee kept in flexed position
- Straight leg raising reduced (often to <30°); Lasegue manoeuvre (pain on extending knee with hip flexed)
- Radicular signs, e.g. absent ankle jerk or numbness of 5th toe (both suggest S1 root lesion)

Degenerative – other

Spondylosis

PATH: Osteoarthritis-like changes in lumbar or cervical spine, e.g. flaval or facet joint hypertrophy
PC: Radiculopathy, myelopathy or headache (esp. cervical spondylosis)

Lumbar spinal stenosis (neurogenic claudication)

PC: Back, buttock or leg pain in elderly (rarely congenital); triggered by standing (unlike ischaemic claudication) or walking; relieved by sitting (unlike disc prolapse)
O/E: Radiculopathy may be present; normal peripheral pulses (to exclude ischaemic claudication)

Neoplasm

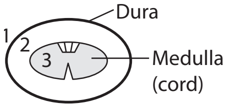
Vertebral

B^2.O.N.E.1. M. (Boney M!)

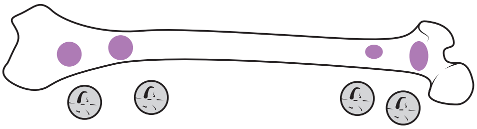
Breast, **B**ronchus, **O**varian, **N**ephro (renal, prostate, testes), **E**ndocrine (thyroid) – metastatic carcinoma **1**° bone tumour – Ewing, osteosarcoma, **M**yeloma/lymphoma

Cord

1 Extradural: All causes of vertebral tumours (**B^2.O.N.E.1. M.**)
2 Extramedullary: Neurofibroma, meningioma, leptomeningeal metastases
3 Intramedullary: Glioma, ependymoma, medulloblastoma 'drop' metastases



BONE CYSTS

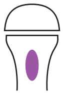


P.E.N.N.I.E.S.

Primary

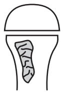
S.A.F.E. *(all benign)*

Simple bone cyst:
Epi: Pre-pubertal
PC: Pain or pathological fracture
Rx:
- Intracystic steroid injection
- Curettage; pack with bone chips



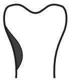
- Central, metaphyseal
- Knee, proximal humerus, skull ('congenital cranial lacunae')

Aneurysmal cyst or AVM:
Epi: Young adults



- Expanding, eccentric
- Blood-filled, trabeculated
- Long bone, spine, skull AVM

Fibrous cortical defect:
Epi: Children

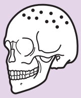


- Cystic centre, sclerosed edge
- Long bones

Enchondroma:
Ollier syndrome (multiple enchondroma)

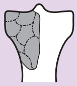
- Tubular bones
- Specks of calcification

Endocrine: Primary hyperparathyroidism



'Pepper-pot skull'

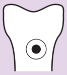
Neoplasia – primary – giant-cell tumour:
Epi: 20–40 (epiphyses must have fused)
PATH: Multinucleate giant cells; stromal proliferation
PC: Pain and swelling near joint; pathological fracture
Prog: 1/3 benign; 1/3 local invasion; 1/3 metastasize



Soap-bubble/
ballooned cortex
in sub-articular site , e.g.
knee, distal radius,
proximal humerus

Neoplasia – secondaries: **B**^{2}**.O.N.E.1. M.**
Breast, **B**ronchus
Ovary
Nephrology: Renal, prostate
Endocrine: Tumour
1 °– primary
Myeloma/Langerhans cell histiocytosis; also pseudotumour of haemophilia

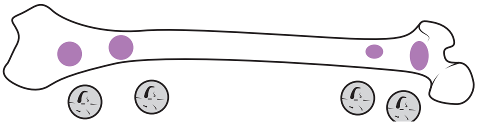
Infection: Osteomyelitis – 'Brodie abscess'



- Metaphyseal
- Round, cystic centre
- Sclerosed edge

Electrolytes: Gout
Sarcoid: Dactylitis (enlarged phalanges)

SCLEROSIS



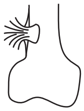
P.E.N^2.N.I.E.s

Paget disease
Endocrine: Secondary hyperparathyroidism – renal osteodystrophy
Neoplasia – primary – benign

- Osteoid osteoma – appears similar to Brodie abscess
- Osteochondroma = cartilage-capped exostosis

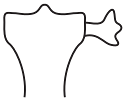
Neoplasia – primary – malignant:

Osteosarcoma (50%):
Epi: Bimodal 10–20%: and >50% (Paget); M:F=2:1
PC: Painful, swollen, warm limb; worse at night
Lung metastases – early
X-ray: Mixed rarefaction and sclerosis
'Codman triangle' (periosteum lifts off shaft)
Sunray spicules – soft-tissue calcification



Knee, proximal humerous

Chondrosarcoma (25%):
Epi: Age >40 y
PC: Enchondroma – indolent pain, swelling, pathological fracture
Ecchondroma – early swelling, except pelvic basin exostosis
X-ray: ENC: Medullary rarefaction, calcified specks
ECC: Large exostosis, calcified specks in cartilage cap



Girdles, metaphysis of long bones

Ewing or reticular cell sarcoma (15%):
Epi: Age 10–20 y; associated with adrenal neuroblastoma
PC: Pain, worsened by walking/limp
Swelling: Warm, firm, rubbery, tender
PUO from liver, lung, bone metastases (like osteomyelitis)
X-ray: Medullary rarefaction
Periosteal onion-skinning (reactive new layers)

Diaphysis of long bones

Neoplasia – secondary:

- Metastatic carcinoma: Breast, prostate, colorectal
- Myeloma (incl. POEMS syndrome); Hodgkin lymphoma

Inflammation:

- Osteoarthritis
- Osteopetrosis

Exogenous:

- Lead ('pica'), radium, bismuth, phosphorus (match heads)
- Fluorosis, esp. Persian Gulf, India, China
- Vitamin A toxicity; X-ray – epiphyseal thickening; irregular opacification of lower ribs

Taylor & Francis
Taylor & Francis Group
http://taylorandfrancis.com

Neurology

HEADACHE – ACUTE

Causes

V.I.C.I.O.U.S.

Vascular: Thunderclap onset (i.e. immediate):
  Haemorrhage: Aneurysmal subarachnoid; intracerebral
  Thrombosis: Venous sinus thrombosis; ischaemic stroke (in conjunction with acute hemiparesis)
  Reversible cerebral vasoconstriction syndrome (RCVS):
    PC: Recurrent thunderclap headaches over 1–4 weeks, mimics subarachnoid haemorrhage
    Ix: CT angiogram shows vasoconstrictions that reverse by 6 weeks; but no aneurysms; CT may show infarcts or cerebral convexity subarachnoid haemorrhage
  Other: Dissection, vasculitis

Infection/**I**nflammation: Acute or subacute onset (i.e. over hours or days):
  Meningitis:
- Neutrophilic CSF: Meningococal, pneumococcal, listeriosis, fungal; OR early viral or TB
- Lymphocytic CSF: Viral (enterovirus, HIV), TB, Lyme, syphilis; OR partially treated bacterial; autoimmune vasculitis, SLE, Behçet syndrome; sarcoidosis

  Brain abscess
  Encephalitis: Infective (e.g. herpes simplex virus) or post-infective (acute demyelinating encephalomyelitis)

Compression: Recurrent paroxysmal, or thunderclap:
  Intraventricular or periventricular tumour, causing transient obstructive hydrocephalus, (e.g. colloid cyst of 3rd ventricle)
    PC: Drop attacks, acute bilateral visual loss
  Posterior fossa lesion: Tumour, Arnold–Chiari malformation
  Pituitary enlargement: Apoplexy, due to infarction of pituitary macroadenoma; post-partum hypophysitis

Intracranial pressure ↑ or ↓:
  Primary intracranial hypertension:
    PC: Headache worse on stooping or lying flat; visual disturbance (obscurations; 6th cranial nerve palsy); tinnitus, triggered by weight gain
  Spontaneous intracranial hypotension, due to spinal CSF dural leak
    PC: Headache worse on standing initially, but may become posture-independent later. May be triggered by exertional event, e.g. lifting

Ophthalmic – acute glaucoma: Unilateral but not necessarily ocular

U: co**U**gh or other 'situational' cause, e.g. exertion, coital cephalgia:
- Commoner in people who suffer with migraines
- Recurrent paroxysmal thunderclap headache

Systemic:
  Hypertensive crisis (e.g. pre-eclampsia, phaeochromocytoma) causing PRES (posterior reversible encephalopathy syndrome) with characteristic MRI cerebral white matter lesions; vasculitis
  Infection, e.g. sinusitis, tonsillitis, dental abscess, UTI, atypical pneumonia (e.g. mycoplasma) – may all cause meningism and encephalopathy, esp. in children and elderly
  Toxins: Carbon monoxide

Ix

1st-line: **CT head**: Subarachnoid haemorrhage: Blood in sulci, cisterns – sensitivity = 90% in first 24 h
Mass lesions/midline shift: Intracerebral haemorrhage, abscess, tumour

Bloods:
WBC: Neutrophils – bacterial meningitis, abscess, **LiS**teria (**L**ymphocytes in **S**erum)
Lymphocytes: **LyMe** disease (**L**ymphocytes in **M**eninges)
Monocytes: TB
ESR, CRP: Meningitis
Urine:
MSU, glucose, protein
Micro:
Blood cultures
Serology: Bacterial meningitides, enterovirus, HIV, syphilis,
Fungal antigens: Cryptococcal (serum CRAG), galactomannin
TB 'EliSpot'
Radiol:
CT angiogram (more sensitive than MR angiogram):

- Detects aneurysm, RCVS, AVM, dissection, vasculitis; sensitivity for aneurysms >5 mm = 90%
- CT venogram if patient at risk of cerebral venous thrombosis

Catheter angiogram if aneurysm or AVM suspected, sensitivity = 95% (but risk of stroke due to procedure = 0.5%)
MRI:

- MRI: Posterior fossa lesion, ADEM, CSF dural leak (brain and spine MRI with contrast)
- MRA: Aneurysm, AVM, dissection, vasculitis; sensitivity for aneurysm >5 mm = 90%
- MRV: Cerebral venous thrombosis

Special: CSF: Always do brain scan before performing lumbar puncture to exclude mass-lesion or cerebral oedema
Opening pressure:

- Normal = 5–20 cmH_2O
- Raised: Subarachnoid haemorrhage, primary intracranial hypertension, meningitis
- Depressed: Spontaneous intracranial hypotension (avoid LP if history is suggestive!)

Appearance:

- Normal = clear
- Xanthochromic (yellow): Traumatic tap, subarachnoid haemorrhage, high protein
- Bloody: Traumatic tap, subarachnoid haemorrhage, so if subarachnoid haemorrhage is a possibility, send for immediate centrifugation and spectrophotometry on supernatant for bilirubin (+ve between 12 hours and 2 weeks) and CSF ferritin (+ve in SAH)

Microscopy, culture and sensitivity:

- Normal: RBC count raised if traumatic tap, but should see decrease from bottles 1 to 3
  WBC count 0–4 (lymphocytes); deduct 1 WBC for every 700 RBCs
- Neutrophilia: Meningococal, pneumococcal, listeriosis, fungal; OR early viral or TB
- Lymphocytosis: Viral (enteroviruses, HIV), TB, Lyme, syphilis; OR partially treated bacterial autoimmune vaculitis, SLE, Behçet syndrome; sarcoidosis
- Stains: Gram – bacteria, some fungal; Ziehl–Nielsen – TB; Indian Ink – *Cryptococcus*

Chemistry:

- Normal: Protein 0–0.45 g/l; deduct 0.01 g/l for every 1000 RBCs; glucose 2.8–4.2 mmol/l, or >50% serum glucose
- Protein >1 g/l: Bacterial, TB or fungal meningitis, or subarachnoid haemorrhage
- Glucose <40%: Bacterial, TB, fungal or mumps meningitis

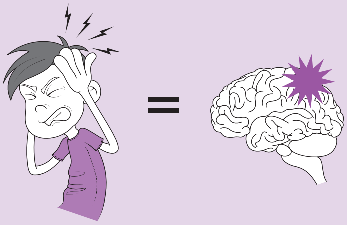
Other: Cryptococcal antigen (CSF CRAG), herpes class PCR, ACE, oligoclonal bands, cytology

HEADACHE – CHRONIC

Causes

M.A.D.D.E.N.I.N^2.G^2. *noise*

- **M**igraine – episodic, severe lasting hours to days, or continuous mild-moderate ('transformed')
- **A**utonomic (trigeminal autonomic cephalgias or TACs):
  - Cluster headaches: Strictly unilateral, severe pain, min to hours, unilateral tearing, red eye, ptosis, rhinorrhea
  - SUNCT: Like cluster headaches but lasting seconds
  - Paroxysmal hemicrania/hemicrania continua: Like cluster headaches but continuous
- **D**epression/Tension headaches
- **D**egenerative disease – cervical spondylosis: Causes unilateral fronto-occipital pain worsened by neck movements
- **E**xogenous:
  - Drugs:
    - Medication-overuse headache syndrome: Migraine commonly becomes continuous and bilateral due to 'medication overuse headache syndrome', i.e. consuming any analgesic (paracetamol, NSAID, triptan, codeine, more than once a week)
    - Hormonal: Oestrogen contraceptive pill – worsens migraine
    - Direct effect: Vasodilators, e.g. nitrate, calcium-antagonists; lamotrigine; sulphasalazine; antibiotics
    - Traumatic brain injury: Causes chronic tension headache, depression, and cognitive impairment
    - Extracranial structures: Sinuses, neck, eyes, ears, TMJ (PC: preauricular, temple pain; associated crepitus), teeth



- **N**euralgia:
  - Trigeminal: Commonest in V3, or V2 territories; lancinating pain triggered by trivial stimuli or movement
  - Occipital: Pain over unilateral occipital-parietal area, triggered by pressure over greater occipital nerve
- **I**ntracranial pressure ↑ or ↓:
  - ICP raised: Primary intracranial hypertension – assoc. with obesity, young females; thrombosed or narrow cerebral venous sinuses; serious because causes progressive visual loss
  - ICP low: Spontaneous intracranial hypotension (due to CSF dural leak)
    - Inflammatory disorders, e.g. SLE, Behçet, sarcoid, vasculitis due to systemic inflammation, or less commonly, direct CNS inflammation
- **N**eoplasia: Brain tumour or meningeal infiltration; aneurysm or AVM; structural causes such as these account for ~1/100,000 chronic headache presentations
- **N**octurnal headaches ('hypnic headaches'): Variant of migraine
- **G**iant-cell, temporal arteritis; or**G**an failure or other systemic impairment
  - Hypercapnia (e.g. obstructive sleep apnoea, causing morning headaches), hypoxia (e.g. mountain sickness)
  - Uraemia, hepatic failure, hypoxia, e.g. mountain sickness
  - Anaemia or hyperviscosity
  - Severe hypertension
  - Endocrine, e.g. cortisol ↑ or ↓; thyroxine ↑ or ↓
  - APUDoma: Phaeochromocytoma, carcinoid, mastocytosis – episodic headaches, with flushing; recurrent hypoglycaemia
  - Seizures: Headaces occur post-ictally, e.g. morning headaches indicative of nocturnal epilepsy

PC

Migraine

Temporal: Attack duration = 4–72 h; may also develop background continuous headache ('transformed migraine')

Character: Throbbing, unilateral but may cross midline, severe; worse with movement; patient lies down

Assoc: N+V, photophobia, phonophobia, osmophobia:

- Premonitory symptoms in 50% (e.g. change in appetite, arousal, mood)
- Aura in 20% (preceding focal neurological Sx, esp. visual)

Epi:

- Age: Begins in childhood (as cyclical abdominal pain or motion sickness) or teens
- Sex: Females > males; family history common
- Triggers: Carbohydrates (cola, citrus, chocolate, alcohol); premenstrual; exertion; lying-in

Autonomic: trigeminal autonomic cephalgias (TACs)

Cluster headaches

Site: Orbital or temporal

Timing: Attack duration = 5–120 min

Onset: Typically same time every night/day. Cluster length = 2–12 weeks; remission length = 3 months–3 years

Character: Non-throbbing; strictly unilateral peri- or retro-orbital pain; patient paces room and is agitated

Assoc: Ipsilateral Horner syndrome, lacrimation, nasal congestion or rhinorrhoea, sweating

SUNCT = Short-lasting unilateral neuralgiform headache with conjunctival injection and tearing

Usually men in their 50s

Severe pain lasting seconds of minutes (much shorter than cluster headache)

Non-responsive to triptans, opioids, oxygen

Require AEDs for long-term prophylaxis

Hemicrania continua/paroxysmal hemicrania

Temporal: Continuous symptoms of cluster headache-like symptoms

Female preponderance

Completely responsive to indomethacin

Depression/tension headaches

Temporal: Attack duration = 30 min – continuous ('chronic daily headache' >15 days/month)

Character: Tightness, pressure, heaviness, ice-pick pains, vertex-bitemporal; mild (patient works through)

Assoc: Mild photophobia, nausea, depression; dizziness (due to hyperventilation)

Neuralgia, trigeminal

Temporal: Attack duration = sudden, momentary pain, repeated in bursts:

- Triggered by touching trigger zone or action, e.g. chewing, swallowing, talking

Character: Lancinating (stabbing) pain, in distribution of V2 or V3 dermatome typically

Intracranial

Raised: Worse with stooping; visual obscurations; obese women (primary intracranial hypertension)

Low: Worsens on sitting or standing; associated with previous trauma, often minor

Giant-cell, temporal arteritis

Character: Unilateral temple pain and tenderness; worse at night; anorexia and weight loss; myalgia; jaw claudication

Assoc: 'Law of 60' = >60 years; ESR >60; responds within days to prednisolone 60 mg OD

Complications: Anterior ischaemic optic neuropathy (blindness); ophthalmoplegia, ischaemic stroke; aortitis, aortic regurgitation

ACUTE CONFUSIONAL STATE

Def

Impairment in the **level** of consciousness (GCS), with a secondary global impairment in the **content** of consciousness (i.e. cognition) over hours, days or weeks (cf. dementia, which refers to primary impairment in cognition, with preserved alertness

O/E

Glasgow Coma Scale: Fluctuates – worse in evenings ('sundowning')
Physical examination: Sympathetic overactivity – tachycardia, hypertension, diaphoresis
Mental state examination

Appearance: Agitated, aggressive, but purposeless
Affect: Labile
Thought:

- Speech incoherent, rapid or slow
- Delusions: Paranoid, but poorly systematized and poorly sustained
- Hallucinations: Visual; illusions-distortions

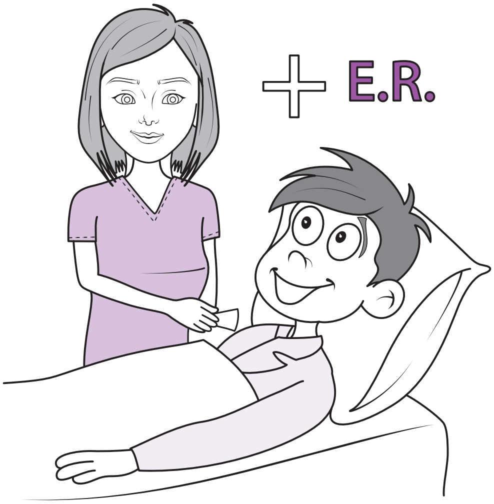
Cognition: Globally impaired
Insight: Impaired

Causes

Intracranial: Primary disturbance in structures subserving consciousness
Extracranial:

- Interruption of energy substrate delivery: Glucose ↓, O_2 ↓, Hb ↓, blood supply ↓
- Alteration of neuronal membrane physiology: Toxaemia, electrolyte disturbance

I.N.V.I.T.E./P.A.S.S. I.S. F.R.E.E.



ACUTE CONFUSIONAL STATE – CAUSES

Intracranial

I.N.V.I.T.E. /P.A.S.S. I.S. F.R.E.E.

- **I**nfection:
  - Meningitis: Bacterial, TB, fungal, syphilis
  - Encephalitis: HSV, VZV, flavivirus (Western Nile/Japanese encephalitis virus)
  - Other: Abscess, HIV-dementia, malaria
- **N**eoplasia:
  - Brain tumour: 1° or 2°
  - Meningeal: Carcinoma, melanoma, lymphoma; paraneoplastic syndrome, e.g. anti-neuronal antibodies from lung carcinoma
- **V**ascular:
  - Infarction: Non-dominant temporoparietal region; thalamic, upper brainstem
  - Haemorrhage: Subarachnoid haemorrhage
  - Migraine: Vertebrobasilar
- **I**njury: Trauma – diffuse brain injury; extradural or subdural haemorrhage
- **T**oxins/nutritional:
  - Prescribed:
    - β-blockers, anticholinergics, dopaminergics, steroids, NSAIDs
    - Overdose: Anticonvulsants, paracetamol, aspirin, digoxin
  - Abused:
    - Alcohol: Intoxication, withdrawal ('delirium tremens'), Wernicke syndrome
    - Recreational: Opioids, cannabis, amphetamines, LSD
  - Nutritional: Vitamin B12 deficiency
- **E**pilepsy:
  - Postictal
  - Non-convulsive status epilepticus – often complex partial seizures (temporal lobe)

- **P**sychiatric: Mania or catatonia
- **A**utoimmune:
  - Autoimmune limbic encephalitis, e.g. anti-K^+ voltage-gated channel antibodies, anti-NMDA receptors antibodies (associated with ovarian teratoma)
  - ADEM: Post-viral, vaccination; multiple sclerosis
  - Cerebral vasculitis, SLE, antiphospholipid syndrome
- **S**arcoid
- '**S**enile': Degenerative dementia, esp. Lewy body; end-stage Alzheimer; prion disease

Extracranial

- **I**nfection:
  - Pneumonia, esp. mycoplasma, legionella/endocarditis/tonsillitis
  - Gastroenteritis, esp. campylobacter/leptospirosis/UTI/cellulitis/septic arthritis
    - NB: Infection presenting solely with confusion is most common in elderly or children
- **S**ystemic:
  - Haematological: Anaemia, hyperviscosity, acute intermittent porphyria
  - Autoimmune: SLE, vasculitis, Hashimoto encephalopathy (anti-thyroid abs)
  - Hypothermia, hyperthermia
- **F**ailure, organ:
  - Respiratory/cardiac, due to ↓ O_2 or ↑ CO_2
  - Renal/liver: Due to toxins uraemia, plasma NH_4^+↑, CSF glutamine
- **R**etention: Acute urinary/faecal impaction
- **E**lectrolytes:
  - Na^+ or Ca^{2+} ↑/↓; NH_4^+ ↑ (esp. valproate)
- **E**ndocrine:
  - Glucose ↑/↓ (esp. HHS, insulinoma)
  - Thyroxine ↑/↓
  - Steroid hormones ↑/↓ (Addison, hypopituitarism, Cushing)

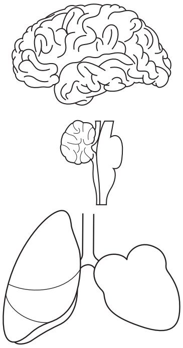
COMA – CAUSES

Def

Persistent unconsciousness, i.e. inability to arouse the patient by painful stimuli

PATH

Consciousness requires normal functioning of three 'systems':



Cerebral cortex
An extensive area of cortex needs to be deranged before consciousness is impaired, i.e. diffuse process, e.g. encephalitis, trauma, epilepsy

Ascending reticular activation system (ARAS)
A limited set of areas need to be deranged for consciousness to be impaired, viz thalamus, upper brainstem, e.g. CVA, tumour, MS

Systemic
Metabolic factors may depress all brain regions, e.g. anoxia, toxins, septicaemia

Causes

I.N.V.I.T.E. /P.A.S.S. I.S. F.R.E.E.

Intracranial

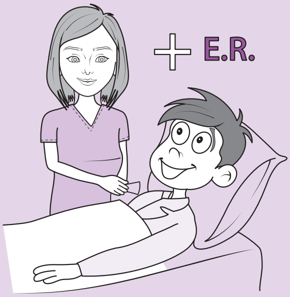
Infection: **Focal**: abscess; **diffuse**: meningo-encephalitis – HSV, bacterial, TB, malarias
Neoplasia: **Focal**: tumour; **diffuse**: meningeal carcinoma; lymphoma; paraneoplastic limbic encephalitis
Vascular: **Focal**: large cerebral stroke with mass effect; or paramedian thalamic stroke, or basilar artery thrombosis with upper brainstem infarction
  Diffuse: subarachnoid haemorrhage; cerebral venous thrombosis, cerebral anoxia
Injury: **Focal**: sub-, extradural, intracerebral bleed, contusion; **diffuse**: axonal injury, oedema
Toxins: Opioids, alcohol (central pontine myelinolysis, Wernicke syndrome), sedative overdose
Epilepsy: Non-convulsive status epilepticus, post-ictal, anti-convulsant overdose

Psychiatric: Catatonia
Autoimmune: Autoimmune encephalitis, ADEM, vasculitis, antiphospholipid syndrome
Sarcoid
Special: Degenerative dementia, prion

Extracranial

Infection: Endocarditis, septicaemia
Systemic: SLE, vasculitis, Hashimoto encephalopathy,
  hypo- or hyperthermia

Failure, respiratory/cardiac: ↑ CO_2, ↓ O_2
Renal/liver failure: Toxin accumulation
Electrolytes: Na^+ ↑/↓ , Ca^{2+} ↑/↓, NH_4^+ ↑
Endocrine: Glucose ↑/↓, thyroid ↑/↓, cortisol ↓



COMA – MANAGEMENT

B. Breathing

Oxygen: 60%

Ventilation if GCS <9

Hyperventilation may be needed to treat raised ICP

ITU transfer, if ventilation required

Neurosurgeons if abscess, tumour, bleed or ICP bolt-monitor needed

C. Hydration

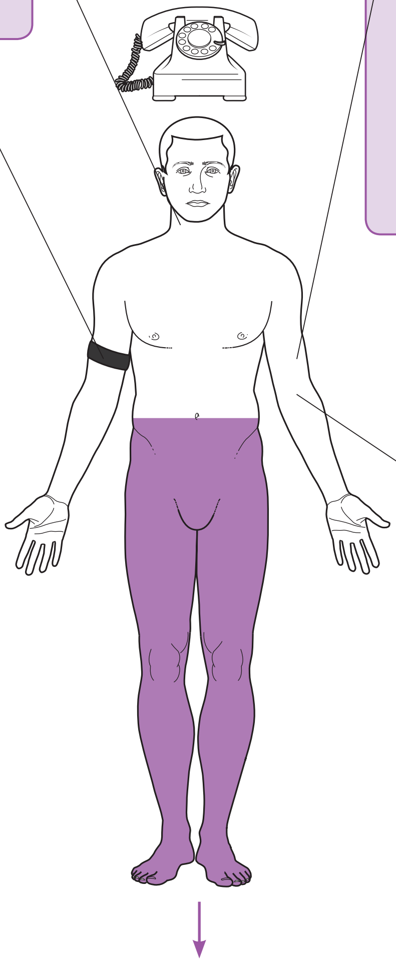
Dextrose 50%, 50 ml IV

- If hypoglycaemic

Normal saline

Caution if:

- Severe hypertension
- Pulmonary oedema
- Alcoholic or hyponatraemia, as at risk of central pontine myelinolysis



A. Assessment

A.B.C.Disability

GCS:

- Eyes: **S.S.P.S.**
  Spontaneous, Spoken, Pain, Shut
- Motor: **O.L. W.F.EN.**
  Obeys, Localizes
  Withdraws. Flex, Ext, None
- Vocal: **O.C.I.I.N.**
  Orientated, Confused, Inappropriate, Incoherent, None

Brainstem tests:

- Pupils
- Ocular movements
- Corneal/gag
- Respiration pattern

C.O.A.T.

Cardiac monitor; **O**$_2$ sats;
ABP, CVP line; **T**PR

Investigations

Bloods:

- Glucose
- Arterial blood gases
- FBC, U&E, LFT
- Ca, PO$_4$, Mg, NH$_4$
- Vitamin B12, drug levels, autoAbs, anti-neuronals, ACE

Urine:

- Toxicology/porphyrins

Micro

- Blood cultures; serology
- CSU
- LP (post-imaging)
- Culture, spectrophotometry

Monitor: GCS

EEG, ECHO

Radiol:

- CT brain (urgent)
- MRI, A, V

D. Drugs

Vitamin B complex IV
(esp. thiamine – vitamin B1)

Antimicrobials:

- Cefotaxime IV
- Aciclovir
  IV 10 mg/kg tds
- Also consider
  - HIV/immuno-suppressed: ? TB, fungal or toxoplasmosis
  - Foreign travel: ? malaria, W. Nile virus

+

Drug overdose:

- Naloxone 400 µg IV
- Flumazenil 200 µg IV

Anticonvulsants:

- Lorazepam, phenytoin,
- Phenobarbitone IV

Dexamethasone:

Indicated in

- Vasculitis
- Tumour

Nursing,
bedsore avoidance,
catheterize

Physio,
flexion contracture
avoidance

DEMENTIA

Def

Chronically impaired content of consciousness (i.e. cognition) that affects multiple cognitive domains, e.g. memory, attention, language (cf. amnesia or aphasia) and is acquired and progressive (cf. learning disability, e.g. due to cerebral palsy)

Causes

D^2.I.V.I.N.I.T.Y^4.

Degenerative/**D**evelopmental
- **D**egenerative: Classed by clinical syndrome and abnormal protein inclusion
  - Alzheimer: Spatial disorientation, word-finding impairment, beta-amyloid
  - Frontotemporal:
    - Behavioural variant: Ubiquitin (TDP-43-A) or phosphorylated tau
    - Aphasia: Fluent ('semantic dementia'): TDP-43-C
      Non-fluent: Phosphorylated tau
    - Other neurological syndomes: Motor neurone disease (weakness, wasting) – TDP-43-A; Parkinsonism – tau
  - Parkinion-plus dementias:
    - Cortical Lewy body disease: Visual hallucinations, neuroleptic sensitivity
    - Corticobasal ganglionic degeneration: Alien limb, aphasia, apraxia, neglect; or PSP – supranuclear gaze palsy
    - Genetic: Huntington disease, Wilson disease
  - Rarer: Prion – seizures, cerebellar signs, myoclonus, cortical blindness
- **D**evelopmental **F.A.M.I.L.I.A^3.L.**
  - **F**ragile X
  - **A**neuploidy (Down)
  - **M**itochondrial
  - **I**ctal (myoclonic epilepsy syndrome)
  - **L**ipoidoses
  - **I**ntermediary metabolism (glycogen storage disease)
  - **A**cidaemia, organic or **A**mmonaemia, or **A**taxia spinocerebellar
  - **L**eucodystrophy

Infection:
- Viruses: HSV; HIV, PML (JC virus)
- Bacterial: Syphilis (tertiary), Whipple disease, TB (all cause low-grade, chronic meningitis)
- Other: Fungal; prion – CJD (classical, new-variant)

Vascular:
- Vascular dementia – cortical (multi-infarcts), subcortical (hypertensive arteriosclerosis, CADASIL)
- Subdural haematoma, chronic (also presents with fluctuating confusion, SIADH)
- Cerebral anoxia, e.g. after cardiac arrest

Inflammation:
- Autoimmune limbic encephalitis, e.g. anti-voltage gated K^+-channel autoantibodies (assoc. seizures, low Na)
- Vasculitis incl. SLE, antiphospholipid syndrome, Behçet syndrome
- Sarcoidosis; multiple sclerosis (late)

Neoplasia:
- Brain tumour, especially frontal, callosal or temporal location
- Meningeal carcinoma, melanoma, lymphoma
- Paraneoplastic syndrome, esp. small-cell lung cancer (anti-Hu limbic encephalitis), lymphoma (PML)

Injury/Epilepsy: Single or repetitive head trauma (dementia pugilistica); non-convulsive status

Toxin/Nutritional:
- Toxins: Alcohol; anti-convulsants, long-term use, esp. phenytoin; lead; aluminium
- Nutrition: Vitamin B12, folate, or niacin deficiency; malabsorption syndrome, e.g. coeliac

Y: h**Y**pothyroidism, h**Y**poadrenalism (Addison or hypopituitarism)
- h**Y**drocephalus, normal-pressure – PC: dementia, gait apraxia and urinary incontinence
- ps**Y**chiatric - depression ('pseudodementia')

Alzheimer disease

PATH: Intracellular: Neurofibrillary tangles (paired helical filaments)
Extracellular: Senile plaques; amyloid angiopathy (β-amyloid)
PC Memory loss, esp. spatial
Language: Empty speech, anomia
Other cognitive: Apraxia, attention, executive, mood (depression, aggression, psychosis)
Other neurology: Incontinence; primitive reflexes, myoclonus, epilepsy
Ix: MRI – medial temporal lobe atrophy occurs early
EEG – loss of normal posterior alpha rhythm
CSF – low amyloid beta 1-42: tau ratio
PET – amyloid scan (Amyvid or Florbetapir)
Rx: Cholinesterase inhibitor, e.g. donepezil, rivastigmine
Glutamate receptor antagonist, e.g. memantine

Frontotemporal dementia

PATH: Numerous genetic associations, e.g. microtubule-associated protein tau (MAPT) (40%), progranulin (10%)
Pick bodies (argyrophilic tau cell inclusions) + Pick cells (swollen chromatolytic neurones)
PC: Behavioural variant:

- Overactive: Disinhibition, distractibility, stereotypy, ritualism, predilection for sweet food
- Underactive: Apathy, withdrawal, emotion lack

Primary progressive aphasia variants:

- Non-fluent (frontal)
- Fluent (left anterior temporal) = 'semantic dementia'

Other neurological syndromes: Motor neurone disease (fasciculations deltoids, weakness); parkinsonism:
Ix: MRI: Frontal or temporal atrophy
Rx: None

Lewy body disease

PATH: Lewy bodies (eosinophilic inclusion bodies containing ubiquitin and neurofilament), predominantly within occipito-parietal cortex (cf. Parkinson disease – occur predominantly within substantia nigra)
PC: Fluctuating cognitive dysfunction (esp. attention, visuospatial), and fluctuating consciousness
Visual hallucinations, paranoid delusions
Parkinsonism, incl. falls, sensitivity to neuroleptics, due to nigral Lewy bodies
Ix: MRI; EEG – normal initially
Rx: Cholinesterase inhibitor, avoid dopamine agonists

Vascular dementia

PATH: Cortical: Multiple and/or large infarcts – deficits determined by regions and size of infarcts
Subcortical ('lacunar state'): Hypertensive arteriosclerosis
PC Pattern: Abrupt onset, fluctuating course, stepwise deterioration, nocturnal confusion
Patchy deficits; personality and insight preserved/Psychiatric: depression/emotional lability
Pyramidal signs, 'marche à petit pas'
PMH of hypertension, arteriopathy, atrial fibrillation, diabetes mellitus
Ix: MRI – extensive infarcts or small-vessel disease, with secondary atrophy
Rx: Treat predisposing factors – hypertension, diabetes; aspirin; statin

PARKINSONISM

Def

Parkinsonism refers to the constellation of signs listed (tremor, rigidity, akinesia, etc.)
Parkinson disease refers to the commonest cause of parkinsonism, viz primary neurodegeneration

Causes

D^2.I.V.I.N.I.T.Y.

Degenerative/**D**evelopmental
  Degenerative
    Idiopathic Parkinson disease:
      Epi: Prevalence: 0.5% over 50 years old
      PATH:
      - Degeneration of >80% substantia nigra pars compacta dopaminergic neurones and other neuromodulatory systems of brainstem (e.g. locus coeruleus) and basal forebrain
      - Lewy bodies (eosinophilic inclusions) occur in areas of cell loss and in cerebral cortex

    Parkinson-plus, i.e. Parkinsonism PLUS other neurological syndrome:
    - Multiple systems atrophy: Parkinsonism symmetrical, poorly responsive to L-DOPA, +/– autonomic (postural hypotension, urinary frequency), +/– cerebellar and/or pyramidal signs
    - Progressive supranuclear palsy – **P.S.P.**
      Postural instability; **S**peech disturbance (+ dementia); **P**alsy, supranuclear down-gaze
    - Corticobasal degeneration:
      - Cortical: Aphasia, dysarthria, stimulus-sensitive myoclonus, apraxia (alien-hand), neglect
      - Basal-ganglia: Parkinsonism asymmetrical, intention or kinetic tremor

    Dementia-associations: Cortical Lewy body disease, Alzheimer, frontotemporal dementia,
  Developmental: Young- or late-onset PD
    Genetic:
    - Autosomal dominant, e.g. LRRK2 mutation (pronounced 'Lark 2'): Commonest genetic cause of sporadic, late-onset PD; Huntington disease, esp. juvenile form
    - Autosomal recessive: Parkin mutation (commonest cause of young-onset PD), PKAN (pantothenate kinase-associated neurodegeneration [iron accumulation]; Wilson disease (copper accumulation)

    Perinatal: Cerebral palsy (anoxia, kernicterus)

Infection:
  Streptococcus, group A: Post-infective encephalitis lethargicum – anti-basal ganglia antibodies
  Structural: Syphilis, toxoplasmosis, cysticercosis, CJD

Vascular:
  Hypertensive arteriosclerosis; PC: Lower-body parkinsonism
  Cerebral anoxia: Opiate overdose, cardiac arrest, CO poisoning

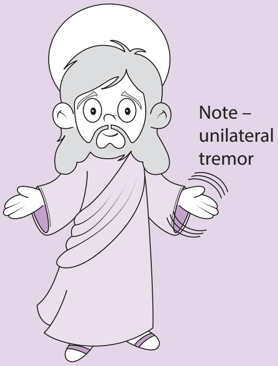
Inflammation: Vasculitis

Neoplasia: Brain tumour affecting basal ganglia

Injury: 'Dementia pujilistica' – boxers

Toxin:
  Dopamine-receptor-2 antagonists: Haloperidol, metoclopramide
  Toxins: MPTP (heroin contaminant), manganese, cycad
    (endemic in Guam)

Y: h**Y**drocephalus, normal-pressure; PC: Lower-body parkinsonism



PC

The Parkinson patient is **T.R.A.P.P^2.E^2.D^2.**

Tremor:
  Resting, 4–6 Hertz, pill-rolling (less commonly, intention or postural 6–8 Hz tremor)
  Initially unilateral
  Worsened by stress, walking; reduced by relaxation, sleep
Rigidity:
  Lead-pipe, cog-wheeling (= rigidity + tremor)
  May present subtly with pain or numbness in limb, or writer's cramp
  When advanced, may cause foot dystonia, hand or swan-neck deformities, scoliosis
Akinesia (decreased frequency and decreased speed of movements):
  Difficulty with repetitive movements, e.g. opposing finger + thumb
  External cues and emotional input promote movement
Postural instability: Stooped gait with festination and shuffling; retropulsion
Prose: Monotone, quiet dysarthria, micrographia, drooling (due to reduced swallowing)
Perseveration: When asked to clap 3 times, will clap more; palilalia; doesn't inhibit blinking with glabellar tap
Expression/**E**yes: Mask-like face, stare (widening of palpebral fissures), blinking ↓ (5–10/min)
Depression/**D**ementia: Thought slowing/**D**epressed autonomics: constipation, detrusor instability

Rx

Pro-dopaminergic

L-DOPA:

- Given with dopa-decarboxylase inhibitor (carbidopa, benserazide) to minimize peripheral conversion
- Side-effects: **D.O^2.P.A.M.I.N.E.**

  Dyskinesia, e.g. chorea – occurs >5 years of therapy with peak dose, or end of dose
  On-**O**ff phenomenon, i.e. fluctuations, occur >5 years from starting therapy
  Psychosis, insomnia
  ABP ↓ (postural hypotension)
  Mental: Addiction, e.g. gambling, OCD (more problem with dopamine agonists)
  Intestinal (diarrhoea)
  N+V; pre-treat with domperidone if this occurs
  Excretions – red urine

Dopamine agonist:

- Oral: Ropinirole, pramipexole; transdermal: rotigotine patch
- Delays time to requirement of L-DOPA, but not as effective and causes confusion in elderly
- Subcutaneous: Apomorphine – indicated in pts with severe fluctuations due to L-DOPA

MAO-B inhibitor (selegeline, rasagaline, safinamide) – can increase time before L-DOPA needed; helps reduce fluctuations; safinamide is also a calcium-channel blocker and may be neuroprotective

COMT inhibitor (entacapone, tolcapone; combined with levodopa = 'Stalevo') – given with L-DOPA to increase its bioavailability

Other oral

Anticholinergics: Benzhexol (trihexyphenidyl) – good for tremor and drug-induced parkinsonism, but causes confusion in elderly

Amantadine (indirect dopamine agonist + anticholinergic) – good for dyskinesias, but causes livedo reticularis, ankle oedema and confusion

Non-oral

Deep brain stimulation of subthalamic nucleus or internal pallidum

Duodopa: Levodopa + carbidopa gel, administered as continuous jejunal infusion via PEG tube and external pump – for severe cases with dyskinesias and fluctuations

Subcutaneous exenatide: Glucagon-like peptide receptor agonist used in diabetes; research drug – may be neuroprotective

CHOREA

Def

C.H.O.R.E.A.

Continuous (brief jerks, e.g. forearm pronation-supination, tongue poking)
High-speed and brief
Odd or bizarre movements
Random (flit over body), irregular
Exacerbated by movement
Actions intruded upon by chorea, or chorea incorporated into normal activity, e.g. lurching gait

Causes

H.I.T.T.I.N.G. M.E^2.

- **H**ereditary:
  - Dominant: Huntington disease:
    - Epi: 35–50 y, onset inversely proportional to length of CAG trinucleotide repeat
    - PATH: PolyGlutamine (CAG) repeat causes mutated Huntingtin (IT) gene, on chromosome 4p; MRI brain: caudate atrophy
    - PC: Chorea or parkinsonism in young; apraxia; dementia, violence, depression
    - Rx: ?anti-sense interfering RNA – under trial; where genetic risk known – pre-implantation diagnosis
    - Benign, hereditary chorea
  - Recessive: Wilson disease
  - Complex: Acanthocytosis – 'neuroacanthocytosis' or McLeod syndrome (abnormal Kell blood group)
- **I**nfection/**I**nflammation:
  - *Streptococcus pyogenes*: Sydenham chorea in childhood (cross-reactivity with basal ganglia)
  - AIDS
  - SLE, antiphospholipid syndrome
- **T**oxins:
  - L-DOPA
  - Neuroleptics (dopamine antagonists) – immediate or tardive, esp. orofacial or akathisia (legs)
  - Phenytoin
- **T**oxins: Alcohol withdrawal or thiamine deficiency, pellagra
- **I**schaemic:
  - Cerebral palsy
  - Small-vessel disease ('senile chorea' = vascular + degenerative damage to basal ganglia)
  - Traumatic or anoxic brain injury; carbon monoxide poisoning
- **N**eoplasia**,** in basal ganglia; or other mass-lesion – abscess, CVA, subdural haemorrhage – violent, flinging movements suggest hemiballismus due to subthalamic lesion
- **G**ynaecological: Chorea gravidarum (pregnancy)/oral contraceptive pill users

- **M**yeloproliferative: Polycythaemia rubra vera
- **E**ndocrine: Thyroxine ↑ or ↓ , glucose ↓ or ↑
- **E**lectrolytes: Na$^+$ ↑ or ↓, Ca^{2+} ↓, Mg^{2+} ↓

DYSTONIA

Def

'Abnormal tone': Continuous co-contraction of agonist–antagonist pair with joint in unusual posture, e.g. flexed and pronated wrist with flexed digits, or inverted foot, or retrocollis with neck tremor

Types:

- Idiopathic focal dystonia – this is the commonest form of dystonia:
  - Spasmodic torticollis
  - Hemifacial or blepharospasm
  - Oromandibular dystonia or spasmodic dysphonia
  - Writer's, musician's or sportsman's cramp
- Secondary focal or generalized

Causes

H.I.T.T.I.N.G. M.E.

Hereditary:

Dominant: Huntington disease
DOPA-responsive dystonia (GTP cyclohydrolase mutation)
Recessive: Wilson disease
Pantothenate kinase-associated neurodegeneration (PKAN): Associated parkinsonism, dementia, retinitis pigmentosa – caused by brain iron accumulation
Complex: Primary generalized dystonia (DYT1 mutation)

Infection/**I**nflammation :

AIDS
SLE, antiphospholipid syndrome

Toxins:

L-DOPA (or Parkinson disease itself, esp. young onset)
Neuroleptics (dopamine antagonists) – immediate or tardive
Phenytoin, flunarizine (calcium antagonist)

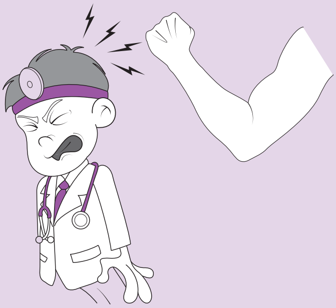
Toxins: Alcoholic liver disease; methanol

Ischaemic:

Cerebral palsy
Small-vessel disease ('senile chorea' = vascular + degenerative damage to basal ganglia)
Traumatic or anoxic brain injury; carbon monoxide poisoning

Neoplasia, in basal ganglia; or other mass-lesion – abscess, CVA, subdural haemorrhage; paraneoplastic

Groan! Depression/post-traumatic



Multiple sclerosis – with cord lesion

Electrolytes Ca^{2+} ↓ or idiopathic striatal calcification (Fahr disease)

TREMOR

Def

Regular, rhythmic oscillation, that needs to be distinguished from:

- Myoclonus: Irregular, discontinuous jerks (however, asterixis = rhythmic myoclonus)
- Epilepsia partialis continua: Abrupt onset, striking asymmetry

Types

R.A.P.I.D. TA.P.S.

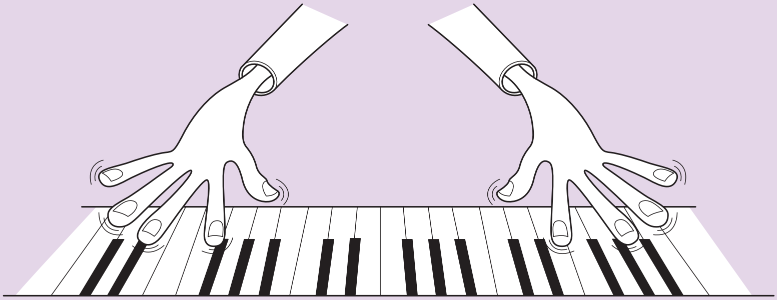
Resting
  Cause: Parkinsonism
  O/E: 4–6 Hz, 'pill-rolling' tremor of thumb-index finger; jaw tremor; ↑ with distraction; postural or action tremor may also occur

Action/**P**ostural
  Cause: *see opposite*
  O/E: 6–12 Hz (slows with age), worse with outstretched hand or movement, equally bad at all stages of movement (i.e. 'kinetic tremor', as compared with intention tremor)

Intention
  Cause: Cerebellar outflow – dentate nucleus, superior cerebellar peduncle, red nucleus
  O/E: >6 Hz, terminal tremor, past-pointing and ataxia on reaching or pointing; severe, 'wing-flapping' tremor, incl. at rest and posture, suggests midbrain ('rubral tremor')

Dystonic
  Cause: Mostly idiopathic, and as for dystonia
  O/E: Varies depending on precise position of joint; associated cervical dystonia

TAsk-specific: Primary writing tremor
Psychogenic
Special:
  Orthostatic – comes on after a few seconds of standing; patient prefers to walk than stand still; can be detected by palpating ankle dorsiflexor tendons or auscultating thighs
  Palatal tremor (previously called 'palatal myoclonus')

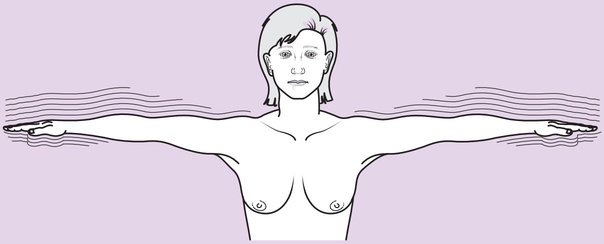


Causes

The following are causes of an action or postural tremor:

B.E.A.T.I^2.N.G.S.

Benign essential tremor
    Epi: Autosomal dominant
    PC: Action > rest; arms, neck, voice tremor (discriminates from Parkinson disease)
Endocrine: Thyrotoxicosis, phaeochromocytoma, hypoglycaemia
Alcohol withdrawal ('delerium tremens'); or caffeine, or opioid, withdrawal
Toxins:
    Prescribed: Lithium, tricyclic antidepressants; salbutamol, theophylline; phenytoin, valproate
    Drugs of abuse
    Lead, arsenic, mercury ('hatter's shakes')
Infection/**I**nflammation:
    Infection: Syphilis
    Inflammation: Multiple sclerosis, SLE
Neuropathy, peripheral: IgM paraproteinaemia, Charcot–Marie–Tooth disease (Roussy–Levy syndrome)
Genetic: Autosomal recessive – Wilson disease
Sympathetic – enhanced physiological tremor: Physiological tremor is present in everybody at 8–12 Hz but is usually too small to be apparent. It may be enhanced by factors that increase sympathetic output: endocrine, toxins, fatigue, anxiety, hypothermia



Rx

Alcohol in moderation – improves essential tremor
Propranolol, primidone, topiramate
Botulinum toxin (Botox) injections
Surgery: ViM nucleus thalamus stimulation/lesion/MR-guided focal ultrasound therapy

CEREBELLAR DISEASE – CAUSES

D².I.V.I.N.I.T.Y.

Developmental/**D**egenerative

Developmental

Structural: Arnold–Chiari or Dandy–Walker malformations

Spinocerebellar ataxias:

- Autosomal recessive: Friederich ataxia
- Autosomal dominant: SCA 1-14

Other genetic: Ataxia telangiectasia, Refsum disease, progressive myoclonic epilepsy

Degenerative

Parkinson-plus syndrome: Multiple-systems atrophy (MSA)

Prion: Gerstmann–Straussler–Schenker syndrome

Inflammation:

Multiple sclerosis

Coeliac disease (or other malabsorption, e.g. Whipple disease)

Vascular:

Infarction: PICA, AICA, superior cerebellar artery

Haemorrhage

Infection:

Virus: VZV, EBV, HIV

Bacteria: *Mycoplasma*, *Legionella*, abscess

Neoplasia:

1°:

- Children: Medulloblastoma (midline), haemangioblastoma (hemispheric), astrocytoma
- Cerebellopontine-angle tumour: Vestibular schwannoma, cholesteatoma, meningioma

2°: Bronchus, breast, bowel

Paraneoplastic syndrome, esp. small-cell lung cancer (anti-Purkinje cell = anti-Yo)

Injury: Oxygen deprivation, carbon monoxide poisoning, heat stroke

Toxin/Nutritional:

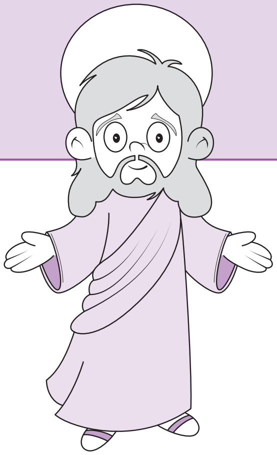
Alcohol (commonest cause): Causes anterior vermis degeneration or Wernicke syndrome

Anticonvulsants, in overdose or long-term use, esp. phenytoin

Nutrition:

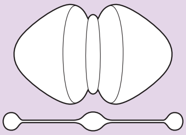
- Vitamin B12, folate or vitamin E deficiency
- Lead poisoning

Y: h**Y**pothyroidism



CEREBELLAR DISEASE – PC

D.A.N.I.S^4.H. PAST.R.Y^2.



Dysdiadochokinesia: Failure of rapidly alternating movements
Ataxia:
- Limb, incl. gait
- Trunk, titubation (neck tremor)
- Gait: Due to anterior vermis degeneration

Nystagmus:
- Horizontal: Ipsilateral hemisphere
- Downbeat: Inferior cerebellum, e.g. Arnold–Chiari malformation, SCA

Intention tremor:
- Tested by finger-to-nose, and heel-to-shin test
- Severe 'bat's wing' tremor suggests lesions of superior cerebellar peduncle or nuclei

Speech – **S**lurred, **S**taccato and **S**canning dysarthria; writing enlarges
Hypotonia

PAST-pointing (hypermetria): Also seen with saccadic eye movements that overshoot and then correct themselves
Rebound: Overcompensatory response to passive disturbance of position:
- Reflexes: Reduced (due to hypotonia) but pendular (due to overshoot)
- Riddoch's sign: Hyperpronation and elevation of outstretched hand

Y: **WI**de-based gait
- awr**Y** head: Head tilts to side of lesion, due to imbalance of postural tone, dural irritation or 4th cranial nerve palsy

Additional notes

Ipsilesional due to crossing of connections from motor to cerebellar cortex

Acute: Nausea + severe vomiting; occipital headache

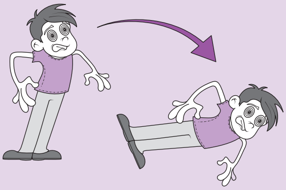
Chronic: Signs may improve with time, due to compensatory mechanisms

BLACKOUTS

Causes

Causes of blackouts can be broken down logically into:
  Insufficient cerebral flow (syncope)
  Disorder of blood composition or metabolites (systemic)
  Primary neurological

C.R.A.S. H.

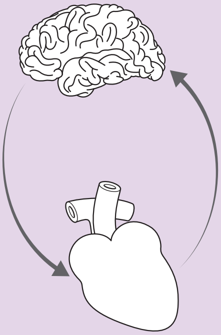


Cardiac:
  Bradycardia: Heart block, sick sinus syndrome, tachy–brady syndrome
  Tachycardia: SVT (atrial fibrillation, Wolff–Parkinson–White syndrome), VT
  Structural:

- Weak heart: LVF, pericardial tamponade
- Blockage: Aortic stenosis, HOCM, myxoma, pulmonary embolism, SVCO

  Cardiac, reflex and arterial causes give rise to syncope, i.e. cerebral hypoperfusion

Reflexes
  1. Vagal overactivity (venodilation + cardioinhibition)
  Vasovagal syncope: Constitutional or situational – cough, micturition, exercise, pain
  POTS (postural orthostatic tachycardia syndrome)
  Carotid sinus hypersensitivity; glossopharyngeal neuralgia



  2. Sympathetic underactivity (postural hypotension)
  S.T.A.N.D. U.P.
    Salt deficiency: Hypovolaemia, Addison disease
    Toxins:

- Cardiac: Diuretics, ACE inhibitors, α_1-antagonists, nitrates
- Neuro: L-DOPA, antipsychotics, TCAs, benzodiazepines

    Autonomic **N**europathy: Guillain–Barré syndrome, diabetes (both peripheral); Parkinson, MSA (central)
    Dialysis
    Unwell: Chronic bedrest
    Pooling, venous: Varicose veins, prolonged standing

Arterial/venous insufficiency
  Vertebrobasilar or bilateral carotid insufficiency, i.e. severe stenosis or occlusion
  Systemic hypotension ('shock'): See p. 28
  Venous obstruction: Cerebral venous sinus thrombosis

Systemic
  Metabolic: Hypoglycaemia or hypothyroidism
  Respiratory: Hypoxia or hypercapnia
  Blood: Anaemia or hypervicosity

Head (i.e. primary neurological)
  Epileptic seizure: Generalized tonic-clonic, atonic, absence, or complex, partial
  Non-epileptic attacks (dissociative states)
  Structural lesion affecting consciousness pathways: Hydrocephalus, colloid cyst of 3rd ventricle, brainstem tumour (drop attacks)

PC, Ix

Cardiogenic syncope

Trigger: Exertion – esp. sinus bradycardia, SVT, outflow obstruction; drug

Before: Palpitations, chest pain, dyspnoea or no warning

During: As for vasovagal; brady- or tachycardic, ABP ↓
(*if prolonged* – cyanosed, apnoeic, brainstem signs or extensor plantars)

After: Rapid recovery (*if prolonged* – confusion, focal neurological signs)

Ix: ECG, 24-h tape; ECHO; event recorder; intracardiac electrophysiological recording

Reflex – vasovagal

Trigger: Prolonged standing, heat, fatigue, stress

Before:

- Gradual onset over minutes
- Faint, nausea, anxiety, blurred or tunnel vision, visual spots or fading, tinnitus

During: Pale grey, clammy, eyes closed; limp; bradycardic; ABP ↓; quiet respiration

After: Rapid recovery (may feel cold, nausea)

Ix: Tilt-table testing – blood-pressure initially maintained → HR ↑ → HR ↓, ABP ↓

Reflex – postural hypotension

Trigger: Standing for short or long delay

Before, During, After: As for vasovagal

Ix: Tilt-table testing – blood-pressure drops immediately (esp. with autonomic failure)

Arterial

Trigger: Arm elevation (subclavian steal)

Before, During, After: As for vasovagal ± brainstem Sx (diplopia, nausea, dysarthria)

Ix: MRA or duplex vertebrobasilar circulation

Systemic

Before, During, After: As for vasovagal

Head – epileptic attacks

Trigger: Flashing lights, fatigue, fasting

Before: Complex partial seizure – 'strange feeling'; epigastric rising; olfactory hallucinations; déjà vu; automatism, grimacing frontal seizures – sudden onset; 'heralding cry'; occurs in frequent clusters

During: Tongue-biting; urinary and faecal incontinence; stiffness (tonic phase); eyes open
O/E: Sympathetic activation – pupillary dilation; tachycardic; ABP ↑; cyanosed; reduced oxygen sats; pyrexia; brainstem signs

After: Headache, sleeps, confused, Todd paresis

Ix: EEG; videotelemetry; serum prolactin at 10–20 min elevated

Head **–** non-epileptic attacks

Trigger: Emotional stress; presence of other people; psychiatric history; sexual abuse

During: Eyes closed firmly; head turns side-to-side; pelvic thrusts; flailing limbs; persists for >10 min with no cyanosis and normal oxygen saturation

Dizziness – Causes

With impaired consciousness e.g. blackout or light-headedness

Blackout causes: **C.R.A.SH**

Without impaired consciousness

Vertigo: Spinning sensation – vestibular
Imbalance – unsteady on feet: Vestibular, cerebellar, extrapyramidal

EPILEPSY

Causes

D^2. I. V. I. N. I. T. Y^3.

Degenerative/**D**evelopmental
  Degenerative: Alzheimer, prion disease
  Developmental
    Primary:

- Generalized: Generalized tonic–clonic seizures on awakening ± absences ± myoclonus
- Focal: Benign rolandic, occipital
- Complex: Lennox–Gastaut syndrome

    Secondary:

- Structural: Mesial temporal sclerosis, cortical heterotopia, dysplasia
- Neurocutaneous: Neurofibromatoses, tuberous sclerosis/PKU
- Progressive myoclonic epilepsy, e.g. mitochondrial

Infection:

- Viral encephalitis, esp. herpes simplex
- Bacterial abscess
- HIV, syphilis, Whipple (or coeliac disease)

Vascular:
  Large stroke, multi-infarcts, hyperviscosity syndrome, TTP
  Cortical venous thrombosis
  Cerebral AVM, angioma

Inflammation:
  Autoimmune limbic encephalitis: Anti-voltage gated K$^+$-channel antibodies – faciobrachial dystonic seizures; anti-NMDA receptor antibodies; Rassmussen encephalitis (anti-glutamate receptor)
  Multiple sclerosis
  SLE, antiphospholipid syndrome, vasculitis, sarcoidosis

Neoplasia:
  Brain tumour: Primitive neuroectodermal tumour (PNET), glioma
  Meningeal carcinoma, melanoma, lymphoma
  Paraneoplastic syndrome, esp. small-cell lung cancer (anti-neuronal Hu limbic encephalitis)

Injury:
  Head injury: Early or late
  Cerebral anoxia

Toxins:
  Withdrawal from alcohol; sedatives
  Drugs: Penicillin, ciprofloxacin, opioids

Y: h**Y**poglycaemia, h**Y**pocalcaemia (or Mg ↓ or Na ↓), h**Y**perthermia

PC

Complex partial seizures

A.A.A.A.A.

Aura: Rising epigastric sensation; déjà vu; olfactory or auditory hallucinations
Autonomic: Change in skin colour, temperature, palpitations
Absence: Motor arrest, motionless stare lasts longer than typical absences of childhood
Automatism: Lip-smacking, chewing, swallowing; fumbling, walking
Amnesia: Amnesia of entire attack usual

Cause:
- Usually arise from mesial temporal lobe, esp. 'mesial temporal sclerosis'
- Associated with febrile convulsions in childhood, but the complex partial seizures may not begin until middle-age

Absences

AB.S.E.N.C.E.

ABrupt onset + offset
Short – usually <10 seconds
Eyes: Glazed, blank stare; slight blinking, eye-rolling
Normal, i.e. normal intelligence, examination, brain scan
Clonus, or automatism – may occur, esp. as duration of attack increases
EEG: 3 Hz spike-and-wave, with photosensitivity

Cause:
- Typical absences (as described) are one of the 'primary generalized epilepsies', due to thalamic dysregulation
- Atypical absences (e.g. last longer; focal signs common) may form part of temporal or frontal-lobe seizures, or complexes, e.g. Lennox–Gastaut syndrome

Ix

Bloods:	Prolactin 10 min after fit may be increased relative to baseline
Urine:	e.g. toxicology
Micro:	CSF PCR for HSV; HIV serology
EEG:	Resting or with provocation (hyperventilation, photosensitivity); sleep-deprived; telemetry
Radiol:	MRI brain with fine temporal lobe cuts
Surgical:	Depth or subdural strip electrodes (pre-operative work-up)

Rx

Conservative: No need to treat if a 'one-off'

Counsel:
- Can't drive for 1 year; careful in bath, ladders etc.
- Pregnancy (folate) and pill (interactions)

Medical:
- Generalized: Lamotrigine or valproate are 1st-line; valproate is more effective, and can be increased in dose more rapidly, but cannot be used in women who may become pregnant
- Partial: As for generalized plus levetiracetam, lacoamide or oxcarbazepine adjunct

Surgical:
- Temporal lobectomy
- Callosotomy
- Vagal nerve stimulator

Underlying cause: e.g. alcohol abuse counselling; antiviral for encephalitis

STROKE – ISCHAEMIC

Causes

Ischaemic stroke occurs due to focal arterial ischaemia, i.e. inadequate blood flow to a *part* of the brain (as opposed to the whole brain, as occurs with syncope when temporary, or anoxic injury when sustained)

Focal ischaemia is due to arterial or venous thrombus, the causes of which are given by Virchow triad of thrombosis (p. 484)

Arterial wall (endothelial) injury

Arterial ischaemia

A.D.V.I.S.E.

Atherosclerosis: Hypertension, DM, cholesterol, smoking
Dissection: Hypertension, Ehlers–Danlos, Marfan; dysplasia, fibromuscular
Vasculitis: Autoimmune (PAN, giant-cell arteritis); infection (TB, syphilis)
Injury: Trauma, catheterisation (angioplasty), indwelling central line, radiation
Spasm: Migraine
Embolism, cardiac: AF, endocarditis, myxoma

Stasis

Venous, ± arterial, ischaemia

A.nd

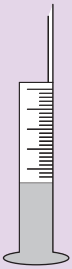
Atrial fibrillation

Hypercoagulability

Venous, ± arterial, ischaemia

H.E.P^3.A.R.I.N.I.S^2.E.

Hereditary: Prothrombin, factor V Leiden genes, protein S, C deficiency, homocystinuria, mitochondrial (MELAS – stroke due to metabolic not vascular defect)
Endocrine: Oestrogens – pregnancy, OCP, HRT; androgens; diabetic HHS
Polycythaemia; **P**araproteinaemia; **P**NH
Autoimmune: Antiphospholipid syndrome, SLE, Behçet
Renal: Nephrosis, dehydration
Injury
Neoplasia: Adenocarcinoma, acute leukaemia
Infection: Septicaemic; local – cellulitis; otitis media, sinusitis
Smoking; **S**enility (increasing age)
Exogenous: Chemotherapy, steroids; COX-2 inhibitors



Ix

CT head +/– CT angiogram carotids and intracranial are 1st-line

Bloods: FBC, U&E, cholesterol, ESR, CRP, autoAbs, thrombophilia screen
Urine: Glucose, blood
Micro: VDRL, HIV serology, blood cultures
Monitor: ABP, neuro. obs., glucose
ECG, **E**CHO
Radiol:

- CXR
- Brain: MRI, MRA; catheter angiogram
- Carotid Doppler USS

Rx

5 Rs

Resuscitation:
O_2, nasogastric tube, fluids, temperature, glucose, ICP
Blood pressure should be 110–180 mmHg systolic; use IV labetalol or GTN (for acute hypertension); or IV saline (for hypotension)

Revascularisation: Performed immediately after arrival in A&E and subsequent CT head +/– CT carotid+cerebral angiogram

- IV thrombolysis: Must be given in 4.5 hour window, improves disability but not survival; +/–
- Thrombectomy for proximal occlusion of middle cerebral artery, or basilar artery: Must be performed within 6 hours (unless MRI/CT perfusion imaging shows perfusion deficit, but no infarct, for up to 24 hours)
- Anticoagulation – doesn't dissolve thrombus but stops thrombus propagation: May be used if arterial thrombus present but no large infarction, and if thrombolysis not given; 1st-line treatment for venous thrombosis

Rest of medical therapy – secondary prevention:

- Antiplatelet (aspirin or clopidogrel) – started day after thrombolysis, statin
- Anti-hypertensives
- Anticoagulant (if AF or persistent large vessel thrombus), antihypertensives

Removal of cranium (hemicraniectomy) or removal of plaque (carotid endarterectomy)
Other surgical, e.g. VP shunt if hydrocephalus occurs after cerebellar stroke

Rehabilitation:
Patient should be cared for in a Hyperacute stroke unit, then a step-down stroke early swallow assesment – NGT, PEG?

- TED stockings
- Physiotherapy, OT, speech therapist, psychologist

STROKE – HAEMORRHAGIC

Causes

H.A.E.M.A.T.O.M.A^2.

Hypertension: Causes Charcot–Bouchard microaneurysm: putaminal/thalamic/brainstem bleed

Aneurysm :

- Berry aneuysms occur at arterial bifurcations and usually cause subarachnoid haemorrhage, but can bleed intracerebrally
- Assoc. with hypertension, family history, APKD

Elderly: Amyloid angiopathy causing lobar haemorrhages

Malformations: AVM, dural fistula, cavernous angioma, moya-moya syndrome

Autoimmune/infection: Vasculitis, TB, endocarditis

Trauma

Occlusive venous or arterial disease:

- Cerebral venous thrombosis
- Haemorrhagic transformation of infarct
- Reversible vasoconstriction syndrome (RCVS) – typically non-aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage

Metastases/primary brain tumour:

- Mets: Bronchial, melanoma, choriocarcinoma (pregnancy, testes), thyroid, renal
- Glioma

Amphetamine, cocaine; **A**nticoagulation

Ix

Bloods:	FBC, clotting, G&S, autoAbs
Urine:	Glucose (subarachnoid bleed); toxicology
Micro:	Blood cultures
Monitor:	ABP, neuro. obs., glucose
ECG:	Ischaemic changes in SAH

Radiol:

- CXR (pulmonary oedema in SAH)
- Brain: CT, MRI, MRA
- Cerebral angiogram

Special: LP for xanthochromia if SAH suspected

Rx

Resuscitation

O_2, IV fluids, nasogastric tube, BP/ECG monitor, ITU if drowsy

+

A.B.C.D.

Anticoagulant reversal: If patient on anticoagulant, give activated coagulation factors, vitamin K (if on warfarin), specific monoclonal antibodies for direct oral anticoagulants (e.g. for dabigatran)

Blood pressure control:

- Acute: IV labetalol, GTN
- Chronic: ACE inhibitor, calcium-channel blocker, etc.

Craniectomy/Coiling

+

D: Drugs, e.g. lactulose (decrease intracranial pressure with defaecation), levetiracetam (for seizures)

ACUTE WEAKNESS

Cerebrum/Brainstem
Vascular: Infarction, haemorrhage
Infection: Encephalitis, abscess
Inflammation, e.g. ADEM

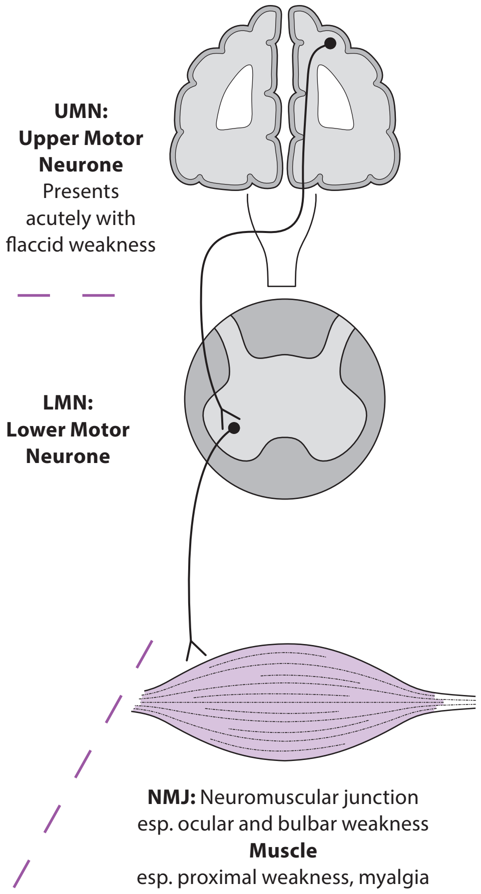
Cord
Vascular: Anterior spinal artery infarction, AVM
Inflammation: Transverse myelitis
Injury

Anterior horn cells
Infection: Polio, West Nile virus
Paraneoplastic

Roots/Plexus
Proximal nerve inflammation: Brachial neuritis
Plexitis: Carcinoma, radiotherapy

Motor nerves (p. 296)
Demyelinating
- **I**nflammatory: GBS
- **T**oxin: Diphtheria, buckthorn, seafood (ciguatoxin), suramin
- **S**ystemic – uraemia

Axonal
- **P**orphyria, acute intermittent
- **A**utoimmune: Vasculitis
- **I**nfection: Lyme disease/ITU neuropathy
- **N**eoplastic: Paraneoplastic, lymphoma


UMN:
Upper Motor Neurone
Presents acutely with flaccid weakness
LMN:
Lower Motor Neurone
NMJ: Neuromuscular junction
esp. ocular and bulbar weakness
Muscle
esp. proximal weakness, myalgia

NMJ
Autoimmune: Myasthenia gravis
Toxin: Botulism
Neoplasia: Lambert–Eaton myasthenic syndrome
Calcium ↑ or ↓

Muscle
Toxins: Steroids, statins, ITU, cocaine, alcohol
Hereditary: Periodic paralysis, malignant hyperthermia
Inflammation: Myositis, trichinosis, HIV
Neoplastic: Paraneoplastic
Electrolytes: K^+ ↓, PO_4 ↓
Rhabdomyolysis: Due to any of above

GUILLIAN–BARRÉ SYNDROME

Types

- GBS = AIDP (acute inflammatory demyelinating polyneuropathy) 90% – various antibodies
- AMAN (acute motor (± sensory) axonal neuropathy) 5% – anti-GD1a antibodies
- Miller–Fisher syndrome (ophthalmoplegia + ataxia + areflexia) 5% – anti-GQ1b antibodies
- Acute sensory/autonomic neuropathy 1%
- NB: AMAN constitutes 30–50% cases in China and South America

Causes

Cross-reacting antibodies to gangliosides (glycosphingolipids on myelin sheath or axolemma), with clinical syndrome beginning 1–4 weeks, following exposure to:

- Bacteria: *Campylobacter jejuni* (30%, esp. AMAN), *Mycoplasma*
- Viruses: CMV, EBV, HIV, unidentified virus, e.g. flu (majority of cases)
- Vaccines, esp. rabies

PC, Ix

G.B^3.S. = A.I.D.P.

Growing weakness:
  Typically, proximal weakness that ascends from legs to trunk, arms, head; nadir <4 weeks
  Variants include brachiocephalgic (bifacial palsies) or paraparesis (mimic cord lesion)
  Areflexia very common; fasciculations may occur
Breathing and **B**ulbar problems/**B**ack pain
  Respiratory support required in 25% due to bulbar and respiratory muscle weakness
  Back pain common due to inflammation of proximal nerve roots
Sensory disturbance
  Paraesthesia in extremities is often first symptom
  Sensory ataxia common, esp. in Miller–Fisher syndrome

Autonomic neuropathy: Arrhythmias, labile blood pressure, urinary retention, constipation
Immune: Serology for anti-gangliosides; *Campylobacter,* HIV, etc.; stool sample
Demyelinating nerve conduction studies: Motor conduction velocities – slow; central motor conduction times (F-wave) – delayed
Protein in CSF:
  Protein usually>1 g/l by second week; white cells <4 × 10^9/l (i.e. 'albuminocytological dissociation')
  High CSF protein can cause papilloedema and optic neuropathies (check visual acuity)

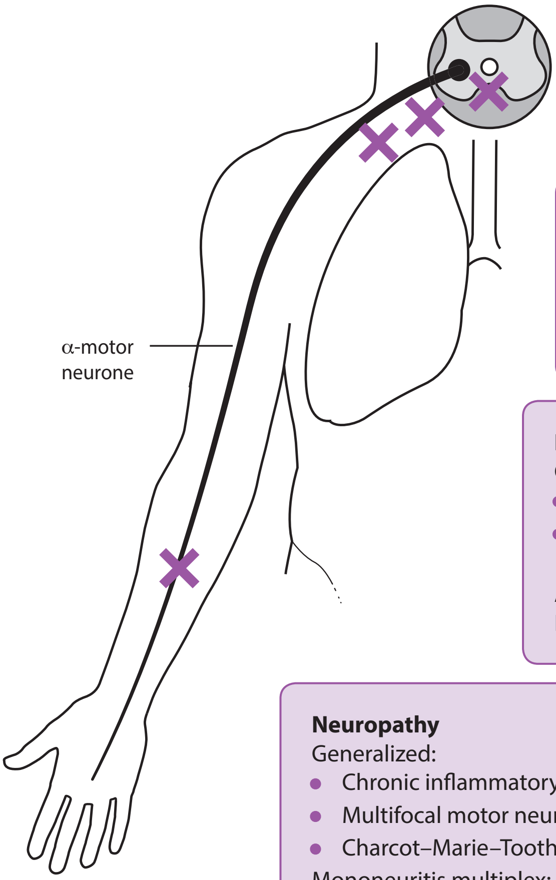
Rx

Immunuosuppression: IVIg or plasma exchange – the earlier, the better
Supportive
  Airway/ventilation support: transfer to ITU if FVC<1.0 l (15 ml/kg)
  Analgesia (NSAIDs, gabapentin, antidepressants)
  Autonomic: Cardiac monitor; labetalol or noradrenaline etc.; laxatives; urinary catheter
  Antithrombotic: TED stockings, low-molecular-weight heparin
Physiotherapy: Prevent flexion contractures

Prog

Death 5%; permanent disability 20%
Bad prognosis – rapid onset; *Campylobacter*-positive
Good prognosis – Miller–Fisher variant

HAND WASTING – CAUSES



Cord
Syringomyelia
Anterior horn cell disease:
- Motor neurone disease
- Polio, syphilis, paraneoplastic

Roots (C8, T1)
Compression:
- Spondylosis
- Neurofibroma

Meningeal infiltration

Brachial plexus (lower)
Compression:
- Cervical rib, fibrous band
- Tumour: Pancoast tumour (apical lung ca.); breast ca. or lymphoma; radiotherapy

Avulsion (Kiumpke's palsy)
Brachial neuritis (usually proximal wasting)

Neuropathy
Generalized:
- Chronic inflammatory demyelinating polyneuropathy (CIDP)
- Multifocal motor neuropathy with conduction block (MMN)
- Charcot–Marie–Tooth disease (CMT)

Mononeuritis multiplex: Diabetes, vasculitis
Mononeuropathy – compressive:
- Median (wasting of thenar eminence; numb lateral 3½ digits): Carpal tunnel syndrome
- Ulnar:
  - At axilla (sensory loss over medial arm, forearm, palm)
  - At elbow (sensory loss over palm): repetitive injury, old supracondylar fracture of humerus
  - At wrist (no sensory changes): trauma, ganglion in Guyon canal

Other
Compartment syndrome – Volkmann ischaemic contracture: Fibrosis of wrist and finger flexors
Disuse atrophy:
- Rheumatoid arthritis (also causes carpal tunnel syndrome, ulnar neuropathy and mononeuritis)
- Long-standing neurodisability: Parkinson, stroke, multiple sclerosis

Cachexia

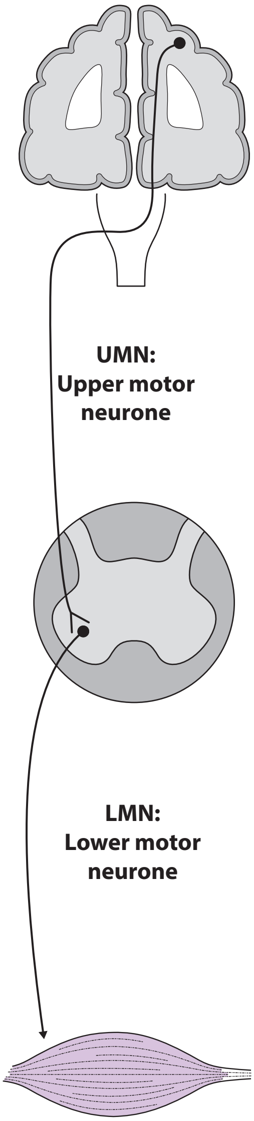
WALKING DISTURBANCE – CAUSES

Apraxic (frontal lobes)
O/E: Wide-based, short steps,
out-turned toes,
+ dementia, incontinence,
primitive reflexes
Lacunar state: Marche à petit pas
Normal-pressure hydrocephalus

UMN Bilateral
O/E: Spastic, scissoring
+ brisk jaw jerk,
pseudobulbar speech,
emotional incontinence,
sphincter dysfunction
Bihemispheric disease:
Cerebral palsy, ALS
parasagittal meningioma
Cord lesion (myelopathy):
Cervical spondylosis,
hereditary spastic
paraparesis

UMN Unilateral
O/E: Circumducting, spastic gait
Cerebral hemisphere lesion:
CVA, MS, tumour
Hemicord (Brown-Sequard syn.):
MS, tumour

Functional
O/E: Distractible,
bizarre



Vestibular
O/E: Veering (ipsilateral),
Romberg +ve, nystagmus,
drop attacks (paroxysmal)

Cerebellar
O/E: Wide-based, ataxic,
nystagmus

Basal ganglia (extrapyramidal)
Parkinsonism
O/E: Short-step, shuffling,
flexed, loss of arm
swing, festinant
Choreiform
O/E: Lurching
Dystonia
O/E: Hand or foot held in odd
fixed position; torticollis
Myoclonus
O/E: Knees give way

LMN Bilateral
O/E: Bilateral foot drop,
flaccid paraparesis, areflexia
Peripheral neuropathy:
CMT, Guillain-Barré syn., CIDP
Cauda equina:
Lumbar disc prolapse
(also sphincter dysfunction,
saddle anaesthesia)

LMN Unilateral
O/E: Foot-drop: high-steppage
gait
Radicular lesion, e.g. L5
Sciatic or lateral popliteal nerve:
Trauma, diabetes, vasculitis

Mixed UMN + LMN
Conus medullaris lesion
Vitamin B12 deficiency
Motor neurone disease

Myopathy
Myasthenia
O/E: Waddling gait

Proprioceptive loss
O/E: Romberg +ve
Dorsal column disease:
- Vitamin B12 deficiency
- Syphilis, HIV (mixed UMN + LMN disease)

Large-fibre peripheral
neuropathy, or dorsal-root
ganglionopathy

Visual loss

Other medical
Vascular:
- Postural hypotension
- Intermittent claudication

Cardiac: Stokes-Adams attacks
Arthritis

MYELOPATHY

Spastic paraplegia or quadriplegia (i.e. upper motor neuron syndrome) is nearly always caused by spinal cord injury, due to 1) extrinsic cord compression, or 2) intrinsic cord disease

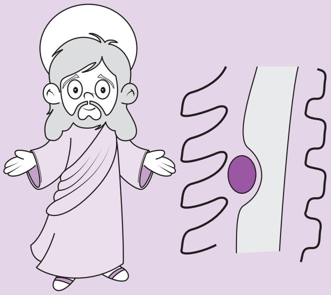
Cord compression

PC

Pain
Radicular symptoms

Causes

D^2.I.V.I.N.I.T.Y.



Degenerative/**D**evelopmental
- **D**egenerative
  - Cervical disc prolapse/cervical spondylosis
  - Osteoporosis
  - Paget disease
- **D**evelopmental
  - Spina bifida (cauda equina syndrome/lipoma, haemangiomas)
  - Klippel–Feil syndrome

Infection
- TB
- Pyogenic:
  - Epidural abscess
  - Infected intradural dermoid

Vascular: Extradural haematoma

Inflammation
- Rheumatoid arthritis of atlanto–axial joint
- Ankylosing spondylitis: Increased risk of vertebral fracture

Neoplasia
- Extradural: Vertebral – **B^2.O.N.E.1. M.** (see p. 257)
- Intradural, extramedullary:
  - Neurofibroma – 'dumb-bell'
  - Meningioma (esp. in thoracic cord, in middle-aged women)
  - Lipoma (assoc. with spina bifida)
  - Dermoid
- Arachnoid cyst

Injury
- Fracture
- Spondylolisthesis

Toxin/Nutritional: Nutritional – rickets/osteomalacia

Y: k**Y**phoscoliosis

Intrinsic cord disease

PC

Painless
Early sphincter/erectile dysfunction

Causes

D^2.I.V.I.N.I.T.Y.

Degenerative/**D**evelopmental
  Degenerative: Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis/primary lateral sclerosis
  Developmental:
- Friedreich ataxia and other spinocerebellar ataxias
- Hereditary spastic paraplegia

Infection
  Virus: HIV (selective dorsal column disease), HTLV-I, VZV
  Syphilis – 'tabes dorsalis' (selective dorsal column disease)

Vascular
  Infarction:
- Thromboembolism, atheroma, diabetes mellitus
- Dissection of aorta
- Vasculitis, esp. polyarteritis nodosa (anterior spinal artery infarction causes spinothalamic loss)

  Haemorrhage, intramedullary, incl. AVM (spinal haemangioma)

Inflammation
  Demyelination:
- Multiple sclerosis, ADEM
- Post-infective transverse myelitis
- Devic disease (transverse myelitis + optic neuritis)

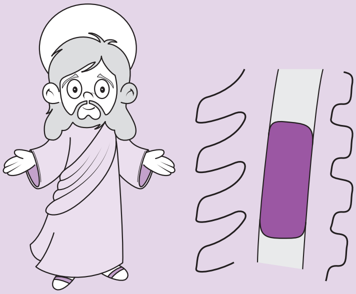
  SLE, vasculitis
  Sarcoid

Neoplasia – intradural, intramedullary (rare)
  Glioma (esp. in cervical cord, in young adult)
  Ependymoma; haemangioblastoma (assoc. Von Hippel–Lindau syndrome)

Injury
  Trauma: Contusion, syrinx, myelomalacia secondary to compression
  Radiation myelitis

Toxin/Nutritional
  Toxin: Lathyrism (chick-pea ingestion in India)
  Nutritional: Vitamin B12 deficiency (selective dorsal column disease)

Y: s**Y**ringomyelia



ANTERIOR-HORN CELL DISEASES

The following are causes of a pure lower motor neurone syndrome (wasting, fasciculations, weakness), with or without upper motor neurone signs

A. S.K.I.N.N^2.Y. MA.N.

Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS)/other motor neurone disease

Inc: 1/100,000 p.a.; prevalence 5/100,000

Age: >60 years

Sex: M:F = 1.5:1

Geo: Guam, West New Guinea, Japanese Kii Peninsula: Associated with ALS-dementia–Parkinson complex

Aet: Neurotoxin: Glutamate excess, e.g. higher in leather workers
Genetic: 10% are familial, of which 40% are due to C9ORF72 (chromosome 9 open reading frame 72) mutation, and 20% are due to Cu-Zn SOD1 mutation (free-radical clearance enzyme) – that are also cause of frontotemporal lobar degeneration

Micro: Degeneration of both LMN (anterior horns) and UMN (corticospinal tract)
Ubiquitin positive Bunina inclusion bodies are found within anterior horn cells

Spinal muscular atrophy (SMA)

PATH: Autosomal recessive disorders linked to 5q

PC: Infantile and childhood forms are severe and fatal within a few years
Adult-onset form causes mild proximal limb wasting

Kennedy disease (bulbospinal muscular atrophy)

PATH: Due to androgen receptor mutation, comprising CAG repeat on X chromosome

PC: Head: Facial fasciculations, bulbar palsy, dysarthria
Limbs: Proximal wasting, postural tremor, sensory involvement
Endocrine: Gynaecomastia, infertility, type 2 diabetes, prostate carcinoma

Infection

Acute: Polio or West Nile virus; Lyme disease
Chronic: Post-polio syndrome; syphilis (meningeal)

Neoplasia – 1: Direct motor nerve or meningeal infiltration

Neoplasia – 2: Paraneoplastic (esp. lymphoma) or radiotherapy to pelvis

Neoplasia – 3: Cervicomedullary tumour (or syringomyelia, or cervical spondylosis) may mimic ALS

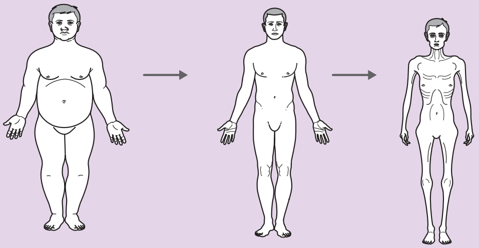
Y: Ta**Y**–Sachs disease, adult-equivalent – GM2 gangliosidoses due to hexosaminidase deficiency

Monomelic **A**myotrophy: Non-progressive wasting of one distal limb in young adult (i.e. 'benign')

Neuropathies, motor

Multifocal motor neuropathy with conduction block: Anti-GM1 anti-ganglioside; important not to miss, as this can be treated successfully with IVIg!

Toxins, e.g. vincristine, lead



ALS typically causes marked weight loss as well as distal wasting

ALS/MOTOR NEURONE DISEASE

Types/PC

A.P.P.L.E.

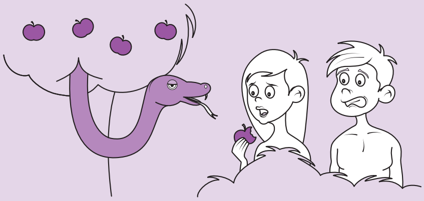
Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (80%)
LMN: Bulbar palsy, distal limb wasting, fasciculations, cramps
UMN: Pseudobulbar palsy, spastic paraparesis, extensor plantars
Spares: Ocular movements (III, IV, VI nuclei)
Bladder, anus control
Sensory signs (although symptoms may occur)
Cerebellum

Progressive bulbar palsy (10%)
LMN: Tongue atrophy and fasciculations, dysarthria, nasal regurgitation
UMN: Pseudobulbar speech, brisk jaw jerk

Progressive muscular atrophy (10%)
LMN: Fasciculations, distal limb wasting, claw hand
Respiratory – poor cough, tachypnoea

Lateral sclerosis, primary (1%): UMN signs only

Extra features (1%): Frontal dementia, parkinsonism – usually hereditary forms
C9ORF72, or SOD1 mutations, and other genetic forms of ALS
Younger onset, more severe course



Don't pick that or we'll be cursed!

Ix

Bloods: CK: Due to spasticity and cramps
Alternative diagnoses: Anti-GM1 (anti-ganglioside Abs), VDRL, hexosaminidase
EMG: MND: Fasciculations, fibrillation potentials; ↓ no. of spikes on maximum contraction
MMN: Conduction block
Radiol: CXR
MRI brain and cervical cord
Special: CSF: VDRL, cytology

Rx

Riluzole: Inhibits glutamate release – prolongs life by 3 months
Supportive: Quinine (cramps); baclofen (spasticity); propantheline (drooling)
Other: Nerve growth factors, IVIg, pyridostigmine (improves weakness in early MND)

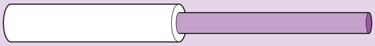
PERIPHERAL NEUROPATHY – CAUSES

Demyelination

I.T.'S. T.H.I.N.

Acute

Inflammatory: Guillain–Barré syndrome
Toxin: Diphtheria; arsenic, buckthorn berry
Syndrome: Refsum disease; **S**ystemic: acute uraemic



Loss of myelin sheath around axon causes slowing of conduction (cf. axonal – reduced action potential)

Chronic

Toxins: Amiodarone, suramin, industrial solvents
Hereditary: Charcot–Marie–Tooth disease – type 1A (*PMP22* duplication); 1B (protein 0)
  Hereditary neuropathy with liability to pressure palsies (*PMP22* deletion)
  Metabolic: Refsum disease, abetalipoproteinaemia, leucodystrophies
Inflammatory: Chronic inflammatory demyelinating polyneuropathy, multifocal motor neuropathy
Neoplasia: Myeloma, anti-myelin-associated glycoprotein IgM, POEMS syndrome

Axonal

P.A.I.N. E.N.D.I.N.G.S. H.U.R.T.

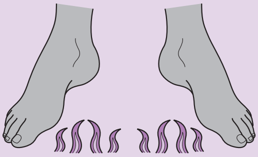
Acute

Porphyria, acute intermittent: Recurrent acute attacks, motor neuropathy
Autoimmune: Vasculitis, cryoglobulinaemia, rheumatoid arthritis, Sjögren syndrome, SLE
Infection: Lyme disease (painful lumbosacral polyradiculitis)/ITU or critical illness
Neoplasia: Paraneoplastic (assoc. small-cell lung carcinoma; anti-neuronal Abs), lymphoma

Chronic

Endocrine: Diabetes, hypothyroidism, acromegaly (compression neuropathies, e.g. carpal tunnel)
Nutritional: Vitamin B12 deficiency (+ myelopathy + dementia), thiamine deficiency (alcohol), coeliac
Drugs: Chemotherapy (cisplatin, taxanes), antibiotics (isoniazid), nucleoside analogs (ddI)
Infection: HIV, leprosy
Neoplasia: Infiltration (e.g. lymphoma, carcinoma), amyloidosis
Granulomatous: Sarcoidosis
Systemic: Amyloidosis

Hereditary: CMT disease type 2, HSAN, familial amyloid polyneuropathies, Fabry disease
Uraemia/**R**espiratory failure (COPD): Cirrhosis
Toxins: Thallium (cockroach poison, causes hair loss, may be acute), lead (motor neuropathy)



Predominantly sensory symptoms, e.g. burning paraesthesia (cf. demyelinating – motor symptoms)

PERIPHERAL NEUROPATHY – PATTERNS

Mononeuropathy multiplex

Def

Dysfunction of non-contiguous peripheral nerves, e.g. median and peroneal nerve

H.E.A.T.I.N.G. (*some are painful*)

Causes

Hereditary neuropathy with liability to pressure palsies
Endocrine: Diabetes, hypothyroidism, acromegaly
Autoimmune: Vasculitis, cryoglobulinaemia
Toxin: Lead (radial nerve, peroneal nerve palsies)
Infection: HIV, Lyme, leprosy/**I**nflammatory: CIDP variant (MADSAM, MMN)
Neoplastic: Amyloid, direct infiltration with lymphoma or leukaemia
Granulomatous: Sarcoid

Small-fibre neuropathies

H.E.A.T.I.N.g. (*most are painful*)

Causes

Hereditary: HSAN, familial amyloid polyneuropathies
Endocrine: Diabetes
Autoimmune: Sjögren syndrome
Toxins: Alcohol (large and small fibres, but painful)
Infection: HIV
Neoplastic: Amyloid

Dorsal-root ganglionopathy

Sensory **A.T.A.X.I.C.**

Causes

Acute: Guillain–Barré syndrome, esp. Miller–Fisher type
Toxins: Cisplatin
Autoimmune: Sjögren syndrome
Xs: Excess vitamin B6
Infectious, post
Carcinoma: Paraneoplastic; also paraproteinaemia with anti-MAG

Palpable nerves

L.A.R.G.E.

Causes

Leprosy
Amyloidosis
Refsum disease
Genetic, other: Charcot–Marie–Tooth types 1, 3; neurofibromatosis
Endocrine: Acromegaly

Autonomic involvement

Causes

Acute: Guillain–Barré syndrome, toxin (vincristine), paraneoplastic, porphyria
Chronic: Diabetes, hereditary (HSAN, FAP), amyloid, HIV

NEUROMUSCULAR JUNCTION DISEASE

Causes

A.C.T.I.O.N.

Autoimmune – myasthenia gravis

PATH: Antibodies to skeletal muscle nicotinic-ACh receptors (nAchR), or muscle-specific kinase (MuSK) causing receptor endocytosis, receptor block and complement fixation

Types:

Thymic hyperplasia (60%, esp. young women): High Ig level; good response to thymectomy
Thymic atrophy (20%, esp. old men): Low Ig level; poor response to thymectomy
Thymoma (10%, middle aged): High Ig level; poor response to thymectomy
Neonatal: Due to placental transfer of IgG in 10% of myasthenic mothers (PC: arthrogryposis)

Assoc: HLA-B8, DR3; thyrotoxicosis, type 1 diabetes mellitus, rheumatoid arthritis, SLE

Congenital myasthenia

PATH: Genetic defect in ACh receptor subunits, or presynaptic ACh synthesis or vesicle packaging

Toxins

PATH: Penicillamine: generates Ach-receptor Abs, and causes myasthenia gravis-like syndrome
Other drugs may exacerbate primary causes of NMJ defects, e.g.

- Pre-synaptic:
  - Ca-channel antagonists: Verapamil, magnesium, aminoglycosides
  - Na-channel blockers: Anti-arrhythmics (Ia, e.g. procainimide), β-blockers
  - Black widow spider venom: Depletes ACh from motor terminals
- Post-synaptic: Anaesthetics; AChR blockers – atracurium, vecuronium, suxamethonium
- Pre- and post-synaptic: Ciprofloxacin

Infection – botulism

PATH: *Clostridium botulinum* toxin acquired from:

- Food-poisoning, esp. home-preserved food, cans
- Food colonisation, esp. infants, raw honey
- Wound contamination, esp. intravenous drug users (‘skin popping’)

Botulinum toxin (Botox) prevents docking of ACh vesicles with presynaptic cell membrane

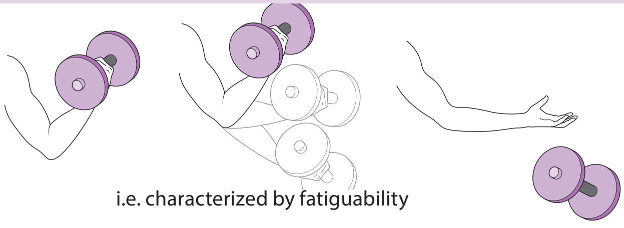
Organophosphates, nerve gas

PATH: Act as irreversible acetylcholinesterase inhibitors, causing cholinergic excess and depolarising block

Neoplasia – Lambert–Eaton myasthenic syndrome

PATH: Antibodies to presynaptic voltage-gated calcium channel

Types: 2/3 of cases are paraneoplastic (esp. small-cell lung cancer); 1/3 are primary autoimmune



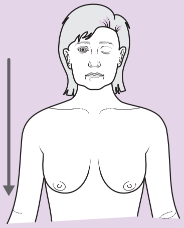
i.e. characterized by fatiguability

PC

Myasthenia gravis

Fluctuating weakness – fatiguable (worsens during day, with infection, drugs, dysthroidism)

Eyes: Ptosis, worse with sustained up-gaze; Cogan lid twitch
Ophthalmoplegia, diplopia (if ptosis not complete)
Face: Weak, snarling-smile, jaw-droop
Bulbar: Nasal dysarthria; nasal regurgitation; aspiration
Neck: Marked weakness, head droop
Limbs: Proximal weakness, asymmetric, brisk reflexes
Ventilation: ↓ FVC (worse on lying) – usually late



LEMS

As for myasthenia gravis, except **L.E.M.S.**

Leg weakness early, **E**xtra (areflexia, autonomic), **M**ovement improves, **S**ensory symptoms

Botulism

As for myasthenia gravis, plus prominent anticholinergic effects:

Eyes: Iridoplegia, mydriasis, cycloplegia (blurred vision and diplopia are always early symptoms)
Abdominal: Nausea and vomiting (and vertigo); constipation; urinary retention
Systemic: Bradycardia, constipation

Ix

Bloods: AutoAbs: nAChR, MuSK, striated muscle (assoc. with thymoma), VG-Ca channel (LEMS)
TFT: Dysthyroidism may precipitate myasthenic crisis
Associated autoimmunity: Glucose, vitamin B12, U&E (Addison), rheumatoid factor, ANA
EMG: Repetitive stimulation: ↓ in compound action potential in myasthenia (↑ with LEMS; botulinum toxin)
Single-fibre studies: Jitter and block – represents delay between two fibres within one motor unit
Radiol: CT thorax – exclude thymoma
Special:

'Tensilon' test: Patient injected with IV 'Tensilon' (edrophonium), which acts as short-acting cholinesterase inhibitor. Becoming less popular due to risk of cholinergic crisis

Ice pack test: An ice pack held on the eyes of the patient improves the symptoms of ptosis in 2 minutes, due to a reduction in the activity of anticholinesterases

Rx

Myasthenia gravis

Anticholinesterase inhibitors: Pyridostigmine
☠: N+V, colic, diarrhoea; bradycardia; cholinergic crisis (weakness)
Thymectomy (via mediastinectomy): 85% improve; 50% develop remission by 10 years
Immunosuppression:

- Steroids (start at low dose to avoid initial 'steroid dip')
- Azathioprine (check TPMT level), mycophenolate mofetil
- IVIg, plasma exchange (myasthenic crises)

LEMS

3, 4-Diaminopyridine, steroids, IVIg, plasma exchange

Botulism

Benzylpenicillin, intravenous for active infection with *C. botulinum*
Antiserum, trivalent (anti A, B, E) within 24 hours

MYOPATHY

Causes

T.H.I.N.N.E.R.

Toxins **S^3.I^3.C^4.K.**

- Prescribed: **S**teroids, **S**tatins, **S**kin
  - **I**mmune – penicillamine, colchicine; **I**nfection – zidovudine, amphotericin
  - **I**TU (anaesthetics)
  - **C**hemotherapy: Vincristine; **C**hloroquine, **C**arbimazole, **C**ardiology (amiodarone)
  - **K^+**-losing diuretics, e.g. thiazides, carbenoloxone, liqourice
- Drugs of abuse: Alcohol, amphetamines, opioids, cocaine, barbiturates

Hereditary

- Muscular dystrophy:
  - XL: Duchenne, Becker, Emery–Dreifuss; AR: limb-girdle; AD: facioscapulohumeral, oculopharyngeal
- Congenital myopathy
- Myotonic dystrophy, myotonia congenita
- Channelopathy: Periodic paralysis (K^+), paramyotonia congenita, neuromyotonia
- Metabolic: Glycogen-storage, fatty-acid metabolism, mitochondrial disease

Inflammatory

- Myositis: Dermatomyositis; polymyositis; inclusion-body myositis (primarily a degenerative disease)
- Infective: *Trichinella,* cysticercosis, HIV
- Sarcoidosis
- (Polymyalgia rheumatica – causes proximal muscle pain, although power and CK usually normal)

Neoplasia

- Carcinoma: Advanced or paraneoplastic (incl. dermatomyositis)
- Haematological: Eosinophilia (e.g. tryptophan), amyloid, graft-versus-host disease

Nutritional

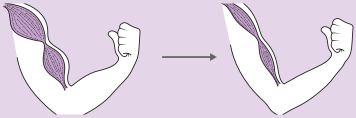
- Ca^{2+} (or Mg^{2+}) ↕ : Osteomalacia, due to poor intake, malabsorption, chronic renal failure
- K^+ ↕
- Malnutrition, malabsorption: Vitamin E deficiency

Endocrine

- Corticosteroids ↕ :
  - Cushing syndrome: Due to catabolic effects on muscle; acute or chronic
  - Hyperaldosteronism – due to ↓ K^+, hypoaldosteronism (Addison) – mainly muscle fatigue
- Thyroid ↕
- Other: Acromegaly, diabetes – ischaemic infarction of thigh

Rhabdomyolysis

- Toxins: Prescribed (e.g. statin + clofibrate, cyclosporin), neuroleptic malignant syndrome, drugs of abuse
- Hereditary: Metabolic – McArdle disease; CPT or acyl CoA deficiency; mitochondrial; malignant hyperthermia (ryanodine receptor gene)
- Injury: Trauma, epilepsy



PC

Weak

Proximal pattern usually:

- Girdles, e.g. rising from chair, combing hair
- Ocular–lids, facial, bulbar, neck weakness (esp. myotonic dystrophy and myositis)
- Respiratory (nemaline, McArdle myopathy, myositis)

Distal pattern: Myotonic dystrophy, Emery–Dreifuss or FSH dystrophy, inclusion body myositis

Pain

Toxins (alcohol, heroin), hereditary (McArdle), inflammatory (polymyositis), neoplasia, nutrition (Ca^{2+} ↓), stiffness or cramps: if better with movement – myotonia; worse with movement – paramyotonia

Associated

Arrhythmias: Muscular dystrophy, myotonic dystrophy, mitochondrial myopathy
Infertility: Myotonic dystrophy

O/E

Inspection: Wasting, proximal, symmetrical; ptosis; jaw droop; scapula winging; pseudohypertrophy calves
Tone: Normal; test for hand-grip release and percussion myotonia (thenar eminence, tongue) in myotonia
Reflexes: Relatively spared (except muscular dystrophy or myotonia, in which areflexia occurs)
Gait: Waddle
Other:
 Myotonia: Frontal balding, cataracts, dilated cardiomyopathy
 Mitochondrial myopathy: Salt and pepper retinitis pigmentosa, deafness, dementia, ataxia
 Myositis: Periorbital oedema, rash, lower-zone pulmonary fibrosis

Ix

Bloods:	CK ↑ , but normal in PMR, IBM, myotonia, mitochondrial myopathies, chronic steroids AutoAbs – ANA, ENA, incl. anti Jo-1 (polymyositis), ESR ↑, AChR Abs (myasthenia mimics) Genetics: Dystrophin, FSH (facioscapulohumeral dystrophy); lactate ↑ in mitochondrial myopathy
Urine:	Myoglobin: rhabdomyolysis
Micro:	ELISA
Monitor:	FVC if dyspnoeic
ECG:	Muscular dystrophy, myotonic dystrophy, mitochondrial myopathy
EMG:	Small, brief, polyphasic potential (due to recruitment of ↑ no. of weaker motor units) Insertional activity, fibrillation potentials, positive sharp waves in polymyositis Myotonia: Waxing and waning amplitude and frequency: 'dive-bomber/motor bike' revving sound
Radiol:	CXR (polymyositis, sarcoid, carcinoma) MRI – directs muscle biopsy location
Surgical – biopsy:	Lymphocytic infiltrate –myositis, sarcoidosis, dysferlinopathy Mitochondrial myopathy – COX-staining, genetics and respiratory chain assay

Rx

Hereditary: Myotonia – phenytoin, mexiletine (Na^+ channel blockers); dystrophy – myostatin inhibitors?
Inflammatory: Steroids, IVIg
 Distinction with steroid-induced myopathy can be made on basis of pain, CK, EMG, MRI and biopsy

ACUTE VISUAL LOSS – CAUSES

Aqueous

Closed-angle glaucoma

- Epi
  - **I**nc: 10% glaucoma
  - **A**ge: Elderly
  - **S**ex: F:M = 3:1 (Caucasions)
  - **G**eo: Asians
  - **A**et: 2 types:
    - Apposition of back of iris to lens blocks aqueous flow → iris pushed forwards, blocking drainage
    - Uveitis → iris adhesions
  - **P**re: Hypermetropes (short eye)
  - **M**acro: Corneal oedema
- PC:
  - Pain: eye, head; severe
    - ↑ in evening (semidilated pupil)
    - ↓ in sleep (pupil constricts)
  - N+V, photophobia
  - Vision: blurry, haloes
- O/E:
  - Inspection: red eye, hazy cornea, pupil fixed, semidilated
  - Palpation: tender, hard
  - Visual acuity ↓
  - Fundi: papilloedema
  - Late: anterior synechiae, grey atrophy of iris, lens flecks
- Ix: Intraocular pressure >21 mmHg (often 40–80 mmHg)
- Rx: Acetazolamide (top/IV)
  - Mannitol (IV)
  - Urgent iridotomy: laser/surgical

Vitreous

Vitreal haemorrhage

- Epi:
  - Diabetes mellitus
  - High myope
- PC:
  - Floaters
  - Blurred vision
- O/E:
  - Visual acuity ↓
  - Red reflex ↓

Retinal detachment/tear

- PC:
  - Floaters
  - Flashing lights (retinal traction)

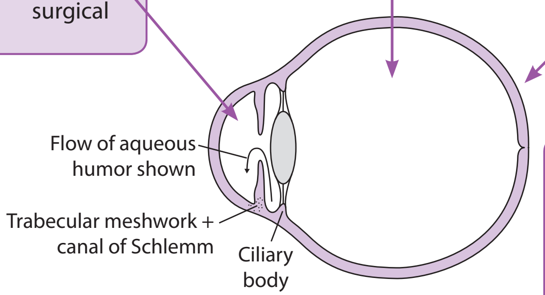
Retina

Central retinal artery or vein (or branch) occlusion

- Epi:
  - Artery: thromboembolism, e.g. diabetes, AF, aortic stenosis
  - Vein: hypertension, diabetes, hyperviscosity
- PC:
  - Visual loss:
    - Sudden onset ± offset
    - Curtain descending ± rising
- O/E:
  - Altitudinal scotoma
  - Fundoscopy:
    - Arterial: pale retina, embolus at bifurcation, macular cherry-red spot
      Vein: flame haemorrhages, papilloedema (sausage-strings – hyperviscosity)
  - Late: rubeosis iridis, glaucoma

Macular degeneration

- Epi:
  - Disciform type >60 years old
  - Central serous chorioretinopathy = leakage of fluid into subretinal space: side-effect of steroids
- PC:
  - Metamorphosia, micropsia,
  - Positive central scotoma
  - Photo-stress test +ve


Flow of aqueous humor shown
Trabecular meshwork + canal of Schlemm
Ciliary body

Examination

Characteristic eye or retinal appearance

Usually unilateral

Optic nerve

V.I.S.I.O.N. & O.P.T.I.C.

Vascular: anterior ischaemic optic neuropathy (AION)
- Thromboembolic
- Vasculitis: giant-cell arteritis, SLE, antiphospholipid syn.

Inflammatory – 'optic neuritis'
- Multiple sclerosis
- NMO (neuromyelitis optica)
- ADEM

Sarcoid/other granulomatous
- CRION (chronic relapsing inflammatory optic neuropathy)

Infection:
- Virus, e.g. VZV
- TB, syphilis
- Sinus infection (contiguous)

Other: GBS

Neoplasia: Lymphoma, leukaemia

Ocular

Papillitis/papilloedema

Toxin: Sildenafil, methanol, tobacco/alcohol

Inherited: Leber's hereditary optic atrophy (mitochondrial disease)

Compression: Tumour, trauma, carotid aneurysm

CSF/Chiasm

Intracranial pressure ↑

Epi:
  Mass lesion, e.g. tumour
  Cerebral venous thrombosis
  Primary intracranial hypertension
PC: Visual obscurations
O/E: Papilloedema

Obstructive hydrocephalus

Pituitary apoplexy

Cortical

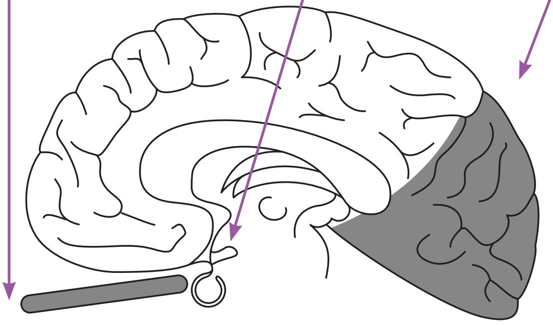
Vascular

Epi: Causes of vertebrobasilar insufficiency:
- Thromboembolic, incl. AF, cardiac catheterisation, hyperviscosity
- Hypoperfusion, incl. vasovagal, arrhythmia, post-cardiac arrest
- Migraine – usually hemifield loss
- Trauma

Occipital epilepsy

Functional

O/E:
Optokinetic nystagmus present with rolling striped drum
Tunnel vision that does not widen with distance



Examination

Optic disc abnormal (optic neuritis, AION, papilloedema) or normal (retrobulbar neuritis; cortical)

Unilateral (optic nerve), sequential (optic nerve or chiasm), bilateral (cortex or chiasm)

OPTIC ATROPHY – CAUSES

O.P.T.I.C.

Papillitis/**P**apilloedema

Papillitis or retrobulbar neuritis = inflammation of optic nerve head or behind nerve head

V.I.S.I.O.N.

Vascular: 'AION' or 'PION' (anterior or posterior ischaemic optic neuropathy)
- Thromboembolic
- Vasculitis: giant-cell arteritis, SLE, antiphospholipid syn.

Inflammatory: 'Optic neuritis':
- Multiple sclerosis
- NMO (neuromyelitis optica)
- ADEM

Sarcoid/other granulomatous: CRION (chronic relapsing inflammatory optic neuropathy)

Infection:
- Virus
- TB, syphilis
- Sinus infection – contiguous

Other: GBS, vaccination

Neoplasia: Lymphoma, leukaemia

Chronic papilloedema may also cause optic atrophy, e.g. due to primary intracranial hypertension

Toxins/Nutritional

Toxins

Chloroquine
Isoniazid, ethambutol
Lead, thallium

Nutritional

Vitamin B12 deficiency

Vitamin B1 deficiency' – 'tobacco/alcohol amblyopia'
- Due to combination of cyanide in tobacco and thiamine (vitamin B1) deficiency
- Strachan syndrome is association of this with peripheral neuropathy, ataxia and dermatitis

Inherited

Leber's hereditary optic atrophy (LHOA)

Epi:
- Mitochondrial disease
- Men are more symptomatic
- Onset in 20–30s

PC:
- Attacks of acute visual loss, sequentially in each eye
- Ataxia, cardiac defects

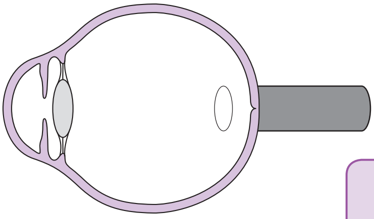
O/E: Initially papilloedema, circumpapillary telangiectasia

Neuropathy-associated
- Charcot-Marie-Tooth disease
- Refsum disease

Ataxia-associated
- Friedreich ataxia
- Leukodystrophies

D.I.D.M.O.A.D.
= Diabetes insipidus
Diabetes mellitus
Optic atrophy
Deafness
(autosomal recessive)

NB: Hereditary causes are often associated with **retinitis pigmentosa**, which presents as nyctalopia (night-blindness)



Ocular

Glaucoma

Chronic open-angle: presents with visual loss due to arcuate scotomas and tunnel vision

Graves disease

High myopia

Compression

Neoplasia
- Optic nerve tumour: glioma, sheath meningioma
- Pituitary tumour
- Meningeal ca., leukaemia

Carotid aneurysm

Paget disease

PAPILLOEDEMA – CAUSES

ICP ↑

D.I.V.I.N.I.T.Y^3.

Developmental: Hydrocephalus – esp. obstructive
Infection: Meningo-encephalitis
Vascular:
- Large cerebral infarct or bleed with oedema
- Subarachnoid haemorrhage

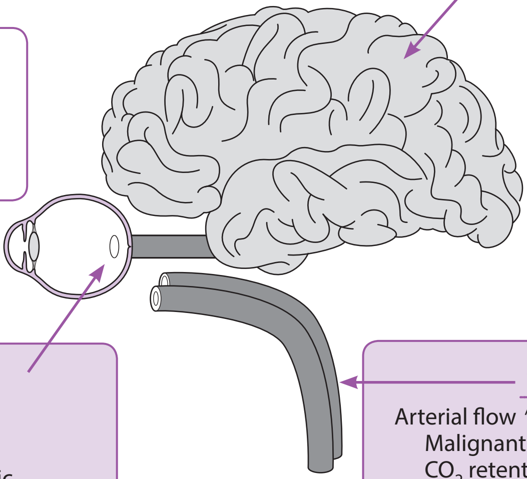
Inflammation: Vasculitis, sarcoid
Neoplasia:
- Brain tumour, or spinal cord tumour (high CSF protein)
- Meningeal

Injury: Trauma
Toxin/Nutritional
- Drug overdose, alcohol, lead poisoning; oestrogens (OCP, pregnancy), vitamin A excess
- Vitamin B12 deficiency

Y:
- h**Y**pertension, idiopathic intracranial (assoc. obesity)
- h**Y**ponatraemia (esp. rapid), h**Y**pocalcaemia (esp. hereditary)

Pseudopapilloedema

Hypermetropes
Drusen on disc
Medullated nerve fibres



Papillitis

V.I.S.I.O.N.

Vascular – 'AION' (anterior ischaemic optic neuropathy)
- Thromboembolic
- Vasculitis: giant-cell arteritis

Inflammatory: 'Optic neuritis': multiple sclerosis/ADEM
Sarcoid/CRION
Infection
- Virus, TB, syphilis
- Sinus infection – contiguous

Other: Guillain-Barré syndrome, due to high CSF protein
Neoplasia: Lymphoma, leukaemia

Vascular

Arterial flow ↑
  Malignant hypertension
  CO$_2$ retention
  Haematological
  - Chronic anaemia (high-output state)
  - Polycythaemia
  - Coagulopathy, e.g. DIC

Venous flow ↓
  Venous occlusion
  - Central retinal vein occlusion
  - Cavernous sinus thrombosis, carotico-cavernous fistula
  - SVCO

  Compression of optic nerve
  - Optic glioma/meningioma
  - Orbital cellulitis
  - Thyroid eye disease

VERTIGO

Def

Illusory sensation of movement, especially rotation

Causes

Physiological	e.g. post-rotation, caloric testing
Visual/somatosensory	e.g. refractive error, extraocular muscle palsy, peripheral neuropathy
Vestibular	

I^2.M. B.A.L.A.N.C^2.E^2.d.

Peripheral

Infection/**I**njury – labyrinthitis

PATH: Virus (associated with URTI), ischaemia (internal auditory artery), head injury

PC: Severe vertigo, N+V for days to weeks; deafness may also occur if cochlea involved

Ménière disease

PATH: Endolymphatic oedema

PC: Paroxysmal vertigo for 20 min–3 h, severe; associated N+V, aural fullness – may also present as paroxysmal drop attacks or ataxia with past-pointing

Low-frequency deafness and tinnitus: Initially paroxysmal, later continuous

Benign Paroxysmal Positional Vertigo (BPPV)

PATH: Utricle sheds otoconia into posterior semicircular canal; often follows labyrinthitis

PC: Vertigo for sec–min, induced by head rotation

O/E: Hallpike manoeuvre elicits upbeat–torsional nystagmus that exhibits: Latency; adaptation; fatiguability; position-changing with return of position

Aminoglycosides (e.g. gentamicin)/furosemide

Lymph, peri-, fistula

PATH: Trauma, congenital deformity, or superior-canal dehiscence

PC: Paroxysmal vertigo, high-frequency deafness, esp. when lying on ear

O/E: Nystagmus evoked by loud sound (Tullio phenomenon) or pressure in external meatus

Arterial

Migraine, vertebrobasilar

PC: Headache, N+V may accompany, or occur at other times; focal numbness; dysarthria

Posterior circulation TIA/stroke (e.g.in arteriopathy, atrial fibrillation)

PC: Attacks usually shorter than migraine

Nerve, vestibulocochlear lesion

PATH: Acoustic neuroma, meningitis, sarcoidosis, base of skull fracture

Central

Central lesions – brainstem, cervico-medullary lesion

PATH: Stroke, demyelination (multiple sclerosis, ADEM), tumour, VZV

Channelopathy (episodic ataxia)

Excitement: Anxiety, panic attacks, psychogenic

PPPD – persistent postural-perceptual dizziness: chronic sense of motion or imbalance triggered by prior episode or peripheral vertigo, or primary psychogenic

Epilepsy, complex partial

DEAFNESS

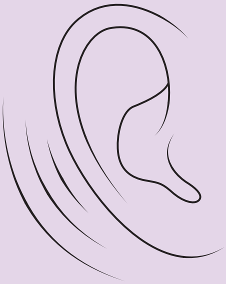
Causes

Conductive

W.I.D.E.N.In.G.

Wax in external auditory meatus
Infection – otitis media
PATH:
- Acute: *Streptococcus pyogenes*, *Haemophilus influenzae*
- Chronic ('glue ear'): Assoc. large adenoids, cleft palate, Down syn., TB

O/E: Effusion on otoscopy
Drum perforation: Noise injury; barotrauma (e.g. pilots, divers)
Extra: Ossicle discontinuity – otosclerosis, trauma (NB: Normal otoscopy)
Neoplasia: Glomus jugulare, carcinoma
Injury
Granulomatous: Granulomatosis with polyangiitis/sarcoid



Sensorineural

D^2.I.V.I.N.I.T.Y^2.

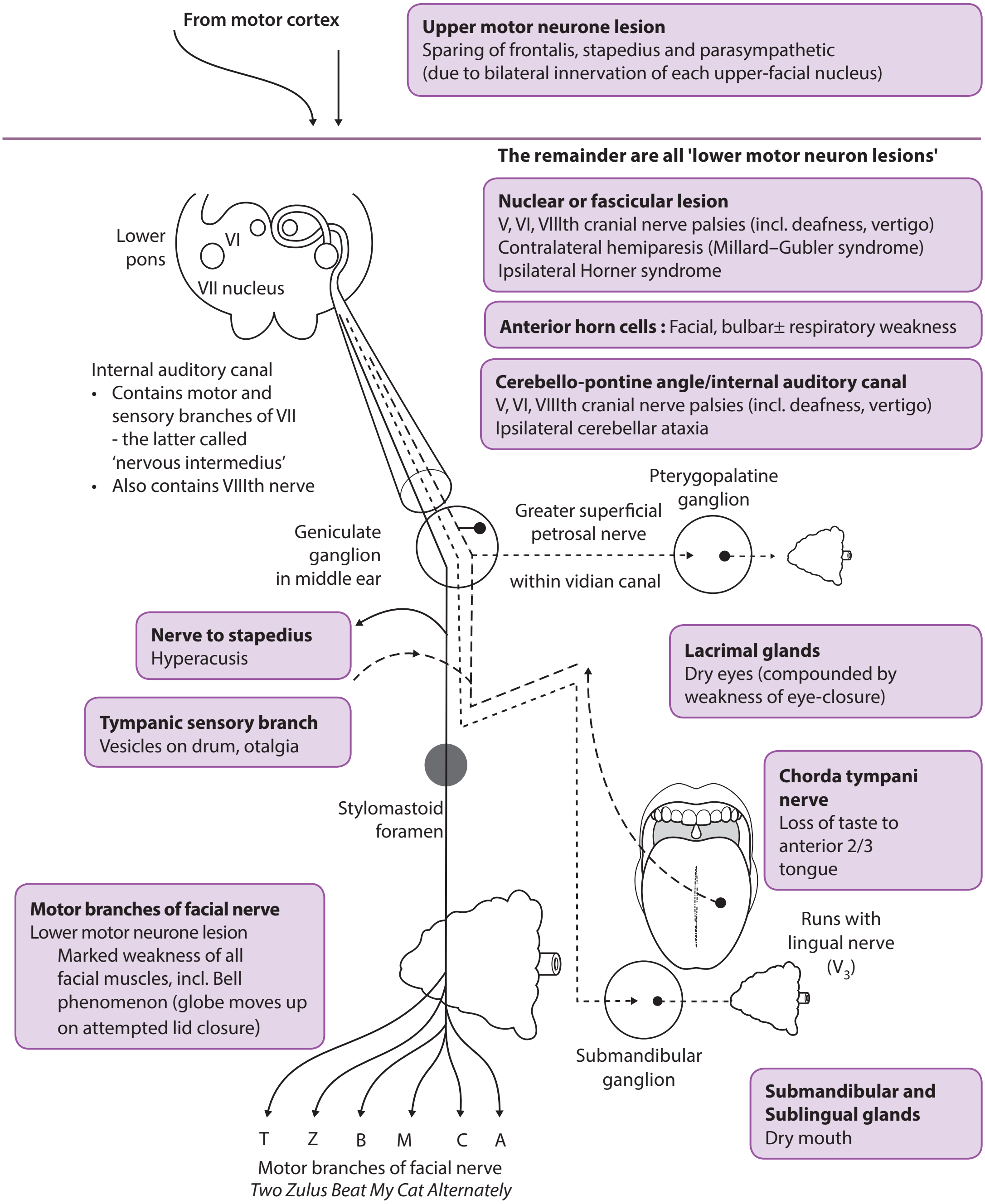
Developmental/**D**egenerative
  Developmental:
    Genetic: Connexin mutation, Refsum disease, Waardenburg syndrome
    Congenital: TORCH infections, esp. syphilis (late-onset), rubella
    Perinatal: Anoxia (cerebral palsy)
  Degenerative: Presbyacusis – high-tone deafness
Infection
    VZV (O/E: Vesicles on eardrum!), measles, mumps, influenza
    Meningitis: *Haemophilus influenzae*
Vascular
    Ischaemia: Internal auditory artery 'AICA' – sudden hearing loss and vertigo
    Haemorrhage: Superficial siderosis (slow haemorrhage following old brain op.)
Inflammation: Vasculitis, sarcoid
Neoplasia
    Cerebellopontine angle tumour, e.g. acoustic neuroma – commonest cause of unilateral sensorineural deafness
    Meningeal carcinoma, leukaemia, melanoma
Injury
    Noise: 4 kHz notch in audiogram, later high-frequency
    Trauma: Including trivial head injury
Toxins: Gentamicin, furosemide, quinine, aspirin
Y: l**Y**mph
    Endol**Y**mph h**Y**drops = Ménière disease – low-tone deafness
    Peril**Y**mph fistula (ruptured oval or round window)

FACIAL NERVE PALSY

Anatomy

The facial nerve (cranial nerve VII) has a long course, with branches at different points

The location of the lesion can be ascertained by testing the several functions that it serves, as well as by testing functions of adjacent structures


From motor cortex
Lower pons
VI
VII nucleus
Internal auditory canal
• Contains motor and sensory branches of VII - the latter called 'nervous intermedius'
• Also contains VIIIth nerve
Geniculate ganglion in middle ear
Greater superficial petrosal nerve
within vidian canal
Pterygopalatine ganglion
Stylomastoid foramen
Runs with lingual nerve (V_3)
Submandibular ganglion
T Z B M C A
Motor branches of facial nerve
Two Zulus Beat My Cat Alternately

Upper motor neurone lesion
Sparing of frontalis, stapedius and parasympathetic
(due to bilateral innervation of each upper-facial nucleus)

The remainder are all 'lower motor neuron lesions'

Nuclear or fascicular lesion
V, VI, VIIIth cranial nerve palsies (incl. deafness, vertigo)
Contralateral hemiparesis (Millard–Gubler syndrome)
Ipsilateral Horner syndrome

Anterior horn cells : Facial, bulbar± respiratory weakness

Cerebello-pontine angle/internal auditory canal
V, VI, VIIIth cranial nerve palsies (incl. deafness, vertigo)
Ipsilateral cerebellar ataxia

Lacrimal glands
Dry eyes (compounded by weakness of eye-closure)

Nerve to stapedius
Hyperacusis

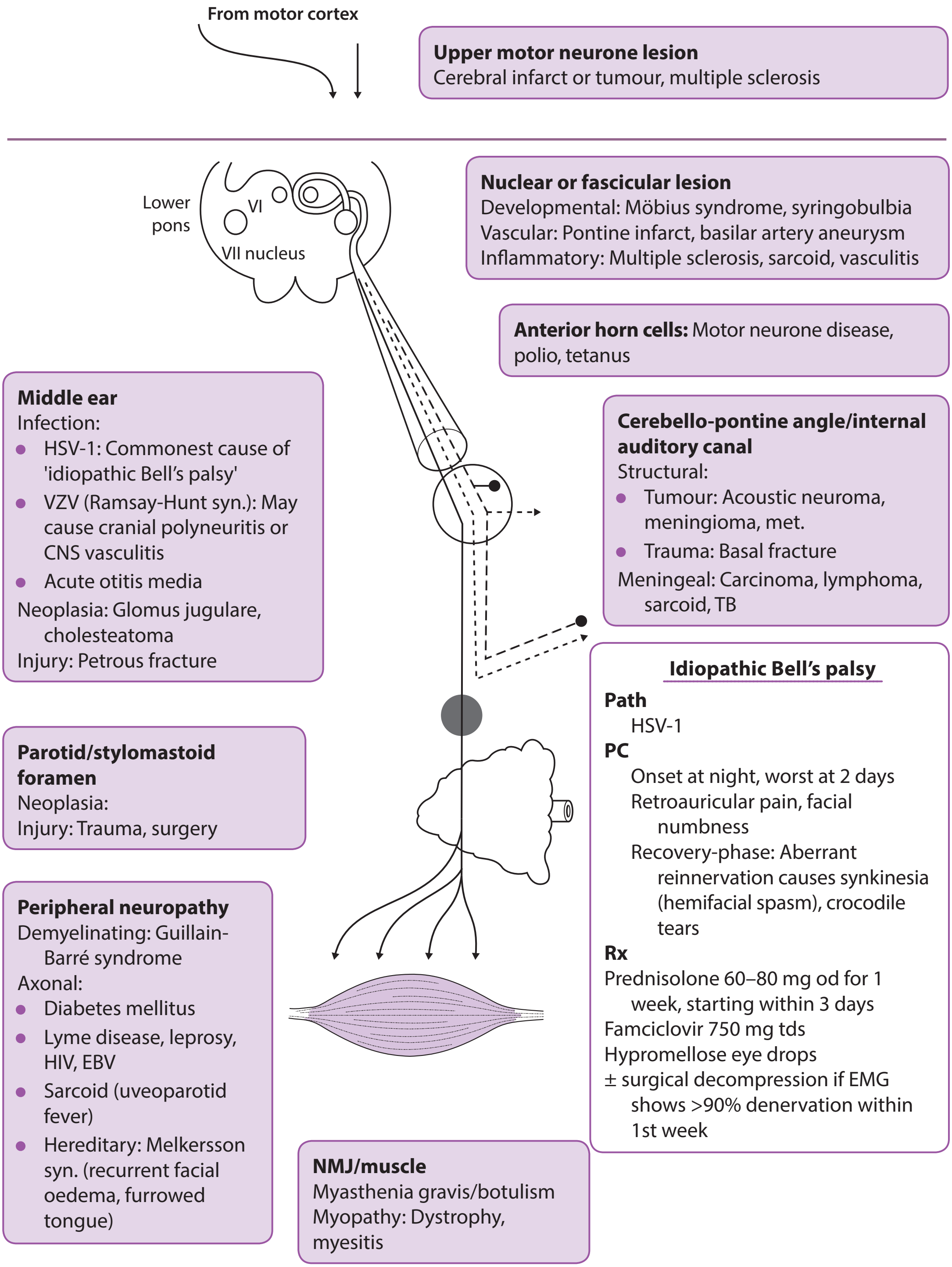
Tympanic sensory branch
Vesicles on drum, otalgia

Chorda tympani nerve
Loss of taste to anterior 2/3 tongue

Motor branches of facial nerve
Lower motor neurone lesion
Marked weakness of all facial muscles, incl. Bell phenomenon (globe moves up on attempted lid closure)

Submandibular and Sublingual glands
Dry mouth

Causes



Upper motor neurone lesion
Cerebral infarct or tumour, multiple sclerosis

Nuclear or fascicular lesion
Developmental: Möbius syndrome, syringobulbia
Vascular: Pontine infarct, basilar artery aneurysm
Inflammatory: Multiple sclerosis, sarcoid, vasculitis

Anterior horn cells: Motor neurone disease, polio, tetanus

Middle ear
Infection:
- HSV-1: Commonest cause of 'idiopathic Bell's palsy'
- VZV (Ramsay-Hunt syn.): May cause cranial polyneuritis or CNS vasculitis
- Acute otitis media

Neoplasia: Glomus jugulare, cholesteatoma
Injury: Petrous fracture

Cerebello-pontine angle/internal auditory canal
Structural:
- Tumour: Acoustic neuroma, meningioma, met.
- Trauma: Basal fracture

Meningeal: Carcinoma, lymphoma, sarcoid, TB

Parotid/stylomastoid foramen
Neoplasia:
Injury: Trauma, surgery

Idiopathic Bell's palsy

Path
HSV-1
PC
Onset at night, worst at 2 days
Retroauricular pain, facial numbness
Recovery-phase: Aberrant reinnervation causes synkinesia (hemifacial spasm), crocodile tears
Rx
Prednisolone 60–80 mg od for 1 week, starting within 3 days
Famciclovir 750 mg tds
Hypromellose eye drops
± surgical decompression if EMG shows >90% denervation within 1st week

Peripheral neuropathy
Demyelinating: Guillain-Barré syndrome
Axonal:
- Diabetes mellitus
- Lyme disease, leprosy, HIV, EBV
- Sarcoid (uveoparotid fever)
- Hereditary: Melkersson syn. (recurrent facial oedema, furrowed tongue)

NMJ/muscle
Myasthenia gravis/botulism
Myopathy: Dystrophy, myesitis

NEUROFIBROMATOSIS

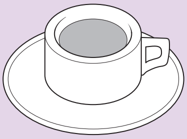
Type 1

Epi

Prevalence = 1/3000 (30% sporadic mutations)
Gene: Chromosome 17
Autosomal dominant tumour suppressor gene (as for all neurocutaneous syndromes)
Neurofibromin gene normally inhibits Ras-GTPase mitogenic signalling

PC

C.A.F.É. N.O.I.R^2.



Café-au-lait spots: >5 spots of >1.5 cm diameter (or >5 mm, prepuberty)
Axillary freckling, also inguinal
Fibromas, neuro-:
  Subcutaneous: Soft, firm, lobulated, mobile at right-angles to nerve only
  Plexiform: Overgrowth of nerve trunk and overlying tissues, esp. temporal scalp
  PC: Cutaneous masses
    Compression:
- Spine/nerve roots: Myelopathy, radicular pain, muscle atrophy
- Cranial nerves: Trigeminal neuralgia, cerebellopontine angle tumour
- GIT: Bowel obstruction, bleeding

  Sarcomatous transformation in 10%
Eye Lisch nodules (iris hamartomas); retinal astrocytoma; optic nerve glioma

Neoplasia
  CNS: Meningioma, ependymoma, astrocytoma; complicating obstructive hydrocephalus
  Chronic or acute myeloid leukaemia
  MEN2b syndrome = medullary carcinoma, thyroid, phaeochromocytoma, marfanoid
Orthopaedic
  Spine – canal stenosis, spina bifida, kyphoscoliosis, short stature
  Sphenoid dysplasia
IQ ↓/epilepsy
Renal: Wilms tumour, renal artery stenosis/**R**espiratory: pulmonary fibrosis, pneumothorax

Type 2

Epi

Prevalence = 1/50,000
Gene: Chromosome 22 (MERLIN gene = cytoskeletal proteins: Moesin, Ezrin, Radizin)

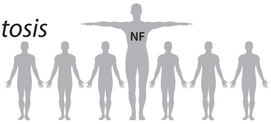
PC

Think of diseases in **2**s

Bilateral acoustic neuromas; also meningiomas, ependymomas
Bilateral posterior subcapsular cataracts (café-au-lait spots and peripheral neurofibromas occur rarely)

NEUROCUTANEOUS DISEASES – OTHER

S.O.N.S. *of neurofibromatosis*



Tuberous sclerosis

Epi Gene: Chromosome 11 (80% sporadic mutations); autosomal dominant

PC

Skin
- Adenoma sebaceum (angiofibromata): Papular rash around nose, worsens after puberty
- Shagreen patch (lumpy plaque), ash leaf macule (depigmentation seen with Wood lamp)
- Periungual or intraoral fibromas

Ocular: Retinal phakomas (50%; appear yellow), retinal pigmentation, optic disc drusen

Neurology
- Epilepsy (75%); IQ ↓ (50%)
- Brain tumours: Subependymal tubers (hamartomas), lateral ventricle gliomas

Systemic
- Renal: Adult polycystic kidney disease, angiomyolipomata (66%; cause loin pain, haematuria)
- Respiratory: Pulmonary cysts, pneumothorax, pulmonary fibrosis
- Cardiac: Rhabdomyosarcomas that cause arrhythmias and CCF

Sturge–Weber syndrome

PC

Skin
- Port-wine stain (capillary haemangioma) on face – although most port-wine stains are not associated with the syndrome
- Associated with ipsilateral intracranial calcified haemangioma whose location depends on dermatome involved by stain: Vi – occipital; Vii – frontal or parietal

Ocular: Strabismus, congenital glaucoma (appears as buphthalmos or 'ox-eye'), optic atrophy

Neurology
- Epilepsy (due to 'tramline' calcification of cortical vessels); IQ ↓
- Infantile hemiplegia–hemiatrophy

Von Hippel–Lindau disease

Epi Gene: VHL tumour suppressor gene (chromosome 3)

PC

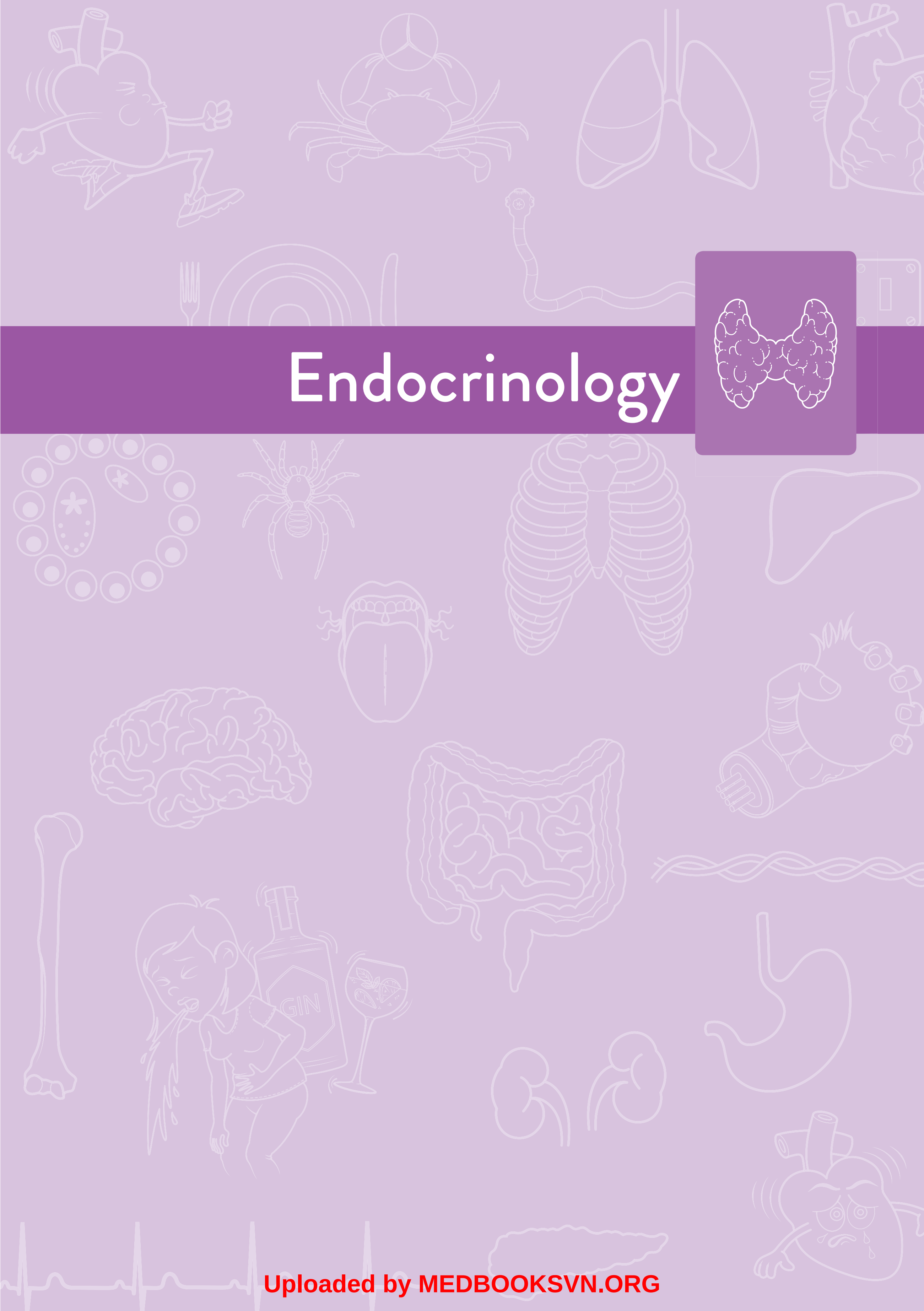
Skin: Polycythaemia, secondary to renal cysts or cerebellar haemangioblastoma

Ocular: Retinal angioma

Neurology: Cerebellar or spinal cord haemangioma (-blastoma)

Systemic
- Polycystic kidney disease, renal cell carcinoma
- Adrenal phaeochromocytoma
- Other: Epididymis, liver, pancreas cysts

Taylor & Francis
Taylor & Francis Group
http://taylorandfrancis.com



Endocrinology

DIABETES MELLITUS – CAUSES

P.E.P.S.I. & C.O.K.E. – *make sure it's diet!*

Primary
- Type 1: Autoimmune destruction of β-cells of pancreatic islets of Langerhans; always leads to insulin dependency.
  - Epi: **I**nc: Prevalence = 1–2% population, and rising
  - **A**ge: Children to 30 y
  - **A**et: Genetic: DR3, 4 increases risk, but MZ concordance = 50%
    - Infection: CMV, EBV, Coxsackie, congenital rubella (seasonal onset of diabetes)
  - PATH: Anti-islet-cell Abs (esp. glutamic acid dehydrogenase) and/or anti-insulin Abs
- Type 2: Peripheral insulin resistance ± insulin ↓ ± hepatic glucose efflux ↑
  - Epi: **I**nc: Prevalence = 5%
  - **A**ge: Increases with age, but inherited types occur in children
  - **G**eo: Indian, African
  - **A**et: Genetic: MZ concordance = 90%
    - Syndrome X = DM + central obesity + ↑ABP + ↑lipids, due to ↑ liver fat synthesis
    - Amylin deposition in islets (= hypoglycaemic hormone secreted by islet cells)
- Hereditary: Insulin hyposecretion: MODY (maturity-onset diabetes of young) – like type 2 DM
  - **A**et: Glucokinase deficiency (rare)
  - Insulin resistance: Donohue syndrome; lipodystrophy

Endocrine
- Stress hormone excess: *in temporal order of release:*
  - Adrenaline → glucagon → glucocorticoid → growth Hormone → T4
  - (phaeochromocytoma) (glucagonoma) (Cushing) (acromegaly) (thyrotoxicosis)
- Stress response: Sepsis, surgery, trauma → hypercortisolaemia → insulin resistance
- Oestrogen: Gestational diabetes; polycystic ovaries syn.; oral contraceptive pill

Pancreatic disease: Chronic pancreatitis, (alcohol, cystic fibrosis, malnutrition); haemochromatosis; pancreas ca. (late)

Steroids

Inherited:
- Neurological: Myotonic dystrophy; Friedreich ataxia; ataxia telangiectasia; Huntington chorea
- Glycogen storage disease
- Other: Lawrence–Moon–Biedl syn; DIDMOAD (**D**iabetes **I**nsipidus, **DM**, **O**ptic **A**trophy, **D**eafness) syn.

Chromosomal: Down, Turner, Kleinfelter syndrome

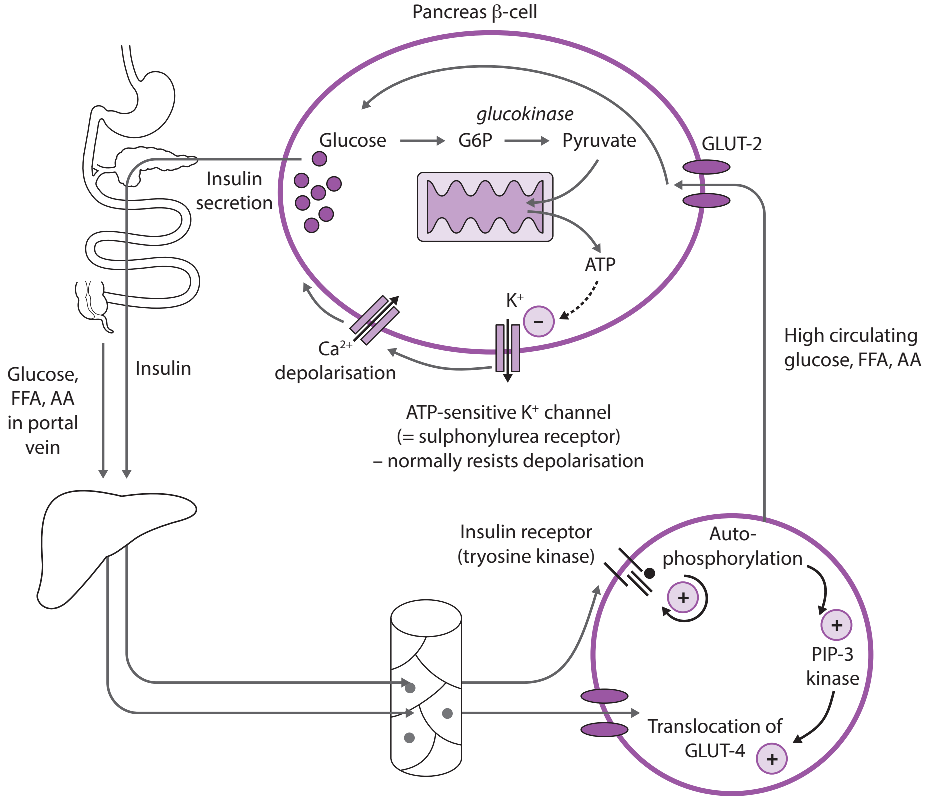
Organ failure: Liver/congestive cardiac failure

Kidney failure: Due to insulin resistance; insulin hyposecretion; peritoneal dialysis (glucose in dialysate)

Exogenous: Diuretics (thiazides, loop), adrenergic stimulants (salbutamol, amphetamines), pancreatic toxins (pentamidine), chemo Rx (e.g. alloxan)

INSULIN – PHYSIOLOGY

The causes, complications and treatment of diabetes are most easily understood by appreciating the normal regulation and actions of insulin:


Pancreas β-cell
glucokinase
Glucose
G6P
Pyruvate
GLUT-2
Insulin
secretion
ATP
K+
Ca2+
depolarisation
ATP-sensitive K+ channel
(= sulphonylurea receptor)
– normally resists depolarisation
High circulating
glucose, FFA, AA
Glucose,
FFA, AA
in portal
vein
Insulin
Insulin receptor
(tryosine kinase)
Auto-
phosphorylation
PIP-3
kinase
Translocation of
GLUT-4

Liver	Endothelium	Periphery
Glycogen synthesis ↑ Gluconeogenesis ↓ ⊕ glucokinase ⊕ glycogen synthase ⊕ phosphofructokinase		Glucose uptake ↑
FFA and TAG synthesis ↑ VLDL release ↑ ⊕ pyruvate dehydrogenase	VLDL, chylomicrons processing ↑ → FFA +m DAG update ↑ ⊕ lipoprotein lipase	FFA and TAG synthesis ↑ ⊕ pyruvate dehydrogenase ⊖ lipase, via PKA
Protein synthesis ↑ ⊕ AA uptake, Kreb cycle		Protein synthesis and growth ↑ ⊕ AA uptake, translation

Key: ⊕ insulin activates; ⊖ insulin inhibits; AA, amino acids; ATP, adenosine triphosphate; DAG, diacylglyceride; FFA, free fatty acids; G6P, glucose-6-phosphate; GLUT, glucose transporter; PIP, phosphatidylinositol phosphate; PKA; protein kinase A; TAG, triacylglyceride; VLDL, very-low density lipoprotein

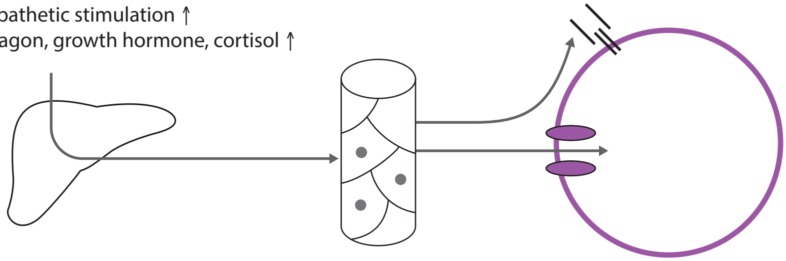
DIABETIC KETOACIDOSIS

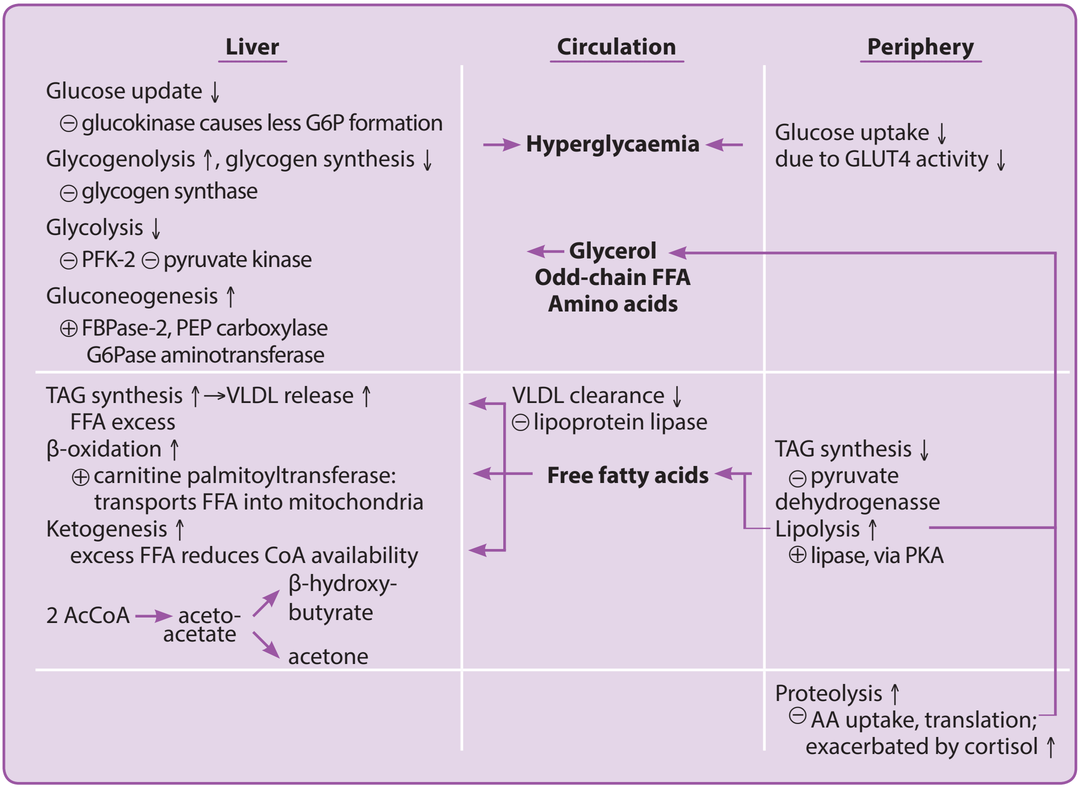
PATH

Combination of **insulin deficiency** (e.g. first presentation, forgot insulin, inadequate dosage) and **sympathetic stimulation** (e.g. sepsis, MI, volume depleted, cocaine), results in:

- Glucose uptake ↓ and glucose release ↑ → hyperglycaemia
- Osmotic diuresis → hypovolaemia → tissue ischaemia and renal failure → lactic acidosis
- Compensation for lack of intracellular glucose by lipolysis (with resultant ketosis) and proteolysis (with resultant amino-acid release) → metabolic acidosis

Insulin ↓
Sympathetic stimulation ↑
Glucagon, growth hormone, cortisol ↑





Liver	**Circulation**	**Periphery**
Glucose update ↓ ⊖ glucokinase causes less G6P formation Glycogenolysis ↑, glycogen synthesis ↓ ⊖ glycogen synthase Glycolysis ↓ ⊖ PFK-2 ⊖ pyruvate kinase Gluconeogenesis ↑ ⊕ FBPase-2, PEP carboxylase G6Pase aminotransferase	→ **Hyperglycaemia** ← ← **Glycerol** ← **Odd-chain FFA** **Amino acids**	Glucose uptake ↓ due to GLUT4 activity ↓
TAG synthesis ↑ → VLDL release ↑ FFA excess β-oxidation ↑ ⊕ carnitine palmitoyltransferase: transports FFA into mitochondria Ketogenesis ↑ excess FFA reduces CoA availability 2 AcCoA → acetoacetate ↗ β-hydroxybutyrate ↘ acetone	VLDL clearance ↓ ⊖ lipoprotein lipase ← **Free fatty acids** ←	TAG synthesis ↓ ⊖ pyruvate dehydrogenasse Lipolysis ↑ ⊕ lipase, via PKA
		Proteolysis ↑ ⊖ AA uptake, translation; exacerbated by cortisol ↑

Key: ⊕ activation; ⊖ inhibition; AA, amino acids; AcCoA, acetyl coenzyme A; FBPase, fructose-1, 2-biphosphatase; FFA, free fatty acids; G6P, glucose-6-phosphate; GLUT, glucose transporter; PEP, phosphoenolpyruvate; PFK, phosphofructokinase; PKA, protein kinase A; TAG, triacylglyceride; VLDL, very-low density lipoprotein

PC

D^2.K^3.A.

Diuresis, osmotic/**D**ehydration
- PC: Polyuria, polydipsia, blurred vision (refractive error due to hyperglycaemic osmotic shift)
- O/E: Fast, thready pulse; hypotensive; collapsed veins; dry skin, tongue; skin turgor ↓; temp. ↓
- Comp: Cerebral oedema (confusion, coma); acute renal failure; deep-vein thrombosis

Kussmaul breathing (deep sighs; also air hunger)/**K**etotic breath

K^+: Initially hyperkalaemic but becomes hypokalaemic with insulin Rx; risk of cardiac arrest

Abdominal
- Abdominal pain (‘acute abdomen’) – consider acute pancreatitis due to hyperlipidaemia
- N+V – consider acute gastric dilatation, but appetite ↑ (due to hypothalamic uptake ↓)

Ix

Bloods:
- U&E:
  - Urea: ↑↑ due to dehydration, proteolysis; creatinine ↑ (incl. false +ve due to ketone bodies)
  - Na^+: ↓ (peripheral osmotic activity, and hyperlipidaemia causing pseudohyponatraemia)
  - K^+: initially ↑ → ↓ with insulin Rx; HCO_3^- ↓ (weakness; SOB), and Cl^- ↑: both occur on Rx anion gap ($Na^+ + K^+$) – ($Cl^- + HCO_3^-$) >18 mmol/l, due to ketone bodies, lactate
- ABGs: Metabolic acidosis: PO_4 <24 mmol/l, base excess >2 mmol/l
- Glucose: Typically 15–33 mmol/l; triglycerides ↑ (VLDL or chylomicrons)
- Ketone bodies; ratio of β-hydroxybutyrate: acetoacetate ↑ with hypoxia, due to shock
- FBC: Neutrophilia (leukaemoid reaction); AST ↑ due to shock

Urine
- Glucose + + +
- Ketones +, but may be falsely negative if shocked or hypoxic, due to high BHB:AcAc ratio.

Micro: MSU, blood cultures

Monitor 2-hourly blood glucose, K^+

ECG: Myocardial infarction (cause or effect); effects of hyper- or hypokalaemia

Radiol: CXR – infection; PAXR – gastric dilatation; ground-glass appearance

Rx

Ventilatory support

O_2

Ventilation, if persistent acidosis

Assessment

C.O.A.T.I.N'

Cardiac monitor

O_2

ABP

TPR → space blanket?

Input + output chart
(incl. nasogastric tube, urine catheter)

Neurological observations

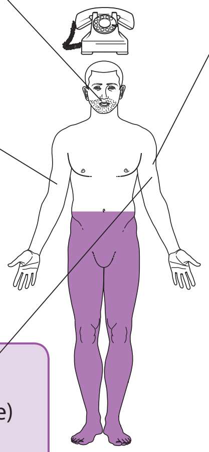
Medication

IV soluble insulin (50 units in 50 ml N. saline)
- 10 units stat → 6–10 units/h
- Sliding scale (e.g. 3 units/h, while BM >15)

Treat precipitant, e.g. antibiotics, thrombolysis

LMW heparin

ITU:
- $NaHCO_3$: If pH <7.1, and SBP <90 mmHg
- Dexamethasone: If cerebral oedema



Hydration

Type:
- Colloid 500 ml: If SBP <90 mmHg
- N. saline: 2 l in 2 h° → 2 l in 4 h° → 4 l in 24 h°
- 5% dextrose when glucose <15 mmol/l
- 10% dextrose if persisting acidosis and ketosis

KCL
- Add 20 mmol to each litre after 1st litre
- Titrate: [K^+] of 3 mmol/l = 300 mmol deficit
- Caution if oliguric

Phosphate: IV or PO as K^+ or Na^+ acid salt

DIABETES – HHS

Def

Hyperosmolar hyperglycaemic state

PATH

Sustained, **partial** insulin deficiency, leads to hyperglycaemia (via ↓ glucose uptake and glucose release), but **not** β-oxidation of lipids or ketogenesis. Consequently, **acidosis does not occur initially**, and the condition presents later than DKA with very high glucose levels and extreme dehydration

Predisposing: Type 2 or type 1 with inadequate insulin dose, plus supervening stress, e.g. sepsis, myocardial infarction, stroke, or initiation of diabetogenic drug (e.g. steroid, thiazide)

PC

HHS presents similarly to DKA, except for the following features:

H.H.S

Hyperosmolar
Hyperglycaemia
Both are more extreme than in DKA
PC:
- Polyuria, polydipsia
- Fatigue
- Blurred vision (refractive error due to hyperglycaemic osmotic shift)

O/E: Fast, thready pulse; hypotensive; collapsed veins; dry skin, tongue; skin turgor↓
Comp: Cerebral oedema (confusion, coma); acute renal failure; deep-vein thrombosis
Ix: Typical values:
- Osmolality, serum >350 mOsm/kg
- Na^+ >150 mmol/l
- Glucose >35 mmol/l

Sticky blood – thrombosis occurs due to hyperviscous blood

Rx

HHS is treated similarly to DKA, except for:
- Fluid: Hyperosmolarity and hyperglycaemia usually respond to fluid infusions alone
- Insulin: Only indicated if fluid fails to correct hyperglycaemia or if ketones present
- Potassium replacement

DIABETES – LACTIC ACIDOSIS

PATH

Lactic acidosis is more likely to occur in diabetics, due to:

Inhibition of gluconeogenesis:

- Metformin therapy (type 2 DM) causes type B lactic acidosis
- Liver or renal failure

Hypoxia secondary to pneumonia or CCF
Shock, e.g. pancreatitis

PC

Hyperventilation
Fatigue, confusion, coma

Ix

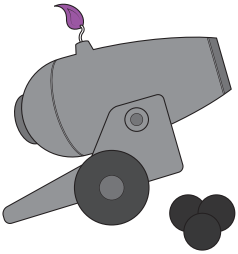
Bloods: Lactate >2 mmol/l (also apparent as a wide anion gap, where anion gap = $(Na^+ + K^+) - (Cl^- + HCO_3^-) > 18$ mmol/l)
ABGs: Metabolic acidosis
Renal: May demonstrate renal impairment as a cause of lactic acidosis
Glucose: Normal – slightly elevated
Urine: Ketone –ve
Micro: Blood, urine, CSF cultures
ECG
Radiol: CXR – pneumonia

Rx

Underlying cause
O_2 (± ventilation)
IV $NaHCO_3^-$ ☠ = paradoxical intracellular acidosis!
Haemodialysis, to clear lactic acid, and to clear sodium when $NaHCO_3$ given

DIABETES MELLITUS – CHRONIC COMPLICATIONS

PC



Macrovascular

C.A.N.N.O.N.I.C.A.L^2.

Cardiology – ischaemic heart disease
PC: Myocardial infarction/acute coronary syndromes:
- Classically 'silent' due to coexisting autonomic neuropathy
- More often complicated by cardiac failure and shock

Rx involves intensive insulin regime, usually with IV 'sliding scale'
Cardiomyopathy – left-ventricular failure in presence of normal CXR and angiogram
Arterial insufficiency – peripheral vascular disease
PC: Intermittent claudication → rest pain, due to tibial or iliofemoral artery insufficiency
Ulcer, gangrene (*see opposite*)
Neurological – large-vessel or lacunar stroke/TIA

Microvascular

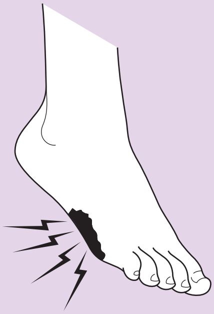
Neurological – peripheral and autonomic neuropathy
Peripheral:
- 'Glove and stocking' sensory neuropathy; amyotrophy (painful, wasted quadriceps); cranial neuropathies
- Mononeuritis multiplex
- Entrapment (carpal tunnel or ulnar neuropathies); ulcers (see opposite)

Autonomic: Impotence, frequency, gustatory sweating, gastroparesis, postural hypotension
Ophthalmopathy: Lens/glaucoma/retinopathy (*see opposite*)
Nephropathy, incl. **N**ephrotic syndrome
Microalbuminuria (albumin excretion rate: 30–300 mg/day) → nephrotic syn. (>3 g/day)
Chronic renal failure
Renal tubular acidosis type 4: Hyporeninaemic hypoaldosteronism
Immunocompromise
Bacteria: Boils, UTI, pneumonia, osteomyelitis
Other: Candida (pruritus vulvae, balanitis), mucormycosis (proptosis), TB
Cutaneous
Pigmentation: Acanthosis nigricans, diabetic dermopathy (pigmented scars on shins)
Necrobiosisis lipoidica diabeticorum (erythematous plaque, sunken, yellow atrophic skin)
Other: Vitiligo (association with type 1 DM), scleroderma-like skin, granuloma annulare
Arthritis
Cheirarthropathy – limited joint mobility and contractures; 'prayer sign': can't appose palms
Pseudogout
Charcot joints (neuropathic)
Lethargy/**L**oss of weight

Foot ulcers

May be due either to arterial insufficiency or to neuropathy

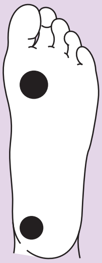
Ischaemic ulcer



PC:
  Painful ulcer (sensation preserved)
  Colour: white on lying — red on standing
O/E:
  Site: Foot margin
  Edge: ragged
  Skin:
- Pale, cold, thin, hairless
- Absent-weak pulses; bruits

Associations: Infection – pus, crepitus, foul odour (also with neuropathic ulcer)

Neuropathic ulcer



PC: Painless and numb – pt. ignores repetitive trauma
O/E:
  Site: Metatarsal heads, calcaneum
  Edges: Cleanly punched-out ulcer
  Skin:
- Surrounding callus
- Dry, fissured skin (sweat loss)
- Warm, erythema, oedema, distended veins (sympathetic loss)

Associations
- Pes cavus, claw toes, Charcot joints
- Lisfranc deformity: Neuropathic subluxation of tarsal and metatarsals → convex sole

Ophthalmopathy (50%)

Lens:
- Acute blurred vision, due to osmotic-induced swelling of the lens (DKA)
- Cataracts: Senile or juvenile 'snowflake'

Glaucoma – open-angle, or closed-angle due to rubeosis iridis
Retinopathy:

Background	Pre-proliferative	Pro-liferative
Fluorescein angiogram: Leakiness ↑ Haemorrhages: • Dot = microaneurysm • Blot = deep retina • Flame = superficial Hard exudates: Lipoprotein precipitates	Cotton-wool spots: Retinal infarction Venule dilatation; looping; beading Intraretinal microvascular abnormalities (IRMA) Avascular; featureless periphery	New vessels leashes and fronds on disc or vein bifurcations Haemorrhages: Vitreous; pre-retinal Rubeosis iridis: Anterior extension of angiogenesis Advanced: Retinal fibrosis and tear

± Maculopathy: May occur at any stage, due to hard exudates; oedema; ischaemia involving fovea
± Other: Retinal vein or artery thrombosis; ischaemic papillitis; lipaemia retinalis (if chylomicrons ↑)

DIABETES MELLITUS – DIAGNOSIS

Plasma glucose

Method:

- Capillary blood glucose or venous sample (use fluoride oxalate tube – inhibits RBC glycolysis)
- Two samples, on different occasions required (unless plainly symptomatic)
- Post-prandial glucose should not be taken <2 h, due to normal high variability

Fasting (8 h)		**Post-prandial** (2 h post 75 g glucose load)	
Normal	<6 mmol/l	Normal	<7.8 mmol/l
Impaired fasting glycaemia	6–7 mmol/l	Impaired glucose tolerance	7.8–11 mmol/l
Diabetes mellitus	>7 mmol/l	Diabetes mellitus	>11 mmol/l

Urinalysis

Method: Glucose oxidase or reducing-substance reagent

Sensitivity = 30%

False –ve: Elderly, due to higher renal threshold;
(normal threshold for glycosuria >7–13 mmol/l blood glucose)

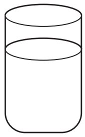
Specificity = 99%

False +ve:

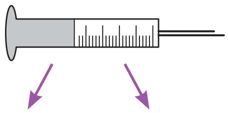
- Glomerular filtration ↑, e.g. pregnancy
- Tubular resorption ↓, e.g. renal tubular acidosis
- Reducing substances (only, if using reducing-substance reagent), e.g.:
  - Drugs, incl. salicylates, isoniazid, L-DOPA, tetracycline, vitamin C
  - Galactosaemia, fructosaemia, homogentisic acid (alkaptonuria)

Oral glucose tolerance test (OGTT)

Normal diet for 3 days prior to test
Fast overnight (allowed water)
No smoking or exercise allowed during test



75 g glucose drink



Fasting glucose

1 and 2 h glucose (post-prandial)

Interpret result as shown for plasma glucose above

DIABETES MELLITUS – MONITORING

The **5 Cs**

Control, glycaemic

Record of acute complications: DKA, hypoglycaemic episodes

Self-monitoring:

- Urine dipstick:
  - Indications:
    - Children during infection (ketone sticks), or unwilling to prick finger
    - Elderly or type 2 DM: Tight glycaemic control unnecessary (but higher renal threshold)
  - ☠ Can't detect hypoglycaemia, and reflects mean glycaemia since bladder last emptied
- Capillary-blood glucose ('BM stick'):
  - Mechanism: Glucose oxidase reagent + glucose → hydrogen peroxide → redox potential change
  - Target: Aim for 4.4–6.7 mmol/l (fasting) or 4.4–9 mmol/l (2-hour post-prandial)

Fasting (8 h)		**Post-prandial** (2-h post 75 g glucose load)	
Desirable	4.5–7.0 mmol/l	Desirable	4.5–9.0 mmol/l
Acceptable	<7.8 mmol/l	Acceptable	<10.0 mmol/l

Adjust insulin dose only after several days of abnormal pattern; do not adjust with every measurement (i.e. the 'sliding-scale approach')

- Glycated haemoglobin (HbA1c):
  - Mechanism:
    - HbA-valine + glucose → irreversible non-enzymatic glycation → HbA1
    - Electrophoresis separates HbA1 into more stable component HbA1c
  - Indication: Reflects total glucose exposure over previous 6–8 weeks (RBC half-life):
    - Detects poor compliance with Rx
    - Prognostic indicator for retinopathy
  - Target:
    - Normal 31–64 mmol/mol
    - Acceptable 64–76 mmol/mol

False –ve: Haemolysis: ↑ RBC turnover

False +ve: Abnormally migrating Hb variants

Complications

Peripheral pulses, ABP, cardiac and carotid auscultation

Retinal screening, sensory testing; feet inspection (incl. nails)

Urine albumin:creatinine ratio; U&Es

Competency with insulin administration, 'CBG' monitoring; check insulin injection sites

Career/**C**ontraception etc: Psychosocial, domestic, occupation

DIABETES – CONSERVATIVE RX

D.E.L.A.Y.S^3. *complications!*

Diet

- Carbohydrate counting, and altering insulin doses accordingly with meals
- Low-fat
    - High polyunsaturates, e.g. vegetable oil; low eggs; milk-cheese; fried food
    - Drugs: Orlistat (gut lipase inhibition), sibutramine (SNRI)
    - Surgery: Gastric banding, gastric bypass (roux-en-Y) – ↓ mortality in type 2 patients with body mass index >40 kg/m^2
- High-fibre: High-soluble fibre ↓ glucose absorption from gut → overcomes requirement for phase 1 insulin release in type 2 diabetes

Exercise improves glycaemic control; ↓ CVS complications, ↓ weight

Lipids:

- Monitor LDL:HDL cholesterol ratio and fasting triglycerides
- Start statin in type 1 diabetes if patient:
    - Is >45 y
    - Has had diabetes for >10 y
    - Has established nephropathy
- Start statin in type 2 diabetes if patient:
    - Has >10% 10-year risk of cardiovascular disease (using QRISK2 assessment tool)
    - Has established nephropathy

ABP ↑ (hypertension):

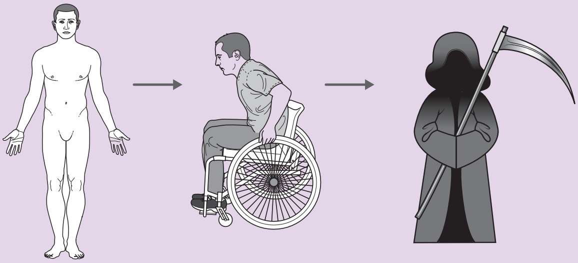
- Reduce salt intake, alcohol
- Drugs:
    - ACE inhibitors or A-II antagonists are best due to their reno-protective effects
    - β-blockers discouraged as they mask hypoglycaemia
    - Thiazides: Cause hyperglycaemia

Yearly check-up

- Ophthalmological assessment: Snellen chart, dilated fundoscopy
- Renal function: Albumin:creatinine ratio or 24-hour urine albumin

Smoking, **S**pirits and **S**ex

- Smoking: Increases risk of all complications
- Spirits (alcohol): Avoid alcohol binges (hypoglycaemia) or heavy consumption (hidden calories, hypertension)
- Sex:
    - Contraception: Use progestogen-only pill, as oestrogen ↑ glucose
    - Pregnancy: Will need more intensive monitoring



DIABETES – RX OF COMPLICATIONS

Macrovascular

Relationship with glycaemia occurs at *low* HbA1c (so difficult to reduce risk with glucose control)
Cardiac: Ischaemic heart disease – aspirin, anti-anginals, angioplasty, CABG
Arteriopathy: Peripheral vascular disease – aspirin, angioplasty, bypass
Neurological: Carotid disease – aspirin, endarterectomy

Microvascular

Relationship with glycaemia occurs at *high* HbA1c (glycaemic control improves outcome)

Neurological:

Peripheral neuropathy:

- Intensive insulin or continuous insulin infusion
- Duloxetine, amitriptyline or gabapentin for neuropathic pain
- Prosthetics, e.g. foot calipers

Autonomic, e.g. impotence: Sildenafil; intracavernosal or intra-urethral alprostadil (PGE$_1$); vacuum
postural hypotension: increase salt and water intake – fludrocortisone

Ophthalmopathy:

Cataract replacement: ☠ = worsening maculopathy (so perform laser Rx beforehand)

Argon laser photocoagulation:

- Indication: Early proliferative changes; perimaculopathy – laser applied in 'macular grid'
- Mechanism:
  - Focal Rx: Reduces haemorrhage
  - Panretinal (1000–8000 burns): Reduces release of vascular endothelial growth factor → decreases blindness by 60% – ☠ = visual field loss

Vitrectomy: Indication: persistent vitreal haemorrhage, retinal detachment, severe proliferation

Nephropathy:

ACE inhibitors or A-II antagonists:

- Indication: Microalbuminuria
- Mechanism: Delays progression of nephropathy and treats hypertension

☠ = acute renal failure (if renal artery stenosis); hyperkalaemia (if hyporeninaemic hypoaldosteronism)

Protein restriction (< 50 g/day for 70 kg man) – reserved for established nephropathy

Feet

Hygiene: Wash, dry and use moisturising cream daily; correctly fitting shoes; avoid ingrowing nails; avoid bare feet; meticulously inspect, and refer early for corns, calluses, etc.
Ulcer care: Remove callus; swab; dressing; cast for pressure relief; antibiotics (e.g. co-amoxiclav, clindamycin)
Surgical: Debridement + lavage; osteotomy for neuropathy or osteomyelitis; arterial bypass; amputation

DIABETES MELLITUS – INSULIN

Types

Origin
- Porcine or bovine insulin has problem of antigenicity → allergy, resistance
- Recombinant human form has higher risk of hypoglycaemia, due to faster absorption and shorter effect

Preparation
- Soluble:
  - IV: Peak 5–10 min; duration 30 min – used in DKA, HHS, perioperative or in-patient fasting
  - SC: Peak 2 h; duration 6 h – used as maintenance therapy
- Suspension (S/C): complex of insulin with zinc crystals (lente) or protamine (isophane)
  - Onset 1–2 h; peak: 4–12 h; duration: <24 h
- Biphasic: Soluble + suspension, e.g. 30% soluble + 70% Humulin M3:
  - Pens allow easy delivery of combination
- Recombinant insulin analogue, e.g. insulin glargine or insulin detemir:
  - Allows once-daily delivery

Regimens

Initiation:

Type 1 DM: Start at presentation, e.g. DKA; but may need to ↓ dose or stop over weeks–months, due to 'honeymoon period' = temporary partial islet-cell recovery

Type 2 DM: Used if poor control in spite of oral hypoglycaemics; give metformin at same time (to ↓ weight)
- Benefits: Microvascular complications ↓ by 25%; post-MI mortality ↓ by 50% at 1-year

Maintenance:

'Split-mixed' programme: Morning + evening biphasic insulin doses, given half-hour before breakfast + supper:
- Only 2 injections per day so easier for elderly or patients with cognitive impairments
- Less effective glycaemic control overall

'Basal-bolus' programme: Bedtime long-acting + short-acting half-hour before every meal (adjust dose according to meal size):
- Multiple injections per day
- Allows excellent glycemic control and variation in bolus doses in accordance with carbohydrate counting

Temporary adjustments:

Illness: Fever, vomiting, perioperative, pregnancy:
- Dose must ↑ to counter sympathetic activation even if not eating, but check BMs 2–4-hourly
- Continuous infusion (SC or IV) may be required

Exercise:
- Decrease dose before and 24 h post-exercise; as blood flow ↑ and glucose utilisation
- Avoid injecting exercised limb: ↑ absorption; carry chocolate bar

Side-effects ☠

G.L.A.R.G.IN.E.

- **G**lucose – low (hypoglycaemia): risk factors:
  - Elderly (can tolerate higher BMs because of less concern of chronic complications)
  - β-blockers (mask symptoms), alcohol binge
- **L**ocal:
  - Lipohypertrophy (due to lipogenic and growth effect) – Rx: Rotate sites; lipoatrophy (allergy); bruising
  - Inadvertent IM injection, or limb injection (→ more rapid + unpredictable effect) – Rx: If IM then pinch skin
- **A**therogenesis – in high concentrations
- **R**esistance, insulin >200 units/day:
  - Associations: Animal insulin (Ab formation), acanthosis nigricans, congenital receptor deficiency
- **G**ain of weight in type 2 DM so give with metformin
- **IN**stability – 'dawn phenomenon' or 'Somogyi effect': Insulin given too early in evening → hypoglycaemia through night → rebound hyperglycaemia by morning due to sympathetic activation, and growth hormone, cortisol release
- **E**lectrolyte – hypokalaemia – in DKA Rx

DIABETES MELLITUS – ORAL HYPOGLYCAEMICS

Acarbose
Mechanism: Inhibits intestinal α-glucosidase, thereby decreasing starch and sucrose hydrolysis, and so decreasing absorption of glucose

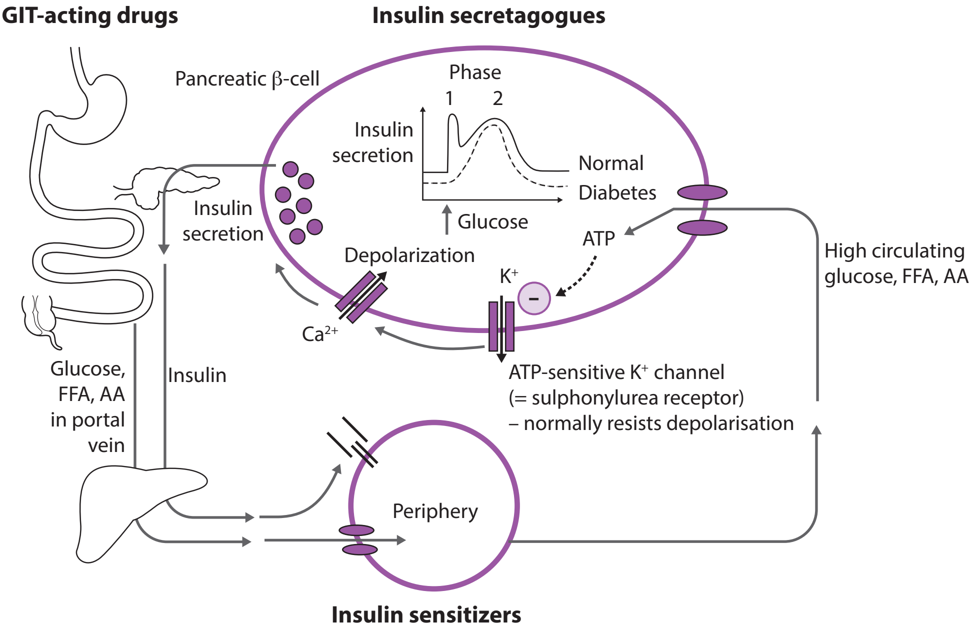
☠ Diarrhoea, flatulence, abnormal LFTs

Sulphonylureas: Glibenclamide, gliclazide

Mechanism: Inhibits ATP-dep. K^+ channel in islet β-cell → ↑ basal secretion of insulin and ↑ phase 1, glucose-mediated stored-insulin secretion

Types:		Metabolism:
Long-acting	(48-h): chloRpropamide	Renal
Intermediate:	(24-h): glibenclamide, glimepRide	Renal
	(12-h): gLiquazone; gLiclazide; gLipizide	Liver
Short-acting	ToLbutamide	Liver

☠ Appetite ↑, weight gain; hypoglycaemia (if long-acting or organ failure); resistance (β-cell dysfunction, receptor downregulation)


GIT-acting drugs
Insulin secretagogues
Pancreatic β-cell
Phase
1
2
Insulin secretion
Normal
Diabetes
Glucose
Insulin secretion
Depolarization
ATP
K+
–
Ca2+
ATP-sensitive K+ channel
(= sulphonylurea receptor)
– normally resists depolarisation
High circulating glucose, FFA, AA
Glucose, FFA, AA in portal vein
Insulin
Periphery
Insulin sensitizers

AA, amino acids;
ATP, adenosine triphosphate;
FFA, free fatty acids

Biguanides: Metformin
Mechanism:

- ↑ glucose uptake in presence of background insulin, and BM <14 mmol/l
- Gluconeogenesis in liver, from lactic acid
- LDL+VLDL ↓ and do *not* increase appetite:
  - so used 1st line in **overweight** people

☠ GIT Sx, e.g. diarrhoea, dyspepsia, anorexia
Lactic acidosis, esp. if organ failure
Megaloblastic anaemia – vitamin B12 absorption ↓

Thiazolinediones: Rosiglitazone, pioglitazone
Mechanism: Nuclear PPr receptor y-subunit → tissue responsiveness to insulin
☠ Now mostly withdrawn due to risk of heart failure

Glucagon-like peptide-1 (GLP-1) agonists: Liraglutide, exenatide
Mechanism: GLP-1 is an incretin – a pancreatic hormone that stimulates insulin secretion; GLP-1 agonists are therefore 'secretogogues' (like sulphonylureas)
Benefits:

- Much reduced risk of hypos compared to sulphonylureas
- Associated with significant weight loss, therefore useful in obesity
- However: Only SC preparations exist, requiring twice daily injections

☠ Theoretical risk of pancreatitis and pancreatic cancer (clinically unproven)

Dipeptidyl peptidase-4 (DPP-4) **inhibitors**: Sitagliptin, linagliptin
Mechanism: DPP-4 is an enzyme that degrades pancreatic incretins; DPP-4 inhibitors therefore potentiate the action of incretins and therefore stimulate insulin secretion
Benefits:

- Much reduced risk of hypos compared to sulphonylureas
- Weight neutral
- Oral preparation

Sodium-glucose transport protein-2 (SGLT-2) inhibitors
Mechanism: Act on the nephron to induce glucosuria by blocking SGLT-2 at the proximal tubule
Benefits:

- No risk of hypos
- Improves the cardiovascular risk factors of diabetes
- Associated with weight loss

☠ Chronic glucosuria increases risk of candida and UTI

HYPOGLYCAEMIA

Causes

Divided into: Reactive (occurs after drug or 2–5 h post-prandially)
Fasting (occurs > 5 h post-prandially)

I.A.T.R.O.G^2.E.N.I.C.

Insulin (i.e. in diabetics)
- Insulin excess: Distinguished from endogenous insulin by plasma C-peptide absence
- Sulphonylureas, esp. chlorpropamide, glibenclamide, esp. in elderly and renal impairment
- β-blockers: β2 → gluconeogenesis ↓, glucagon secretion ↓; β1 → masks sympathetic response (although sweating may still occur, being mediated via muscarinic receptor M3)

Alcohol
- Acute: Alcohol dehydrogenase → NADH ↑ → hepatic gluconeogenesis ↓
- Chronic: ACTH deficiency, malnutrition

Toxins
- Aspirin overdose (esp. in children), paracetamol overdose (hepatic necrosis)
- Quinine, pentamidine
- Ackee (hypoglycine) – Jamaican vomiting sickness

Reactive – 'post-prandial hypoglycaemia'
- Idiopathic: Symptoms occur 1–2 h after heavy carbohydrate meal
- Secondary: Mild type 2 diabetes, post-gastrectomy (= 'dumping syndrome') TPN (following sudden cessation of IV hypertonic dextrose)

Organ failure – renal/liver
- Causes: Gluconeogenesis ↓
  - Insulin metabolism ↓
  - Glycogen reserve ↓: Liver failure only
  - Renal dialysis: Glucose-rich dialysate causes reactive hypoglycaemia

Glycogen storage disease/**G**alactosaemia
- Glycogen storage disease 1 (von Gierke): Glucose-6-phosphatase or translocase deficiency
  - PC: Stunted growth, hepatomegaly, hepatic adenoma
  - Ix: **G.L.U.T.**: **G**lucose ↓, **L**actic acidosis, **U**ric acid, **T**riglycerides ↑
- Galactosaemia and fructose intolerance – both cause reactive hypoglycaemia in infants

Endocrine
- **H**ypoadrenalism: Addison, due to hypocortisolism (adrenaline deficiency does **not** cause)
- **H**ypothyroidism, esp. myxoedema coma
- **H**ypopituitarism (due to TSH and ACTH deficiency; isolated GH deficiency does **not** cause)

Neoplasia
- Insulin-secreting (commonest cause of fasting hypoglycaemia):
  - Insulinoma: 70% solitary adenoma, 10% multiple (MeN-1), 10% ectopic, 10% malignant – commonest in women in 50s
  - Nesidioblastosis, esp. children
  - Carcinoid
- Insulin-like growth factors/insulin-receptor autoantibodies:
  - Adrenal or hepatocellular carcinoma
  - Mesothelioma, large retroperitoneal fibrosarcoma; haemangiopericytoma
  - Hodgkin lymphoma (insulin receptor autoAbs – may also occur without neoplasia)

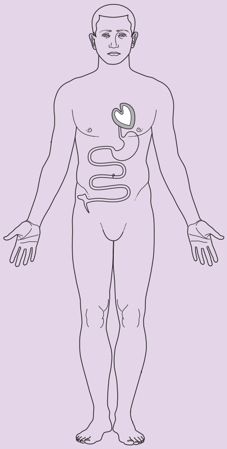
Infection: Malaria
Catabolic states: Starvation, esp. neonates, due to ↓ glycogen reserve, sepsis, maternal diabetes

PC

F^4.A.S^2.T^2.i.N.G.

Fatigue/**F**ierce (aggressive)/**F**unny turn/**F**ocal neurological signs, i.e. 'neuroglycopenic symptoms':
  Worse in morning, pre-prandially,or post-exercise; relieved by meal
  Also headache
  Focal neurological signs: Transient hemiplegia, diplopia, dysarthria, ataxia, perioral paraesthesia
Appetite ↑
Sympathetic – pallor (α1 receptor)/**S**weating (M3 receptor)
Tachycardia, palpitations (β1 receptor)/**T**remor (β2 receptor)
Neurological:
  Seizures, confused, coma
  Chronic: Amnesia, dementia, psychosis (may also occur 2° to frequent diabetic asymptomatic 'hypos')
Gain, weight: Chronic hypoglycaemia, esp. with insulinoma

(Whipple triad of insulinoma: wt gain + hypoglycaemia Sx + blood glucose ↓)



Ix

Bloods: Capillary blood glucose <2.5 mmol/l (normal = 3.5–5.5 mmol/l)
Insulin + C-peptide levels:

- Elevated insulin and low C-peptide = exogenous insulin
- Elevated insulin and normal–high C-peptide = endogenous insulin secretion

Urine: Sulphonylurea assay (is the patient secretly taking sulphonylureas?)
Radiol: MRI pancreas

Rx

Acute:
20 g glucose PO, or 50 ml dextrose 50% w/v IV ± dextrose infusion drip: Use large vein, and leave needle in vein for a while, to reduce risk of thrombophlebitis

Glucagon (1 mg IM): onset = 15 min; offset = 30 min; contraindicated in liver failure or insulinoma

Chronic:
Dumping syndrome:

- Frequent small snacks of complex carbohydrate
- Dietary fibre, guar gum, acarbose

Diabetics: Review medication/education regarding eating, exercise/MedicAlert bracelet

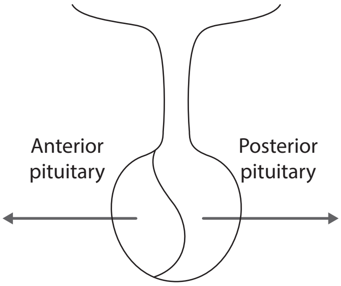
Insulinoma:
Diazoxide or thiazide: Inhibits insulin release (used pre-operatively)
Streptozotocin: Inhibits β-cell growth (used in malignant disease)
Adenoma resection, subtotal pancreatectomy

HYPOPITUITARISM – CAUSES

Anatomy

Acidophilic **P.G.** Tips tea – acid-like
Prolactin
Growth hormone

Basophilic **F.L.A.T.** – base
FSH
LH
ACTH
TSH



ADH
Oxytocin

Causes

D.I.V.I.N.I.T.Y.

Developmental:
  Hypothalamic: Kallman syndrome – gonadotrophin deficiency and anosmia
  Pituitary: Genetic panhypopituitarism (*Pit* 1 or *Propl* mutations), isolated GHRH deficiency
  'Empty sella syndrome':

- Congenital: Usually a rim of pituitary tissue exists to allow normal pituitary function
- Acquired: Pituitary mass may silently infarct with CSF replacement

Infection: TB, toxoplasmosis, fungi (PCP, histoplasmosis)
Vascular
  Infarct: Diabetes, vasculitis, Sheehan syn. (post-partum haemorrhage – delayed presentation)
  Haemorrhage or compression by internal carotid aneurysm
Inflammation/**I**nfiltrative:
  Autoimmune: Lymphocytic hypophysitis
  Sarcoidosis, granulomatous hypophysitis
  Haemochromatosis, histiocytosis X
Neoplasia:
  Pituitary: Macroadenoma (commonest):

in order of frequency ↓
  Gonadotrope: Silent or non-functioning, i.e. no secretion or secretion of uncombined α(constant) or β subunits
  Acidophils: Prolactinoma (hyperprolactinaemia), growth hormone (acromegaly)
  Basophils: ACTH (Cushing – usually microadenoma), TSH (hyperthyroidism – rare)

- Hypothalamic: craniopharyngioma (Rathke's pouch); pineal germinoma, chordoma
- Other: Brain metastasis, glioma, meningioma, arachnoid cyst

Injury: Surgery, trauma, birth injury (2nd commonest)
Toxin: Radiotherapy – for brain tumour
Y: ps**Y**chosocial deprivation: GHRH deficiency

HYPOPITUITARISM – PC

Endocrine dysfunction

If the cause of hypopituitarism is a functioning pituitary macroadenoma, the clinical syndrome will be dominated by the effects of excess secreted hormone:

- Prolactin (infertility, galactorrhoea)
- GH (acromegaly)
- Uncommon: ACTH (Cushing); TSH (thyrotoxicosis)

Hypopituitarism due to any cause results in the following order of endocrine deficiencies:

SEX G.u.I.T.A.R.

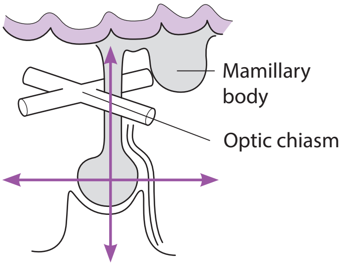
SEX hormone-releasers – gonadotrophins: FSH, LH
  Menopause-like symptoms: Amenorrhoea, infertility, hot-flushes loss of pubic/axillary hair, dyspareunia, breast atrophy
  Loss of libido; impotence; infertility (azoospermia); regression of secondary sex characteristics (soft testicles, fine facial wrinkles)
  Adolescent: Delayed puberty
  Anaemia: Normochromic, normocytic

Growth hormone:
  Children: Failure to grow
  Weakness, muscle atrophy, fatigue, depression
  Abdominal obesity, cholesterol ↑, HDL ↓ → atherosclerosis
Increased prolactin (due to loss of tonic dopamine inhibition):
  galactorrheoa, amenorrhea or impotence, infertility
TSH: Hypothyroidism
ACTH: Hypocortisolism → hypomineralocorticoidism
Renal (ADH): Diabetes insipidus

Tumour growth

Cerebral
Personality change
Focal epilepsy or hemiparesis – either direct compression or via carotid artery occlusion in cavernous sinus
Obstructive hydrocephalus

Ophthalmological
Visual-field deficit (70%) – superior-outer quadrantanopia or bitemporal hemianopia
Bilateral central visual acuity or red-vision loss (esp. pituitary apoplexy)
Cranial nerve palsies III, IV, Va, VI via cavernous sinus occlusion



CSF rhinorrhoea

Hypothalamic
Temperature, sleep, appetite dysregulation

Dura stretching
Chronic headache in 40%
- Also due to endocrine effects

Acute headache: Pituitary apoplexy
- Also meningism, drowsiness, bilateral central visual field loss
- Due to haemorrhagic infarction of pituitary tumour

HYPOPITUITARISM – IX

Pituitary function tests

In order of hormone deficiency: **SEX G.u.I.T.A.R.**

SEX hormone-releasers – gonadotrophins: FSH, LH

Bloods:
- Testosterone ↓ (men) or oestradiol ↓ (women)
- FSH and LH ↓
- Anaemia: Normochromic, normocytic

Dynamic: LHRH challenge: Basal LH normally ↑ x2

Growth hormone

Bloods:
- IGF-1 ↓ or ↑ if GH-macroadenoma is cause of hypopituitarism
- Cholesterol ↑

Dynamic:
- Insulin tolerance test: GH normally ↑ to> 20 IU/l (glucose must ↓ to <2.2 mmol/l)
- GHRH challenge (or L-arginine or L-DOPA): GH should ↑ to >20 IU/l

Increased prolactin

Bloods:
- Prolactin >3600 mIU/l – prolactinoma (commonest functioning macroadenoma)
- 500–3600 mIU/l: Infundibular disconnection, e.g. other type pituitary tumour

TSH

Bloods: TSH↓; fT4 ↓

Dynamic: TRH challenge: TSH normally ↑ to 5–20 IU/l at 20 min; <5 IU/l: hypopituitarism; >20 IU/l: hypothalamic disease (supersensitivity)

ACTH

Bloods:
- Early-morning cortisol ↓ (often normal in early adrenal insufficiency)
- ACTH ↓
- Other: Na$^+$ ↓, K$^+$ ↑; glucose ↓; eosinophils ↑, lymphocytes ↑

Dynamic:
- Synacthen test: Should be normal in pituitary insufficiency
- Insulin tolerance test: Cortisol normally >600 mmol/l, or ↑ ×2 from baseline
- CRH challenge: Basal ACTH ↑ 2–4-fold

Cushing syndrome (rarely): 24-hour urine free cortisol; overnight dexamethasone suppression test

Renal (ADH): Diabetes insipidus

Bloods: Serum osmolality and Na$^+$ ↓

Urine: Urine osmolality ↑

Dynamic:
- Water-deprivation test (for 8 h) – diabetes insipidus is diagnosed if:
  - Serum osmolality >300 mosm/kg
  - Urine osmolality <300 mosm/kg
- Since cortisol deficiency may give false –ve, give dexamethasone before test
- Correctable by prior administration of intranasal desmopressin ('cranial diabetes')

Dynamic tests are performed together as part of **'triple stimulation test'**, i.e. LHRH (IV) + TRH (IV) + insulin tolerance test
Insulin tolerance test is seldomly performed, due to danger of hypoglycaemia in adrenal deficiency

Anatomical localisation

Skull X-ray: Enlarged pituitary fossa, erosion of clinoid processes (historical test)
MRI/CT brain
Goldman's perimetry: Bilateral upper outer quadrantanopia; later, bitemporal hemianopia

HYPOPITUITARISM – RX

Tumour

Medical:

Prolactinoma: Dopamine agonists (bromocriptine, quinagolide, cabergoline):
- Shrink prolactinomas
- Shrink 10% of other pituitary macroadenomas, incl. non-functioning

Acromegaly: Somatostatin analogues (octreotide, lanreotide): Inhibit secretion of GH-secreting adenomas, but only cause shrinkage in 10%

Surgical: Trans-sphenoidal/trans-frontal hypophysectomy

Ind: First-line Rx in non-functioning adenomas; acromegaly; Cushing
- Improves visual acuity/field in 70% pts

☠: Recurrence in 20% (reduced by radiotherapy)

Radiotherapy (external/yttrium implant):

Ind: Used as an adjuvant to surgery, or where surgery inappropriate

Hormone replacement

Sex hormone-releasers – gonadotrophins: FSH, LH
- ♀: EthinylE2 or conjugated E2 for 1st–3rd weeks + medroxyprogesterone in 3rd week (if uterus) with withdrawal bleed on 4th week
- ♂ Testosterone for low libido: Testosterone enanthate (IM every 2 weeks)/decanoate (PO)/ transdermal or implant

Fertility:
- Human menopausal gonadotrophins
- Human chorionic gonadotrophins (LH analogue)
- Recombinant GnRH:
  - Simulates normal pulsatile release of GnRH via pump
  - Less risk of ovarian hyperstimulation and multiple gestation

Growth hormone
- Human recombinant, subcutaneous GH
- GHRH – experimental: Simulates normal pulsatile release of GH

Increased prolactin: Only need to treat if prolactinoma – see under Tumour (above)

TSH
- T4: 75–150 μg/day

  ☠ AF, angina, osteoporosis
  Addisonian crisis: Must replace cortisol first, if deficiency exists

ACTH
- Hydrocortisone: 10 mg mane + 5 mg noon + 5 mg evening
- MedicAlert bracelet
- Need to ↑ in event of illness or operation, e.g. 20 mg tds–qds

NB: Fludrocortisone unnecessary, as ACTH is not a significant releaser of aldosterone

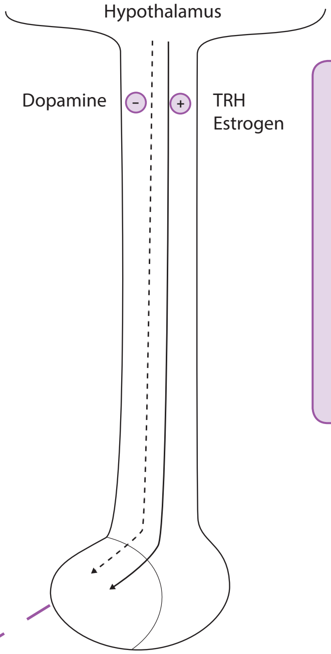
Renal (ADH)
- Desmopressin: DDAVP (PO/intranasal)

HYPERPROLACTINAEMIA

Causes

Higher brain centres

Stress: Pain (incl. venepuncture), infection, organ failure, esp. renal
Sleep: Pre-awakening
Seizures: 10–20 min postictal or syncope
Sex: Orgasm



Loss of dopamine inhibition

Hypothalamo-infundibular disconnection:

- Pituitary tumour (any type) or craniopharyngioma
- Pituitary surgery (with damage to stalk)
- Pituitary radiotherapy
- Sarcoid, TB, histiocytosis X

Dopamine antagonists:

- Neuroleptics, TCAs, SSRLs or opioids
- Metoclopramide
- Verapamil

Endocrine stimulation

Hypothyroidism:
T4 ↓ → TRH ↑ → PRL ↑

Oestrogen:

- Pregnancy
    - ↑ size of pre-existing prolactinoma
    - <12 weeks postpartum
- Polycystic ovaries
- Pill (OCP)

Autonomous secretion

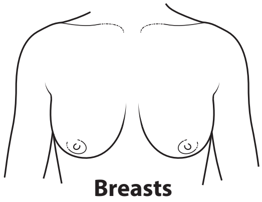
Pituitary tumour: Commonest (40%)

- Prolactinoma
    - Microadenoma: women – present early
    - Macroadenoma: men – present later!
- Acromegaly

Ectopic prolactin secretion: Small-cell lung, renal cell carcinoma

Prolactin

Sensory afferents to hypo-thalamus



Chest wall stimulation

Breast-feeding; self-examination
Trauma
VZV of thoracic dermatome

PC

Galactorrhoea: Women (rare in men)

Hypogonadotrophic hypogonadism (**GnRH** ↓, gonadotrophins ↓, sex steroids ↓)
♀: Amenorrhoea, infertility
♂: Loss of libido, impotence, infertility (azoospermia)
Osteoporosis

Panhypopituitarism (if due to prolactinoma)
Endocrine deficiencies (**Sex G.u.I.T.A.R.**): Mass effect – headache, hemianopia

Ix

Prolactin (daytime levels)

mIU/l	Cause
<500	Normal
500–3600	Any cause, except prolactin macroadenoma *so if MRI shows pituitary macroadenoma, then cause is infundibular disconnection and the treatment is surgery*
>3600	Prolactin macroadenoma or pregnancy *so if MRI shows pituitary macroadenoma, treat with dopamine agonist*

Dynamic tests
Prolactin: Give domperidone or metoclopramide
Hypopituitarism: Triple stimulation test – LHRH, TRH, insulin tolerance test

MRI pituitary ± visual fields

Rx

Dopamine agonists: Bromocriptine, quinagolide, cabergoline (fewer side-effects)
Ind: Secreting prolactinomas: First-line therapy; 90% respond:

- Within hours, prolactin level normalizes
- Within days–weeks, tumour shrinks
- Can attempt withdrawal after 2 years, as tumour fibroses

Non-secreting prolactinoma + pregnancy:

- Give prophylactically for 6 months pre-conception to ↓ risk of tumour expansion
- Bromocriptine also used for symptomatic expansion during pregnancy

☠: N+V, postural hypotension, Raynaud syn., nasal stuffiness, constipation

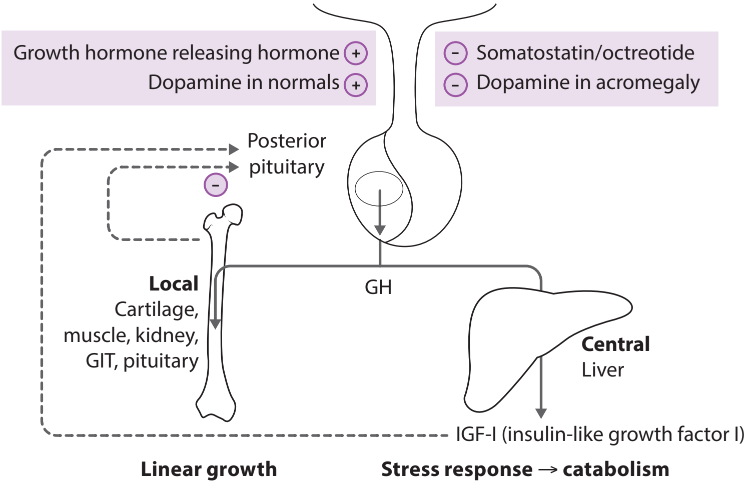
Trans-sphenoidal microadenectomy
Ind: Intolerant or resisant to dopamine agonists
Non-secreting tumour/disconnection: 90% cure, but may relapse

Radiotherapy: Ind: Adjunct to surgery

ACROMEGALY

Growth hormone – Normal physiology

Growth hormone is required for both growth and the catabolic response in stressful situations


Growth hormone releasing hormone +
Dopamine in normals +
– Somatostatin/octreotide
– Dopamine in acromegaly
Posterior pituitary
–
GH
Local
Cartilage, muscle, kidney, GIT, pituitary
Central
Liver
IGF-I (insulin-like growth factor I)
Linear growth
Stress response → catabolism

Causes

Pituitary

Epi: Prevalence 5/100,000; age 30–50 years (uncommonly children)

Types:

Adenoma (90%):

- G-Protein Gsα activating mutation → autonomous growth hormone ± prolactin secretion
- Acidophilic adenomas → acromegaly

Genetic syndrome with pituitary adenoma (9%):

- Multiple endocrine neoplasia 1 (MEN-1):
    - Pituitary adenoma, parathyroidism, hyper-, pancreatic insulinoma or gastrinoma
- McCune–Albright syndrome = polyostotic fibrous dysplasia + pigmented patches, due to Gsα activating mutation in mosaic of tissues
- Carney's complex: Spotty pigmentation + myxomas + endocrine tumours
- Familial acromegaly and gigantism: Loss of heterozygosity in tumour cells

Carcinoma (1%)

Extrapituitary

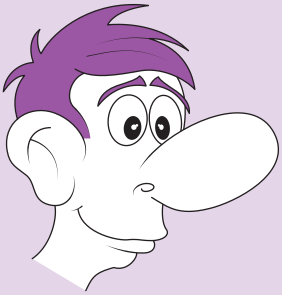
Types:

GHRH secretion: APUDoma (e.g. bronchial carcinoid), small-cell carcinoma, hypothalamic hamartoma

GH secretion: Pancreatic islet cell

PC

G.I.A.N.T. C.O.N.K.



Growth '*acromegaly*' = extremity enlargement:
  Nose: Broad; enlarged sinuses; supraorbital ridge prominence
  Mouth: Prognathism; teeth parting; loss; deep voice; macroglossia
  Skull: Frontal bossing; hat size ↑
  Hands: Spade-like (e.g. ring size ↑); hyperhidrosis
  Feet: Shoe size ↑ ; heel pad thickening (on X-ray)
  Gigantism: If onset occurs before epiphyseal fusion (children)
Insulin resistance or diabetes mellitus (25%):
  Diabetes mellitus; acanthosis nigricans; skin tags
  Hypertriglyceridaemia (due to ↓ lipoprotein lipase activity)
Arthritis: Hips, knees; spine (kyphosis, spinal stensosis, cauda equina syn.)
Neurology: Headache; carpal or tarsal tunnel syndromes; proximal myopathy
Tumour effects:
  Homonymous hemianopia
  Panhypopituitarism, incl. hypogonadism
  Hyperprolactinoma: Galactorrhoea, hirsutism, amenorrhoea

Cardiac:
  Hypertension
  Ischaemic heart disease; CVA: mortality rate = 2×↑
  Dilated cardiomyopathy; cardiac failure
Obstructive sleep apnoea in 60%, due to macroglossia
Neoplasia: Colonic polyps, adenocarcinoma
Kidney stones/hypercalciuria: Normocalcaemic, but PO_4↑ and vitamin D↑

Ix

Insulin-like growth factor I (IGF-I): Does not fluctuate over course of day (unlike GH)
Oral glucose tolerance test (OGTT): GH normally become undetectable following glucose challenge

Rx

Surgical: Trans-sphenoidal or transfrontal hypophysectomy:

- Curative for 90% microadenomas (i.e. <1 cm); less successful for macroadenomas
- ☠ : Panhypopituitarism in 10%; meningitis; haemorrhage

Medical:

Somatostatin analogue: Octreotide or lanreotide (inhibits GH and PRL secretion) – rapid relief of headache, perspiration, obstructive sleep apnoea and carpal tunnel in >90% pts

Dopamine agonists: Bromocriptine, cabergoline – effective in only 10%, but have additive effect with octreotide

GH-receptor antagonists: Pegrisomant

Radiotherapy: GH levels decrease slowly over 10 years

HYPOTHYROIDISM – CAUSES

H.A^3.T.R.E.D.

Hashimoto's thyroiditis

Epi: Middle-aged women; assoc. with other organ-based autoimmune disease, e.g. DM

PATH: Lymphocytic and macrophage infiltrate with lymphoid follicles

Course: T4 ↓ → euthyroidism in 40%; a few pts begin/become temporarily hyperthyroid

Ix: Anti-thyroglobulin (TG) and anti-myeloperoxidase (MPO)

Atrophic/**A**utoimmune, other/**A**myloid and other infiltrative

Atrophic thyroiditis:

PATH: Fibrosis (limited to capsule) and deposition of hydrophilic glycosaminoglycans

Course: May represent end-stage Hashimoto or carbimazole-treated Graves

Ix: Anti-TSH receptor-blocking Abs (cf. Graves = anti-TSH receptor-stimulatory Abs)

Autoimmune, other:

- Graves disease: Late, or following radioiodine therapy or surgery
- Riedel's thyroiditis (part of multifocal fibrosclerosis, e.g. alveolitis, mediastinitis)
- Scleroderma

Amyloidosis, sarcoidosis, haemochromatosis

Toxins/Nutritional

Anti-thyroid treatment: Carbimazole, radioiodine (^{131}I), surgery

Other toxin:

- Lithium, tolbutamide, aminosalicylic acid
- Cassava excess: Thiocyanate inhibits iodide uptake in thyroid ('trapping')

Nutritional (iodine excess or deficiency):

- Excess: Amiodarone (blocks iodination and coupling reactions), or nuclear fallout (^{131}I)
- Deficiency: Endemic cretinism in Andes, Himalayas, New Guinea (>10% population)
  Epi: Associated with high CaCO$_3$ in water; pregnancy (high demand)
  PC: Massive goitre; often euthyroid due to compensation

Resistance to thyroid hormone:

Autosomal dominant condition, resulting from thyroid receptor β mutation

Cases are often clinically euthyroid, but have abnormal TFTs – ↑ TSH, ↑ fT4 and ↑ fT3

PC: Learning disability, delayed skeletal maturation, goitre; occasionally thyrotoxic!

Endocrine:

Hypopituitarism, e.g. pituitary tumour; order of endocrine deficiency = (**Sex G.u.I.T.A.R.** = sex hormones GH → TSH → ACTH →ADH: *p. 333*)

Addison disease: Due to cortisol ↓ or polyglandular autoimmunity (PGAS-2)

Ix : Anti-adrenal, anti-MPO

Developmental:

Thyroid aplasia; ectopic thyroid (e.g. lingual, trachea) – commonest congenital cause

Dyshormonogenesis: Peroxidase or iodine transferase deficiency:

PC: Deaf mutism, learning disability = Pendred syndrome

Ix: Perchlorate discharge test: KClO$_4$ leaches out unincorporated ^{131}I

Down or Turner syndromes

HYPOTHYROIDISM – PC

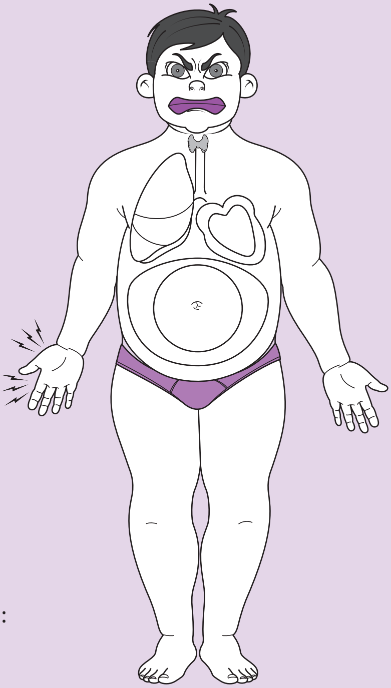
S.H^4.O.W.I.N.G. O.F.F. *(their signs)*

Skin

'Myxoedema' = non-pitting, doughy oedema due to impaired hyaluronidase, leading to mucopolysaccharide accumulation:

- Facies: Puffy, toad-like, apathetic; malar flush; peaches and cream (β-caroteinaemia)
- Tongue: Macroglossia, glossitis (pernicious anaemia)
- Voice: Hoarse, gruff (myxoedmatous larynx)

Other: Erythema ab igne (patient is always cold), pruritus
Hair: Alopecia; loss of outer 1/3 eyebrow



Hypometabolism/**H**eart disease

Cold intolerance; hypothermic (myxoedema coma)
Cardiac:

- Bradycardia (worsened with digoxin!)
- Dilated cardiomyopathy (glycosaminoglycan infiltrate)
- Ischaemic heart disease: Direct effect and via hypercholesterolaemia

Hypoglycaemia/**H**ypercholesterol and triglyceridaemia

Ophthalmic

Xanthelasma (and tendinous xanthoma) due to hypercholesterolaemia
Bitemporal hemianopia due to pituitary enlargement from thyrotroph hyperplasia
Graves disease ophthalmopathy

Weight gain, anorexia

Intestinal: Constipation, abdominal distension (incl. ascites)

Neuropsychiatric

Dementia (esp. amnesia)/depression (and paradoxical mania):

- Congenital T4 ↓: Mental retardatation – 'cretinism'; assoc. posterior fontanelle enlargement
- Juvenile-onset T4 ↓: Mental-slowing only

Cerebellar ataxia, dizziness, drop-attacks
Muscle: Proximal myopathy (CK, AST, LDH ↑), slowly relaxing reflexes, myotonia
Carpal tunnel syndrome
Deafness (otitis media or Pendred syndrome)

Goitre

Firm, irregular: Hashimoto's thyroiditis
Firm, regular: Graves disease ('burnt-out' or treated)
Woody, hard: Riedel's thyroiditis
No goitre: Atrophic thyroiditis

Oedema/effusions: Pericardial, pleural, ascites, joint

Females: Menorrhagia or amenorrhoea

Fertility: Infertility delayed or premature puberty; galactorrhoea – all due to secondary hyperprolactinaemia

HYPOTHYROIDISM – IX AND RX

Ix

Bloods: **TFT**

- TSH ↑: Most sensitive test
  False –ve: Secondary hypothyroidism due to hypopituitarism (TSH ↓)
  False +ve:
  - 'Sick euthyroid', e.g. recovery phase of severe systemic illness
  - Generalized thyroid resistance (patients will have high T4 and T3)
- fT4 ↓:
  False –ve: Subclinical hypothyroidism (still requires Rx due to higher risk of ischaemic heart disease; clinical symptoms occur with TSH >5 × upper-limit normal)
  False +ve: 'Sick euthyroid', due to T4 degradation ↑ and rT3 formation ↑
- fT3 ↓:
  False –ve: common, because ↓ TSH causes preferential release of T3 rather than T4
  False +ve: 'Sick euthyroid'

NB: **Free** T4 and **free** T3 are better than total amounts, as they are not influenced by changes in thyroxine-binding globulin (TBG), which may decrease in severe illness, and increase with states such as hepatitis, pregnancy or taking the contraceptive pill

AutoAbs

- Anti-myeloperoxidase (MPO) or anti-thyroglobulin (TG): Graves; Hashimoto
- TSH receptor-stimulating antibody (Graves)

Other

- Biochem: Na^+ ↓; cholesterol, triglycerides ↑; CK, AST, LDH ↑ (sarcolemma damage)
- FBC: Macrocytic anaemia; megaloblastosis suggests coexistent pernicious anaemia
- Cause: ESR ↑↑ – Riedel's thyroiditis; Synacthen test – Addison; FSH, LH – pituitary failure

Radiol/**S**urgical: Hashimoto's thyroiditis may present with asymmetric goitre, which can be confused with multinodular goitre or carcinoma. In these cases, USS and FNA help to distinguish

Rx

Thyroxine, lifelong: Dose 25–200 μg/day

☠: Angina or myocardial infarction in elderly, so introduce dose gradually (by 25 μg every 3 months)

Addison – due to unmasking of hypoadrenalism or hypopituitarism:

- Prior Synacthen test if hypoadrenal features; or, if in doubt
- Cover with hydrocortisone

Acute psychosis

HYPOTHYROIDISM RX – COMPLICATIONS

Myxoedematous coma

Precipitants

Sedatives
MI, CVA
Infection

Ventilatory support

Ventilate: pts often develop type 2 respiratory failure

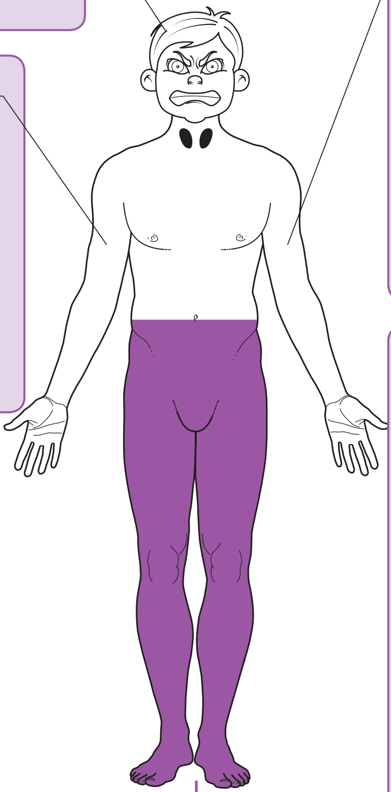
Assessment

A.B.C.D.
C.O.A.T.
- **C**ardiac monitor:
  - Bradycardia, heart block, long QT interval
- **O**$_2$
- **A**BP
- **T**PR: Hypothermic

Warming

Hydration

CVP line
IV fluids
- Often hypertensive due to compensatory catecholamines, but hypovolaemic
- Hypotension is a poor prognostic sign
- Give 5–50% dextrose, as often hypoglycaemic
- Inotropes are ineffective



Medication

Hydrocortisone: Pre-treat
Thyroxine
- Liothyronine (IV T3):
  - 5–20 µg od for 3 days
  - Rapid onset and offset
  - Overcomes need to convert peripherally, which is suppressed in coma and infection

  ☠: Labile concentrations – angina (give prophylaxis GTN)
- T4 PO or nasogastric, 25–50 µg od

Antibiotics, broad-spectrum

Complications

Hypoglycaemia: 50% dextrose, 50 ml
Seizures (25%): Anticonvulsants
Psychosis: Antipsychotics
ICP ↑: ITU, hyperventilation, inotropes

HYPERTHYROIDISM – CAUSES

G.A.I.N. of F.U.N.C.T.io.N.

Hyperstimulation

Graves disease
  Epi: Prevalence: 1–2%; F:M = 10:1, esp. post-partum; age: 20–40 y
  PATH: Lymphocytic infiltrate with follicles; follicle cell hyperplasia, columnar metaplasia; scalloping of colloid adjacent to follicle cells due to active endocytosis
  Course: T4 ↑ → 40% euthyroidism → 20 % T4 ↓ (may present as hypoT4ism)
    Neonatal thyrotoxicosis due to maternal LATS (IgG) crossing placenta in 3rd trimester
  Ix: Anti-TSH receptor stimulatory Abs ('long-acting thyroid stimulator')

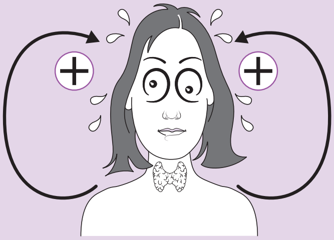
Follicle destruction

Autoimmune, other
  Hashimoto's thyroiditis: Early
  Post-partum lymphocytic thyroiditis
    PC: Painless goitre
    Course: Temporary T4 ↑ or ↓ → 10% develop permanent hypoT4ism
    Ix: Anti-TSH receptor blocking Abs
Infection: de Quervain's thyroiditis (viral, granulomatous)
  Epi: Women, 20–40 y, assoc. with HLA-B35
  PATH: Coxsackie, influenza or EBV
  PC: Subacute; painful goitre or dysphagia; fever
  Course: Transient ↑ T4 → mild ↓ T4 (exhaustion) → recovery over 2–4 months

Autonomous secretion

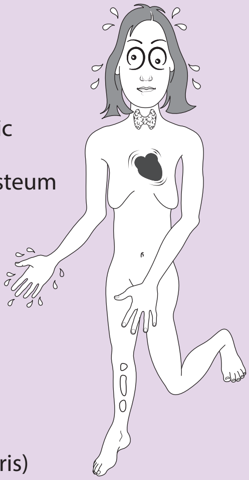
Nodular goitre (toxic multinodular goitre or Plummer disease)
  Epi: Age >50 y
  Cause: Long-standing non-toxic goitre, or iodine deficiency

Follicular adenoma (>2.5 cm)/**F**ollicular thyroid carcinoma (esp. metastatic)
U: McC**U**ne–Albright syndrome: GTP activating mutation
Neoplasia: Ovarian teratoma (benign struma ovarii): T4 secretion
Choriocarcinoma: Hydatidiform mole; TSH-related peptide secretion
Toxins
  Iodide, incl. amiodarone (Jod–Basedow disease)
  Thyroid tissue ingestion, e.g. hamburgers; epidemic (T4-toxicosis, with normal T3)
  T4 over-replacement
Neoplasia: Pituitary adenoma – TSH-secreting (rare)



HYPERTHYROIDISM – PC

S.H^3.O.W.I.N.G. O.F.F. *(their signs)*



Skin

Sweaty, erythematous palms; smooth, salmon-pink face

Graves disease-associated

- Pretibial myxoedema:
  - Thickened skin over legs, feet; clearly demarcated; erythema; pruritic
  - Accentuated hair follicles (peau d'orange)
- Acropachyderma: Clubbing; onycholysis, thick skin, hypertrophic periosteum

Autoimmune-associated: vitiligo, alopecia

Hypermetabolism/**H**yperdynamic circulation

Fever, esp. with thyrotoxic storm, or viral infection

Hyperdynamic circulation:

- Rapid, bounding pulse or AF
- Hypertension
- High-output cardiac failure, dilated cardiomyopathy

Hyperglycaemia

Ophthalmic

Upper lid retraction (sympathetic stimulation of levator palpebrae superioris)

O/E: Staring; infrequent blinking; lid lag on rapid descent

Graves disease ophthalmopathy:

PATH: Due to deposition of hydrophilic glycosaminoglycans in retro-orbital fat pad; lymphocyte infiltrate; muscular fibrosis

O/E:

- Exophthalmos: Superior limbic keratitis (grittiness), chemosis (discomfort, worse in morning)
- Ophthalmoplegia, esp. upward and outward
- Retro-orbital compression: Optic nerve atrophy (↓ visual acuity), papilloedema, glaucoma

Weight loss, hyperphagia

Intestinal

Diarrhoea, malabsorption, abdominal pain, N+V (severe in 'thyrotoxic storm')

Cholestasis (periportal fibrosis)

Hyposplenism

Neuropsychiatric

Emotionally labile, psychosis, depression, anxiety, fatigue

Tremor (fine, positional), chorea

Proximal myopathy (rarely ptosis), or hypokalaemic periodic paralysis (esp. in oriental men)

Goitre

PC: Dysphagia, stridor, dysphonia (due to recurrent laryngeal nerve palsy (esp. if carcinoma)

O/E: Palpation:

- Diffuse and smooth – Graves; diffuse and multinodular – toxic multinodular or Hashimoto
- Focal and mobile – cyst or adenoma; focal and immobile – carcinoma or lymphoma
- Tender – viral thyroiditis

Auscultation: Bruit in Graves, carcinoma

SVCO, esp. on raising arms (Pemberton's sign)

Lymphadenopathy: Graves, carcinoma, lymphoma

Osteoporosis/hypercalcaemia

Females: Oligomenorrhoea (less commonly menorrhagia, due to ↑ PRL), gynaecomastia

Fertility: Infertility

HYPERTHYROIDISM – IX AND RX

Ix

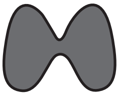
Bloods: **TFT**
- TSH ↓ or unrecordable (unless cause is TSH-secreting tumour, e.g. pituitary adenoma)
- Free T4 ↑
- Free T3 ↑: If T4 is normal, 5% of patients present with T3 thyrotoxicosis

AutoAbs
- Anti-TSH receptors: 100% specific; 90% sensitive for Graves
- Anti-myeloperoxidase (MPO), anti-thyroglobulin (TG): Graves, Hashimoto, viral, post-partum

Other
- Biochem: Ca ↑, Mg ↓, bilirubin ↑, ALP ↑, glucose ↑, ferritin ↑
- FBC: Normochromic normocytic anaemia, lymphocytosis
- Cause: ESR ↑ (viral thyroiditis), ß-HCG ↑ (choriocarcinoma)

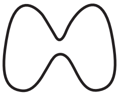
Radiol: ^{99m}Tc – **pertechnate scan**

Diffuse uptake



Graves

No uptake

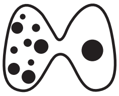


Viral thyroiditis

Post-partum thyroiditis

Ingestion of iodine or thyroxine

Nodular uptake



Toxic multinodular goitre

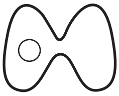
Follicular adenoma

Ectopic thyroid

↓

USS: Cystic vs solid cystic less likely to be cancer
FNA or surgical excision

Cold nodule = less activity than normal



Benign

Malignant (20% of cold nodules)

NB: Neoplastic nodules may also be 'hot'

Rx

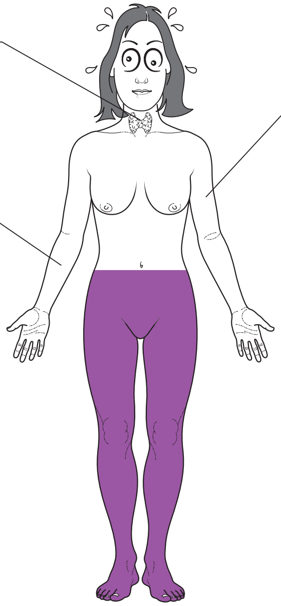
be **S.T.RI.C.T.** *with them!*

Symptomatic: Propranolol (anxiety, palpitations, tachycardia)
Thiourea: Carbimazole or propylthiouracil (PTU)
  Mechanism: ↓ thyroid peroxidase, ↓ oxidative coupling, ↓ T4 → T3, immunomodulation
  Indication: Graves or toxic multinodular goitre: Rx for 18 months; 50% relapse
  ☠: Hypersensitivity (rash, arthralgia, hepatitis – within 6 weeks), agranulocytosis
Radio-**I**odine (^{131}I)
  Mechanism: Iodine is only taken up by 'hot' nodules: the rest of the gland is atrophic
  Indication: Toxic multinodular goitre or adenoma in over-40s
  ☠: HypoT4ism (esp. in Graves), malignancy, teratogenic (avoid in women), hypoPTHism
Cause-specific:
- Viral – NSAIDS, steroids
- Gynae – surgery
- Iodide ingestion – Na perchlorate

Thyroidectomy, partial
  Indication: Treatment-resistant Graves; large goitre or adenoma
  Method: Pre-treat with thioureas for 3 months (avoids thyrotoxic storm), KI for 1 week
  ☠: Recurrent laryngeal nerve palsy (ENT exam before), hypoPTHism (usually transient)

HYPERTHYROIDISM RX – COMPLICATIONS

Thyrotoxic storm



Ventilatory support

Oxygen: 100% – esp. if in CCF

Assessment

A.B.C.D.
C.O.A.T.
  Cardiac Monitor: SVT
  O_2
  ABP
  TPR: Hyperpyrexia (>40°C)
Cooling

- Paracetamol
- Blanket
- Do not use aspirin, due to displacement of T4 from TBG

Hydration

N. saline – unless in CCF

Medication

Anti-thyroid

PTU 250 mg 4 hrly:

- Blocks iodine peroxidation

Lugol iodine (I_2/I^-):

- Give 1 h after PTU
- Blocks T4 release

Na ipodate (X-ray contrast):

- Alternative to Lugol iodine
- Blocks T4 release and T3 → T4

Dexamethasone (2 mg qds)
Inhibits T4 release and T3 → T 4
Provides adrenal support
β-Blocker/digoxin
Use β-blocker even if in CCF!
If asthmatic, use guanethidine or reserpine
Vitamin B complex

Complications

Anti-psychotics
Anti-arrhythmics/heart failure treatment
Anti-diarrhoeals/analgesics for abdominal pain

Graves disease ophthalmopathy

Rx

Conservative: Sleep propped up, lubricant eye drops
Medical: Diuretics, steroids (e.g. prednisolone 60 mg od)
Radiotherapy
Surgical: Lateral tarsorraphy, medial orbital wall decompression

Neonatal thyrotoxicosis

PATH

Transplacental transfer of maternal TSH receptor Abs (LATS) to neonate
Check neonatal TFTs at birth and 1 week – maternal antithyroid drugs may initially mask

Rx

Pregnancy:

- Symptomatic: Allows sparing or avoidance of thiourea, esp. at 3rd trimester
- Thiourea (low-dose, as Graves goes into partial remission, and risk of causing neonatal hypothyroidism and goitre, with stridor)

Neonate: β-blockers and carbimazole
Breast-feeding mother: Propylthiouracil

GOITRE

PC

'Lump in the neck'
Dysphagia
Stridor; dyspnoea

O/E

Inspection: Signs of Graves or myxoedema; scar; lingual thyroid (look at back of tongue)
Palpation: Method: palpate from behind; get patient to swallow:

- Diffuse (smooth or irregular) vs nodular
- Other masses:
    - Thyroglossal cyst (elevates on tongue protrusion)
    - Cervical lymphadenopathy (Graves, papillary carcinoma)
    - Delphian node: midline above isthmus (papillary carcinoma)

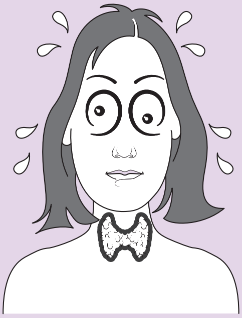
Auscultation: Bruit in Graves or carcinoma
Manoeuvres: Transillumination: Cystic vs solid nodules
Pemberton's sign: Arm elevation causes SVCO with retrosternal goitre

Causes

Euthyroid
Simple goitre, assoc. women, smoking
Nodules: Non-toxic (i.e. euthyroid), assoc. ionising radiation
Iodine deficiency, compensated

T4 ↑ G.A.I.N. of F.u.N.c.T.ion.
Graves disease: Diffuse enlargement
Autoimmune, other: Post-partum thyroiditis
Infection: de Quervain's thyroiditis (painful, fever, systemic upset)
Nodular: Toxic multinodular goitre – multiple nodules (irregular)
Follicular adenoma: Single nodule
Neoplastic: Metastatic follicular carcinoma
Toxin: Amiodarone

T4 ↓ H.A.T.R.e.D.
Hashimoto: Firm and irregular (may be mistaken for neoplasm)
Autoimmune, other: Riedel – woody hard
Toxin/Nutritional: Iodine deficiency:
  Endemic mountainous regions – often massive goitre!
  Pregnancy – increased demand
Resistance to thyroid hormone (hereditary, often euthyroid)
Developmental: Ectopic thyroid may be observed, e.g. back of tongue, above thyroid cartilage



8% population have palpable goitres!
(4 × more common in women)

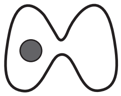
Ix

Bloods: TFTs (and associated bloods, e.g. glucose, if autoimmune disease suspected)
Thyroglobulin ↑ in most thyroid diseases and benign adenomas, but especially high in neoplasia
AutoAbs: Anti-TSH R; anti-myeloperoxidase (MPO) or anti-thyroglobulin (TG)
Radiol: Neck X-ray: Calcification – papillary ca. (stippled – psammoma bodies); medullary ca. (dense calcification)
Pertechnetate scan → if single nodule → USS ± FNA (as for thyrotoxicosis – *see p. 345*)

THYROID TUMOURS

PC

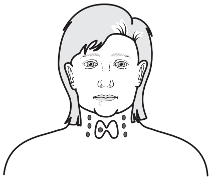
Thyroid nodule



Epi: 50% population have nodules *of any size*
5% population have nodules that are *palpable*:

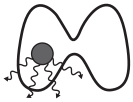
- 10% of those palpable nodules removed surgically are neoplastic
- 5% of multinodular goitres are neoplastic

Local infiltration



Dysphagia (oesophagus)
Haemoptysis (trachea); hoarseness, dysphonia (recurrent laryngeal nerve)
Neck pain: Radiates to jaw and ear

Endocrine (rare)



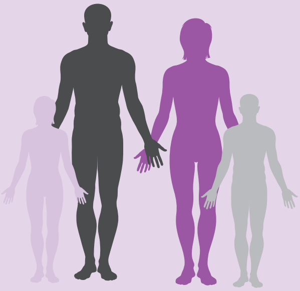
Follicular carcinoma (metastatic): Thyrotoxicosis
Medullary carcinoma:

- Cushing (ACTH)
- MEN-2a (associated phaeochromocytoma, hyperPTHism)

Types

PAP.a.'s. F.A.M.i.LY.

PAPillary (80%) – young adults (20–30s), esp. females
Aet: Radiation, iodine deficiency (TSH overstimulation), *ptc* oncogene
PATH: Psammoma bodies: Stippled calcification (radio-opaque on CXR)
PC: Fixed multifocal neck mass + lateral cervical lymphadenopathy + lung invasion
Rx: T4 – decreases TSH stimulation; surgery or ^{131}I in elderly
Prog: Good: 5-y survival 95% (best prognosis young, women); but 10% relapse after 10 y
Follicular (15%) – middle-aged
PC: Metastasizes early (lung –snowstorm appearance on CXR; bone)
Thyrotoxicosis
Prog: 5-y survival 50% (poor prognosis: Hurthle-cell variety)
Anaplastic (2%) – elderly, esp. females
PATH: Spindle and giant cells
Prog: 5-y survival 10%
Medullary (2%) – young
PATH: Parafollicular C cells (APUDoma derived from neural crest cells)
Secrete calcitonin: Forms amyloid and raises plasma calcitonin
PC: Cervical lymphadenopathy
Diarrhoea (secretion of prostaglandin, 5-HT, polypeptide)
Endocrine: MEN-2a or 2b (assoc. phaeochromocytoma, hyperPTHism), ACTH
Ix: Basal calcitonin; ^{131}I-MIBG scan
LYmphoma: 1% – elderly
Aet: Assoc. Hashimoto's thyroiditis, chronic lymphocytic thyroiditis
PATH: Immunoblastic (large-cell histiocytic)



ADRENAL INSUFFICIENCY

Causes

A.D.D.I.S.O.N.'S.

1° Hypoadrenalism ('Addison disease')

PC: Pigmentation
Ix: ACTH ↑

A.D.D.I.S.O.N.'S.
the name........

Autoimmune (90%)
  F:M = 3:1
  Assoc: PGAS-1; 2
  Ix: Anti-adrenal Abs (in 50%; may be transient)
    Steroid receptor-blocking Abs

Deficiency, enzyme – 1
  Congenital adrenal hyperplasia: 21-hydroxylase deficiency (defect in 90%)
  PC: Masculinisation of female; male infertility (not all become Addisonian)

Deficiency, enzyme – 2
  Adrenoleucodystrophy (X-linked, usually)
  PC: Epilepsy, mental retardation, spasticity

Infection: TB
  AIDS-related: CMV, histoplasmosis
  Meningococcaemia (Waterhouse–Friedrichsen syn.) – adrenal haemorrhagic infarction

Sarcoidosis

Other infiltrative disease: Amyloidosis
  Haemochromatosis

Neoplasia: Metastases, esp. from breast
  Adrenal vein thrombosis, e.g. from renal cell carcinoma

Surgery: Bilateral adrenalectomy for Cushing disease

2° Hypoadrenalism

PC: No pigmentation. Ix: ACTH ↓
Secondary: Late complication of hypopituitarism
Steroid therapy, during: Withdrawal, after several months of treatment
  Intercurrent infection or trauma, when demand exceeds supply

PC

W^2.A.S.H.E.D. O.U.T.

Weakness/**W**eight loss and anorexia

Abdo pain ↓ ('acute abdomen'): Crisis often triggered by infection, trauma or surgery (i.e. high steroid demand)

Skin

- Hyperpigmentation of skin creases and buccal mucosa (1° hypoadrenalism) – due to high ACTH or melanocyte-stimulating hormone
- Hair loss: Bodily hair, esp. females
- Vitiligo

Hypotension, postural/shock

Eosinophilia: Wheeze, asthma attack

Diarrhoea + vomiting/constipation

O: hyp**O**glycaemia

U&Es: Urea ↑, Na^+ ↓, K^+ ↑, Ca^{2+} ↑ (thiazide-like ↓ Na resorption from distal convoluted tubule)

Thyroid: Hypothyroidism, responsive to steroids

Ix

Plasma cortisol <200 nmol/l

Short Synacthen test (SST)

Method: Synacthen 250 µg (IV or IM ACTH analogue) → measure cortisol at 0, 30, 60 min (ensure patient switched to dexamethasone or prednisolone first – not hydrocortisone)

Result: Cortisol >550 nmol/l – normal
Cortisol <550 nmol/l – adrenocortical insufficiency (1°, 2°)

Differentiation of 1° vs 2° hypoadrenalism

- ACTH – high in 1°, but not 2° hypoadrenalism
- Aldosterone at 30 min into SST: Rise in 2° but not 1° hypoadrenalism
- Depot Synacthen test: Give Synacthen 1 mg IM → measure cortisol at 0, 6 and 24 h

No cortisol rise	1° hypoadrenalism
Cortisol peaks at 24 h	2° hypoadrenalism
Cortisol peaks at 6 h (to 900 mmol)	normal

Rx

Acute

- Normal saline infusion; 50% dextrose if hypoglycaemic
- Hydrocortisone 100 mg 4 hrly

Chronic

- Hydrocortisone 20 mg mane + 10 mg evening
- Fludrocortisone 0.1 mg od (not required if on high-dose hydrocortisone, or if 2° hypoadrenalism)

Education: MedicAlert bracelet; double hydrocortisone dose if intercurrent illness

CUSHING SYNDROME

PC

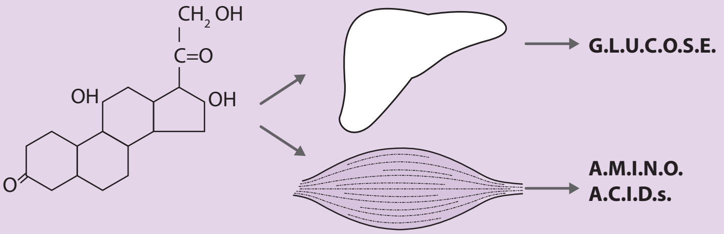
Glucocorticoids enhance breakdown of glycogen and protein to glucose and amino acids, respectively:

G.L.U.C.O.S.E.
A.M.I.N.O. A.C.I.D.s.

Glucose ↑	Diabetes mellitus; hyperphagia
Lipids	Fat redistributed centripetally: Buffalo hump; moon facies; supraclavicular fat pad Hyperlipidaemia
Ulcers, gastric	Esp. if taking NSAIDs
Children	Growth suppression
Osteo-	Osteoporosis esp. vertebral bodies; rib fractures with prominent callus formation Osteonecrosis: Avascular necrosis of bone, esp. femoral head (vasoconstriction)
Skin	Thinning, purple striae (>1 cm wide), bruises, telangiectasia, plethoric cheeks Acne; hirsutism, due to increased androgen secretion from adrenals Hyperpigmentation, due to ACTH excess Poor wound healing
Electrolytes	K^+ ↓; alkalosis, esp. when due to ectopic ACTH

ABP ↑	Diastolic hypertension, due to fluid retention and oedema
Myopathy	Proximal weakness, wasting, hoarseness (inhaled steroids – vocal fold myopathy)
Immunocompromise/**I**nfections	TB reactivation; *Aspergillus* Viruses – extensive disease: Measles; VZV; HSV (corneal dendritic ulcer – topical) Candidiasis, esp. oral with inhaled steroids
Neuropsychiatric	Fatigue Depression; psychosis; mania; emotional lability Primary intracranial hypertension
Ocular	Cataracts Glaucoma usually only from local steroid action (eye drops or nebulizer)

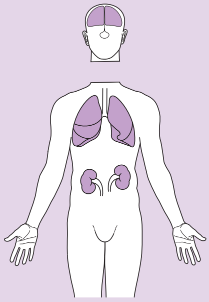
Abdomen	Acute pancreatitis
Coagulopathy	Hypercoagulability, e.g. DVT
Infertility	Amenorrhoea or impotence (pregnancy → fetal adrenal hypoplasia)
Dependence, steroid	Relative hypoadrenalism occurs during infection or trauma, necessitating an increase in steroid dose



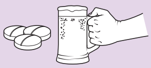
Causes

Plasma cortisol suppressible by high-dose dexamethasone
Pituitary: 'Cushing disease' (60%)
  Pituitary microadenoma (<1 cm) = 95% Cushing disease
  Epi: Young females (age 25–35; F:M = 3:1)

Plasma cortisol insuppressible by high-dose dexamethasone
Adrenal adenoma/carcinoma/nodular hyperplasia (30%)
Ectopic ACTH or CRH (10%)
e.g. bronchial (small-cell carcinoma or adenoma); ovarian ca.; APUDomas
  Epi: Elderly males



Steroid therapy (commonest overall cause)
'PseudoCushing: Alcoholism; depression; obesity; anorexia nervosa



Ix

Bloods: Morning cortisol (normal <700 nmol/l) – screens for Cushing syndrome
ACTH ↑: Ectopic ACTH >> pituitary > adrenal cause
Na^+ ↑; K^+ ↓; Alkalosis – may be only abnormality in ectopic ACTH secretion
FBC: Neutrophilia, lymphopenia

Urine: 24-hour free cortisol: Normal <140 nmol/day
17-Hydroxycorticosteroid: ↑ in pituitary; ectopic ACTH
17-Ketosteroid: ↑ in adrenal carcinoma, ectopic ACTH

Radiol: Pituitary MRI – detects 60% microadenomas
CXR/Chest CT
Abdominal CT:
- Bilateral adrenal hyperplasia
- Adrenal nodules: small = adenoma; large, necrotic = carcinoma

Special: Low-dose dexamethasone (DXM) test
  Method: 0.5 mg qds for 2 days (or 1 mg nocte) → measure plasma cortisol next morning
  Result: Morning cortisol >140 nmol/l: Cushing syndrome (not 'PseudoCushing')
High-dose dexamethasone (DXM) test
  Method: 2 mg qds for 2 days → measure plasma cortisol next morning
  Result: Plasma cortisol ↓ to 50% baseline – pituitary (but not macroadenomas)
    Plasma cortisol does not suppress – ectopic ACTH; adrenal; steroid Rx
Inferior-petrosal sinus sampling: IV CRH → 60 min sample of sinus and plasma
  ACTH and cortisol: ↑ in pituitary cause (bilateral sampling enables localisation)

Rx

Pituitary
Trans-sphenoidal microadenectomy – 80% cure rate; ☠ Panhypopituitarism
Chemical adrenalectomy: Mitotane or 11β-hydroxylase inhibition with metyrapone or ketoconazole
Surgical adrenalectomy ☠ Addison syn; Nelson syn: pigmentation due to pituitary disinhibition

Adrenal
Adenoma: Resection: ☠ Addison due to previous contralateral adrenocortical atrophy
Carcinoma: Resection; mitotane; radiotherapy for bone mets. (overall 5-year SR = 20%)

Ectopic ACTH
Primary tumour: Resection/chemotherapy; Advanced – adrenalectomy as for Cushing disease

HYPERMINERALOCORTICOIDISM

1° Hyper-aldosteronism

Adenoma, adrenal (Conn syndrome) – 75% of primary hyperaldosteronism; esp. women in 30–50s
Bilateral nodular hyperplasia
Carcinoma, adrenal – rare
Defective gene: Glucocorticoid remediable aldosteronism (GRA) – chimeric gene of aldosterone synthase with 11β-hydroxylase-1 promoter, resulting in ACTH-sensitive secretion of aldosterone in zona fasciculata

PC

Hypertension (but no oedema, due to 'aldosterone escape')
Weakness, due to K^+ ↓

Ix

Bloods: K^+ ↓, Mg^{2+} ↓, metabolic alkalosis (Na^+ ↑ uncommon)
Aldosterone ↑↑; renin ↓; ratio of aldosterone (pg/ml):plasma-renin activity >400

- Stop diuretics for 2 weeks; correct K^+
- Prior salt-loading (NaCl 1.2 g od) increases sensitivity, but avoid if SBP >115 mmHg
- Effect of standing on aldosterone: Conn – paradoxical ↓; normal or BNH – ↑

Synacthen: Conn – aldosterone slight ↑; BNH – no effect; GRA – aldosterone ↑↑

Radiol: High-resolution CT: Adenomas >1 cm; BNH – bilateral adrenal cortex enlargement
Selective adrenal vein catheterisation: Compare aldosterone:cortisol ratio from each side
Radiolabelled cholesterol + dexamethasone (inhibits normal steroidogenesis): uni- vs bilateral

Rx

Adenoma or ca. – surgery; BNH – spironolactone, amiloride; GRA – dexamethasone (↓ACTH)

2° Hyper-aldosteronism

Primary hyper-reninism: Renin-secreting renal or ovarian tumour
Renovascular disease: Renal artery stenosis; malignant hypertension
Gitelman syndrome: ↓ NaCl resorption in distal convoluted tubule defect → thiazide-like diuresis
Bartter syndrome: ↓ NaCl resorption in ascending loop of Henle → frusemide-like diuresis
Hypovolaemia: Congestive cardiac failure, hypoalbuminaemia, profuse sweating

PC

Renovascular: Hypertension, weakness due to K^+ ↓
G/B/H: Hypotension, weakness due to K^+ ↓, Mg^{2+} ↓

Ix

Bloods: Na^+, Cl^-, K^+, Mg^{2+} – all ↓; renin ↑
Urine: Ca^{2+}: Gitelman –↓ Bartter –↑ (also, prostaglandins ↑)

Rx

Bartter – amiloride, ACE inhibitor, indomethacin (reverses juxtaglomerular hypertrophy)

Hypo-aldosteronism ('apparent hypermineralocorticoidism')

Adrenal hyperplasia, congenital – 11β-hydroxylase or 17α-hydroxylase deficiency (autosomal recessive)
Adrenal insuffiency, primary
Aldosterone synthase deficiency

NB: Hyporeninemic hypoaldosteronism is a common result of diabetic nephropathy (type 4 renal tubular acidosis)

PC

Virilisation of females – 11β-hydroxylase deficiency
Hypogonadism –17α-hydroxylase deficiency
Palpitations and arrythmia due to hyperkalaemia

Ix

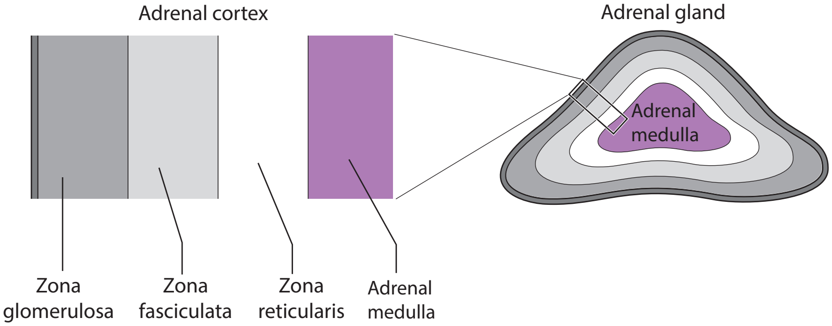
Bloods:	Hyperkalaemia
	11-deoxycorticosterone ↑ in congenital adrenal hyperplasia and DOComas
Urine:	Ratio of urine cortisol:cortisone ↑ in 11βHSD deficiency

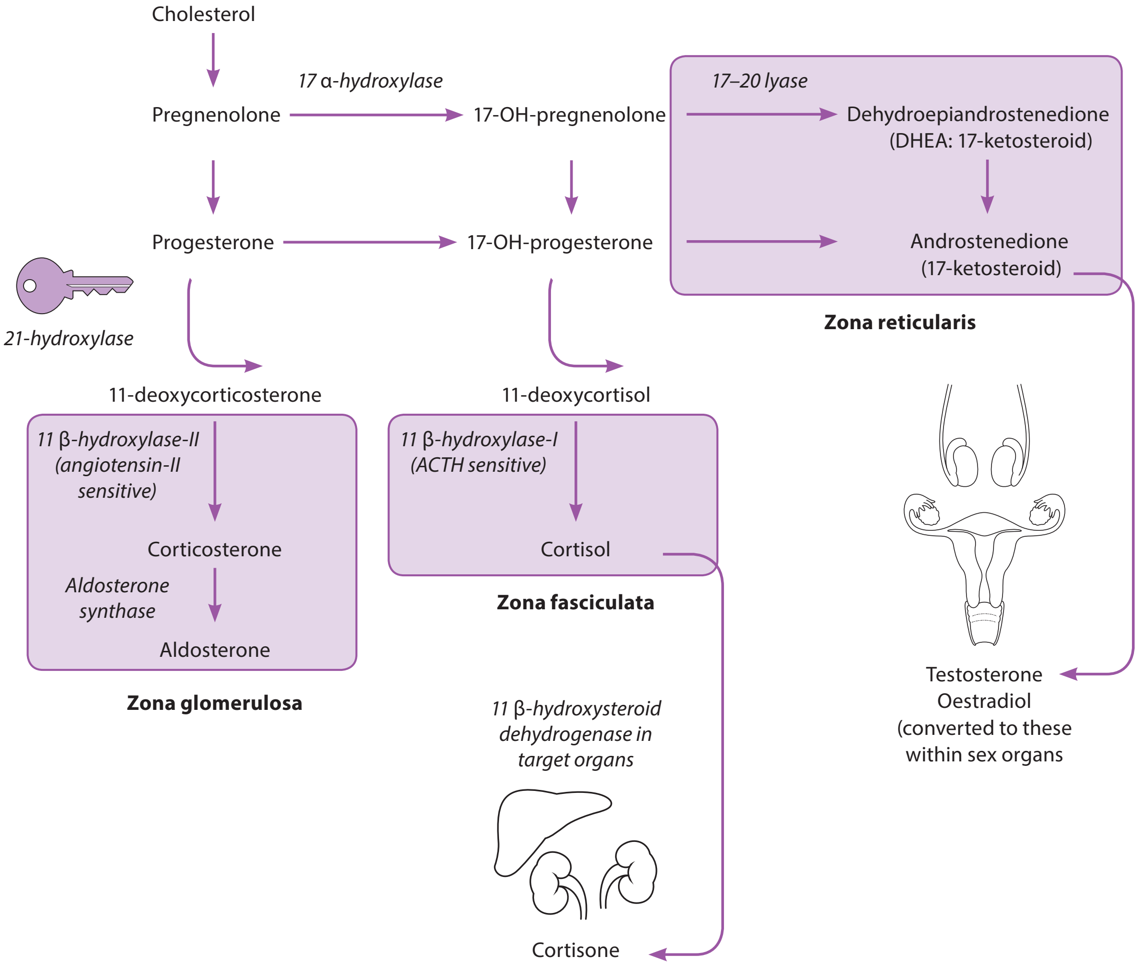
Rx

Congenital adrenal hyperplasia, 11βHSD deficiency – dexamethasone

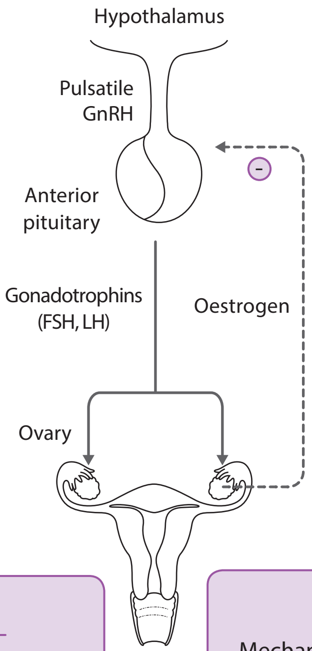
STEROID SYNTHESIS

The three main steroid types, mineralocorticoids (aldosterone), glucocorticoids (cortisol) and sex steroids are synthesized in the outer, middle and inner layers of the adrenal cortex, respectively


Adrenal cortex
Adrenal gland
Adrenal medulla
Zona glomerulosa
Zona fasciculata
Zona reticularis
Adrenal medulla


Cholesterol
17 α-hydroxylase
Pregnenolone
17-OH-pregnenolone
17–20 lyase
Dehydroepiandrostenedione (DHEA: 17-ketosteroid)
Progesterone
17-OH-progesterone
Androstenedione (17-ketosteroid)
21-hydroxylase
Zona reticularis
11-deoxycorticosterone
11-deoxycortisol
11 β-hydroxylase-II (angiotensin-II sensitive)
Corticosterone
Aldosterone synthase
Aldosterone
Zona glomerulosa
11 β-hydroxylase-I (ACTH sensitive)
Cortisol
Zona fasciculata
Testosterone
Oestradiol
(converted to these within sex organs
11 β-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase in target organs
Cortisone

AMENORRHOEA – CAUSES



Hypothalamus–pituitary

Constitutional
Delayed puberty (inherited)
Anorexia, anxiety, exercise, severe illness

Hypothalamus–pituitary

D.I.V.I.N.I.T.Y.

Developmental: Kallman syndrome = failure of migration of GnRH cells from olfactory epithelium
Infection: TB, meningitis
Vascular: Infarction
Inflammation: Hypohysitis
Neoplasia:
- Craniopharyngioma, pinealoma
- Pituitary adenoma

Injury: Surgery, radiotherapy
Toxins, e.g. neuroleptics
Y: h**Y**drocephalus

Endocrine
Prolactin ↑
T4: ↑ or ↓
Cortisol: ↑ or ↓

Oestrogen excess

Mechanism: Excess, acyclical oestrogen switches off pituitary gonadotrophs; breakthrough bleeding may occur

Pregnancy; 'Pill'; post-pill

Ovarian tumour, oestrogen-secreting
Granulosa-theca cell
Mucinous
Brenner

Hyperandrogenism
Mechanism: Androgens are aromatized to oestrogen in adipose tissue

Causes:
  Polycystic ovaries syndrome
    Epi: 10% of women, esp. obese
    PATH: Exaggerated adrenarche (adrenal androgens at puberty)
    Ix: US ovaries
      Androstendione and free testosterone ↑ ↑LH to FSH ratio
  Cushing syndrome
  Carcinoma: Adrenal, ovarian
  Female pseudo-hermaphroditism

Amenorrhoea – Causes continued ➜

Amenorrhoea – Causes continued

Primary ovarian failure

Menopause

Congenital

Turner syn. (XO or mosaic with XX or XY)
17, 20-desmolase or 17α-hydroxylase deficiency
Galactosaemia – galactose toxic to ovaries

Acquired <40 years (premature ovarian failure)

T.A.I.N.T.

Toxins – chemotherapy, radiotherapy, smoking
Autoimmune – oophoritis
  Schmidt syn.= oophoritis + thyroiditis + Addison
Infection – mumps, chlamydia, gonorrhoea (pelvic inflammatory disease)
Neoplasia, ovarian
Temporary resistant ovary syndrome: Normal oestrogen and follicles, but ovaries become FSH insensitive

Genital tract

Intersex

Androgen insensitivity syndrome: Male karyotype (XY), female phenotype (female external genitalia, no uterus)
5α reductase deficiency: XY karyotype, may be phenotypically female or male, tends to virilize at 12 years
Congenital adrenal hyperplasia:

- 21-hydroxylase deficiency (95% of cases)
- 11β-hydroxylase deficiency
- 3β-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase deficiency

Congenital

Müllerian agenesis: Vaginal or uterine atresia
Imperforate hymen or vaginal septae
Extreme female genital mutilation, e.g. infibulation

Acquired

Cervical stenosis, e.g. 2° to electrocautery
Asherman syndrome: Intrauterine synechiae secondary to curettage
TB, trauma (incl. hysterectomy!)

AMENORRHOEA – PC

Types

Primary amenorrhoea: No menses by 15 years old
Secondary amenorrhoea: Failure of previously normal menses

Most causes of amenorrhoea may present in either way, including congenital causes that may present as secondary amenorrhoea

PC

The cause may be suggested by the patient's **S.H.A.P.E.**

Syndrome, congenital

Turner syndrome (XO):

- Short stature, shield chest, wide-carrying angle
- Coarctation of aorta, ASD, mild learning disability, acalculia

Enzyme defect: Tall stature (failure of epiphyseal closure by oestrogen)
Kallman syndrome (X-linked): Puberty delay; anosmia, sensorineural deafness, colour blind; renal agenesis, short metacarpals, bimanual synkinesia

Hair

Hairy and obese – PCOS

- Acne, hirsutism on upper lip; subumbilical; thigh
- Associated acanthosis nigricans, diabetic retinopathy, etc.

Hairy and medium – other causes of virilisation and hirsutism:

- Congenital adrenal hyperplasia (21- or 11β-hydroxylase deficiency)
- Adrenal carcinoma

Hairy and thin – anorexia nervosa: Lanugo
Hairless (pubic hair absence):

- Androgen insensitivity syndrome
- Delayed puberty (small breasts)

ABP

- Hypertension: 17α or 11β-hydroxylase deficiency
- Hypotension: 21-hydroxylase deficiency; Addison

Private parts

Vagina:

- Haematocolpos: Imperforate hymen/vaginal septae – cyclical pain
- Blind-ending: Mullerian agenesis or androgen insensitivity
- Vulval atrophy: Ovarian failure

Cliteromegaly/labial enlargement or fusion:

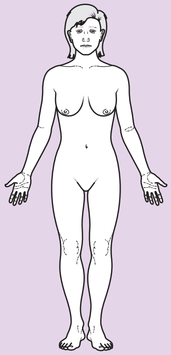
- Polycystic ovaries syndrome
- Congenital adrenal hyperplasia (21- or 11β-hydroxylase deficiency)
- Adrenal carcinoma

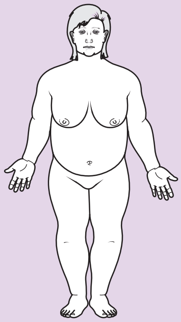
Breasts:

- Enlargement: Oestrogen-secreting tumour
- Atrophy: Ovarian failure

Endocrine

Menopause (ovarian or hypothal–pit. failure): Hot flushes, night sweats, headaches, osteoporosis
Puberty: Precocious or delayed:
Addison: 21-hydroxylase deficiency or Schmidt syndrome (autoimmune) – latter also assoc. with hypothyroidism





AMENORRHOEA – IX

Hypothalamus–pituitary

Pituitary hormones

FSH:

Low:
- Pituitary failure
- Polycystic ovaries (elevated androgens)
- Genital tract defect (normal oestrogen levels)

High:
- Ovarian failure (as no –ve feedback)

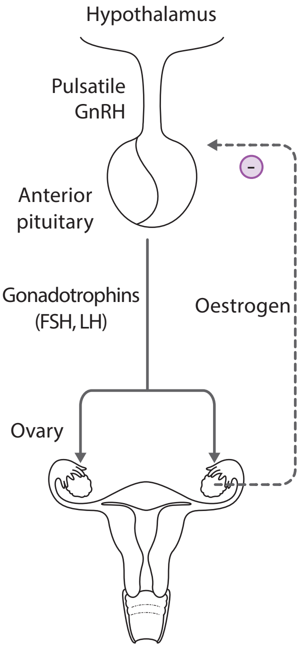
Prolactin:
- Cause of amenorrhoea
- Also raised in PCOS

TSH, T4:
- Cause of amenorrhoea
- Also low in hypopituitarism

Gonadorelin test

Inject GnRH (IV or SC) →
FSH + LH ↑ ↑ in Kallman syn.
FSH + LH ↓ in hypopituitarism

MRI head
- Pituitary tumour, esp. prolactinoma
- Craniopharyngioma



Oestrogen excess

Androgens

Serum testosterone ↑:
- DHEA ↑
- Androstenedione ↑ (principal circulating androgen)

Sex-hormone-binding globulin ↓ (binds testosterone preferentially)

Urine 17-ketosteroids ↑↑:
- PCOS
- Congenital adrenal hyperplasia
- Adrenal or ovarian carcinoma (dexamethasone suppresses 17-KS in PCOS and CAH, but not carcinoma)

Other bloods

β-HCG: pregnant?!
Glucose ↑: PCOS

Pelvic-abdominal USS

PCOS: Bilateral, multiple, small follicular cysts in 'necklace' around edge – stromal, endometrial hyperplasia
Adrenal or ovarian carcinoma

Ovaries

Oestrogen and progesterone

Low:
- Ovarian failure
- Pituitary failure
- Testicular feminisation

Variable: PCOS
Cyclical: Distinguishes vaginal obstruction (cyclical) from androgen insensitivity (acyclical)

Sex chromosome analysis

Turner syndrome (+ PCR of sex-determining region of Y)

Autoimmune cause:

AutoAbs: Anti-ovarian – thyroid; adrenal Abs
Glucose: Diabetes mellitus occurs as part of Schmidt syndrome

Genital tract

Cervical mucus analysis

Stretchiness
Ferning on microscopy

Progestagen withdrawal bleed

Method:
- Exclude pregnancy
- Give medroxyprogesterone for 5 days; then stop
- If no bleed then give oral conjugated oestrogen for 14 days prior (to prime uterus)

Results:
- Bleed: PCOS or other excess oestrogen
- Bleed after oestrogen: Pituitary or ovarian failure
- No bleed: Genital tract damage

Hysterosalpingogram or hysteroscopy

Cervical stenosis/Asherman syndrome

AMENORRHOEA – RX

Hypothalamus–pituitary

Gonadotrophins/GnRH

Human menopausal gonadotrophins (or purified FSH) + mid-cycle β-HCG (simulates LH)

Pulsatile GnRH in portable infusion pump: Improves efficacy of gonadotrophins

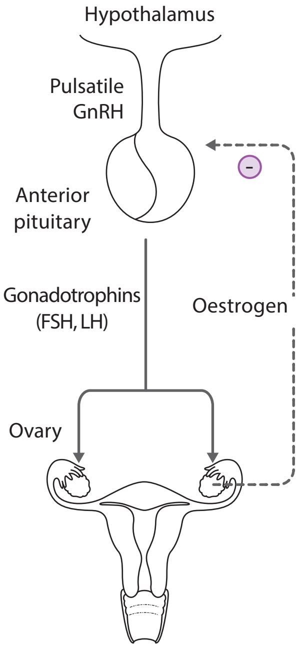
Clomiphene

Oestrogen partial agonist: FSH ↑

Ovary stimulant

Prolactinoma treatment

Dopamine agonists



PCOS

Hormonal

Gonadotrophins/GnRH/clomiphene: ↑ fertility by ↑ FSH

Buserelin: ↓ LH

OCP: ↓ ovarian and adrenal androgen production

Obesity

Diet

Insulin sensitizers (metformin):

- ↓ ovarian androgen production by ↓ insulin secretion, as insulin has direct ovarian effect
- ↑ fertility, but stop drug in pregnancy

Hirsutism

Topical: Epilation, electrolysis, cover-up, H_2O_2 bleach

'Dianette'= cyproterone acetate (anti-androgen) + ethinylE2 (contraceptive, as cyproterone is teratogenic)

Electrocautery of cysts

Wedge resection of large cysts: ↓ ovarian androgen production and ovarian adhesions

Primary ovarian failure

If fertility desired: Ovum donation + cyclical gonadotrophins

If fertility not desired:

Combined OCP:

- Regularizes periods
- ↓ ovarian androgen production

HRT (conjugated oestrogens + progestagen): Used in ovarian or pituitary failure as prophylaxis against osteoporosis

Turner XY mosaic: Gonadectomy, as at risk of dysgerminoma

Genital tract

Surgery

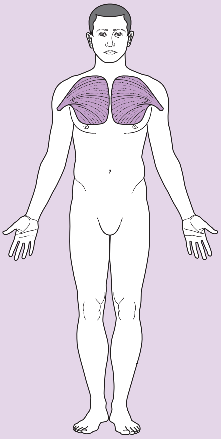
Cervical stenosis/Asherman syndrome – dilatation

MALE SEXUAL PROBLEMS

Gynaecomastia

Causes

P.E.C.T.O.R.A.L.I.s.



Physiological
    Neonatal, puberty (often unilateral; resolves within 1 year), elderly
Endocrine
    Hypogonadism:
- Hypogonadotrophic: Kallman syn., hypopituitarism, hyperprolactinaemia
- Hypergonadotrophic, e.g. Klinefelter, mumps orchitis, orchidectomy

    Other: Thyrotoxicosis, Cushing (both taromatase activity), diabetes
Carcinoma
    Testis tumour
    Adrenal tumour
    Ectopic: Bronchial, liver, renal
Toxins – **C.U.P.S.**
    Cardiac: Spironolactone, digoxin, amiodarone, calcium antagonists
    Ulcer: Cimetidine, proton-pump inhibitors
    Psychiatric: Anti-dopaminergics, TCAs, opiates, cannabis, amphetamines
    Steroids: Goserelin, flutamide, ketoconazole, metronidazole, anabolic steroids
Organ failure
    Cirrhosis: Sex-hormone-binding globulin ↑, testis atrophy, alcohol ↑ oestrogen
    Chronic renal failure: Prolactin ↑; testicular failure
Refeeding syndrome – post-fast
Adrenal: Congenital adrenal hyperplasia (excess testosterone)
Local stimulation (via hyperprolactinaemia): Breast cancer, VZV, thoracotomy
Infection: TB, HIV

Rx

Medical: Testosterone, danazol, tamoxifen, stop causative drug
Surgical: Reduction mammoplasty + liposuction

Impotence

Causes

P.A.T.E.N.T.S.

Psychological: Anxiety, depression
Arterial:
    Aorto-iliac thrombosis (Leriche syndrome)
    Sickle-cell anaemia
Toxins-1: Alcohol or drug abuse
Endocrine:
    Diabetes mellitus (autonomic neuropathy, arteriopathy)
    Hypogonadism; hyperprolactinaemia – dysthyroidism
Neurological: Autonomic neuropathy; cord disease, esp. MS; cauda equina lesion
Toxins-2 – as for gynaecomastia (**C.U.P.S.**), e.g. spironolactone, digoxin, β-blockers, α_1-antagonists
Systemic: Liver, renal failure, carcinoma

Rx

Medical (oral): Phosphodiesterase-5 inhibitors (sildenafil, tadalafil)
Intra-urethral or intracavernosal alprostadil
Prosthesis or vacuum
Psychotherapy

MALE INFERTILITY

Hypothalamus–pituitary

Constitutional

Anorexia: Anxiety, severe illness, e.g. organ failure, carcinoma

Hypothalamus–pituitary

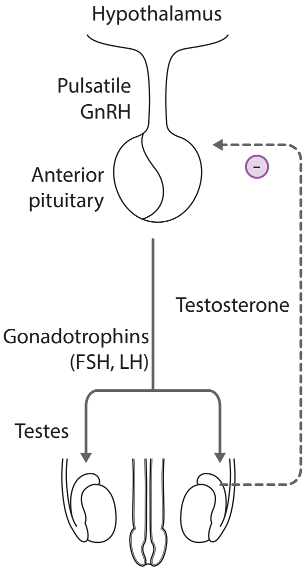
D.I.V.I.N.I.T.Y.

Developmental:
- Kallman syndrome
- Prader-Willi syndrome
- Spinocerebellar ataxia

Infection: TB, meningitis
Vascular: Infarction
Inflammation: Sarcoid
Neoplasia:
- Craniopharyngioma
- Pituitary adenoma

Injury: Surgery, radiotherapy
Toxins, e.g. neuroleptics
Y: h**Y**drocephalus

Endocrine
- GH ↑or ↓
- Prolactin ↑
- T4↑t or ↓

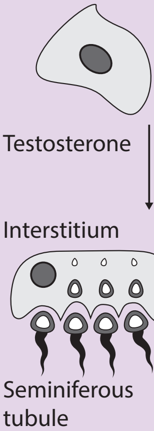


Oestrogen excess

Congential adrenal hyperplasia

Cushing syndrome (and Addison disease)

Anabolic steroids



Leydig cells – **L**et testosterone be produced by converting DHEA from adrenals or synthesize *de novo* (**L**H-responsive)

Sertoli cells – **S**uckle developing germ cells and spermatids (F**S**H-responsive)

Primary testicular failure

Congenital

Klinefelter syndrome (XXY):
- Small, firm testes, but potent
- Gynaecomastia, breast carcinoma
- Other: Gigantism, short spine, long limbs, high voice, learning disability, unemotional

Androgen resistance:
- 5α-reductase deficiency
- Myotonic dystrophy
- Spinobulbar muscular atrophy

Acquired

T.A.I.N.T^3.

Toxins:
- Chemo-, radiotherapy, smoking, alcohol
- Digoxin, spironolactone
- Sulphasalazine, phenytoin, nitrofurantoin

Autoimmune: Polyarteritis nodosa orchitis
Infection: Mumps, mycoplasma, TB, STD (gonococcus, chlamydia)
Neoplasia, testis
Temperature ↑: Crytorchidism, varicocoele
Torsion/**T**rauma, incl. hernia repair

Spermatazoa defects

Genetic – 60% cases of male infertility!

Microdeletions Yq xsome, incl.:
- Azoospermia factor (AZF)
- Deleted in azoospermia (DAZ)

Germinal- or Leydig-cell aplasia

Autoimmune

Membrane-bound anti Ig-A (incl. vasectomy, infection, familial)

Immotility

Cystic fibrosis primary ciliary dysmotility

Kartagener syndrome: Associated dextrocardia, bronchiectasis, sinusitis

PRECOCIOUS PUBERTY

Def

Development of secondary sexual characteristics <8 years (in girls) or <9 years (boys)

True

Def: Premature activation of hypothalamo-pituitary-gonadal axis

Causes

D.I.V.I.N.E^2.

Developmental – idiopathic: Accounts for 2/3 of cases; girls > boys; often familial
Infection: Meningo-encephalitis, congenital infections
Vascular: Perinatal anoxia
Injury, head/hydrocephalus
Neoplasia – hypothalamic: Craniopharyngioma, hamartoma, neurofibroma
Epilepsy, idiopathic
Endocrine: Hypothyroidism → **FSH**↑

D.I.V.I.N.E.

PC

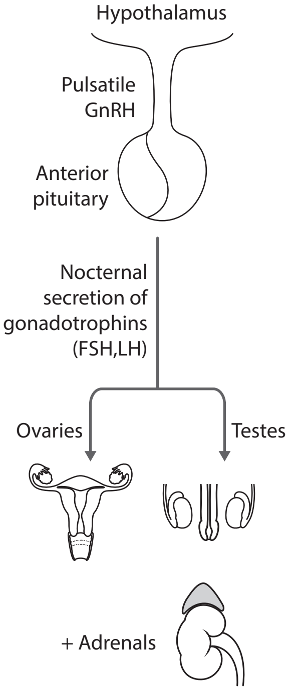
Boys: Spermatogenesis + virilisation
Girls: Periods + feminisation
i.e. appropriate sexual characteristics – isosexual
Growth spurt; eventual short stature (premature epiphyseal fusion)

Ix

Bloods: FSH ↑, LH ↓: Gonadorelin challenge → LH ↑ > FSH ↑

Rx

Long-acting gonadorelin analogue (goserelin): ↓ gonadotrophins


Hypothalamus
Pulsatile GnRH
Anterior pituitary
Nocternal secretion of gonadotrophins (FSH,LH)
Ovaries
Testes
+ Adrenals

Pseudo

Def: Excess sex steroids or activation of steroid receptors, independent of HPA axis

Causes

G.A.M.E^2.S.

Gonadal tumour:

- Testis (teratoma, Leydig cell)
- Ovarian tumour (granulosa cell) or ovarian cysts

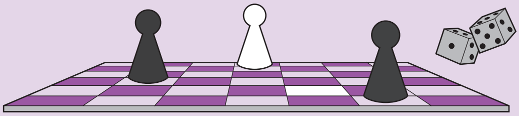
Adrenal:

- Congenital adrenal hyperplasia
- Adrenal tumour (suggested by >6 cm mass in adrenals)

McCune–Albright syndrome:
PATH: Autonomous LH receptor activity, via mutated Gsα
PC: Polyostotic fibrous dysplasia; café-au-lait spots

Exogenous sex steroids/**E**ctopic gonadotrophins:
Hepatoblastoma; pineal dysgerminoma → β-HCG, AFP

Syndrome – testotoxicosis: LH receptor mutation on Leydig cells, in boys only



PC

Secondary sexual characteristics only

Ix

Bloods: FSH ↓, LH ↓; gonadorelin challenge → no response
Urine: 17-ketosteroids ↑: Gonadal or adrenal cause; dexamethasone → 17-KS ↓ in congenital adrenal hyperplasia
Radiol: MRI or CT adrenals; USS testes or pelvis

Rx

Medical

Medroxyprogesterone acetate, ketoconazole
Anti-androgens: Cyproterone acetate, spironolactone

DELAYED PUBERTY

Def

No development of secondary sexual characteristics by 14 years

Hypothalamic–pituitary failure

Causes

D.I.V.I.N.E.

Developmental:
  Idiopathic: Commonest cause in boys; often familial
  Kallman syndrome:
  - Anosmia, due to failure of GnRH cells to migrate from olfactory mucosa (also deaf occasionally)
  - Cryptorchidism, microphallus, renal agenesis

  Other syndromes:
  - Prader–Willi (hyperphagia, hypersomnolence, diabetes)
  - Lawrence–Moon–Biedl (retinitis pigmentosa, polydactyly, cardiac defects)

Infection: Meningo-encephalitis, TB
Very ill, incl. anorexia, anxiety, strenuous exercise
Inflammation: Sarcoid, SLE
Neoplasia: Hypothalamic craniopharyngioma, hamartoma
Endocrine:
  Hypopituitarism or 'isolated gonadotrophin deficiency'
  Hyperprolactinaemia
  Thyroid or cortisol abnormalities (high or low); diabetes

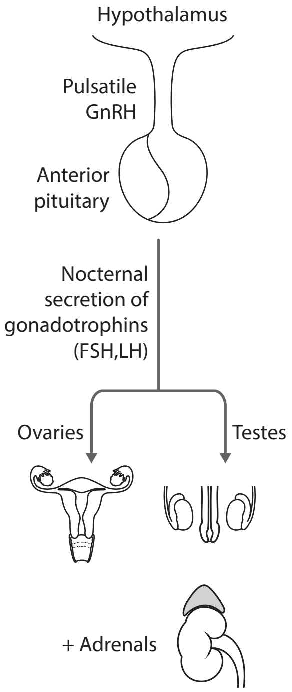
D.I.V.I.N.E.

Ix

Bloods: FSH ↓, LH ↑

Rx

Pulsatile gonadorelin or gonadotrophins


Hypothalamus
Pulsatile GnRH
Anterior pituitary
Nocternal secretion of gonadotrophins (FSH,LH)
Ovaries
Testes
+ Adrenals

Gonadal failure

Causes

Congenital

Turner syndrome (XO or mosaic with XX or XY): Commonest cause in girls
    PC: Webbed neck, wide-carrying angle, coarctation
Enzyme defect, e.g. 17α-hydroxylase deficiency
Klinefelter syndrome (XXY):

- Small, firm testes, azoospermia (but not impotent)
- Gynaecomastia, breast carcinoma
- Eunuchoidal: Gigantism (short spine, long limbs), high voice, learning disability, aggressive

Acquired

T.A.I.N.T.

Toxins: Chemotherapy, radiotherapy, surgery, smoking
Autoimmune, incl. Schmidt syndrome
Infection: Mumps, chlamydia (PID) oophoritis
Neoplasia, testis or ovarian
Trauma: Testis torsion

Ix

Bloods: FSH ↑, LH ↑
Karyotype/buccal smear for Barr body (sex chromatin)

Rx

Anabolic steroids; Ethinylestradiol + progestagen

NEUROENDOCRINE TUMOURS

Neuroendocrine tumours are mostly derived from neural-crest cells, and secrete amines or peptides. They are also known as APUDomas as they all exhibit 'amine precursor uptake and decarboxylation'

C.A.P.I.T.A.L.S.

APUD

Carcinoid tumours/syndrome – *see p. 370*
Adrenal phaeochromocytoma
Pancreatic endocrine tumours incl.:
  Islet-cell tumours
Thyroid medullary carcinoma
Additional – CNS ganglioblastoma, neuroblastoma, paragangliomas
Lung – small-cell carcinoma
Skin – melanoma

Ix

Most can be detected with an ^{131}I-MIBG scan

Adrenal phaeochromocytoma

Epi

10% Familial MEN-2a, b syndromes, neurofibromatosis 1, von Hippel–Lindau syn.
10% Bilateral (50% of familial are bilateral)
10% Malignant
10% Extra-adrenal, e.g.

- Organ of Zuckerkandl (sympathetic ganglia below inferior mesenteric artery)
- Bladder wall: Symptoms triggered by micturition!

PC

Paroxysmal hypertension: Weakness, anxiety, tremor, sweat, headache, N+V, for 15 min
Postural hypotension (due to decreased plasma volume)
Palpitations, ischaemic heart disease, cardiomyopathy
Pallor (not flushing)
Pain (chest, epigastric, abdominal due to constipation)

Ix

Bloods: Chromogranin A ↑
Glucose ↑
Urine: 24-hour acid urine collection: VMA, HMMA, metadrenaline, free catecholamines ↑
Radiol: CT, MRI abdo
^{131}I-MIBG scan
Special: Pentolinium suppression test

Rx

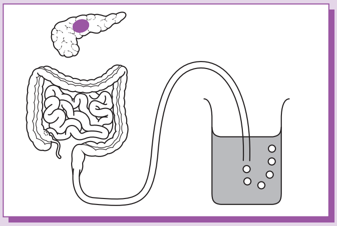
Crisis: IV phentolamine or labetalol
Surgery: Requires pre-operative phenoxybenzamine + β-blocker for 3 weeks
Metastases: ^{131}I-MIBG

PANCREATIC ENDOCRINE TUMOURS (PETS)

G.I.V.E^2.S. GAS.

Glucagonoma (α-cells)
  PC: Diarrhoea, loss of weight
    Diabetes mellitus
    Necrolytic migratory erythema, glossitis–stomatitis, nail dystrophy
    Deep-vein thrombosis
  Ix: Failure of glucose suppression following arginine stimulation
Insulinoma (β-cells) – *Most common*
  PC: Fasting hypoglycaemia (see p. 330)
  Ix: Proinsulin:insulin ratio increased, C-peptide raised
VLPoma = 'Werner–Morrison syn.' (δ1-cells: Vasoactive intestinal peptide)
  PC: **W**atery **D**iarrhoea (>1 l/day) with **H**ypokalaemia and **A**chlorhydria (**W.D.H.A.**)
Ectopic endocrine secretions: GHRH – acromegaly; ACTH – Cushing; ADH – SIADH; PTH – hyperPTHism
Extra diarrhoea-causing secretions: PPoma (pancreatic polypeptide), neurotensinoma, calcitoninoma
Somatostatinoma (δ-cells)
  PC: Diarrhoea, loss of weight, steatorrhoea
    Gallstones (relaxes gallbladder)
    Diabetes mellitus, hypertension

GAStrinoma = Zollinger–Ellison syndrome' – *2nd most common*
  Epi: 30% MEN-I syndrome; 10% multiple
  Site: Islet cells; duodenum or adjacent to (G-cells); ectopic (parathyroid, ovary)
  PC: Peptic ulcers – multiple
    Diarrhoea, malabsorption, steatorrhoea, vitamin B12 deficiency
  Ix: Fasting serum gastrin (stop PPI/H2-antagonists for 1/52)
    Secretin test (IV): Paradoxical ↑ in gastrin (normally gastrin suppressed)
    CT abdomen, selective angiography of pancreas



Rx

Somatostatin analogue (octreotide or lanreotide): Improves diarrhoea in all
Specific:

- Glucagonoma: Zinc, high-protein diet, aspirin (not warfarin)
- Insulinoma: Diazoxide, streptozocin
- Gastrinoma: High-dose omeprazole

Prog

About 2/3 of all islet-cell tumours metastasize (except insulinoma 10%; gastrinoma 30%)

CARCINOID TUMOURS

Def

Carcinoid tumours are one of the APUDomas, characterized by silver staining and the presence of cell markers chromogranin A, neuron-specific enolase and synaptophysin (on immunofluorescence), and somatostatin receptors

Carcinoid syndrome occurs when a carcinoid tumour secretes biologically active peptides that reach the systemic circulation. The main secreted products are 5-hydroxytryptamine (5-HT or serotonin), tachykinins (substance P) and prostaglandins

PC

Carcinoid tumours – local

GIT
- Abdominal pain, GI bleeding, obstruction
- Peritoneal fibrosis (esp. midgut or ovarian carcinoid)

Bronchial
- Cough, haemoptysis, incidental finding on CXR

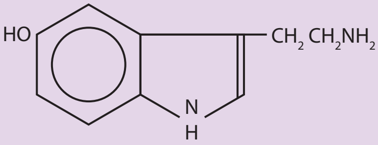
Carcinoid syndrome – systemic

F².I.V.E. H.T. A.M.i.N.E

Flushing/**F**acial oedema
    Acute paroxysms of flushing, wheals, pruritus, lacrimation, salivation, hypotension that last 5 min to days
    Triggered by alcohol, cheese, straining, salbutamol
    Causes of flushing: **M.A.M.A².**
        Menopause, **A**lcohol, **M**astocytosis, **A**PUDoma, **A**utonomic neuropathy
Intestinal – diarrhoea, weight loss
Valve fibrosis – right-sided lesions (e.g. pulmonary stenosis), except bronchial carcinoid (left side)
E – Wh**EE**ze (esp. foregut tumours)

Hypoglycaemia
Telangiectasia, facial cyanosis – due to repeated attacks of flushing

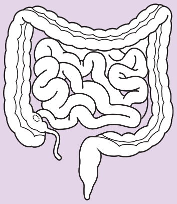
Arthritis
Metastases – liver (hepatosplenomegaly), bone (pain)
Nicotinamide deficiency ('pellagra') – dermatitis of sun-exposed areas
Endocrine – multiple endocrine neoplasia (MEN-1):
    Acromegaly (GHRH secreted by bronchial carcinoid)
    Cushing syndrome (thymic carcinoid)
    HyperPTHism



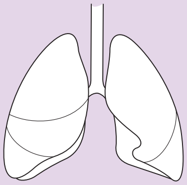
Epi

The proportion of **carcinoid tumours is:**

GIT 65%



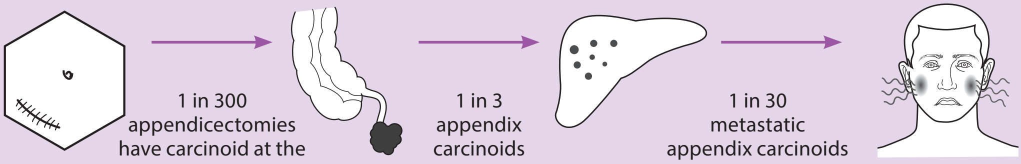
Lung 30%



Other 5%

Breast,
thymus,
ovary,
testes

GIT	Mets	Carcinoid syndrome	Lung	Mets	Carcinoid syndrome	Other
Small bowel	60%	10%	Bronchial	5%	10%	Ovary and testes: 50% get carcinoid syndrome
Rectum	5%	0%				



1 in 300 appendicectomies have carcinoid at the tip → 1 in 3 appendix carcinoids metastasize → 1 in 30 metastatic appendix carcinoids cause carcinoid syndrome

Ix

Bloods: 5-HT, 5-hydroxytryptophan (5-HTP), histamine, chromogranin A ↑

Urine: 5-hydroxyindoleacetic-acid (5-HIAA) ↑ – levels act as prognostic marker

- False +ve: Walnuts, bananas, paracetamol, aspirin, levodopa
- False –ve: Atypical foregut carcinoids (urine 5-HT or 5-HTP ↑ instead)

Radiol: CT/MRI
Selective angiography
Octreotide scintigraphy: Ligand for type 2 somatostatin receptors on tumour

Special: Provocative flushing with pentagastrin or adrenaline

Rx

Symptomatic:

Flushing: Somatostatin analogue (octreotide), diphenhydramine, ranitidine
Diarrhoea: Ketanserin, ondansetron
Wheeze: Aminophylline, steroids (avoid salbutamol!)

Curative:

Resection: Localized tumour or limited hepatic metastases
Hepatic artery embolisation
Chemotherapy/radiotherapy: Streptozocin, doxorubicin, interferon-α, ^{131}I-MIBG

Prog

5-year survival rate: Local, 95%; lymph nodes, 65%; hepatic, 20%
Tumours <1 cm – curable; >2 cm – frequently metastasize

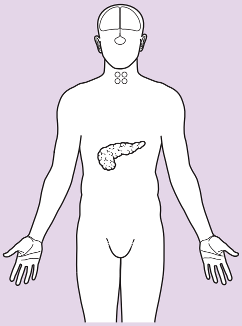
MULTIPLE ENDOCRINE NEOPLASIA

All are autosomal dominant; all are caused by inactivating mutations of tumour suppressor genes

Type 1

Midline **'P'** *organs*

Pituitary: Hyperplasia, adenoma
Parathyroid gland: Hyperplasia, adenoma
Pancreas islet cell: Hyperplasia, adenoma
    Gastrinoma: Peptic ulcers (Zollinger–Ellinson syn.)
    Insulinoma: Hypoglycaemia
    VIPoma: Watery diarrhoea, K^+ ↓ (Werner–Morrison syn.)



(gene = *menin)*

Type 2

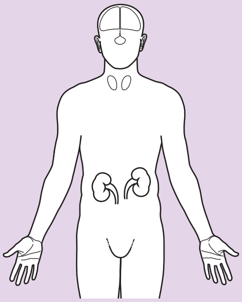
Paired (i.e. 2) organs

Thyroid: Medullary carcinoma

Adrenals: Phaeochromocytoma

Type 2A
PAr**A**thyroid adenoma
Anus: Hirschsprung disease
Amyloid: Cutaneous lichen planus

Type 2B
Big: Marfanoid habitus
Big tumours: Mucosal, GIT neuromas



('**Re**arranged during **t**ransfection') = tyrosine kinase

Other

Carney's complex:
    Adrenal, testicular, pituitary adenomas
    Myxomas
    Spotty pigmentation
Von Hippel–Lindau syndrome:
    Phaeochromocytoma, pancreatic islet-cell neoplasms
    Renal tumours
    CNS tumours, esp. cerebellar haemangioblastoma

POLYGLANDULAR AUTOIMMUNE SYNDROMES

Two main types exist: type 1 – childhood onset and type 2 – adult onset

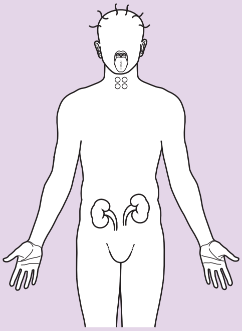
Type 1 PGAS

Inc: Rare
Age: Childhood
Sex: M = F
Aet: *APECED* gene = autoimmune polyendocrinopathy, candidiasis, ectodermal dystrophy
Autosomal recessive; chromosome 21

P.G.A.S.

Parathyroidism, hypo-
GIT:
- Mucocutaneous candidiasis (esp. oral)
- Malabsorption
- Pernicious anaemia
- Chronic active hepatitis

Addison disease
Skin:
- Dystrophy of teeth (enamel), nails, hair (alopecia)
- Vitiligo
- Otosclerosis



Type 2 PGAS (Schmidt syndrome)

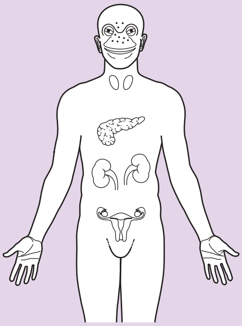
Inc: Common
Age: Adulthood
Sex: F>M
Aet: Polygenic: HLA-DR3 and -DR4-associated
Autosomal dominant with incomplete penetrance

T.O^2.A.D. P.G.A.S.

Thyroidism, dys: Graves or Hashimoto disease
Oophoritis/**O**rchitis: Infertility
Addison disease
Diabetes, type 1

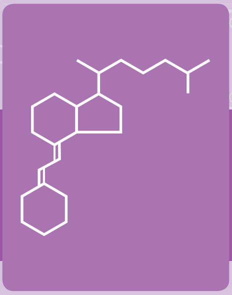
Pituitary: Lymphocytic hypophysitis
GIT:
- Coeliac disease
- Pernicious anaemia

Additional: Myasthenia gravis
Skin: Vitiligo



Taylor & Francis
Taylor & Francis Group
http://taylorandfrancis.com

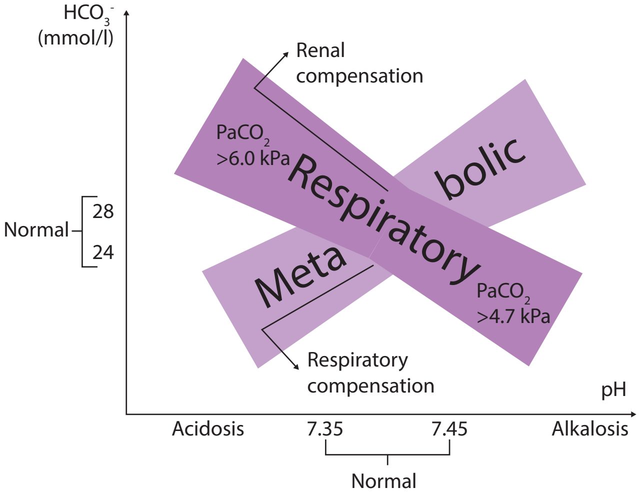
Clinical Chemistry



ACID–BASE BALANCE

Acidosis has two types of 1° cause, each being compensated by the other system:

- **Respiratory:** $PaCO_2$ ↑, due to ventilation ↓
  → renal compensation, via HCO_3^- resorption, and acid and NH_4^+ excretion
- **Metabolic**: HCO_3^- ↓ due to acid gain (high anion gap) or HCO_3^- loss (low anion gap)
  → respiratory compensation, by $PaCO_2$ ↓


HCO3- (mmol/l)
Renal compensation
PaCO2 >6.0 kPa
Respiratory
bolic
Meta
PaCO2 >4.7 kPa
Respiratory compensation
Normal
28
24
pH
Acidosis
7.35
7.45
Alkalosis
Normal

Normal compensation

$PaCO_2$ ↑ 1 kPa →
HCO_3^- ↑ 3 mmol/l

HCO_3^- ↓ 6 mmol/l →
$PaCO_2$ ↓ 1 kPa

(The opposite processes operate for alkalosis causes and compensations)

Respiratory

Acidosis

Failure of CO_2 excretion via lungs

Ventilatory failure:

- **Obstructive**: Small airways: COPD
  Intrathoracic: Cancer, lymph node
  Foreign body
- **Restrictive**: Pulmonary fibrosis
  Neuromuscular: Sedation, polio
  Skeletal: Spondylosis

Diffusion failure: Late pneumonia; ARDS

Alkalosis

Hyperventilation

Lung:

- Pulmonary embolism; atelectasis
- Pneumothorax; flail chest

CNS:

I.N.V.I.T.E. I.S. F.R.E.E.

- Intra-cranial:
  Infection (meningitis)
  Neoplasia
  Vascular
  Injury
  Toxin (aspirin, adrenaline)
  Extra – pain, anxiety
- Extra-cranial:
  Infection – septicaemia
  Systemic – anaemia, hypotension, high altitude
  Failure: Cardiac, liver
  Recovery from metabolic acidosis
  Endocrine-1 – thyrotoxicosis
  Endocrine-2 – pregnancy, progesterone

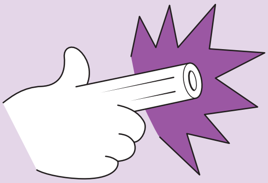
Iatrogenic: Mechanical ventilation, respiratory stimulants (e.g. doxapram)

Metabolic

Acidosis

Classified by size of anion gap = ($Na^+ + K^+$) – ($Cl^- + HCO_3^-$); normal = 8–18 mmol/l

K.I.L.L.E.R. T.R.I.G.G.E.R.



High anion gap: Organic acid gain

- **K**etoacidosis: DM, alcoholism (due to binge drinking, starvation)
- **I**ntake of organic acid: Aspirin overdose, methanol, ethylene glycol
  - High osmolar gap: Osmolality – (2 × Na^+ + glucose + urea) >15 mmol/l
- **L**actic acidosis, type A – tissue hypoxia:
  - Shock, hypoxia, poisoning: Carbon monoxide, cyanide, TCA overdose
- **L**actic acidosis, type B – metabolic abnormality:
  - Gluconeogenesis ↓: Liver failure; paracetamol overdose; metformin
  - Formation ↑: Neoplasia (e.g. leukaemia), infection (e.g. malaria, epilepsy)
- **E**nzyme mutation: Glycogen storage disease (G6Pase deficiency), mitochondrial disease, methylmalonic aciduria
- **R**enal failure (GFR <20 ml/min): Uraemic toxins, lactic acid

Low anion gap: Bicarbonate loss, failure of acid excretion, hyperchloraemia

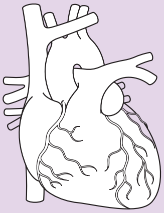
- **T**oxins:
  - Cardiac: ACE inhibitors, A-II receptor blockers, K^+-sparing diuretics, acetazolamide
  - Other: Statins, trimethoprim, pentamidine, cyclosporin, cation-exchange resin
- **R**enal tubular acidosis:
  - K^+↓: RTA-1 = failure of acid excretion (severe – most tubulointerstitial nephropathies)
    - RTA-2 = bicarbonate loss (isolated or part of Fanconi syndrome)
  - K^+↑: RTA-4 (hypoaldosteronism)
- **I**ntake of ammonium: Hyperalimentation (TPN), NH_4Cl
- **G**astrointestinal: Diarrhoea, esp. VIPoma
- **G**astrointestinal: Ureterosigmoidostomy, ileostomy, fistulae (pancreatic, biliary)
- ‘**E**xpansion acidosis’ = rapid IV NaCl infusion
- **R**enal failure (GFR: 20–50 ml/min): Failure of acid excretion

NB:
- *Bicarbonate loss → high urine NH_4^+*
- *Failure of acid excretion → absent urine NH_4^+*

AlkalOsis

Mostly causes of hyp**O**kalaemia (p. 385)

C.a.R.D.I².ac.



Corticosteroid excess:
- 1° Hyperaldosteronism: Adrenal adenoma, BNH or carcinoma; GRA
- 2° Hyperaldosteronism: Renin-secreting tumour, renal artery stenosis, Gitelman syn.

Renal: Osmotic diuresis

Drugs: Diuretics (e.g. thiazide, furosemide), penicillin, salbutamol

Intake of K^+ or Mg^{2+} ↓ (i.e. hypoMgaemia)

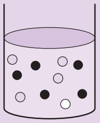
Intestinal loss: Vomiting, villous adenoma of rectum

HYPONATRAEMIA

Causes

Other solute

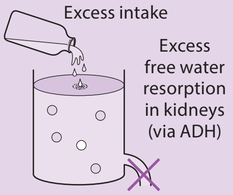
'Pseudohyponatraemia'



HOG (High osmolar gap)
Def:
  Osmolar gap = actual – estimated
  Estimated osmolality = 2× ($Na^+ + K^+$) + urea + glucose
  High osmolar gap >10 mmol/l
Causes:
  Hyperosmolality:
- Hyperglycaemia, e.g. diabetes, TPN
- Mannitol IV

  Normal osmolality:
- Hyperlipidaemia, e.g. diabetes, nephrosis
- Hyperproteinaemia, e.g. paraproteinaemia
- NG-feed

Excess water



Polydipsia
Causes:

P.I.N.T.

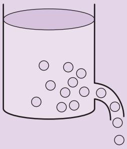
Psychogenic polydipsia; beer potomania = alcohol excess with inadequate solute in diet
Iatrogenic: Post-operative IVI
Neuro: Thalamus VMN lesion
TURP (bladder instillation)

Chronic hypovolaemia (**appropriate ADH excess**)
Causes: Oedematous states (secondary hyperaldosteronism):
- CCF, nephrosis, cirrhosis
- Pregnancy

Mech:
  Hypovolaemia ↑ ADH release
  GFR ↓ impairs distal tubular diluting capacity
  'Sick cell' syndrome = ↓ Na^+K^+ATPase; ↓ intracellular protein
  Hypothal. osmoreceptor resets

SIADH (**inappropriate ADH excess**)
Causes:
P.I.N.T.S. – *see opposite*
Mech: ADH causes free water resorption from distal convoluted tubule and medullary collecting duct

Sodium loss



Renal
Causes:
  Diuretics (thiazide/loop)
  Tubulointerstitial nephritis
  Hypoaldosteronism (RTA type IV), e.g. Addison; DM

Extra-renal
  GIT, esp. villous adenoma, fistula, stoma
  Skin
  Blood

NB: Hyponatraemia never due to inadequate salt intake!

SIADH – Causes

P.I.N.T.S.

Pulmonary
Infection esp. *Legionella*, TB (and rifampicin); bronchial carcinoma
Infection
AIDS, pneumonia
Neurological
CNS – meningo-encephalitis (esp. children):

- Stroke, traumatic brain injury, tumour, dementia
- Also causes 'cerebral salt-wasting syndrome'

PNS – autonomic neuropathy: Acute intermittent porphyria, GBS pain (and NSAIDs)
Toxins
CNS: Drugs of abuse – opiates, ecstasy
Neuropsychiatric: Carbamazepine, chlorpromazine; TCA, SSRI
Chemotherapy: Vincristine, cisplatin, cyclophosphamide
SLE
Systemic:

- Thyroid – hypothyroidism
- Neoplasm – carcinoma of prostate, bladder, pancreas; carcinoid; lymphoma
- Malnutrition

PC

Chronic: Asymptomatic, or lethargy
Acute (or late chronic):

- Headache/N+V
- Cerebral oedema: Confusion, fits, coma, death
- Weight gain: Due to intracellular swelling; but no oedema or hypertension (hypovolaemia with cerebral salt-wasting syndrome)

Ix

Bloods: Na$^+$ <135 mmol/l
Urea ↓; uric acid ↓ ADH ↑
Urine: Urine osmolality >300 mOsm/kg
Urine Na$^+$ >20 mmol/l: Due to hypervolaemia, inhibition of RAAS, and ↑ release of ANP
Special: Water load test: Ensure Na$^+$ >125; drink 1.5 l
Normal: >80% water excreted in 5 h; urine osmolality <100 mmol/l

Rx

Underlying cause
Fluid restrict: 500–1000 ml/day
Tolvaptan
Hypertonic saline IV**,** if CNS symptoms occur.
☠: Central pontine myelinolysis, if too rapid correction in chronic hyponatraemia (e.g. alcoholic)
PATH: Pontine, basal ganglia, cerebral demyelination
PC: Quadraparesis; pseudobulbar palsy or mutism; fits, 1–2 days after Na$^+$ correction

POLYURIA/POLYDIPSIA

Def

Polyuria = urine volume >3 l/24 h

Causes

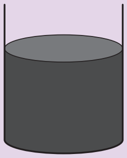
Concentrated urine (urine osmolality >300 mOsm/kg)

Osmotic diuresis:

- Diabetes mellitus (glycosuria)
- TPN (urea)
- Mannitol

Tubulointerstitial disease:

- Resolving acute tubular necrosis, or post-obstructive uropathy
- Medullary cystic disease
- $K^+\downarrow$, $Ca^{2+}\uparrow$



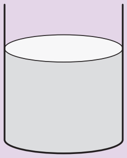
Dilute urine (urine osmolality <250 mOsm/kg)

Diabetes insipidus:

- Cranial
- Nephrogenic

Primary polydipsia:

- Psychiatric: Primary, anxiety, psychosis
- Neurological: Head injury, MS, sarcoid
- Toxins: Anti-psychotics, tricyclics, lithium, carbamazepine



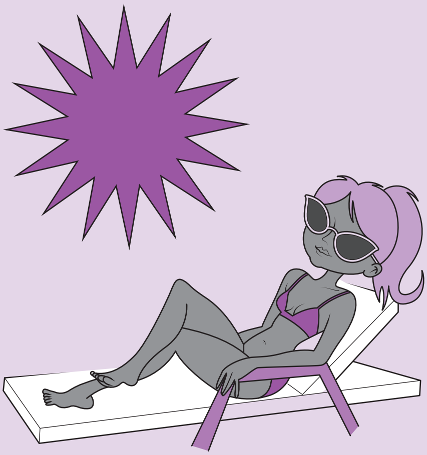
Ix

Bloods: Glucose
$K^+\downarrow$, $Ca^{2+}\uparrow$ (nephrogenic diabetes insipidus)
Osmolality
Urine: Osmolality
Special: Water-deprivation test|
ADH–osmolality plots, during water deprivation test or hypertonic saline challenges (p. 383)

HYPERNATRAEMIA

Causes

D.R.I.E.D. *out*



Deficiency – water restriction
  Debilitated, dementia, dysphagia, upper GI obstruction
  Hypothalamic disease may cause reduced thirst response (adipsic hypernatraemia)
Renal – water loss via osmotic diuresis
  Diabetes mellitus; TPN or NG feeding (high urea); IV mannitol
Intestinal or other water loss
  GIT: Infantile gastroenteritis, large solute load (e.g. NG feed)
  Skin: Acclimatisation to high temperature
  Lung: Hyperventilation (esp. in dry air), COPD
Excess salt
  Excess salt intake, e.g. seawater; excess IV normal saline
  Excess salt resorption, i.e. hypermineralocorticoidism
Diabetes insipidus *with* water deprivation
  Cranial: Insufficient ADH release to hypernatraemia
  Nephrogenic: Insufficient ADH sensitivity to hypernatraemia

DIABETES INSIPIDUS

Causes

Cranial

PATH: Hypothalamus, infundibulum or posterior pituitary lesion

D.I.V.I.N.I.T.Y.

Developmental/inherited:
- Autosomal dominant: AVP-neurophysin II gene
- Autosomal recessive: Wolfram or DIDMOAD syndrome (**DI**, **D**iabetes **M**ellitus, **O**ptic **a**trophy, **D**eafness + bladder atony)
- Congenital: Midline malformation (adipsia)

Infection: Basilar meningitis, e.g. TB

Vascular:
- Infarction: Sheehan syndrome, sickle cell anaemia
- Anterior communicating artery aneurysm

Inflammation:
- Lymphocytic infiltration of stalk – resolves in 3 y
- Sarcoid (also causes nephrogenic DI)
- SLE, granulomatosis with polyangiitis (midline granulomata)

Neoplasia:
- 1°: Pituitary adenoma **with** suprasellar extension; craniopharyngioma
- 2°: Metastases to pituitary or hypothalamus

Injury: Trauma or craniotomy – lasts 1 day to 3 weeks

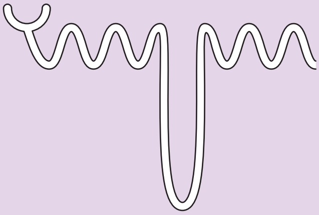
Toxin: Alcohol

Pregnanc**Y**: Placental vasopressinase (remits post-partum)

Nephrogenic

PATH: Collecting duct or tubulointerstitial disease

T.U.B.U.L.A.R. P.H.



Toxins: Lithium, amphotericin B, rifampicin, meflurane

Ureteric: Vesicoureteric reflux, obstruction

Blood vessel disease: Sickle cell, vasculitis, acute tubular necrosis

Uric acid ↑, calcium (plasma or urine) ↑, potassium ↓

Lymphoma, myeloma, amyloid

Autoimmune: SLE, Sjögren syndrome

Radiation

Papillary necrosis: Sickle cell, diabetes mellitus

Hereditary:
- X-linked recessive: *VR2* gene; results in cAMP ↓; presents in infancy
- Autosomal recessive: *aquaporin 2* gene

PC

Polyuria and polydispia

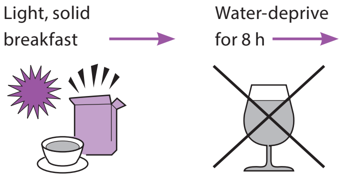
Fatigue: Due to nocturia, and volume depletion that only occurs if deprived of water

Symptoms may be masked by concomitant adrenal insufficiency due to equimolar Na$^+$ loss, and unmasked by steroid Rx

Ix

Bloods: Na$^+$ normal, or ↑ if patient is denied access to free water (↓ = primary polydipsia)
Osmolality >300 mOsm/kg
Urine: Osmolality <300 mOsm/kg, i.e. unable to concentrate urine
Special:

Water-deprivation test



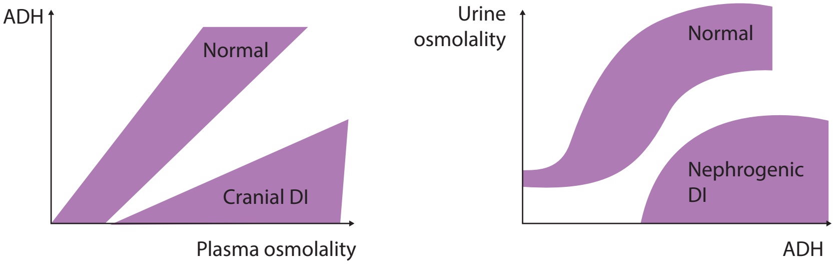
Criteria for diabetes insipidus
Weight loss >3%/h
Plasma osmolality >300 mOsm/kg
Urine osmolality <300 mOsm/kg
(partial DI: 300–600 mOsm/kg
primary polydipsia: >600)

NB 1: Co-existent hypocortisolism: Give pre-test dexamethasone if cortisol deficiency possible
NB 2: Cranial vs. nephrogenic DI: Give nasal desmopressin and allow free access to water:

- Cranial DI: Urine gets concentrated: ↓ urine volume + ↑ urine osmolality
- Nephrogenic DI: Urine can't be concentrated: ↑ urine volume + ↓ urine osmolality

ADH radioimmunoassay, plus hypertonic saline IV challenge

Right-sided shift patterns:



Rx

Cranial

Desmopressin (intra-nasal DDAVP); has advantage over AVP in having less pressor activity
Carbamazepine (induces SIADH)

Nephrogenic

Adequate water supply but Na$^+$ restrict; causes physiological ↓ urine output
Thiazide, e.g. hydrochlorothiazide: Causes physiological ↓ urine output
Indomethacin
High-dose intra-nasal desmopressin in partial nephrogenic diabetes insipidus

HYPERKALAEMIA

Causes

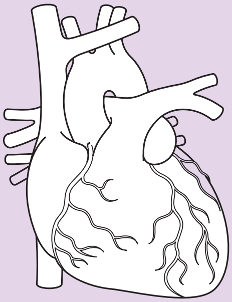
C.A.R.D.I^2.A.C^2.!

Plasma conc.
>5 mmol/l

Corticosteroid deficiency:
  Addison disease
  Hyporeninaemic hypoaldosteronism (RTA type 4), e.g. diabetic nephropathy
  Aldosterone resistance, e.g. post-obstruction nephropathy
Acidosis, metabolic
  Poisoning with aspirin, ethylene glycol, methanol poisoning
  Diabetic ketoacidosis (not lactic acidosis due to free movement of anions into cells)
Renal failure – acute or chronic, **R**enal tubular acidosis type 4
Drugs:
  Cardiac:
  - ACE inhibitors, angiotensin-II receptor antagonists
  - Diuretics – spironolactone, amiloride, acetazolamide
  - Digoxin, beta-blockers (overdose)

  Nephrotoxic (tubulo-interstitial):
  - Cyclosporin, tacrolimus
  - NSAIDs, trimethoprim

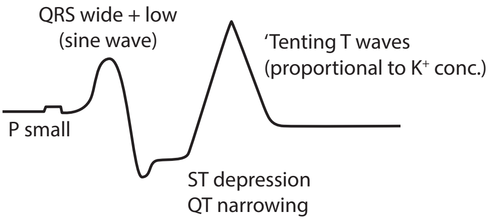
Intake ↑: citrus foods; IV fluids (iatrogenic)
Intestinal, gastro-: Haemorrhage
Artefactual:
  Haemolysis or blood clots, esp. prothrombotic states; Ix: PO$_4$ ↓, Ca^{2+} ↓, glucose ↓
  Hereditary stomatocytosis (autosomal dominant) – red-cells leak K$^+$ at room temperature
Cell-lysis:
  Catabolic states: Anorexia nervosa, trauma, chemotherapy
  Massive blood transfusion, esp. >7 days old
Channelopathy – hyperkalaemic periodic paralysis, due to Na$^+$-channel mutation (autosomal dominant)



PC

Dysrhythmias, e.g. VT, PEA arrest – but presents late (K$^+$ >6.5 mmol/l)! (Membrane potential decreases, resulting in shorter action potential and depolarisation)

ECG



Rx

Cardioprotection: Calcium gluconate/chloride 10% IV 10 ml

Acute:
- Insulin (IV soluble 'Actrapid') + glucose (IV 50 g of 50% glucose), followed with sliding scale of soluble insulin and dextrose
- Salbutamol (high-dose nebulizer 10 mg)
- Dialysis

Chronic:
- Renal: Loop diuretic; dialysis
- GIT: K$^+$ restrict; resonium salts

HYPOKALAEMIA

Causes

C.A.R.D.I^2.A.C^2.!

Plasma conc.
<3.5 mmol/l

Corticosteroid excess – hypermineralocorticoidism:
- 1° Hyperaldosteronism: Adrenal adenoma, BNH or carcinoma, glucocorticoid remediable aldosteronism
- 2° Hyperaldosteronism: Renin-secreting tumour, renal artery stenosis, Gitelman, Bartter syndromes, hypovolaemia
- Hypoaldosteronism: Liddle syn., 'apparent mineralocorticoid excess' syn.

Acidosis, renal-tubular, types 1 and 2

Renal – over-diuresis:
- Recovery phase of acute-tubular necrosis
- Osmotic diuresis, e.g. DM, TPN feeding

Drugs:
- Cardiac: Diuretics (thiazide, loop, osmotic)
- Nephrotoxic (tubulo-interstitial): Penicillins, amphotericin B
- β_2-agonists: Salbutamol, aminophylline (↑ Na^+K^+-ATPase)
- Insulin: Conjoint glucose–K^+ cell influx

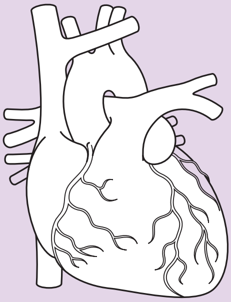
Intake ↓ or Mg^{2+} deficiency, e.g. alcoholism, malabsorption, diuretics

Intestinal:
- Vomiting, naso-gastric tube suctioning
- Diarrhoea, esp. villous adenoma of rectum; purgative abuse
- Surgery: Fistula, ureterosigmoidostomy

Artefactual: Sample taken downstream from IV drip

Cell-proliferation: Anabolic states, e.g. convalescence from trauma, surgery, TPN feeding

Channelopathy: Hypokalaemic periodic paralysis, due to dihydropyridine Ca^{2+} channel mutation (autosomal dominant)



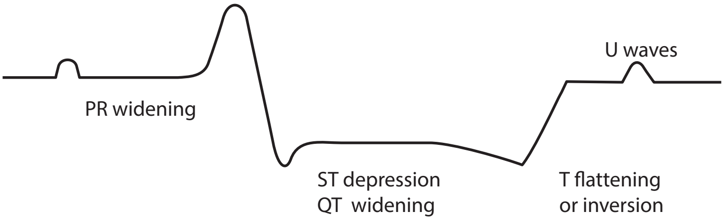
PC

Neurological: Weakness – skeletal muscle (hypotonia); smooth muscle (constipation/ileus) fatigue, confusion, depression

Nephrogenic diabetes insipidus

Dysrhythmias: Bradycardia, heart block, SVT, VT, digoxin toxicity potentiation

ECG



Rx

K^+ replacement: PO or IV
- Max conc. = 40 mmol/l; max rate over 4 hours via peripheral line
- Measure K^+ every few hours/ECG monitor

Mg^{2+} replacement (if VT): IV $MgSO_4$ 50% 8 ml

HYPOCALCAEMIA

Causes

Two-step process:

1. **Correct** for albumin: For every 4 g/l of albumin below 40 g/l allow 0.1 mmol/l from lower limit of Ca (2.2 mmol/l)
2. **Measure PTH** (parathyroid hormone), **ALP** (alkaline phosphatase) and **vitamin D**

PTH ↓

I. A.M.

Injury to parathyroid gland (commonest):
- Thyroidectomy, laryngeal carcinoma
- Parathyroidectomy (for ↑ Ca): 'Hungry bone syndrome' = rapid uptake of Ca, Mg + PO_4

Autoimmune – parathyroid inflammation:
- Thyroidectomy, laryngeal carcinoma
- Includes polyglandular autoimmune syndrome type 1 = PGAS: **P**TH, thyroid ↓; **G**IT (pernicious anaemia); **A**ddison; **S**kin (teeth, nail dystrophy, alopecia, candida)

Malignancy (carcinoma, lymphoma)/**M**etabolic (haemochromatosis, Wilson)

PTH ↑

V.I.B.R.A.T.I.N.'

Vitamin D deficiency/impaired activation = rickets (children) or osteomalacia (adults) (p. 390):
- Deficiency: Diet, malabsorption, e.g. coeliac
- Activation: Cirrhosis; chronic renal failure

Inherited: PseudohypoPTHism ('Albright osteodystrophy')

PATH: PTH-receptor insensitivity in proximal convoluted tubule → failure of Ca resorption and PO_4 excretion:
  - Type 1: Renal adenylate cyclase, G protein *sa* subunit deficiency
  - Type 2: Post-adenylate cyclase transduction abnormality

PC: Type 1 (autosomal dominant):
  - Short: Height, 4th + 5th metacarpal and metatarsal length, IQ
  - Oculocutaneous: Subcutaneous calcification, cataracts, blue sclera
  - Endocrinopathy: Type 2 diabetes (and obese), hypogonadism, hypothyroidism (the presence of this phenotype, but normal calcium = 'pseudopseudohypoPTHism'!)

Burns, and other causes of cell lysis (infarction; haemolysis; sepsis; tumour lysis) :
- Due to hyperphosphataemia
- Also caused artefactually by delayed serum separation or haemolysis

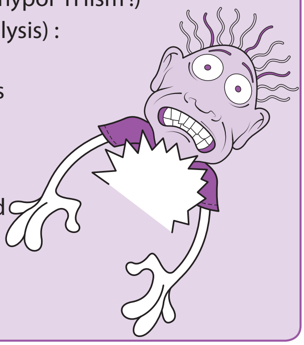
Rhabdomyolysis: Releases phosphate

Acute pancreatitis (saponification)

Toxins:
- Citrate, e.g. blood transfusion, heparin, protamine, glucagon, fusidic acid
- Bisphosphonate

Infection: *Legionella pneumophila* pneumonia

Neoplasia: Prostate carcinoma



PC

General

Neurological:

- Sensory: Numbness, perioral paraesthesia
- Motor: Hyperexcitability – cramps, hyper-reflexia, tetany, stridor Chvostek Sx (tap facial nerve → twitching)/Trousseau Sx (carpopedal spasm)
- CNS: Seizures, depression, dementia, parkinsonism (basal ganglia calcification)

Oculocutaneous:

- Photophobia, papilloedema, subcapsular cataracts due to ectopic calcification
- Subcutaneous calcification (if PO_4↑)

Cardiac: Ventricular tachycardia (due to prolongation of QT), electromechanical dissociation

High PTH:

Osteomalacia, rickets (p. 390), bone pain and fractures; proximal myopathy; TB susceptibility
PseudohypoPTHism *(see opposite)*: Short; oculocutaneous, endocrinopathy

Ix

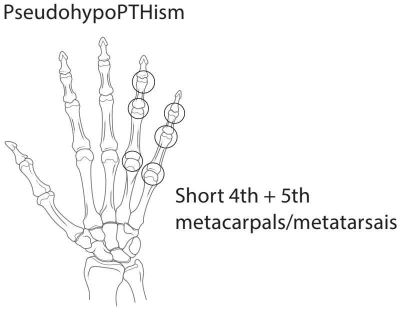
Bloods: Calcium – corrected total calcium <2.2 mmol/l
PTH – if normal, consider causes of hyperPTH-related hypocalcaemia (osteomalacia, etc.)
ALP ↑: Osteomalacia; rickets
ALP normal: HypoPTHism or pseudohypoPTHism
Vit. D: 25-HCC ↓ 1,25-DHCC ↓ – poor intake; liver failure
25-HCC ↑ 1,25-DHCC ↓ – chronic renal failure
25-HCC ↑ 1,25-DHCC ↑ – vitamin D resistance
PO_4↑ – hypoPTHism, pseudohypoPTHism or chronic renal failure
PO_4 ↓– osteomalacia; rickets (except that due to CKD)

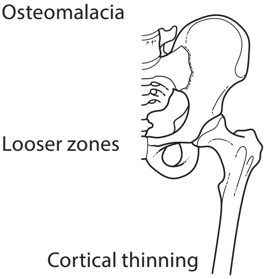
Urine: PO_4 ↓: HypoPTHism or pseudoPTHism
cAMP, post-IV PTH – classifies pseudohypoPTHism

Micro: Throat/vaginal swab for candida

ECG: Hyp**O**calcaemia Pr**OlO**ngs QT interval

Radiol: X-rays





Rx

Calcium supplements:

- Calcium gluconate (IV) – use cardiac monitor
- Calcium carbonate (PO)

Vitamin D:

Ergocalciferol (D2) – non-hydroxylated
☠: Hypercalcaemia due to long half-life (must monitor for first few weeks)
Alfacalcidol (1α-HCC) or calcitriol (D3) – hypercalcaemia less likely

HYPERCALCAEMIA

Causes

Two-step process:

1. **Correct** for albumin, since physiologically inert, bound calcium increases with serum protein. Hence total calcium increases with hypergammaglobulinaemia, or dehydration (urea ↑)
2. **Measure PTH** (parathyroid hormone) and **ALP** (alkaline phosphatase)

PTH ↑ (ALP normal)

P.T.H.

Primary hyperPTHism – **commonest**
  Epi: Prevalence = 1% population; typically women in 30–50s
  Aet: Hyperplasia (15%), adenoma (80%), carcinoma (5%)
  Pre:
  - Hereditary, esp. when bilateral tumours present
  - **MEN** syndromes: I (pituitary, pancreatic islet-cell tumour) or IIA (thyroid ca., phaeochromocytoma)

  PC: Usually asymptomatic, unless additional cause occurs, e.g. carcinoma

Tertiary hyperPTHism: Following renal transplant in a patient with prior 2° hyperPTHism, vit. D and Ca rise, but parathyroid gland continues secreting autonomously

Hypocalciuric hypercalcaemia, familial (autosomal dominant, numerous mutations):
  PATH: Incorrectly set Ca sensor on parathyroid and renal tubules causes ↑ PTH secretion and ↑ Ca resorption in distal-convoluted tubule
  PC: Hypercalcaemic from birth (cf. primary PTH) – usually benign

PTH ↓

S.T.O^2.N.E.S.

Sarcoidosis; and TB (ALP ↑) due to 1α-hydroxylase activity in granulomas

Toxins (ALP normal):
- Vit. D or A, or antacids (‘milk-alkali syndrome’)
- Thiazide diuretics (also diuretic phase of acute tubular necrosis)
- Lithium: PTH is actually ↑ !

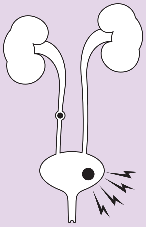
Osteoblast and **O**steoclast turnover increased (ALP ↑): Fracture, esp. with Paget, puberty or immobility

Neoplasia
  ALP ↑:
- Bony metastases, e.g. breast, bronchial – **2nd commonest** (due to prostaglandin release causing osteoclast activation)
- Lymphoma, leukaemia – due to 1*α*-hydroxylase activity

  ALP normal:
- Myeloma
- Carcinoma (PTH-related peptide): Squamous cell bronchial, renal, liver, pancreas

Endocrine:
  ALP ↑: Thyrotoxicosis
  ALP normal: Addison, acromegaly, androgen excess

Syndromes (ALP normal):
- Jansen syndrome: Autonomous PTH-receptor activity
  PC: Severe hyperPTHism-like bone disease in children, premature death
- William syndrome:
  PC: **WI**de mouth, **L**ow growth, **L**ow IQ, **A**ortic stenosis, **M**etabolic (Ca ↑)



PC

'Bones'

- Bone pain, due to subperiosteal resorption
- Arthralgia (pseudogout; chondrocalcinosis)

'Stones'

- Renal stones
- Tubular dysfunction: Diabetes insipidus (polyuria, polydipsia), acidosis

Abdominal 'groans'

- Abdominal pain (incl. peptic ulcers, acute pancreatitis)
- N+V
- Constipation

Psychological 'moans'

- Fatigue, depression, psychosis, dementia

Ix

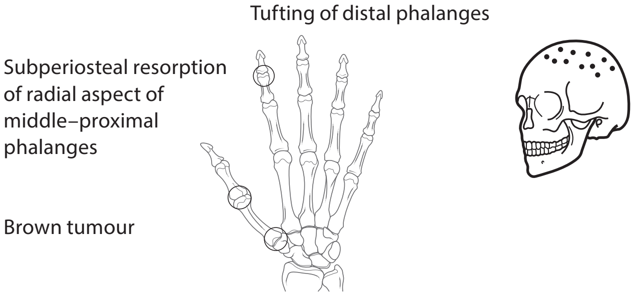
Bloods: Essential
Calcium: Corrected total calcium >2.6 mmol/l
PTH: If normal, consider causes of hyperPTHism
ALP
Auxillary:
PO_4 ↓ – hyperPTHism; lymphoma; PO_4 ↑ – carcinoma
Cl ↑, HCO_3 ↓: HyperPTHism
Other: Albumin ↓ – neoplasia; ESR ↑ – hyperPTHism or neoplasia; ACE ↑ – sarcoid

Urine: Calcium:

- Hypercalciuric (<99% tubular resorption) – all causes, except:
- Hypocalciuric (>99% tubular resorption) – familial hypocalciuric hypercalcaemia

Bence-Jones proteinuria: Myeloma

Micro: Consider TB (CXR, Mantoux, etc.)
ECG: Short QT interval (hyp**O**calcemia pr**O**l**O**ngs the QT)
Radiol: X-rays


Tufting of distal phalanges
Subperiosteal resorption of radial aspect of middle–proximal phalanges
Brown tumour

Radioisotopes:

- Parathyroid (pertechnetate – thallium or MIBI, to subtract out thyroid)
- Technetium bone scan: Bone metastases

Special: Selective neck venous catheterisation for hyperPTHism

Rx

General

High fluid intake (normal saline infusion) + furosemide (↑ Ca excretion)
Bisphosphonates: Pamiodronate IV, clodronate
Cytotoxins (IV mithramycin, gallium); calcitonin (IV or IM); cellulose phosphate resin
Dietary restrict, e.g. for hereditary causes

Specific

Prednisolone is indicated for:

- Sarcoid or TB
- Myeloma or lymphoma
- Addison
- Vit. D or A excess

HRT (oestrogen + progesterone): May obviate surgery in post-menopausal hyperPTHism
Surgery: For primary hyperPTHism, where Ca >3.0 mmol/l – neck exploration with adenoma resection or partial PTHectomy

OSTEOMALACIA AND RICKETS

Def

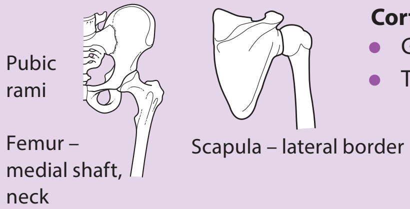
Defective mineralisation of osteoid, that leads to reductions in global skeletal mass and density. (Osteoid = composite of collagen type 1, glycosysaminoglycans and proteoglycan, secreted by osteoblasts)

Osteomalacia: Defect occurs **after** epiphyseal fusion in adults

PATH:

Looser zones:

- Radiolucent lines that lie perpendicularly to cortex
- Due to stress fractures or erosion by nutrient artery
- Often symmetrical across body


Pubic rami
Femur – medial shaft, neck
Scapula – lateral border

Cortical thinning:

- Generalized rarefaction
- Trabeculation ↓

PC

Bone pain and fractures (esp. neck of femur; wrist; vertebral) that develop from Looser zones
Proximal myopathy: Tender - due to effects of vit. D on Ca influx into muscle
TB susceptibility

Rickets: defect occurs **before** epiphyseal fusion in children

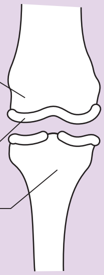
PATH:

Metaphyseal widening:

- Cupping and ragged surface (due to growth plate disorganisation)

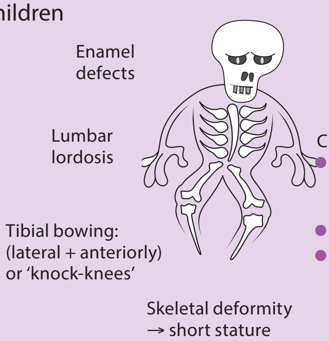
Epiphyseal cartilage overgrowth

Bone marrow fibrosis



PC

Characteristic appearance
Widened, painful joints, e.g. wrist


Enamel defects
Lumbar lordosis
Tibial bowing: (lateral + anteriorly) or 'knock-knees'
Skeletal deformity → short stature

Skull:

- Frontal bossing: parietal flattering
- Soft (craniotabes)
- Delayed fontanelle closure

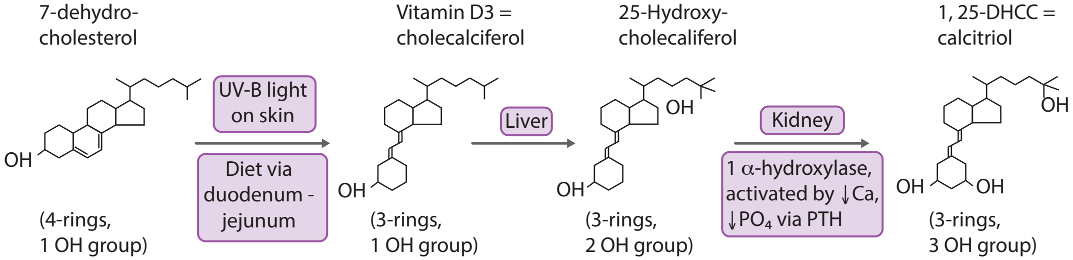
Chest:

- Rachitic rosary (costochondral junction overgrowth)
- Pectus carinatum
- Harrison sulcus – diaphragmatic recession

Vitamin D physiology

Vitamin D is actually a hormone, because:
Endogenously produced: With adequate sunlight, no dietary fortification is required
Homeostatic control:

- Activated by ↓ Ca and ↓ PO_4
- Its action is to increase Ca and PO_4 via GIT (absorption) + bone (resorption)


7-dehydro-cholesterol
OH
(4-rings, 1 OH group)
UV-B light on skin
Diet via duodenum - jejunum
Vitamin D3 = cholecalciferol
OH
(3-rings, 1 OH group)
Liver
25-Hydroxy-cholecaliferol
OH
OH
(3-rings, 2 OH group)
Kidney
1 α-hydroxylase, activated by ↓Ca, ↓PO₄ via PTH
1, 25-DHCC = calcitriol
OH
OH
OH
(3-rings, 3 OH group)

Causes

Due to either **vitamin D** or **phosphate** deficiency (but not calcium deficiency!)
Vitamin D deficiency causes:

- Decrease in GIT absorption of Ca and PO_4
- Secondary HyperPTHism with consequent increased Ca renal resorption and PO_4 renal loss

S.I.C.K. B.ON.E^2.

↓ Vitamin D

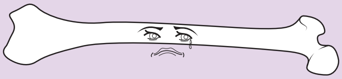
- **S**upply
  - Sunlight: Housebound, debilitated, elderly
  - Diet: Vegans
  - Fat malabsorption (vit. D = fat-soluble), e.g. coeliac; chronic pancreatitis
- **I**nherited
  - Renal 1*α*-hydroxylase deficiency ('vit. D-dependent rickets type 1'; auto. recessive)
  - Resistance to vit. D ('vit. D-dependent rickets type 2'; auto. recessive)
- **C**irrhosis, esp. primary biliary cirrhosis, due to:
  - 25-hydroxylase activity ↓
  - Vit. D plasma-binding protein synthesis ↓
  - Bile salt synthesis and circulation ↓
- **K**idney failure
  - 1*α*-hydroxylase deficiency
  - Nephrosis: Vit. D plasma-binding protein loss

- **B**abies (pregnancy)/**B**reast feeding
  - Due to increased demand (also trauma)
- **ON**cogenic rickets
- **E**ndocrine: HypoPTHism or pseudohypoPTHism
- **E**nzyme inducers, e.g. phenytoin

↓ PO_4

- **S**upply
  - Starvation/poor nutrition
  - Malabsorption, e.g. coeliac, vomiting
  - Antacids containing Mg or Al
- **I**nherited: 'X-linked dominant hypophosphataemic rickets' = vit. D resistance in GIT and proximal convoluted tubule (Ix: Normal calcium levels!)
- **C**irrhosis, esp. alcohol bingers or post-glucose:
  - Acetate displaces muscular PO_4
  - Poor absorption of PO_4 from PCT
- **K**idney: Renal tubular acidosis
  - Distal (type 1)
  - Proximal (Fanconi syndrome), e.g. 2° to myeloma, Wilson

- **B**inge alcohol drinking
- **ON**cogenic rickets, esp. neurofibromatosis, cavernous haemangioma and giant-cell tumour of bone
- **E**ndocrine: Hyperaldosteronsim



Ix

Bloods: Ca : Normal (initially, due to 2° hyperPTHism) → ↓ (severe hypovitaminosis D) (except in renal failure when ↑) PO_4 ↓
Alkaline phosphatase ↑
PTH ↑
Vit D:

- 25-HCC ↓
- 1,25-DHCC ↑ – supply ↓; demand ↑; cirrhosis (1,25-DHCC ↑ due to 2ndary ↑ PTH)
- 25-HCC ↑; 1,25-DHCC ↓ – chronic renal failure (1,25-DHCC ↓ in nephrosis)
- 25-HCC ↑; 1,25-DHCC ↑ – vit. D resistance

Urine: Renal tubular acidosis (pH >5.5)

Rx

Depends on cause:
Supply: Vit. D2 (ergocalciferol); vit. D3 (cholecalciferol) + UVB light
Malabsorption or resistance: High-dose or intramuscular vit. D + calcium
Liver/renal disease: Calcitriol or 1-α-calcidol (in renal failure) ☠ Hypercalcaemia
HypoPO_4aemia, e.g. RTA: Oral PO_4, but must correct Ca and vit. D first (or will worsen!)

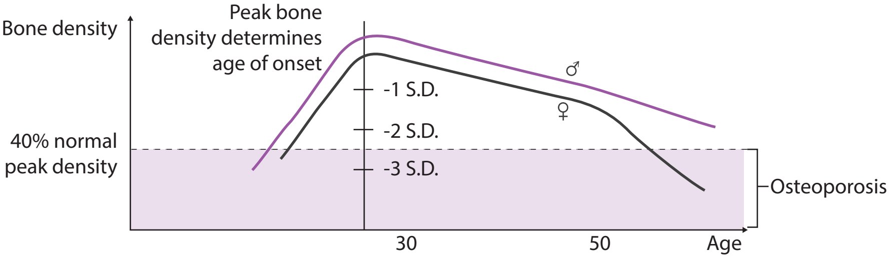
OSTEOPOROSIS

Def

Bone mineral density< 2.5 standard deviations (–2.5 T) from normal young adult, adjusted for race and gender; in presence of normal bone composition

Due to imbalance between osteoblast synthesis vs. osteoclast resorption.

Localized (due to trauma, disuse, reflex sympathetic dystrophy) vs. generalized (see below).



Causes

P.E.N.S^2.I.O.N.E.R.S.

Primary
- Epi: 5% of population have, of which 10% get fractures every year
- Predisposing: *White and Light* (i.e. Caucasian, low body mass index), genes, e.g. vit. D receptor gene inactivity, esp. in youth
- Types:
  - Post-menopausal women (50–70 y)
    - Site: Vertebral body; radius – trabecular bone
    - Ix: Low PTH
  - Elderly (70+ y)
    - Site: Femur neck, humerus, tibia – cortical bone
    - Ix: High PTH

Endocrine: Steroid-related
- Cushing
- Hypogonadism, incl Turner or Klinefelter syn.
- Addison disease

Neoplasia: Myeloma, lymphoma, carcinoma (PTH-related peptide)

Steroids/**S**moking, alcohol/other toxins
- Heparin, warfarin
- Anti-convulsants (also cause vit. D deficiency)
- Lithium, buserelin, cyclosporin, thyroxine
  - NB : Must have annual DEXA scan if on steroids for >3 months

Intestine/nutrition
- Malnutrition, anorexia nervosa,
- Malabsorption (of Ca, vit. D, vit. C), TPN

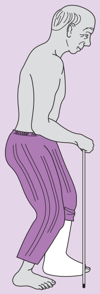
Organ failure: Cirrhosis, esp. primary biliary cholangitis; haemochromatosis

Neurological: Dementia, MS, epilepsy

Endocrine: T4 ↑, PTH ↑, PRL ↑, acromegaly, type 1 DM (IDDM), pregnancy

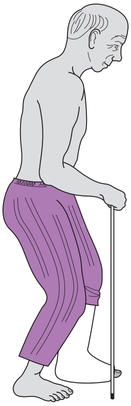
Rheumatological: Rheumatoid arthritis; ankylosing spondylitis; TB arthritis

Syndromes: Osteogenesis imperfecta; Marfan; homocystinuria; Ehlers–Danlos



PC

Often asymptomatic and picked up by routine DEXA scanning



Ix

Assess bone mineral density (BMD) in all women >65 and men >75

Bloods: Ca: Normal, except for certain secondary causes: ↑ in malignancy; hyperPTHism; ↓ in malnutrition; malabsorption; osteomalacia

PO_4: Normal

ALP: Normal: or ↑ if fracture

Radiol: X-rays:

- Generalized osteopenia – thin cortex and trabeculae
- Fractures, esp. biconcave vertebral compression

DEXA (dual-energy X-ray absorptiometry)

- Generalized osteopenia – thin cortex and trabeculae
- Lumbar spine and femur neck 2D mineralisation area → estimates bone density
- T-scores relate individual result to normal young adult population (T <-2.0 to -2.5 = treat)
- Z-scores relate individual result to normal age-matched population

Quantitative CT: Advantage in estimating 3D mineralisation density

Rx

Avoid: Smoking, alcohol, steroids; Activity: Exercise in youth ↑ peak bone density

Bisphosphonates: Risedronate, alendronate
Mech: Inhibiting osteoclast ATP metabolism
☠: Poor absorption (take before breakfast); oesophagitis (stay upright for 30 min); ↓ Ca

Calcium (taken with bisphosphonates or calcitonin)/Mg/strontium

D, vitamin

O**E**strogens
Mech:↑ osteoblast and ↓ osteoclast activity
HRT: Oestrogen ± progestagen (for protection against uterine ca.)
50% ↓ in fracture risk; ☠: Breast carcinoma
SERMs (selective oestrogen receptor modulators): Raloxifene, tamoxifen
40% ↓ in fracture risk; ☠: Uterine carcinoma (tamoxifen only)
Protective against breast ca., esp. oestrogen-dependent types

Fitness: Regular exercise improves bone mineral density

PAGET DISEASE

Def

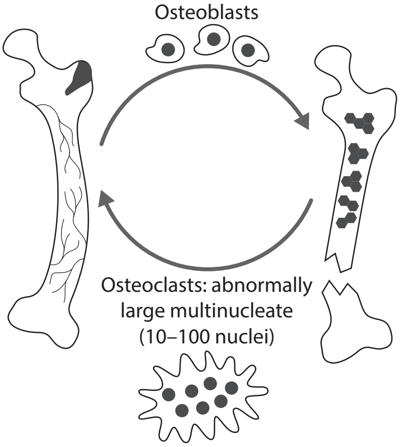
Bone mineral density increased + disordered bone architecture + brittleness
Excessive osteoclastic activity, and overcompensatory osteoblastic remodelling and sclerosis

Epi

Inc: 4% of over-40s (although majority are asymptomatic)
Age: 50+: Inc. ↑
Sex: M > F
Geo: White Anglo-Saxons (W. Europe, Australia)
Aet: Paramyxovirus, e.g. canine dystemper virus (found in osteoclasts)
Genetic
Micro: Cycles of osteolysis and sclerosis occur in different parts of the same bone simultaneously

Osteolysis

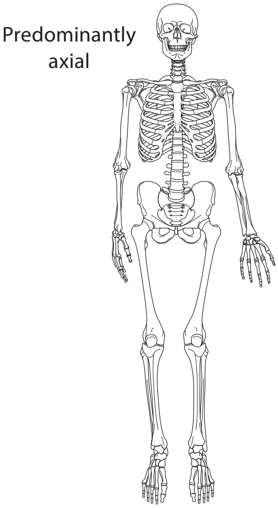
- Osteoporosis circumscripta – V-shaped, sharply demarcated, advancing edge
- Vascularisation
- Deformable – bent and irregular cortex, with microfractures on convex surface

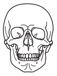


Sclerosis

- Coarse thickening of cortex and trabeculae (honeycomb radiolucencies)
- Brittle – mosaic pattern of lamellar bone

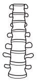
Sites





Skull

- Cotton-wool opacities in calvarium
- Platybasia – overgrowth of skull base
- Neural foramen stenosis



Vertebrae

- Sclerotic ('ivory') and enlarged (cf. Hodgkin lymphoma – = sclerotic, but same size)

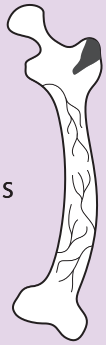
Femur/tibia

- Anterior bowing; 'sabre tibia' due to sclerosis

PC

Often asymptomatic, but picked up by X-rays + ALP ↑ ↑

P.V.C. B^{2}.O^{2}.N.E.S.



Pain
- Deep, boring pain
- ↑ at rest + night
- Not ↓ by NSAIDs

Vascularity
- Warm bones, bruit, dilated superficial temporal arteries and external jugular vein

Cardiac
- High-output cardiac failure

Bowing
- Deformable

Brittle
- Fractures, esp. femur neck or shaft

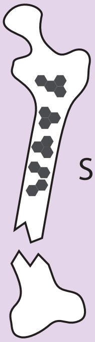
Orthopaedic deformity
- Skull enlargement; kyphosis

Osteoarthritis
- Secondary to misaligned bones

Neurological
- May be blind/deaf – due to nerve compression
  - Brainstem compression, hydrocephalus
  - Spinal stenosis, radicular compression

Electrolytes
- Gout
- Nephrocalcinosis (hypercalciuria)

Sarcoma, osteo
- In 1%
- Presents as ↑ in pain and ALP



Ix

Bloods: Ca normal (but ↑ in immobility or fracture); PO_4 normal
ALP markedly ↑↑↑
Urine: Ca ↑
Bone resorption markers: Hydroxyproline:creatinine ratio or pyridinium crosslinks
Radiol: X-rays: Sclerosis and osteolysis *(see p. 394);* used for Rx monitoring
^{99}Tc bone scan: Identifies 'hot-spots' of osteoblastic activity

Rx

Analgesics: NSAIDs only good for arthritis or fractures
Bisphosphonates: Alendronate, risedonate, pamidronate IV
Calcitonin, nasal: ☠: ↓Ca
Deformity: Osteotomy for bowed tibia; joint replacements for osteoarthritis

HYPERLIPIDAEMIA

Causes

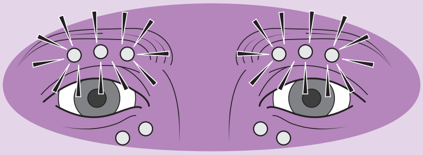
P.E.A^2.R.L.S^2. and **P.E.A.R.L.S^4.**
(*xanthomata are pearl-like papules*)

P.E.A^2.R.L.S^2.
Cholesterol ↑

- **P**rimary (familial)
  - **Familial hypercholesterolaemia**
    - Prev: Heterozygote: 1/500
      Homozygote: 1/250,000
    - Aet: LDL-receptor or ApoB100 mutations or polygenic forms (all auto. dom.)
    - PC: Premature ischaemic heart disease:
      - Heterozygous: By 40 (cholesterol 7–13 mmol/l)
      - Homozygous: By 20 (cholesterol >13 mmol/l)
      - Polygenic: By 40 (cholesterol 6–9 mmol/l)
    - Ix: LDL ↑= type IIa
    - Rx: Statins ineffective
      Plasmapharesis: Homozygous disease
  - **Familial combined hyperlipidaemia**
    - Aet: ApoB overproduction in liver (auto. dom.)
    - Ix: LDL+VLDL ↑ (cholesterol+triglycerides↑)
  - **Cerebrotendinous xanthomatosis**
    - Aet: Bile acid synthesis defect (auto. rec.)
    - PC: Progressive learning disability and ataxia
  - **Familial causes of HDL ↓**
    - LCAT deficiency (corneal opacity)
    - Tangier disease (orange tonsils; neuropathy)
- **E**ndocrine
  - Cushing (cholesterol + triglycerides ↑)
  - Hypothyroidism
- **A**norexia nervosa/**A**cute intermittent porphyria
- **R**enal: Nephrosis
- **L**iver
  - Cholestasis, e.g. primary biliary cirrhosis
  - Hepatoma
- **S**teroids/other toxins
  - Glucocorticoids, progestagen
  - Cylosporin
  - Thiazide (cholesterol + triglycerides ↑)
- **S**moking: HDL ↓

P.E.A.R.L.S^4.
Triglycerides ↑

- **P**rimary (familial)
  - **Familial hypertriglyceridaemia**
    - Prev: 1/600
    - Aet: Lipoprotein lipase mutation (auto. rec.)
      Apo-CII mutation (LPL activator)
    - Ix: **V**LDL↑ = type IV (auto. dom.)
      - **C**hylmicrons↑ = type I (auto. rec.)
        esp. **C**hildren
        - VLDL↑
          Chylmicrons ↑
          Triglyceride levels very high in types I and V
          = type V (auto rec)
  - **Familial dysbetalipoproteinaemia**
    - Prev: 1/10,000
    - Aet: Accumulation of remnant lipoprotein due to impaired ApoE recognition by liver
      Apo E2/E2 homozygotes (1% pop.) plus obesity, diabetes or menopause
    - Ix: IDL ↑ (broad – β) = type III
  - **Glycogen storage disease**
  - **Lipodystrophy**
- **E**ndocrine
  - Diabetes type 2 – also HDL ↓
  - Acromegaly
- **A**lcoholism – but HDL ↑/obesity – also HDL ↓
- **R**enal: Chronic renal failure
- **L**iver: Acute hepatitis
- **S**teroids
- **S**tress/**S**epsis/**S**urgery (ileal bypass)

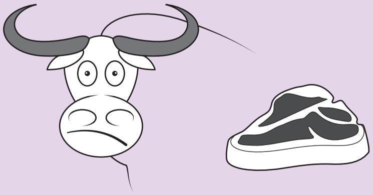


PC

O.X. C.H.O.P.S.

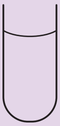
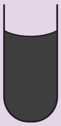
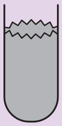
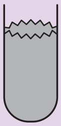
Ophthalmic
  Cholesterol ↑: Xanthelasma palpebrum; corneal arcus (normal >50 y)
  Triglycerides ↑: Lipaemia retinalis (white optic disc and vessels, when TG >10 mmol/l)
Xanthomata
  Cholesterol ↑: Tendinous (normal skin colour as lie deep; Achilles, MCP, elbow)
  Cutaneous: Homozygous FH only
  Triglycerides ↑: Eruptive (pruritic, skin-colour papules, pustules; buttocks/elbows)
  Striate palmar (orange–yellow papules on creases) – *Type III hyperlipidaemia*
  Tuberous (large, pink-red nodules on bony prominences) – *Type III hyperlipidaemia*

Cardiac: Cholesterol ↑or type III triglycerides ↑ or diabetes – atherosclerosis (esp. coronary); aortic stenosis
Haematology: Cholesterol ↑ (esp. cholestasis or LCAT deficiency) – target cells
Organomegaly (hepatosplenomegaly): Triglycerides ↑
Pancreatitis, acute: Triglycerides ↑, when TG >10 mmol/l
Special: Arthritis – cholesterol ↑ (homozygous FH)



Ix

Cholesterol: Total >5.2 mmol/l: LDL >4.0; HDL <1.0; HDL/total cholesterol <0.25
Fasting triglyceride: Total >2.0 mmol/l (if >11, consider t chylomicrons)
Plasma appearance (after overnight storage at 4°C) – allows phenotype classification:

 Clear	 Turbid – milky	 Creamy supernatant	 Turbid + creamy supernatant	
LDL ↑ only **Type IIa**	VLDL ↑ **Type IIb or IV**	Chylomicrons ↑ **Type I**	VLDL ↑ + Chylomicrons ↑ **(Type V)**	IDL (broad-β) ↑ **(Type III)**

Rx

Conservative:
Diet – cholesterol ↓ by <10%
Exercise – HDL ↑
Alcohol, smoking, diabetes

Medical
Statins: Simva-, prava-, atorvastatin
HMG CoA reductase inhibitors cause upregulation of LDL receptors on liver
☠: Myositis; LFT Δ
Ezetimibe – GIT cholesterol absorption ↓

PORPHYRIA

Def

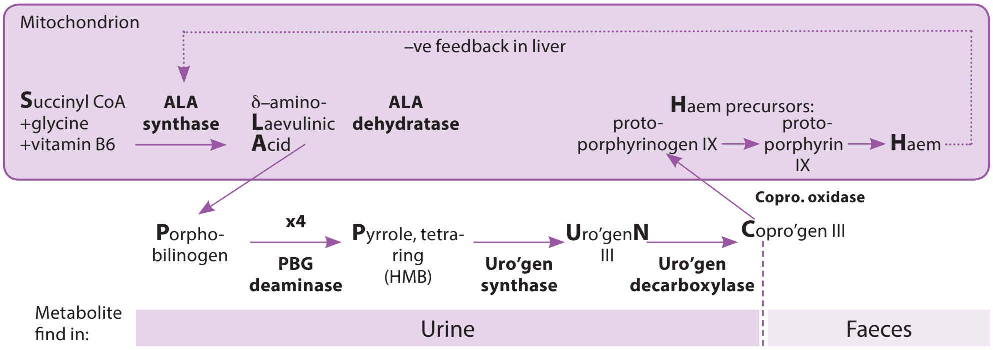
Hereditary or acquired defects along various steps of haem biosynthetic pathway
Causes one or combination of 3 clinical pictures, depending on step involved

Clinical	Biochemical abnormality	Organ
Neurological	Porphyrin precursor (ALA and PBG)↑↑	Hepatic
Cutaneous	Photosensitive porphyrins (tetrapyrolle ring) ↑↑	Hepatic/erythropoietic
Microcytic anaemia	Failure of haem synthesis	Erythropoietic

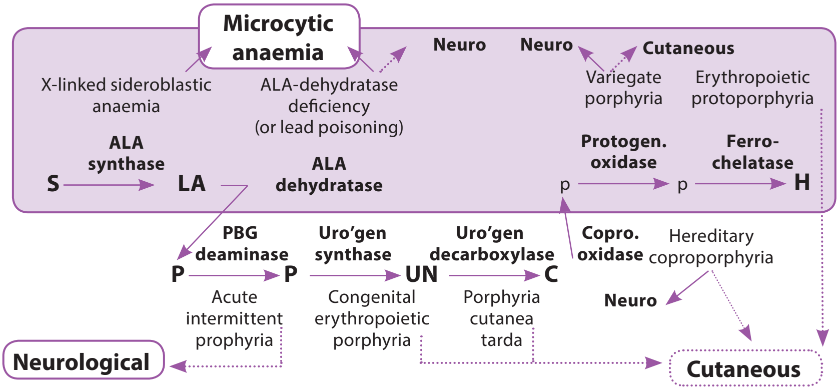
Hepatic porphyrias are commoner than erythropoietic porphyrias, even though 85% of body haem is synthesized in RBC, because in the liver, haem production is controlled by negative feedback, and so a failure to produce haem increases the rate of porphyrin production

Haem synthetic pathway

S.L.A.P → P.U.N.C.H


Mitochondrion
–ve feedback in liver
Succinyl CoA
+glycine
+vitamin B6
ALA synthase
δ–amino-Laevulinic Acid
ALA dehydratase
Haem precursors:
proto-porphyrinogen IX
proto-porphyrin IX
Haem
Copro. oxidase
Porpho-bilinogen
x4
PBG deaminase
Pyrrole, tetra-ring (HMB)
Uro'gen synthase
Uro'genN III
Uro'gen decarboxylase
Copro'gen III
Metabolite find in:
Urine
Faeces

Types


Microcytic anaemia
X-linked sideroblastic anaemia
ALA-dehydratase deficiency (or lead poisoning)
Neuro
Neuro
Cutaneous
Variegate porphyria
Erythropoietic protoporphyria
ALA synthase
S
LA
ALA dehydratase
Protogen. oxidase
Ferro-chelatase
p
p
H
PBG deaminase
Uro'gen synthase
Uro'gen decarboxylase
Copro. oxidase
Hereditary coproporphyria
P
P
UN
C
Acute intermittent prophyria
Congenital erythropoietic porphyria
Porphyria cutanea tarda
Neuro
Neurological
Cutaneous

Key: copro'gen III, coporoporphyrinogen III oxidase; uro'gen, uroporphyrinogen

Acute intermittent porphyria

Epi

Inc: Commonest neurological porphyria (autosomal dominant)
Prev: 1/10,000 – PBG deaminase mutation; 1/100,000 – clinically affected (requires trigger)
Age: Onset in teens to 30s
Sex: F:M = 5:1, due to likely precipitants (pre-menstrual, pregnancy, 'pill', anorexia)
Pre: **A.I.P.** *is Asymptomatic until Induced by Precipitants* (esp. enzyme-inducers)
Alcohol, **A**nti-convulsants, **A**ntibiotics (sulphonamides, tetracyclines)
Intake ↓ (fasting), **I**nfection, **I**nhalation anaesthesia (halothane)
Pill (oestrogen), **P**ain-killers – opioids

PC

A.I.P^2.

Acute abdomen – constipation or diarrhoea; fever, N+V; dysuria; arthralgia
Ictus – fits, due to **I**CP rise and **I**nappropriate ADH secretion (Na ↓)
Peripheral and autonomic neuropathy:
PNS: Acute bulbar, limb and respiratory weakness (like Guillain–Barré syndrome)
ANS: Disproportionate tachycardia, hypertension; sweating, pallor; urinary retention
Psychiatric: Psychosis, mania, confusion, depression

Ix

Bloods: WCC ↑, Na ↓, Urea ↑, LFT ↑
Urine: Protein ↑, ALA and PBG (latter turns brown on standing, or pink with Ehrlich aldehyde)
Special: Fibroblast culture for enzyme assay

Rx

High-glucose drink or 20% dextrose IV – inhibits ALA synthase
Haematin (haem arginate IV) – inhibits ALA synthase
Symptomatic: Opioids; propranolol; diazepam or clonazepam ; fluid restrict (if SIADH); phenothiazine
Prophylactic: Avoid precipitants; screen relatives

Porphyria cutanea tarda

Epi

Inc: Commonest cutaneous porphyria; acquired in majority, or autosomal dominant.
Pre: Chronic liver disease, esp. alcohol, autoimmune hepatitis, haemochromatosis, oestrogen

PC

P^2.C^3.T.

Photosensitivity (erythema, bullae, pigmentation); **P**itting oedema
Calcification of skin; **C**icatrix (scars); **C**irrhosis (cause)
Trichosis: Hypertrichosis or hirsutism

Ix

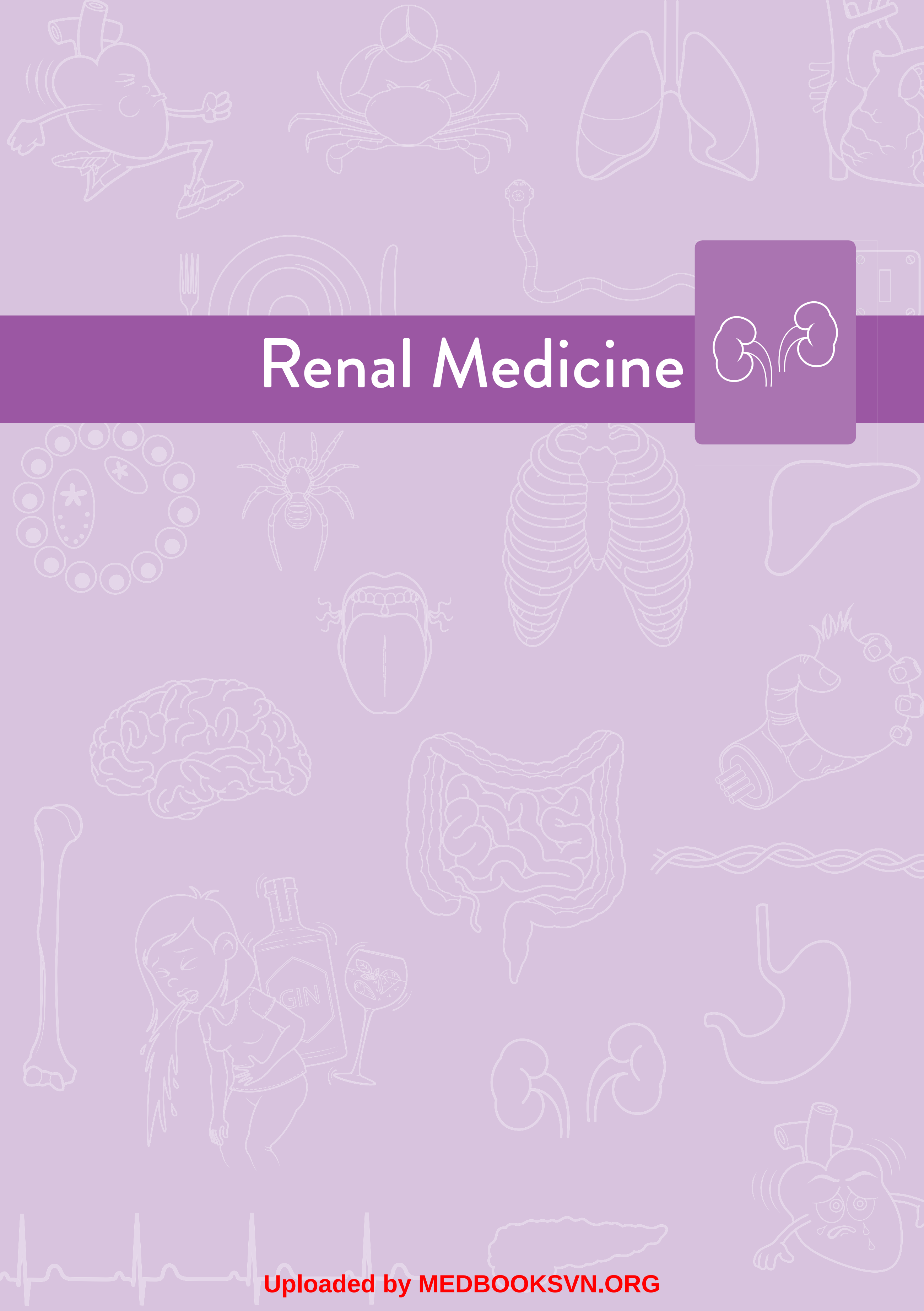
Bloods: LFTs deranged, Fe and ferritin ↑ (always raised), glucose ↑
Urine: Uroporphyrinogen ↑ (ALA and PBG not raised due to compensatory PBG deaminase activity)

Rx

Chloroquine – complexes porphyrins
Venesection – for Fe overload
Avoid sun, alcohol, oestrogens

Taylor & Francis
Taylor & Francis Group
http://taylorandfrancis.com

Renal Medicine



ACUTE KIDNEY INJURY

Causes

Pre-renal

Due to decreased blood perfusion to the kidneys

C.R.A.S.H.

Cardiac failure
Renal artery stenosis
ABP ↓ (hypotension)
Sepsis
Hypovolaemia, due to loss of blood (haemorrhage) or fluid (dehydration)

Intrinsic Renal

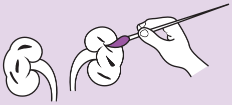
Renovascular

V.A.N.

Vasculitis of renal vessels
ABP ↑ (malignant hypertension)
NSAIDS – decrease renal blood flow

Glomerulonephritis

P.A.I.N.T.



Primary: Proliferative, membranoproliferative
Autoimmune: SLE, vasculitis, anti-GBM, IgA nephropathy
Infection: Post-streptococcal, SBE, *Staphylococcus*, syphilis, HIV, HBV, HCV, malaria
Neoplasia: Myeloma, lymphoma
Toxins: Phenytoin, heroin (usually causes membranous GN)

Intrinsic Renal *continued*

Tubulo-interstitial nephritis

T.I.N.

Toxins:
- Allergic: Antibiotics, ACE-inhib., NSAID
- Tubular: Sulphonamides, acyclovir

Infection: Legionnaire, leptospirosis, brucellosis, CMV, candida
Neoplasia: Lymphoma; leukaemia

Acute tubular necrosis

Usually a consequence of untreated pre-renal AKI
Other causes:

A.T.N^3.

ABP ↓: Patchy necrosis of tubules
Toxins: Aminoglycosides, cephalosporins, NSAIDs, cyclosporin, contrast, paracetamol overdose, paraquat, ethylene glycol (oxalate crystals)
Necrosis:
- Rhabdomyolysis (myoglobin)
- Intravascular haemolysis (Hb)

Neoplasia:
- Tumour lysis (uric acid)
- Myeloma (BJP)

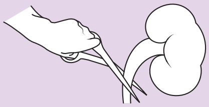
Nephritis, pyelo-

Post-renal

Ureteric obstruction

Ureter or renal pelvis obstruction may cause AKI if bilateral involvement or unilateral with only one functioning kidney

S.N.I.P.P.I.N.G.

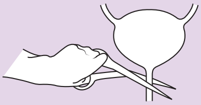


Stone
Neoplasia:
- Intrinsic: Transitional cell ca.
- Colorectal/ gynaecological cancer
- Lymphoma

Infection: TB, schistosomiasis
Papillary necrosis
Pregnancy or other gynae.
Inflammation: Stricture/retroperitoneal fibrosis
Neurological
Genetic/congenital: PUJ or VUJ stenosis, ureterocoele

Urinary retention

S.N.I.P.P.I.N.G.



Stone
Neoplasia: Prostate, gynaecological
Infection: UTI
Papillary necrosis
Prostate: Hyperplasia or cancer
Inflammation: Stricture
Neurological:
- Neuropathy, cord lesion
- Toxins, post-operative atony
- Psychological

Genetic/congenital: Valves

PC

General
Anuria (or polyuria with ATN)
Fluid overload/hypertension
Electrolytes: K^+ – arrhythmia

Specific
Fever, arthralgia, rash – allergic TIN, autoimmune
Large tender kidneys – pyelonephritis, Hantavirus

Ix

Bloods: Biochem:
- K^+ ↑ (low in TIN), Mg^{2+}↑, Ca^{2+} ↓, PO_4 ↑, ABGs show metabolic acidosis
- Underlying causes: Ca^{2+} ↑, uric acid ↑

Haem:
- FBC (normocytic anaemia suggests chronic kidney disease – CKD)
- Eosinophils (TIN, vasculitis, cholesterol emboli), ESR, blood film

Immunol:
- ANA, dsDNA, ENA, ANCA, anti-GBM, Ig, cryoglobulinaemia, serum electrophoresis
- C3 ↓ only = post-streptococcal or membranoproliferative-II glomerulonephritis
- C3 and C4 ↓ = membranoproliferative-I glomerulonephritis, esp. SLE, HCV

Urine: Dipstick: Blood – nephritis; proteinuria; glycosuria – TIN
Cytology:
- RBC casts – GN; WBC casts – GN, pyelonephritis; eosinophiliuria – allergic TIN
- Epithelial casts, coarse granular casts – ATN
- Epithelial cells, hyaline casts, mildly granular casts – normal

Biochem:
- Na <20 mmol/l = pre-renal AKI
- Urea >10 × plasma urea = pre-renal AKI
- Osmolal. >1.5 × plasma osmolality = pre-renal AKI
- Protein: 30–300 mg/day or albumin:creatinine ratio >3 = microalbuminuria
- Protein: >3 g/day = nephrotic syndrome
- Protein electrophoresis: BJP

Micro: MSU
Serology: ASO, antiDNAse B; HBV, HCV (ELISA or PCR); parasite film; serology
Blood cultures × 3

Monitor: Fluid in and out
Daily weights (insensible losses)
Temperature

ECG

Radiol: USS: Large – obstruction; small – CKD; also stones, renal artery or vein duplex
CXR: Pulmonary oedema; bones may show signs of renal osteodystrophy if CKD
CT KUB stones, or other obstruction

Surgery: Biopsy:
- Linear Ig deposits: SLE, anti-GBM disease ('ribbons'), diabetes
- Subepithelial granular IgG: post-streptococcal GN
- Subepithelial spikes: Membranous GN
- Subendothelial IgG: Membranoproliferative GN

Cystoscopy

Rx

Underlying cause:
- Pre-renal – fluid challenge
- Renal – steroids, antibiotics, etc.
- Post-renal – removal or bypass of obstruction

Fluid management: CVP monitoring, haemodialysis
Electrolytes, esp. K^+; Ca gluconate, insulin infusion; haemodialysis

CHRONIC KIDNEY DISEASE – CAUSES

Def

Permanent ↓ in GFR to <50 ml/min (end-stage renal failure: <10 ml/min)

Causes

V.I.S.A.

Vascular disorders
Inflammation (i.e. vasculitis)
Stenosis of renal arteries
ABP ↑ (hypertension is commonest cause of CKD in UK)

G.L.A.D. G.R.A.C.E.

Glomerular disorders
Lupus nephritis
Auto-immune e.g. Goodpasture
Diabetic nephropathy

Glomerulonephritis **(P.A.I.N.T.)**
Retrovirus (i.e. HIV)
Ig**A** nephropathy
Collagen disease (Alport syndrome)
Endocarditis

Polycystic kidney disease

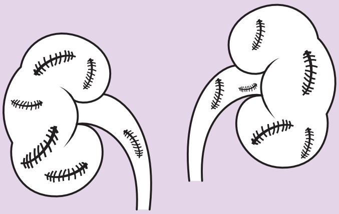
T.R.A.P. I.T.

Tubulo-intersitial disease
Reflux nephropathy
Amyloidosis
Plasma cell malignancy (i.e. myeloma)

Infection/abscess
Toxins

CHRONIC KIDNEY DISEASE – PC AND O/E

S.C.A.R.R.I.N.G T.U.B.E.S.



Skin:

- Uraemia: Pruritus (scratch marks), brown nails, hyperpigmented 'frost' or sallow, injected sclera
- Underlying cause: Vasculitis, scleroderma, amyloid, partial lipodystrophy, angiokeratoma
- Complications: Pallor (anaemia), subcutaneous or scleral calcification (↓ Ca^{2+}), tophi (gout)

Cardiac:

- Fluid overload: Pulmonary and peripheral oedema, JVP ↑ (or ↓ if salt-wasting)
- Pericarditis; tamponade (Kussmaul sign – paradoxical JVP ↑ on inspiration), chest pain
- Ischaemic heart disease, dilated cardiomyopathy – multifactorial, incl. hypertriglyceridaemia, hyperhomocystinaemia, low HDL, insulin resistance, vascular calcification

ABP↑: Fluid overload (less commonly; ↓: salt-wasting with tubular disease)

Respiratory: Pulmonary oedema (SOB), pleurisy (chest pain), pleural effusion, pulmonary fibrosis

Respiratory pattern: Hiccups, uraemic fetor, Kussmaul breathing (deep) due to metabolic acidosis

Immunocompromise, e.g. pneumonia

Neurological:

- Encephalopathy: Early – myoclonus, asterixis (hand flap); late – dementia, dysarthria, seizures
- Peripheral neuropathy, restless legs syndrome
- Myopathy: Due to uraemia and osteomalacia

GIT:

- Gastric ulcers due to gastrin ↑
- Haemorrhage, due to angiodysplasia and coagulopathy, impaired platelet function

Thrombocytopenia: Purpura, GIT haemorrhage (also due to impaired platelet function and coagulopathy)

Urine:

- Frequency or nocturia may occur with tubular disease
- Haematuria: IgA nephropathy, vasculitis or reflecting coagulopathy
- Loin pain, or renal mass – suggests renal cystic disease

Bones: Osteomalacia (vit. D deficiency), osteoporosis

Endocrine: Amenorrhoea, impotence, growth retardation (in children)

Systemic:

- Anaemia (depression, fatigue)
- Anorexia, weight loss, cachexia; hypothermia

CHRONIC KIDNEY DISEASE – IX

Bloods:

R.E.A.L.M.S.

Biochem:

Renal:

- Urea ↑: Endogenous and exogenous metabolite produced variably from amino acid degradation
- Creatinine ↑
    - Metabolite produced at constant rate from phosphocreatine in muscle
    - Inversely proportional to GFR: Plot inverse-creatinine over time and extrapolate
- Creatinine clearance = estimate of GFR

$$\text{Clearance} = \frac{U_{Cr} \times V}{P_{Cr}}$$

where P_{Cr} and U_{Cr} = plasma and urine concentration of creatinine and V = volume of urine over 24 h

Adjust for surface-area (standard = 1.73 m^2); age; sex; diet and drugs

Clearance <10 ml/min = end-stage renal failure

Electrolytes:

- Na^+ ↓, K^+ ↓
- Ca^{2+} ↓, PO_4 ↑, Mg^{2+} ↑, Vit D ↓, PTH ↑ due to – tubular Ca resorption ↓, PO_4 excretion ↓, 1α-hydroxylation of cholecalciferol ↓

ABGs: Metabolic acidosis and respiratory compensation

LFTs: ALP ↑ – osteomalacia; albumin ↓ – due to nephrosis, protein restriction,

Metabolic:

- Glucose: ↑ due to insulin resistance and decreased insulin release ↓ (in diabetes) due to ↓ insulin catabolism and ↓ gluconeogenesis
- Triglycerides, fasting ↑

Special: Uric acid ↑; T4 ↑ , T3 slightly ↓; serum and urine electrophoresis (myeloma, amyloid – cause of CKD)

Haem: Hb: Normochromic, normocytic anaemia (bone marrow suppression, EPO production ↓); film: Burr cells WCC, platelets, clotting – impaired function for all and thrombocytopenia

Immunol: ANA, rheumatoid factor, ANCA, cryoglobulins

Urine: Microscopy (early morning): Haematuria; RBC or WBC casts
Protein (24-hour): Glomerulonephritis
Amino acids, PO_4, glucose – tubular disease

Micro: MSU (UTI due to obstruction); *Schistosoma* urine microscopy
Hep B, C, HIV serology; malaria film

Monitor: ABP, fluid balance, weights: (oral + IV) vs. (urine + faeces + vomit + insensible losses [weight])
Glucose – insulin resistance

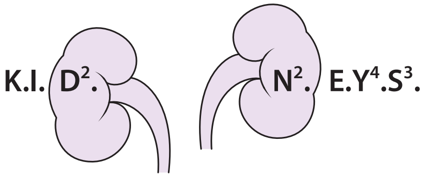
ECG: Sx of K^+ ↓
LVH 2° to hypertension

Radiol: CXR: Pulmonary oedema; CCF; AXR – calcification

USS:
- Small kidneys suggest CKD (except early diabetes, obstruction, amyloid)
- Renal tract obstruction (reversible!); cysts, tumour
- Functional: IVU/DMSA – scarring due to VuR**;** DTPA or MAG3 + captopril – renovascular disease

Special: Renal biopsy – if cause unclear and renal size normal (i.e. potentially reversible!)

CHRONIC KIDNEY DISEASE – RX



K.I.D^2N^2.E.Y^4.S^3.

K+ correct:
- Particular concern during acute exacerbations
- Consider treating acidosis, but $NaHCO_3$ problematic due to high Na^+ content

Intake – salt/fluid:
- Fluid-overload: ↓ salt and fluid intake, until normal CVP or JVP obtained
- Fluid-depleted, e.g. post-ATN, post-obstruction, chronic TIN: ↑ salt and fluid intake, until UO > 2 l/day

Diuretics:
- High-dose loop diuretic, e.g. furosemide
- ACE inhibitors: Renoprotective in diabetes; contraindicated in renal artery stenosis

Dialysis:
- Haemodialysis:
  Method: 4 h/session; 3 sessions/week; 250 ml/min blood dialysed via forearm AV fistula
  Adv: Can vary dialysate composition; flow rate or pressure (therefore diffusion gradient)
  Disadv: Low creatinine clearance – 6 ml/min; loss of amino acids, vitamins; no vit. D; EPO
  ☠: **A**rterial injury: Haemorrhage, thrombosis, ischaemia ('steal') **A**BP: Postural hypotension
  Amyloid: β_2-microglobulin – carpal tunnel syndrome
  Aluminium toxicity: Brain (dementia); bone marrow (anaemia); bone (osteomalacia)
- Chronic ambulatory peritoneal dialysis (CAPD):
  Method: Introduce 2 l dialysate into peritoneum and replace 3–4 ×/day
  Adv: Slightly better creatinine clearance –7 ml/min, but still loses amino acids and vitamins
  ☠ **I**nfection of catheter, peritonitis; blockage, leakage
  Intake fluid – mechanical back pain, genital oedema, hernia, haemorrhoids, hydrothorax
  Insulin resistance due to glucose loading from dialysate, obesity

Nutrition:
- Low protein (0.5 g/kg/day – ↓ uraemic toxins and acidosis); high carbohydrate; low fat
- Haematinics (Fe, folate, vit. B12) and vit. C (as lost on dialysis)

NSAIDs – avoid; also avoid aminoglycosides

EPO (human recombinant erythropoeitin, slow-IV or subcut)
☠ ABP ↑; thrombocytosis; flu-like syndrome
May also require occasional blood transfusion with diuretic cover

Y: h**Y**perlipidaemia – simvastatin
h**Y**perglycaemia – avoid metformin, chlorpropamide; caution with insulins (due to risk of 'hypos')
h**Y**perPO_4aemia – **Rx first** to avoid ectopic calcification – PO_4 restriction; oral PO_4 binders – $MgCO_3$ or $CaCO_3$
h**Y**pocalcaemia – 1α-hydroxylated cholecalciferol; calcitriol; $CaCO_3$, high-dose: ↓ PTH and ↓ PO_4

Symptomatic:
- Hiccups or pruritus: Chlorpromazine
- Peptic ulcers: Omeprazole

Surgical – renal transplant
☠
- Rejection (immunological, ureteric anastomosis failure); immunosuppression (infections, neoplasia)
- Vascular: Polycythaemia, atherosclerosis, hypertension

Secondary renal failure: Treat underlying cause – diabetes, hypertension, SLE, etc.

HAEMATURIA – CAUSES

Pre-renal

M. S.P.A.C.E.

Malaria

Sickle cell disease
PNH
Autoimmune haemolytic anaemia
Coagulopathy
Exercise

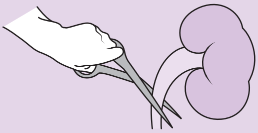
Renal

S.T.I.G.M.A.T.A.

Stones – renal calculus
Trauma – blunt trauma to flanks
Interstitial nephritis
Glomerulonephritis
Malignancy (RCC)
APCKD
Thin membrane disease
Alport syndrome

Post-renal

S.N.I.P.P.I.N.G.



Schistosomiasis – commonest cause of haematuria worldwide, rare in UK
Neoplasia: TCC
Infection: Urogenital TB, UTI
Prostate: Cancer, prostatitis, BPH
Pigmented urine: Dye ingestion (beetroot; rifampicin, L-DOPA); porphyria
Inflammation: Stricture/retroperitoneal fibrosis
Nephrolithiasis
Genetic/congenital: PUJ or VUJ stenosis, ureterocoele

IgA nephropathy

Epi

Inc: Commonest type of glomerulonephritis
Age: M:F = 3:1
Geo: Far East, SE Asia
Aet: Deposition of IgA in renal glomerulus, exacerbated by respiratory tract infections ('synpharyngitic')
Prog: Male, smoking, nephrotic syndrome, and older age favour poorer outcome

PC

Renal-limited (or Berger disease):
Haematuria – recurrent, macroscopic: 1/3
Proteinuria, incl. nephrotic syndrome: 1/3 (poor prognosis)
Hypertension; CKD: 1/3

Associations: **G.R.O.S.S. BLOOD**

GIT:
- Coeliac, Crohn, adenocarcinoma
- Biliary disease, chronic liver disease

Respiratory: Pneumonitis, obliterative bronchiolitis, adenocarcinoma
Ophthalmic: Anterior uveitis; episcleritis
Skin: IgA vasculitis (Henoch–Schönlein purpura)
Spondylitis, Sjögren syndrome, rheumatoid arthritis, ankylosing spondylosis

Blood: Monoclonal gammopathy of uncertain significance (IgA)

Ix

Serum IgA ↑ in 50%
Complement: Normal or ↑
Biopsy: Mesiangial proliferation and IgA deposits on immunofluorescence

Rx

Microscopic haematuria, no nephrotic syndrome and normal renal function – observation only
Steroids
Cyclophosphamide

Thin basement membrane disease

('Benign haematuria')

Epi

Inc: Commonest cause of asymptomatic haematuria
Aet: Sporadic or hereditary (autosomal dominant: collagen Type IV, $\alpha 4$ chain mutation)

PC

Haematuria post-URTI
Hypertension/proteinura – rare

Ix

Light microscopy + IF: Normal
Electron microscopy: Thin basement membrane (normal = 300–350 nm)

Rx

Follow-up only

NEPHROTIC SYNDROME

PC

N. E. P. H. R. O. T. I. C.

Nephritis: Nephrotic syndrome may occur alone or as part of a general nephritic syndrome

Nephrotic syndrome alone:

- Glomerulonephritis: Membranous GN, focal segmental glomerulosclerosis, minimal change disease, membranoproliferative GN
- Diabetic nephropathy
- Amyloidosis

Nephritic syndrome:

- IgA nephropathy
- Post-streptococcal GN
- Goodpasture syndrome

O**E**dema:

- Generalized, esp. peri-orbital
- Pleural effusion; ascites
- GIT oedema: Nausea, malabsorption, weight loss

Proteinuria: Frothy urine

Hypoalbuminaemia:

- Hypovolaemia
- Growth retardation
- Leukonychia

Raised lipids: LDL ↑, HDL ↓, triacylglycerides ↑
PC: Atherosclerosis; xanthoma; pseudohyponatraemia
Due to renal loss of apolipoprotein B

Osteomalacia: Due to renal-loss of vit. D-binding globulin, which results in Ca^{2+} ↓

Thrombosis: DVT; CVA; renal vein thrombosis; pulmonary embolism – due to renal loss of anti-thrombin-III; hypovolaemia; atherosclerosis

Infection, esp. pneumococcal peritonitis – loss of Igs + C3, C4

Chronic anaemia (hypochromic, but Fe-resistant): Renal loss of transferrin

Ix

Urine:

Protein:creatinine ratio

- 100 mg/mmol – moderate proteinuria
- ≥300 mg/mmol – heavy proteinuria = nephrotic syndrome

24-hour protein

- 150–500 mg/day – mild proteinuria (e.g. orthostatic; post-renal)
- 500 mg–3 g/day – moderate proteinuria (e.g. glomerulonephritides, hypertension, UTI)
- >3 g/day – heavy proteinuria, incl. nephrotic syndrome

Urine electrophoresis – establishes 'selectivity' of glomerular disease

- High (mid-molecular weight, e.g. albumin) – minimal-change glomerulonephritis
- Low (mid- and high-molecular weight, e.g. IgG) – membranous glomerulonephritis
- Low-molecular weight (e.g. β_2- microglobulin) – venous hypertension; proximal tubular disease
- Bence-Jones protein – myeloma

Rx

Treat underlying cause:

Diet: Protein (caution if incipient renal failure); calories (overcome GIT oedema)

Fluid balance: Salt and water intake; spironolactone or furosemide and amiloride; salt-free albumin 20%

Complications:

- Hypercholesterolaemia: Simvastatin
- Infection: Pneumococcal vaccine; IV benzylpenicillin
- DVT: LMW heparin; antithrombin III supplements

RENOVASCULAR DISEASE

Causes

S.T.E.N.T.A.B^2.L.E^2.

Stenosis, renal artery
Thrombosis, renal artery or vein
Embolus, renal artery:

- Cardiogenic: AF, endocarditis, paradoxical (DVT via patent foramen ovale)
- Cholesterol emboli: From aortic atheroma, esp. post-aortic surgery; arteriography – Ix: eosinophilia

NSAIDs: Vasodilate afferent and efferent arterioles, causing ↓ GFR
Toxins, other:

- Drugs: **A**CE inhibitors (and vasodilators); **A**mphotericin; **A**drenaline; cyclosporin
- Radiotherapy

Autoimmune:

- Scleroderma
- Vasculitides: Takayasu, PAN, granulomatosis with polyangiitis
  PATH: Intimal proliferation, medial thinning, fibrinoid necrosis of small arteries
  PC:
  - Microscopic haematuria, pyuria, cellular casts, mild proteinuria
  - Crisis: AKI, severe hypertension, microscopic angiopathic haemolytic anaemia (MAHA)

Blood pressure ↑:

- Hypertensive nephrosclerosis:
  PATH: Intimal hyaline arteriosclerosis, necrotising arteriolitis
  PC: Chronic kidney disease
- Malignant hypertension:
  PATH: Fibrinoid necrosis, 'onion-skinning', 'flea-bitten kidney'
  PC: AKI, haematuria, nephrosis, MAHA

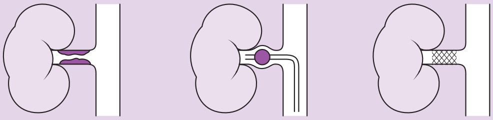
Blood constituents:

- Disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC)
- Haemolytic uraemic syndrome (HUS)
  Epi: Commonest cause of AKI in children
  Cause:
  - Children: Gastroenteritis, esp. verocytotoxicogenetic *E. coli* (VTEC), serotype O157, H7
  - Adults: Idiopathic, HIV, adenocarcinoma, SLE, post-partum, pre-eclampsia, genetic

  PC:
  - AKI: 'Flea-bitten kidney' = cortical haemorrhagic microinfarcts – MAHA (fragmented RBCs)
  - Platelets ↓
- Thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura (TTP) – as for HUS, plus:
  - Fever; WCC ↑
  - Infarcts: Renal (AKI), brain–retina (focal neuro. Sx), bowel (mesenteric ischaemia)

Liver failure: Hepatorenal syndrome – hepatic toxins and prostaglandins induce vasoconstriction
Eclampsia, pre-
Electrolyte: Hypercalcaemia:

- Vasoconstrictor
- Also causes CKD via tubular and ureteric calcification



Stenosis, renal artery

Causes

Atherosclerosis:
Epi: Elderly; hypertension; ACE inhibitors (dilate efferent arteriole and so oppose physiological response)
Site: Proximal; bilateral in 50%
Fibromuscular dysplasia:
Epi: Young women (30–40s; F:M = 4:1); smoking
Site: Distal (dysplasia); right-sided or bilateral

PC

Hypertension ± renal failure
Bruit: High-pitched

Ix

Bloods: Creatinine ↑, K^+ ↓, metabolic alkalosis
Radiol: Digital subtraction angiogram, duplex or MRA: Fibromuscular dysplasia = 'string of beads'; smooth narrowing; local aneurysms; AVM; fistulae
Radionuclide scan (^{99m}Tc-DTPA or MAG3 scan ± captopril) – captopril dilates efferent arteriole → dramatic ↓ in GFR and ↓ uptake of tracer (DTPA)
Special: Captopril-induced hypotension: Causes exaggerated ↑ in plasma renin activity
Renal vein renin ratio of >1.5:1 between kidneys provides indication for surgery

Rx

Aspirin
Angioplasty
Surgery – better outcome

GLOMERULONEPHRITIS

Def

Glomerular inflammation

PC

Causes classified according to predominant clinical syndrome:

Nephritic syndrome

PATH: Capillary proliferation

PC:
- Oliguria
- Hypertension
- Haematuria and pyuria (presentation mimicked by renovascular disease, or acute tubulo-interstitial nephritis)

RPGN (rapidly progressive glomerulonephritis)

PATH: Glomerular 'crescents' = extreme form of capillary proliferation

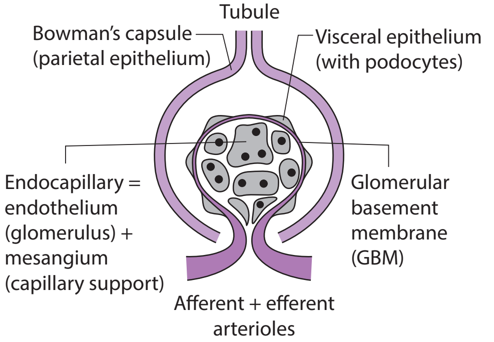
PC:
- Anuria (glomerular effacement)
- As for nephritic syndrome

Nephrotic syndrome

PATH: Membrane disease

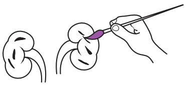
PC:
- Proteinuria
- Oedema
- Hypercholesterolaemia

Histology


Tubule
Bowman's capsule (parietal epithelium)
Visceral epithelium (with podocytes)
Endocapillary = endothelium (glomerulus) + mesangium (capillary support)
Glomerular basement membrane (GBM)
Afferent + efferent arterioles

Segmental vs. Global: Glomerulus-level ascription
Focal vs. Diffuse: Kidney-level ascription

Nephritic syndrome and RPGN



P.A.I.nts.

Primary: Proliferative glomerulonephritis:

Immune-complex:
- Proliferation of endocapillaries
- **P**roliferative = sube**P**ithelial granular deposits ('starry sky')

Ix: Low C3, C_H50

Pauci-immune:
- Proliferation of endocapillary and parietal cell epithelium ('crescents')
- Focal necrosis

Ix: Normal C3, 4, C_H50 but p-ANCA +ve, and ESR, CRP ↑ as associated with vasculitis

Autoimmune:

SLE, myositis – as for immune-complex GN

Vasculitides (e.g. PAN, granulomatosis with polyangiitis) – as for pauci-immune glomerulonephritis

Angiogram: Aneurysms, infarcts

Anti-GBM disease – linear immune-complex deposits on GBM and tubules ('ribbon-like'):

Epi: Smoking; hydrocarbons; flu; HLA DR-2, -4

PC: Haematuria; haemoptysis (Goodpasture syndrome)

Ix: Serology;
- Anti-GBM in 50% of Goodpasture = Ab against non-collagenous domain of collagen IV, a3-chain
- C3, 4 normal, ANCA +ve in 20%, respiratory function (KCO), bronchoscopy

Infection:

Streptococcus pyogenes:

Epi: 10–20 days post-pharyngitis/impetigo

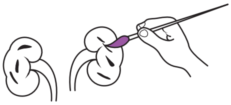
PC: Smoky red urine (may persist for >6 years), headache, N+V (ABP ↑), flank pain, acute kidney injury that usually recovers within 1 month

Ix: Serology:
- Anti-DNAseB, ASO, Anti-NADase (throat), antihyaluronidase (skin)
- C3, C_H50 ↓, polyclonal IgG ↑

Chronic bacterial:
- Bacterial endocarditis: C3, 4 ↓
- Visceral abscess: C3, C4 normal or ↑

Nephrotic syndrome

P.A.I.N.T.S^2.



Primary:
- **Membranous glomerulonephritis**
  - Diffuse thickening of GBM
  - Subepithelial immune-complex deposits ('silver spikes')
  - Epi: 40% adult; <5% child nephrotic syndrome
  - 70% membranous GN are idiopathic
  - Ix: C3, 4 normal
- **Minimal-change disease**
  - No change/mild mesangial hypercellularity on light microscopy
  - Diffuse effacement of podocyte foot processes on electron microscopy
  - Epi: 20% adult; 80% child nephrotic syndrome
- **Focal segmental glomerulosclerosis:**
  - Hyalinosis in parts of >50% glomerulus

Autoimmune:
- SLE, Sjögren, Hashimoto, Graves, PBC all cause membranous glomerulonephritis
- Atopy – associated with minimal-change GN

Infection:
- Hep B or C, malaria, enterococcal SBE, syphilis all cause membranous GN
- HIV, immunisation; URTI associated with minimal-change GN/FSGS

Neoplasia:
- Amyloid (1° and 2°: Congo red +ve); myeloma
- Lymphoma, renal-cell carcinoma – minimal-change
- Carcinoma, melanoma – membranous

Toxins:
- Captopril, penicillamine, NSAIDs – membranous
- Ampicillin, rifampicin – minimal-change
- Opioids – FSGS

Sclerosis (other FSGS causes):
- Diabetes mellitus – also causes membranous; minimal-change GN
- Sickle cell anaemia
- Glomerular capillary hypertension:
  - Renal ablation, e.g. contralateral renal agenesis or nephrectomy, renal artery thrombosis, diffuse renal disease, e.g. reflux nephropathy

Sarcoidosis

Nephritic and Nephrotic syn.

P.A.I.N.T.S.

Primary
- **Membranoproliferative GN**
  - Mesangial proliferation ('mesangiocapillary GN')
  - Diffuse thickening of GBM
  - Types:
    - SubeNdothelial and mesangial immune-complex deposits (mesaNgio)
      Ix: C3 + C4 ↓
      Course: Benign
    - Linear, intramembranous dense C3 deposits due to 'C3 nephritic factor', i.e. an IgG that stabilizes C3 convertase of the alternative complement pathway
      Ix: C3 ↓ only
      Course: End-stage renal failure in 5–10 y
- **Focal segmental proliferative:** Causes are same as for proliferative GN

Autoimmune:
- SLE, Sjögren, autoimmune hepatitis all cause membranoproliferative GN
- IgA nephropathy:
  - Epi: **Commonest glomerulonephritis** and cause of hypertension in young men
  - PC: Haematuria 3 days post-URTI
  - Types:
    - Renal-limited (Berger): 50% get CKD
    - Cutaneous vasculitis (Henoch–Schönlein purpura)
    - Systemic disease-associated

Infection:
- HBV, HCV (cryoglobulinaemia), HIV
- *Staphylococcus* – SBE, abscess, CSF 'shunt nephritis'
- Haemolytic uraemic syndrome all of these cause membranoproliferative GN

Neoplasia: Lymphoma, leukaemia

Toxins: Heroin

Syndromes:
- Thin-basement membrane disease:
  - Epi: Commonest cause of asymptomatic haematuria
  - Aet: Autosomal dominant or sporadic; collagen type IV, á4-chain mutation
- Alport disease
  - Epi: Commonest hereditary nephritis (X-linked)
  - Aet: Collagen type IV, α5-chain mutation
- Other: Nail–patella syn., partial lipodystrophy

RENAL TUBULAR DISEASE

The effects of tubular disease depend on whether proximal or distal convoluted tubules are affected

Proximal tubular disease

Types

B.A.N.G.'d. U.P.

Bicarbonaturia **(renal tubular acidosis – Type 2)**
Causes: Hereditary (autosomal recessive or autosomal dominant), or acetazolamide
PC:
- Weakness; failure to thrive (mild acidosis, hypokalaemia)
- Rickets or osteomalacia (but no renal stones due to ↓ citrate resorption)
- Polyuria, polydipsia (due to increased $NaHCO_3$ in distal tubule, and hypokalemia)

Ix:
- 'Normal anion gap' metabolic acidosis
    - Plasma HCO_3^- ↓, Cl^- ↑, K^+ ↓ ; urine HCO_3^- ↑
    - Aciduria: Minimum pH <5.5 (due to ↓ HCO_3^- filtration, ↑ distal H^+ excretion)
- Plasma PO_4 ↓, vit. D ↓; urine Ca^{2+} ↑

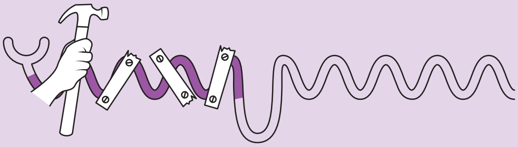
Rx: Bicarbonate

Amino aciduria (and low-molecular-weight proteinuria)
Causes:
- Overflow: Phenylketonuria, maple syrup urine, homocystinuria; acquired liver failure
- PCT resorption ↓:
    - Cystinuria: ↓ resorption of dibasic acids; PC: Renal stones
    - Hartnup disease: ↓ resorption of neutral amino acids; PC: Pellagra (tryptophan deficiency)

Na^+ and K^+ wasting
PC: Na^+ loss – hypovolaemia; K^+ loss – weakness

Glycosuria
Causes:
- Overflow (diabetes, stress)
- PCT resorption ↓ (hereditary, pregnancy)

PC: Polyuria, polydipsia



Uric aciduria
Phosphaturia
Causes:
- Overflow (paracetamol overdose)
- PCT resorption ↓ (X-linked dominant hypophosphataemic rickets)

'Fanconi syndrome'

Def: Generalized proximal tubule dysfunction of all or some of above defects
Causes:

F.A.N.C.O.N.I.

Familial: Autosomal dominant, autosomal recessive, X-linked
Autoimmune: Sjögren, autoimmune liver disease
Neoplasia: Myeloma, amyloid
Calcium ↑/↓: 1° or 2° hyperparathyroidism/chronic hypokalaemia
Other: Outdated tetracycline, lead, mercury, cadmium, cisplatin, aspirin, neomycin
Necrosis, acute tubular
Inherited: Wilson disease, cystinosis, Lowe oculocerebrorenal disease, tyrosinaemia

PC: As above + chronic kidney disease + vit. D deficiency + pyelonephritis
Rx: High fluid intake (sodium and water), $KHCO_3$, PO_4, α_1-calcidol

Distal tubular disease

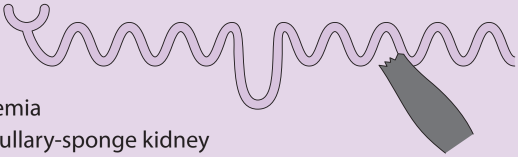
H^+ excretion impairment (renal tubular acidosis – Type 1)

Causes:

T.U.B.U.L.A.R. P.H.

Toxins: NSAIDs, lithium, amphotericin
Ureteric-, vesico-, reflux: Chronic pyelonephritis, urinary obstruction
Blood pressure: Hypertension
Uric acid (gout)/Ca^{2+}↑ (hyperPTHism, vit. D toxicity)/K^+ ↓
Lymphoma, leukaemia, myeloma, amyloid
Autoimmune: Sjögren, SLE, autoimmune hepatitis
Radiation nephritis, renal transplant

Papillary necrosis: Diabetes mellitus, sickle cell anaemia
Hereditary: RTA-type 1 (autosomal dominant), medullary-sponge kidney



PC:

- Weakness; failure to thrive (acidosis, hypokalaemia)
- Rickets or osteomalacia, and renal stones
- Polyuria, polydipsia

Ix:

'Normal anion gap' metabolic acidosis: Plasma HCO_3^-↓, Cl^-↑, K^+↓
  - Alkaluria: Minimum pH >5.5, and urine HCO_3^-↓ – cf. RTA type 2
  - Low urine NH_4^+ (as estimated by urine cation gap) – cf. GIT cause of acidosis

Ca^{2+} ↓, vit. D ↓, PTH ↑; urine Ca^{2+} ↑
Acid load test: Loading with NH_4Cl fails to acidify urine (urine pH >6.5)

Rx: KCl, followed by bicarbonate

Aldosterone impairment (renal tubular acidosis – Type 4)

Causes:
Hyporeninism: Diabetes mellitus, hypertensive nephrosclerosis
Hypoaldosteronism: Addison, adrenalectomy
Aldosterone resistance: Obstructive nephropathy, spironolactone

Ix:
Bloods: Plasma: HCO_3^- ↓, Cl^- ↑, K^+ ↑ – cf. RTA types 1 and 2
Urine – as for RTA type 1: Alkaluria and urine HCO_3^-↓ (although minimum pH may be <5.5)

Rx: Fludrocortisone (high-dose if resistance)

Diabetes insipidus

Causes:
Cranial: **D.I.V.I.N.I.T.Y. –** e.g. hereditary, sarcoid, pituitary adenoma
Tubular: **T.U.B.U.L.A.R. P.H.** – e.g. toxins, ureteric reflux, blood pressure, uric acid ↑, Ca^{2+} ↑

Ix:

Plasma osmolality	>300 mOsm/kg
Urine osmolality	<300 mOsm/kg

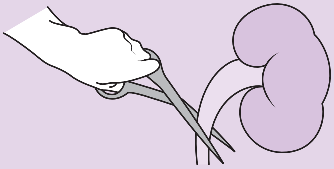
URINARY OBSTRUCTION

Causes

The following cause obstruction in the renal pelvis, ureters, bladder or urethra

S.N.I.P.P.I.N.G.

Stones
Neoplasia:
  Intrinsic: Polyp/carcinoma – transitional cell (ureter/bladder) or squamous cell (urethra)
  Extrinsic: Colorectal, gynaecological or prostate carcinoma/lymphoma
Infection:
  TB: Intrinsic fibrosis, or para-aortic lymph nodes
  Schistosoma haematobium (Africa, Mediterranean)
Papillary necrosis:
  Diabetes mellitus/hypertension
  Sickle cell anaemia/vasculitis
  Acute tubular necrosis
Pregnancy (or other gynaecological)/**P**rostate:
  Pregnancy: Due to direct compression, oestrogen (smooth muscle relaxant)
  Other: Fibroids, ovarian cyst, haematocolpos, haematometria (occurs at menses)
  Prostate: Benign prostatic hyperplasia, carcinoma, prostatitis (all cause bladder-neck obstruction)
Inflammation – fibrosis:
  Stricture: Post-trauma, laparotomy (e.g. caesarian section – ureters), catheterisation (urethra)
  Retroperitoneal fibrosis, due to:
    Primary: Multifocal fibrosclerosis (66%); ESR ↑
    Autoimmune: PAN
    Infection: TB
    Neoplasia: Metastases, lymphoma, carcinoid
    Toxins: Methysergide
    Surrounding inflammation: Aortic aneurysm, pancreatitis, Crohn, diverticulitis
Neurological – failure of peristalsis, e.g. anticholinergics
Genetic/congenital – urinary tract anomalies:
  Stenosis: PUJ (pelvic-ureteric junction) or VUJ (vesico-ureteric junction)
  Ureter: Ureterocoele; retrocaval ureter
  Urethra: Valves (commonest cause of bilateral hydronephrosis in boys), phimosis



PC

Anuria/oliguria
Suprapubic pain
Abdominal distension

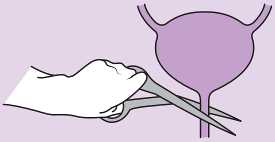
URINARY OBSTRUCTION

Causes

The following cause obstruction in the bladder neck or urethra

S.N.I.P.P.I.N.G^2.

Stones
Neoplasia: Carcinoma – bladder, prostate, colorectal, gynaecological
Infection: UTI, STD, abscess (e.g. bartholinitis, caruncle); PC: 'Holding on', strangury
Papillary necrosis
Pregnancy (or other gynaecological)/**P**rostate
  Pregnancy: Retroverted uterus/other – fibroids; ovarian cyst, haematocolpos, haematometria
  Prostate: Benign prostatic hyperplasia, carcinoma, prostatitis
Inflammation (fibrosis): Stricture post-trauma, catheterisation (urethra)
Neurological:
  LMN: Diabetic neuropathy, cauda equina; UMN: Multiple sclerosis, cord compression
  Atony: Overdistension, e.g. diuretics, post-operative, binge-drinking
  Toxins, e.g. anticholinergics
  Psychological
Genetic/congenital: Urethral valves; phimosis
GIT: Constipation (bladder neck obstruction)



Types

	Symptoms	Catheter residual volume	Renal function
Acute	Painful	<1 litre	Normal
Chronic	Painless	>1 litre	Renal failure
Acute-on-chronic (e.g. overfilling; UTI)	Painful	>1 litre (normal <600 ml)	Renal failure

Complications

Stones: Form in diverticulae that develop between hypertrophied trabeculations
Infection
Renal failure

Rx

Catheterize: Measure residual volume, and leave for 1–2 days
TWOC (trial without catheter): Perform at midnight to allow daytime observation
Indwelling catheterisation, if TWOC failure, chronic retention, or prostatism, prostate carcinoma

RENAL STONES

Epi

Inc: Lifetime risk = 1%
Age: 20–40s
Sex: M:F = 4:1 (opposite of gallstones)

Causes

Crystal formation depends on:

Chemical factors: Ca^{2+} ↑, oxalate ↑, alkali ↑, citrate ↓
Crystallisation factors: Stasis facilitates crystal nucleation

C.R.U.S.H.I.N.G.

Calcium – hypercalciuria
PATH: Ca oxalate or phosphate stones (hydroxyapatite or brushite) occur in 80% all cases
Causes:
Hypercalcaemia, esp. hyperparathyroidism

- PTH ↑ variant: Intestinal absorption ↑ and bone resorption ↑
- PTH ↓ variant: Renal PO_4 wasting and 2° intestinal absorption

Normocalcaemia: Hereditary hypercalciuria
Hypocitraturia: Idiopathic, or due to hypokalaemia, e.g. from chronic diarrhoea

Renal tubular acidosis, type 1
PATH: Encourages stones due to alkaline urine; hypercalciuria; hypocitraturia

Uric acid
PATH: Uric acid or sodium monourate occurs in 5% cases
Causes:
Hyperuricaemia (although only half of cases have gout)
Idiopathic, myeloproliferative states, chemotherapy, acidosis

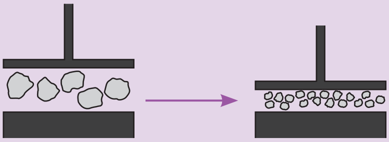
Stasis: Renal cysts, bladder diverticulae, partial obstruction

Hereditary
Hyperoxaluria, due to hepatic oxalate synthesis ↑
Cystinosis: Cystine stones form due to failure of proximal tubule resorption
Hypouricaemia: Uric acid stones due to failure of proximal tubule resorption

Infection
Proteus mirabilis secretes urease that promotes alkaluria → struvite ($MgNH_4PO_4$ or $CaPO_4$)
Causes large, 'staghorn' calculi – makes up 10% cases
Assoc. women, chronic catheterisation, chronic UTI

Nutrition/Toxins
Nutrition:

- Hypercalciuria – high-salt diet
- Oxalic acid – rhubarb or strawberries, tea or coffee, nuts or spinach, vit. C
- Hyperuricaemia – purine-rich food, e.g. offal
- Hyperlipidaemia – high-fat diet



Toxins: Sulphonamide, aciclovir, indinavir, Mg trisilicate (antacid), loop diuretics

GIT – fat malabsorption
Causes: Crohn, coeliac, chronic pancreatitis, bacterial overgrowth
PATH: Ca^{2+} binds to intraluminal fatty acids, releasing oxalate that gets absorbed

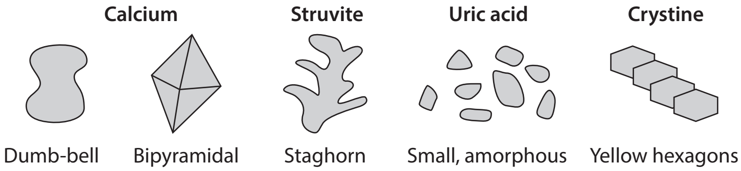
PC

Colic: loin → flank → iliac fossa pain
Strangury (urethral spasm), dysuria, passage of stone or gravel
Haematuria: Micro- or macroscopic – essential!

Ix

Bloods: Renal: urea ↑ – volume depletion; creatinine ↑ – if only 1 functioning kidney/bilat. stones
Electrolytes: Ca^{2+}, PO_4, PTH, uric acid, acidosis
FBC: WCC ↑, ESR ↑

Urine: Dipstick: RBC (essential); WBC, nitrite (infection); pH; protein + glucose
24-h collection: Calcium, oxalate, citrate, uric acid
Sediment microscopy; birefringence (+ve = Ca^{2+} oxalate); chemical analysis



Micro: MSU – *Proteus mirabilis* (cause) or other UTI due to urinary stasis

Radiol: PAXR: Opaque stones – 90%; lucent stones – 10% (*opposite of gallstones*) calcium, struvite – radio-opaque; cystine – slightly opaque; uric acid – radiolucent papillary nephrocalcinosis – medullary sponge kidney
IVU, USS

Special: RTA type 1: NH_4Cl loading test
Cystinuria: Na nitroprusside test – urine turns cherry-red

Rx

General

Fluid intake: Aim for > 2 l/day urine; look for stone passage
Analgesia: Morphine, indomethacin, propantheline
Stone removal**:**

- Lithotripsy – extracorporeal, percutaneous ultrasound, or ureteric laser
- Surgery: Nephro-/ureterolithotomy; cystoscopy with ureteric flexible-basket ensnarement

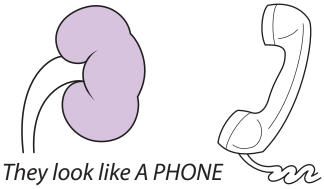
Type-specific

Calcium:
  Hypercalcaemia: Treat accordingly
  Normocalcaemic:

- Thiazides; low-salt, high-potassium diet (↑ tubular resorption of Ca^{2+})
- Na-cellulose PO_4 (↓ GIT absorption); oral PO_4 (urine PPi ↑ + Ca^{2+} ↓)

Renal tubular acidosis, type 1: KCl, bicarbonate
Uric acid: Low-purine diet; allopurinol; K citrate – alkalize urine
Stasis: Treat underlying cause
Hereditary:
  Hyperoxaluria: Oral PO_4, pyridoxine, K citrate; liver + renal transplant
  Cystinosis: Penicillamine (cystine chelator); K citrate – alkalize urine
Infection:
  Antibiotics
  Acidify urine – methananime mandelate; urease inhibitor – acetohydroxamic acid
Nutrition: Low-salt, high-potassium diet; low oxalic acid; low purines; low-fat diet
GIT:
  Correct fat malabsorption – lipase supplements
  Oxalate-binding resin – cholestyramine
  Oxalate precipitate – calcium lactate

RENAL ENLARGEMENT



They look like A PHONE

A. P.H.O^2.N.E.

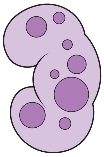
Amyloidosis

Polycystic kidneys/simple cysts: Hereditary (APKD, IPKD, neurocutaneous)
Hypertrophy 2° to contralateral renal agenesis
Obstruction (hydronephrosis)/**O**cclusion (renal vein thrombosis)
Neoplasia:
  Renal cell carcinoma
  Myeloma, lymphoma
Endocrine: Early diabetes mellitus

Renal cysts

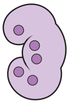
Large kidneys

- Adult polycystic kidney disease
- Infant polycystic kidney disease
- Neurocutaneous syndromes
  - Epi: Autosomal dominant
  - PC: Similar to adult polycystic kidneys +
    - Tuberous sclerosis: Hyperplastic nodules, angiomyolipomas
    - Von Hippel–Lindau syndrome: Renal cell carcinoma



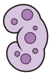
Normal size

- Medullary-sponge kidneys
  - Epi: Majority are sporadic and congenital; few are autosomal dominant
  - PC:
    - Incidental finding on AXR: Papillary nephrocalcinosis
    - Stones, haematuria, infection



Small kidneys

- Hereditary – nephronophthisis/medullary-cystic disease
  - Epi:
    - Nephronophthisis – autosomal recessive, children
    - Medullary-cystic disease – autosomal dominant; adult-onset
  - PC:
    - Renal failure, incl. polyuria
    - Hepatic fibrosis, cerebellar ataxia (nephronophthisis)
- Acquired – end-stage renal disease, dialysis
  - PC:
    - Stones, infection, haematuria
    - Polycythaemia (EPO secretion)
    - Renal cell carcinoma



ADULT POLYCYSTIC KIDNEY DISEASE

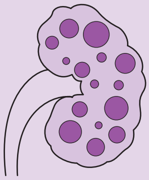
Epi

Adults: Renal failure >20 y; usually 40–60 years
Autosomal dominant type (most common)
    PKD1 gene, polycystin-1 (80%): cell–cell and cell–matrix membrane receptor
    PKD2 gene, polycystin-2: Ca^{2+} channel that interacts with polycystin-1
Autosomal recessive type (less common)

PC

M.I.S.S.H.A.P.E².N.

Mass-effect: Abdominal mass; flank pain
Infection
Stones, esp. uric acid
Sensitivity (acute pain in flanks, especially if haemorrhage into a cyst)
Haematuria or haemorrhage into cyst
ABP ↑: Hypertension
Polyuria, nocturia:
    Impaired tubular concentration
    Renal failure
Extra-renal cysts: Liver, pancreas, lungs, ovaries
Extra: Colonic diverticulae, inguinal herniae
Neuro: Cerebral berry aneurysms/subarachnoid haemorrhage + mitral valve prolapse; aortic aneurysm



Cysts originate from all parts of nephron and become detached from parent nephron

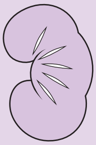
INFANT POLYCYSTIC KIDNEY DISEASE

Epi

Autosomal recessive
    PKHD1 gene, fibrocystin

PC

Kidney
    Abdominal masses in infant
    Hypertension/renal failure in childhood
Systemic
    Pulmonary hypoplasia
    Liver failure due to hepatic fibrosis



Cysts originate from distal tubule amd collecting tubule, and remain with nephron

RENAL CELL CARCINOMA

Def

Transformation of epithelial cells, predominantly from **proximal convoluted tubule**:

Clear cell	80%
Von Hippel–Lindau tumour suppressor gene inactivation (chromosome 3p)	
Chromophobic	10%
Oncocytic	5%
Collecting duct – medullary:	2%
Assoc: Young people, sickle cell anaemia	
Poor prognosis	

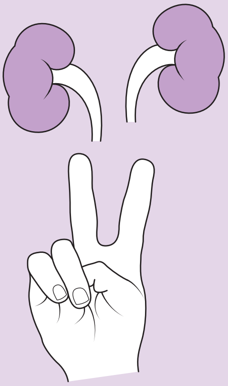
Epi

Inc: Increasing incidence – currently 5% of all cancers
Age: 50–70 years
Sex: M:F = 3:1

Causes

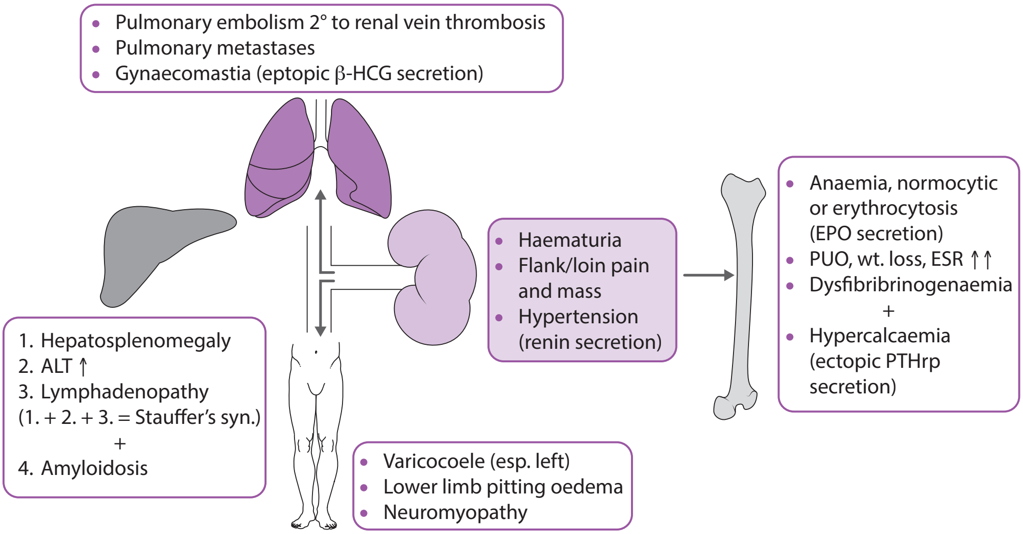
V.I.C.T.O.R.Y.

Von Hippel–Lindau (*VHL*) gene: Autosomal dominant
Inherited syndrome: Neurofibromatosis; tuberous sclerosis
Cystic disease: Adult polycystic kidney disease
Toxins: Smoking, cadmium, dry-cleaning; trichloroethylene
Obesity
Renal failure, end-stage, esp. on chronic dial**Y**sis, due to acquired renal cysts



PC

Pulmonary embolism 2° to renal vein thrombosis
Pulmonary metastases
Gynaecomastia (ectopic β-HCG secretion)


Pulmonary embolism 2° to renal vein thrombosis
Pulmonary metastases
Gynaecomastia (eptopic β-HCG secretion)
1. Hepatosplenomegaly
2. ALT ↑
3. Lymphadenopathy
(1. + 2. + 3. = Stauffer's syn.)
+
4. Amyloidosis
Haematuria
Flank/loin pain and mass
Hypertension (renin secretion)
Anaemia, normocytic or erythrocytosis (EPO secretion)
PUO, wt. loss, ESR ↑↑
Dysfibribrinogenaemia
+
Hypercalcaemia (ectopic PTHrp secretion)
Varicocoele (esp. left)
Lower limb pitting oedema
Neuromyopathy

Ix

Urine: Cytology
Proteinuria – if heavy, may suggest renal vein thrombosis
Radiol: USS/IVU: Renal mass
– Differential diagnosis = cyst, abscess, benign neoplasm (adenoma; angiomyolipoma)
CT abdomen–pelvis–chest – staging
MRV: Inferior vena cava and renal vein thrombosis

Rx

Local disease: Radical nephrectomy
En bloc removal of Gerota fascia with adrenals, lymph nodes ± renal vein
Metastatic disease:
Cytotoxics
Hormonal therapy: Progestagens
Immunotherapy: Interferon-α, interleukin-2
(☠: Capillary leakage syndrome, fever, shock)
Surgery: Palliation of local signs

Prog

Poor, although some cases stabilize or even develop spontaneous regression

		5-year survival rate
Stage I	(renal-confined)	70%
Stage III	(renal vein thrombosis, lymphadenopathy)	40%
Stage IV	(metastases)	10%

TESTICULAR TUMOURS

Germ-cell tumours

Risk factors

Cryptorchidism:

- Risk is higher for abdominal than inguinal site
- Both testes at risk, even if one is in scrotum

Dysgenesis: Klinefelter syndrome, androgen insensitivity syndrome

Isochromosome 12p reduplication

Seminoma

Epi: **S**emi, i.e. middle-aged (30–40s); commonest testis tumour

PATH:

- **S**heets of large, uniform, clear cells
- **S**permatic cord and epididymis infiltrated
- **S**ynctium in 10% that secretes β-HCG and causes gynaecomastia

Ix: Tumour markers: Placental alkaline phosphatase

Prog: **S**crotal involvement only (stage I) in 70%:

- Stage 1: 5-y survival rate 100%; stage II: 95%
- Good prognosis: Spermatocytic seminoma – doesn't metastasize (50s+)

Rx:

- Orchidectomy + retroperitoneal lymph-node dissection (RPLND)
- Radiotherapy to abdominal lymph nodes

Teratoma

Epi: **T**wenties: Prognosis worsens with age, as tumours are less differentiated

PATH: **T**otipotent tissue:

- Heterogeneous mix of differentiated cells
- Cartilage, bone, muscle, thyroid

Ix: **T**umour markers: AFP; β-HCG; hPL, LDH

NB: β-HCG and hPL may cause gynaecomastia

Prog: **T**errible prognosis (relative to seminoma):

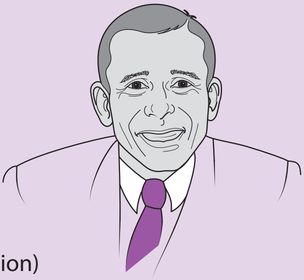
- Rapid, disorderly growth: 60% present with lymph/vascular spread
- PC: Back pain (retroperitoneal mets.)/dyspnoea (pulmonary mets.)
- Worst prognosis: Undifferentiated 'embryonal carcinoma' or chorioca.
- Good prognosis: Yolk-sac tumour (Ix: AFP), usually <3 y old

Rx:

- Orchidectomy + retroperitoneal lymph-node dissection (RPLND)
- Chemotherapy

Non-germ-cell tumours

Sex cord–**S**tromal



Epi: **S**emi, i.e. middle-aged (30–40s)
PATH:
Steroid-producing, esp. Leydig-cell tumour
PC:
- Gynaecomastia (oestrogen secretion)
- Precocious puberty (androgen or glucocorticoid secretion)

Sertoli–Leydig cell tumour/androblastoma – less hormone secretion spermatic cord and epididymis infiltrated ±
Synctium that secretes β-HCG and causes gynaecomastic (10%) – heterogeneous mix of differentiated cells (cartilage, bone, muscle, thyroid)
Prog: **S**crotal involvement only is usual good prognosis

Lymphoma

Epi: **L**ater life (50s+)
PATH: **L**arge-cell, diffuse, non-Hodgkin lymphoma
Prog: Poor

OVARIAN TUMOURS

Germ-cell tumours

Teratoma
Epi: **T**wenties
PATH: **T**otipotent tissue, due to unfertilized oocyte dividing and developing along 2 or 3 germ-cell lines (endo-, meso-, or ectoderm): Dermoid cyst (sebum, hair) + mamillary process (teeth, bone)
Ix:
Tumour markers – only in variants with poor prognosis:

- AFP – yolk-sac tumour; β-HCG – choriocarcinoma

Thyrotoxicosis ('struma ovarii')
Prog:
Not Terrible – unlike testis teratomas

- Usually benign and cystic
- Solid components may transform, e.g. skin – squamous cell carcinoma

20s–30s

Seminoma equivalent ('dysgerminoma')
Unlike testis seminomas, ovarian dysgerminomas are usually *aggressive* due to early spread via blood

Functional cysts (non-neoplastic)

Follicular	Resolve spontaneously
Corpus luteum	Unilateral pain; amenorrhoea
Theca-lutein	Large bilateral mass
Endometriotic	Pain; look like 'chocolate cysts' due to blood

Adenoma or adenocarcinoma (70%)

Aged (40s+); **A**bnormal ovarian function; **A**utosomal dominant – *See opposite*

Sex cord–stromal tumours

Granulosa-cell or theca-cell tumour:
PC: Secrete oestrogen:

- Amenorrhea (if pre-menopausal), menorrhagia, endometrial carcinoma
- Breast enlargement; precocious puberty (if in children)

Sertoli–Leydig cell tumour or androblastoma:
PC: Secrete androgen:

- Amenorrhea
- Virilisation, incl. cliteromegaly; breast atrophy

Fibroma:
PC:

- Torsion upon pedicle
- Ascites and pleural effusion (transudates) = 'Meig syndrome'

40s+

Metastases

Gynaecological: Endometrium, breast
GIT: Gastric; colon, via transcoelomic or lymph spread ('Krukenberg tumour') mucus-secreting, signet-ring cells; bilateral

OVARIAN ADENOCARCINOMA

Epi

Aged (40s+)

Aet

Abnormal ovarian function:

Repeated ovulatory cycles induce epithelial trauma, repair and neoplasia – associated with nulliparity, early menarche, late menopause

Persistent stimulation of ovaries by gonadotrophins – associated with clomiphene; protection offered by contraceptive pill

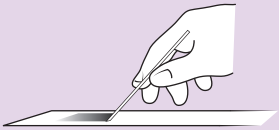
Autosomal dominant inheritance:

BRCA-1, -2, hereditary non-polyposis colorectal carcinoma (Lynch syndrome)

PATH

Derived from surface-epithelium (origins indicated)

S.M^2.E.A.R.



Serous (Fallopian tube) – commonest adenocarcinoma:
  PATH:
    Single cavity with **S**urface exophytic papillary growths
    Prog: **SER**ious:
      - Rapid transcoelomic spread and bilateral in 50%
      - Metastases common, but may regress after 1° removal

Mucinous (endocervix):
  PATH: **M**ultilocular cyst – PC: Large **M**ass
  Prog: **M**ild – most are low-grade

Myxoma – 'pseudomyxoma peritonei': Cyst may rupture with peritoneal seeding and mucin release

Endometrioid (endometrium): Assoc: **E**ndometrial carcinoma, **E**ndometriosis

Author-named – **B**renner tumour: Assoc: **B**leeding, post-menopausally, due to oestrogen secretion

Renal-related = **C**lear-**C**ell tumour (like renal clear-cell carcinoma):
- Assoc: Calcium elevation (PTH-related peptide secretion)
- Commonly recur

PC

Local:
- Abdominal pain (chronic – mass effect; acute – bleed or torsion)
- Abdominal bloating (mass effect, ascites)
- Urinary frequency or constipation

Extra-abdominal: Pleural effusions – DVT; paraneoplastic: limbic encephalitis

Ix

CA125 tumour marker
CT abdomen

Rx

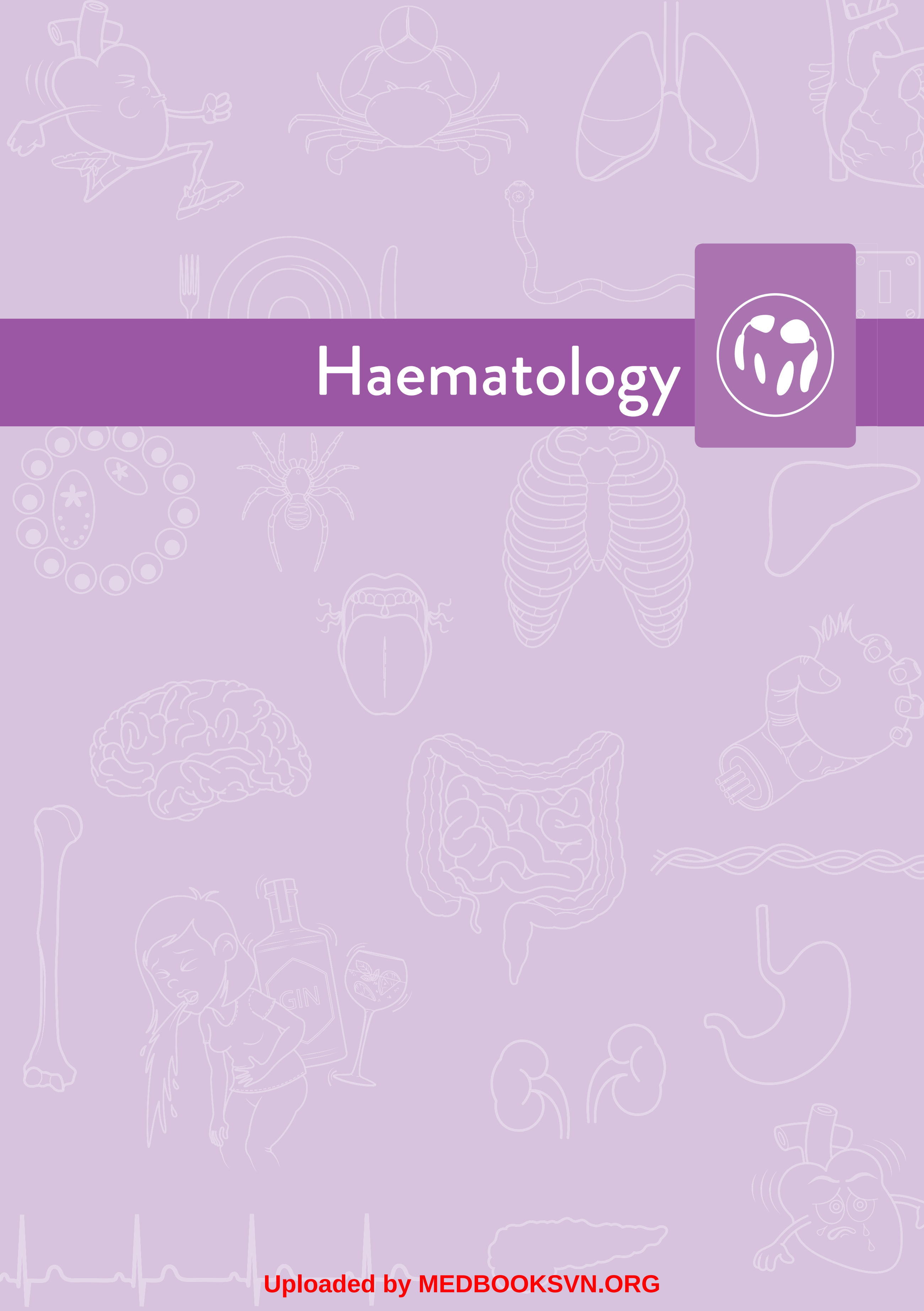
Surgery
Carboplatin + paclitaxel

Prog

		5-year survival rate
Stage I	Ovaries only	80%
Stage II	Pelvis extension	60%
Stage III	Peritoneal, retroperitoneal spread	30%
Stage IV	Metastases in liver, pleura, etc.	10%

Taylor & Francis
Taylor & Francis Group
http://taylorandfrancis.com

Haematology



ANAEMIA

Def

Men:	Hb	<135 g/l
Women:	Hb	<115 g/l
Children:	Hb	<110 g/l
Newborn:	Hb	<150 g/l

NB: Allowances should be made for changes in plasma volume, in the absence of changes in total red cell mass. This can be approximated by inspecting packed cell volume (PCV):

Normal PCV (haematocrit):

Men:	40–50%
Women:	35–50%

PC

Fatigue, SOB
Cardiac: Palpitations; angina, CCF
Neuro: Headaches, TIAs, retinal bleeds
Other: Intermittent claudication

Presence of symptoms depend on:

- Severity, <10 g/dl = symptomatic
- Speed of onset: Acute more symptomatic, as not compensated
- Age: Reduced CVS compensation

O/E

Pale mucous membranes
Pruritus, koilonychia: Fe deficiency
Jaundice – haemolysis or megaloblastosis

Ix

Bloods: FBC, film, reticulocytes: Haematinics, transferrin saturation
Haemolysis tests, e.g. Coombs' test
Other: U&Es, LFTs, TFTs, ESR (↑ with Hb ↓)

Fine-needle aspirate and/or bone-marrow biopsy:
Marrow cellularity, myeloid:erythroid ratio (range 3–12)

Special: Ferrokinetics (^{59}Fe):

- Measures rate of Fe uptake from plasma = total erythropoiesis
- Sacrum, liver, spleen uptake?

RBC survival (^{51}Cr + RBC): Measure radioactivity over liver and spleen over 3 weeks

Microcytic
MCV <76 fl

Iron deficiency

Supply ↓: Diet, malabsorption
Demand ↑:
Physiological (pregnancy, periods)
Blood loss: GIT, urine, lung, haemolysis
Ix: Ferritin ↓, soluble transferrin receptor ↑

Haemoglobinopathy

Thalassaemia:
β: 1 gene on Chr 11 (100 mutations): β^0 = no globin; β^+ = ↓ globin
Major: β^0/β^0 or β^+/β^0 or $\beta^+/$ **E**
Intermedia: mild β^+/β^+ or $\beta^+/$**D**
Minor or trait: β/β^++ or β/β^0
α: 2 genes on Chr 16
α = globin; – = no globin

Hydrops fetalis:	Hb Barts (γ_4)	––/––
Intermedia:	Hb H disease (β_4)	– – /α–
Minor or trait:	α–/α or ––/ αα	
Carrier:	α–/αα	

Hereditary spherocytosis:
Commonest hereditary haemolytic anaemia in Caucasians, due to spectrin deficiency (auto. dom.)

Bone marrow hypoproduction

Chronic disease, anaemia of:
Cause: Infection, autoimmunity, neoplasia
Ix: Ferritin ↑, soluble transferrin receptor normal
Hereditary sideroblastic anaemia: X-linked recessive; Rx: vitamin B_6
Poisoning:
Lead:
PC: Abdominal pain, motor neuropathy, hypertension, renal tubular acidosis
O/E: Blue line along gums
Ix: X-ray: Epiphyseal sclerosis
Film: Basophilic stippling
BM: Ringed sideroblasts
Aluminium, e.g. renal dialysate

Normocytic
MCV 76–96 fl

Acute haemorrhage

Restoration of plasma volume (over hours) is quicker than RBC ↑ (over days)

Haemolytic anaemias

Hereditary:

Haemoglobinopathy:
- Hb S (sickle cell)
- Unstable Hb or altered O_2 affinity

Membrane defect: Hereditary elliptocytosis

Enzyme defect: G6PD or pyruvate kinase deficiency

Acquired: S.P.L.I.T.T.I.N.G.

Spleen enlargement
PNH
Liver disease
Immune, e.g. SLE
Toxin, e.g. MeDOPA
Trauma to RBCs (MAHA)
Infection, e.g. malaria
Neoplasia, e.g. adenocarcinoma
Graft, arterial

Bone marrow hypoproduction

Aplastic anaemia: **A.P.L.A.S.T.I.C.**

Acquired mutation
PNH
Leukaemia
Autoimmune
Sniffing glue
Toxins
Infection
Congenital

Bone marrow replacement:
Myelofibrosis, myeloma, leukaemia
Malignancy: Osteoblastic metastases
Infection: Tb, *Brucella, Candida*

Chronic disease, anaemia of:
PATH: Failure of iron recycling
Cause: Infection, autoimmunity, malignancy
Diet: Malnutrition, malabsorption (protein ↓)
Endocrine: Addison, dysthyroidism

Macrocytic
MCV >96 fl

M.A.R.M^2.A.LA.D.E.

Megaloblastic

Vit. B_{12} deficiency

Intake ↓: vegetarian, e.g. Hindus

Absorption ↓:
- Stomach (IF and R protein synthesis): Pernicious anaemia, gastrectomy
- Duodenum, pancreas (R protein dissociation): Coeliac, chronic pancreatitis
- Small bowel (sequestration): Bacterial overgrowth, e.g. blind-loop
- Terminal ileum (absorption): Crohn, TB

Drugs: Metformin, colchicine, N_2O anaesthesia

Folate deficiency

Intake ↓: 'Tea + biscuits' diet – elderly

Absorption ↓: Coeliac, Crohn, AIDS

Drugs:
- **D**HFR inhibitor: Methotrexate, trimethoprim
- **D**ihydropteroate synthetase inhibitor: Dapsone, sulphonamides, nitrofurantoin
- **D**NA antagonist: AZT, azathioprine, hydroxyurea
  - + Isoniazid, chloramphenicol
  - + Malabsorption: Sulphasalazine, cholestyramine
  - + Inducers: Phenytoin, phenobarbitone, OCP

Demand ↑:
- Physiological: Pregnancy, infancy
- Neoplasia: Myeloproliferative
- Haemolysis, erythroderma, autoimmune

Other: Orotic aciduria, transcobalamin-II deficiency

Alcoholic liver disease

Reticulocytosis: e.g. acute haemolysis or BM replacement

Myelodysplasia/Myeloma

Aplastic anaemia: Chronic idiopathic, or Fanconi

Leukaemia, Acute: Erythroleukaemia

Disordered iron ↑: Haemochromatosis or haemosiderosis

Endocrine: Hypothyroidism

BONE MARROW FAILURE

The following cause either a peripheral blood pancytopenia or anaemia due to failure of haematopoeisis

A.B.C.D.E.F.

Normocytic anaemia

- **A**plastic **A**naemia
  - **A.P.L.A.S.T.I.C.** – *see opposite*
  - Ix: Normocytic anaemia, but may be macrocytic in long-standing disease
- **B**one marrow replacement (myelophthisis)
  - Malignancy: Haematological – myelofibrosis, myeloma, leukaemia
  - Malignancy: Osteoblastic metastases
  - Infection: TB, *Brucella*, *Coxiella*, *Legionella*
  - Sarcoidosis
- **C**hronic disease, anaemia of
  - PATH: Failure of Fe recycling
  - Cause: Infection, autoimmunity, malignancy
  - Ix: Micro- or normocytic anaemia
- **D**iet
  - Malnutrition incl. anorexia nervosa
  - Malabsorption (protein ↓)
- **E**ndocrine
  - Addison
  - Dysthyroidism
  - Hypogonadism
- **F**ailure
  - Renal
  - Liver

Megaloblastic anaemia

- **F**olate or vit. B12 deficiency

APLASTIC ANAEMIA

Def

Haematopoeitic stem-cell failure, in presence of bone marrow hypocellularity, leading to peripheral blood pancytopenia

Causes

A.P^2.L.A.S.T.I.C.

- **A**cquired mutation: Telomerase reverse transcriptase (*TERT*)
  - Accounts for large proportion of 'idiopathic' cases
- **P**NH (paroxysmal nocturnal haemoglobinuria) – recovery phase:
  - Ix: Acid lysis test (Ham test); flow cytometry for GPI-linked proteins
- **P**regnancy
- **L**eukaemia, acute; lymphoma or thymoma; myelodyplasia:
  - Ix: Bone marrow shows abnormal cells; cytogenetic abnormalities
- **A**utoimmune
  - Accounts for large proportion of 'idiopathic' cases
  - SLE, eosinophilic fasciitis
- **S**niffing glue; ecstasy; pesticides (DDT)
- **T**oxins
  - Dose-dependent: Chemotherapy, methotrexate, chloramphenicol
  - Idiosyncratic: Chloramphenicol (1/50,000), tetracycline, sulphonamide
  - Hypersensitivity: Any drug after repeated exposure
  - Radiation
- **I**nfection – viruses
  - Parvovirus B19 in hereditary haemolytic anaemia – causes pure red cell aplasia
  - HAV, HBV, HCV (3 weeks to 8 months after)
  - EBV, HIV
- **C**ongenital
  - Fanconi's anaemia (AR):
    - PATH: Chromosomal breaks and gaps due to failure of DNA repair mechanism
    - PC: Skeletal hypoplasia; pigmented; heart or renal anomalies; AML
    - Ix: Chromosome studies of peripheral blood cells
  - Dyskeratosis congenita (AD):
    - PATH: Premature ageing due to *TERT* mutation (no chromosome breaks or gaps)
    - PC: Dementia, ectodermal dysplasia (alopecia, nail dystrophy)
  - Diamond–Blackfan syndrome – pure red-cell aplasia:
    - PC: Short stature, sunken nasal bridge; hepatosplenomegaly and CCF (iron overload)

Rx

Supportive care:
- Packed cell transfusions using leucocyte-depleted products or HLA-matched platelets
- Antibiotics, antifungals

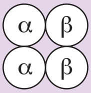
Medical:
- Androgens
- Anti-thymocyte globulin (☠ Serum-sickness) ± cyclosporin

Bone marrow transplantation – allogeneic

HAEMOLYTIC ANAEMIA – CAUSES

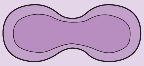
Hereditary

Haemoglobinopathy



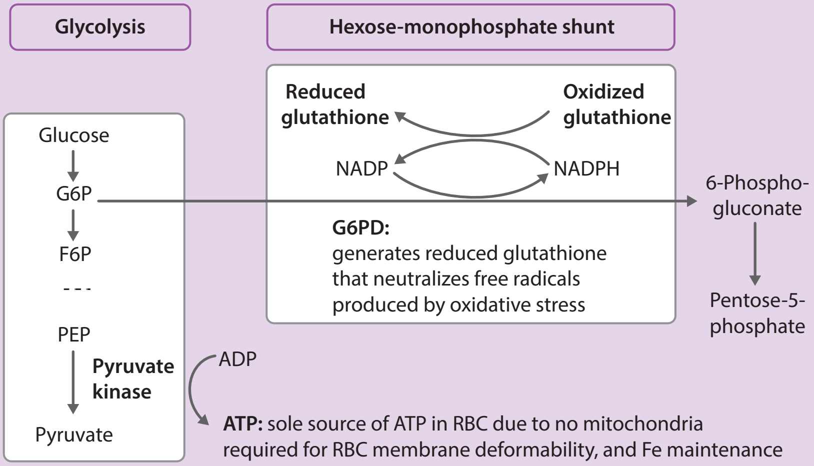
Microcytic: Thalassaemia: Ineffective erythropoiesis and haemolysis
Normocytic: HbS (sickle cell), C, D, E, M
Unstable Hb: Hb Koln, Hb Zurich
Altered O_2 affinity: Hb Yakima (↑), Hb Seattle (↓)

Membrane defect



Microcytic: Hereditary spherocytosis (autosomal dominant) commonest hereditary haemolytic anaemia in Caucasians
PATH: Spectrin deficiency – spectrin is main structural unit of RBC membrane
Normocytic: Hereditary elliptocytosis (autosomal dominant)
PATH: Spectrin dimer or spectrin – ankyrin mutation → RBCs are squashed in capillaries
Hereditary stomatocytosis (autosomal dominant):
PATH: Na and K permeability ↑ → swollen or dehydrated RBCs

Enzyme defect


Glycolysis
Hexose-monophosphate shunt
Reduced glutathione
Oxidized glutathione
NADP
NADPH
Glucose
G6P
F6P
- - -
PEP
Pyruvate kinase
Pyruvate
6-Phospho-gluconate
Pentose-5-phosphate
ADP

G6PD:
generates reduced glutathione that neutralizes free radicals produced by oxidative stress

ATP: sole source of ATP in RBC due to no mitochondria required for RBC membrane deformability, and Fe maintenance

Normocytic:
Glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase (G6PD) deficiency (X-linked):
Common in pts. from Mediterranean (severe) and Africa
PC: Haemolytic crises and shock precipitated by oxidative stresses, viz. acute illness (e.g. infection, DKA); foods and drugs: B.A.N. M.E.
Broad beans (fava); **A**spirin (high dose); **N**itrofurantoin, sulphonamides, ciprofloxacin; **M**alaria (chloroquine, primaquine); dapsone; **E**xtra: probenecid, soluble vit. K
Pyruvate kinase deficiency (autosomal recessive)

NB: HbS, elliptocytosis, G6PD heterozygotes provide malaria protection

Acquired

Immune-mediated

Auto-immune:
  Warm: **T.A.N.**:
    Toxins: Methyldopa, L-DOPA (+ apomorphine), high-dose penicillin, quinidine, sulphonamides
    Autoimmune: SLE, Evans syndrome (ITP + AIHA)
    Neoplasia: Non-Hodgkin lymphoma, CLL
  Cold: **N.I.P.PY**:
    Neoplasia: Benign monoclonal gammopathy, lymphoma
    Infection: EBV, mycoplasma
    Paroxysmal cold haemoglobinuria: **P**rimary autoimmune, measles, VZV, 3° s**Y**philis
Allo-immune
  Haemolytic disease of the newborn
  ABO incompatibility
Antibiotic (and other drug) induced
  Penicillin
  Cephalosporins
  Levofloxacin
  Methyldopa

Non-immune mediated

Medications, e.g. ribavirin, dapsone, sulfasalazine
MAHA (microangiopathic haemolytic anaemia)
  HUS, TTP, DIC, HELLP syndrome
Malaria and other infections, such streptococcal bacteraemia
Membrane disorders
  Paroxysmal nocturnal haemoglobinuria (PNH):
  PATH: Clonal inactivation of *pig-A* gene on X Chr → glycosyl phosphatidyl inositol (GPI) anchor deficiency
  → loss of RBC surface membrane complement inhibitors (e.g. decay accelerating factor)
  → haemolysis and platelet aggregation (arterial and venous thrombosis)
  Liver:
    Alcoholic cirrhosis: ↑ RBC cholesterol: Phospholipid ratio → ↓ membrane deformation (spur cells)
    Wilson disease: Direct effect of copper

HAEMOLYTIC ANAEMIA – CLINICAL

PC

A.B.C.D.

Anaemia: Due to haemolysis or associated aplastic crises (e.g. sickle cell disease, PNH)
Breakdown products:
  Jaundice
  Pigment stones
  Haemoglobinuria
Compensation:
  Hepatosplenomegaly from erythropoietic hyperplasia (may also be *cause* of haemolysis if there is *hypersplenism*)
  Medullary hyperplasia, e.g. bossed skull, prominent maxillae in children
  Iron overload (p. 160) or *Yersinia* infections – due to many transfusions
Disease-specific:
  Sickle cell: Leg ulcers, dactylitis, chest crisis
  PNH: Venous or arterial thrombosis, pancytopenia due to myelofibrosis
  Cold autoimmune: Acrocyanosis; haemolysis on drinking cold liquids

Ix – General

Bloods: Reticulocytes >5%

MCV:
- Normocytic: Most chronic haemolytic anaemias
- Microcytic: Thalassaemia, spherocytes, secondary iron loss with chronic haemolysis
- Macrocytic: Acute haemolysis due to reticulocytosis

Film:
- Polychromasia, due to immature cells
- Specific red cell forms: Spherocytes (↓ surface area/volume); target cells (↑ s.a./vol.)

Bone marrow: erythroid hyperplasia

Chemistry:

LFTs:
- Unconjugated BR ↑ ('acholuric' – i.e. absent in urine)
- AST ↑ (but ALT normal)
- LDH ↑ (esp. intravascular haemolysis)

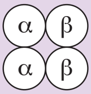
α_2-haptoglobin ↓: Binds to Hb and is cleared via reticuloendothelial system
Plasma haemoglobin (esp. intravascular haemolysis)

Urine:
  Haemosiderin (intravascular haemolysis)
  Haemoglobin (severe intravascular haemolysis)

Ix – Specific

Hereditary

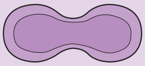
Haemoglobinopathy



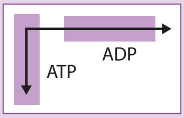
- Thalassaemia: MCV, HbA2, genetics
- Sickle cell: Film: drapanocytes, serum electrophoresis

Membrane defect

- Hereditary spherocytosis:
  - Film: Microspherocytes (MCHC↑) osmotic fragility test; glucose incubation protects



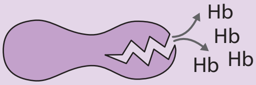
Enzyme defect



- G6PD deficiency: Film – blister, bite cells; Heinz bodies (oxidized Hb) enzyme assay (reticulocytes have normal activity)
- Pyruvate kinase deficiency: Film – poikilocytosis; prickle cells; enzyme assay

Acquired

S.P.L.I.T.



Spleen: Abdominal USS

Paroxysmal nocturnal haemoglobinuria (**PNH**):
- Complement-mediated lysis: Acidify (Ham test) or add sucrose
- Flow cytometry for GPI-linked proteins, e.g. DAF, CD59

Liver: Film – spur cells

Immune, auto-:
- Warm AIHA:
  - Direct Coombs' test: Mix pt's RBCs + specific anti-IgG or anti-C3
  - → agglutination with anti-IgG (penicillin, methyldopa), C3 (other drugs), or both (SLE)

- Cold AIHA:
  - Direct Coombs' test: Agglutination with anti-C3 only, and at T <30°C
  - Cold agglutinins test:
    - Cold agglutinin type:
      - IgM anti-I (adult RBCs): Monoclonal gammopathy, mycoplasma
      - IgM anti-i (fetal RBCs): Lymphoma, EBV
      - IgG 'Donath–Landsteiner Ab': Cold paroxysmal haemoglobinuria (do syphilis serology)

Trauma to RBCs: Film – schistocytes (RBC fragments)

Rx

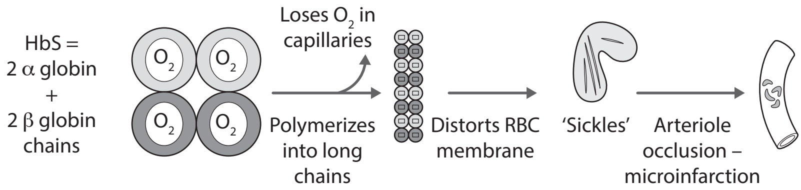
PNH:
- Steroids
- Androgens; anti-thymocyte globulin
- Bone marrow transplant

AIHA:
- Immunosuppressants: Steroids, azathioprine, cyclophosphamide, IVIg
- Splenectomy
- Blood transfusions, with prior adsorption of patient's 'panagglutinin antibodies', i.e. antibodies that cross-react with universal RBC antigens

SICKLE CELL ANAEMIA

Def

Defective synthesis of β-globin chain due to point mutation: Glu → hydrophobic Val
This results in less soluble HbS that tends to polymerize when deoxygenated


HbS =
2 α globin
+
2 β globin
chains
O_2
O_2
O_2
O_2
Loses O_2 in capillaries
Polymerizes into long chains
Distorts RBC membrane
'Sickles'
Arteriole occlusion – microinfarction

Epi

Black ethnicity, Greek ethnicity

PC

B.L.A.C.K.I.N.G. O.U.T.

Bone: Pain incl. dactylitis, finger shortening; *Salmonella* osteomyelitis
Avascular necrosis: Femoral, humeral head, vertebral end-plates – growth retardation
Reshaping – frontal bossing in children due to widened diploë

Liver: Pigmented gallstones

Anaemia: Hb 6–10 g/dl: not usually symptomatic

Crises:

S.H.A.R.P.

Sequestration: Spleen and liver venous occclusion – young children only

Haemolytic anaemia

Aplastic anaemia: Triggered by parvovirus or hepatitis infection

Respiratory ('chest crisis'): Chest pain, SOB, fever, hypoxia – due to pulmonary sickling leading to infarction, and pneumococcal infection

Painful, vaso-occlusive: Bones–joints–muscles, GIT, spleen – commonest crisis; triggered by infection, dehydration, sympathetic activation

Kidney: Medullary sickling: Hyposthenuria (diabetes insipidus); renal tubular acidosis
Papillary necrosis: Episodic haematuria, ureteric obstruction
Glomeruli: Focal segmental glomerulosclerosis; membranous glomerulonephritis

Infection – due to hyposplenism following repeated splenic microinfarcts

Neuro: Strokes: children – repeated infarcts; adults – haemorrhagic

Gonads: Infertility; recurrent miscarriage; pre-eclampsia
Priapism

Ophthalmological: Proliferative retinopathy, vitreous haemorrhage, retinal detachment

Ulcers: Leg, ankle – due to sluggish microcirculation

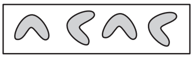
Thrombophilia: Deep-vein thrombosis, pulmonary embolism, pulmonary hypertension, coronary ischaemia (eventually cardiomyopathy)

Median age at death = 45 years, due to renal failure, pulmonary hypertension, cardiomyopathy

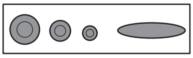
Ix

Bloods: FBC:
- Hb 7–10 g/dl; MCV normal
- Reticulocytes ↑
- Neutrophils ↑

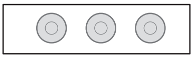
Film:
- Drapanocytes (‘sickle cells’)



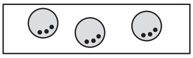
- Anisocytosis and poikilocytosis, incl. pencil cells



- Target cells



- Howell–Jolly bodies, due to hyposplenism



Electrophoresis:
- Hb S/S (homozygote) or Hb S/A (trait)
- Hb F ($\alpha_2\gamma_2$): ↑ 5–15%; higher levels correlate with less sickling and better prognosis

Sickling test: Reducing agent, e.g. Na metabisulphite, induces sickling by removing O_2

Rx

Prophylaxis:
Folic acid
Penicillin V
Vaccines: Pneumococcal, *Haemophilus influenzae* b, meningitis A, C (in endemic areas)

Disease-modifying:
Hydroxyurea: ↑ HbF levels, ↓ neutrophils; ↓ no. of crises (☠: Myelotoxic, carcinogenic)
Exchange transfusions: Given for pregnancy or frequent crises; recurrent CVA
Allogeneic bone-marrow transplant

Sickle crisis:
O_2 and IV hydration – both decrease further sickling
Opioids
Antibiotics
Exchange transfusion – reduces proportion of HbS to <30%

Variants

Sickle cell trait
Def: Heterozygotes, i.e. HbSA = 40% HbS, 60% HbA (co-dominant expression)
PC: Normal Hb level; development; life expectancy
Kidney: Papillary sloughing – episodic painless haematuria, or ureteric obstruction (esp. boys)
Crises: rare, but may be precipitated by high altitude; anaesthesia or pregnancy

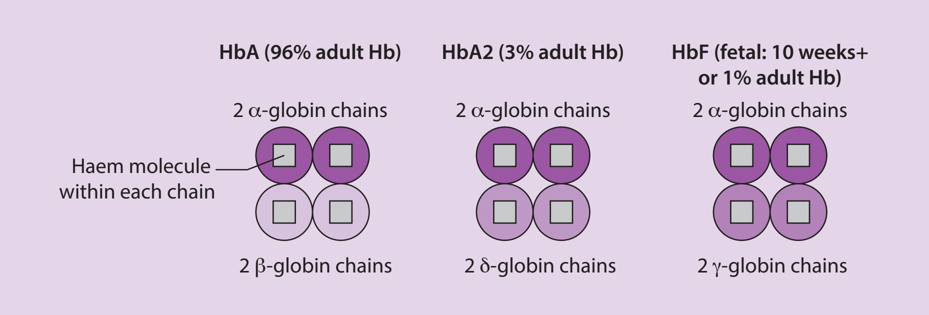
Hb SC
Def: Hb C: Lysine amino-acid substitution at same position in β-globin chain as defect in HbS
PC: Anaemia less severe (Hb 10–14 g/dl) but vaso-occlusion more likely as more RBCs, e.g. sea-fan retinopathy
Ix: Film – target cells prominent

THALASSAEMIA

Def

Heterogeneous group of genetic disorders of Hb synthesis that result in:

- Ineffective erythropoeisis, due to decreased rate of globin synthesis
- Haemolytic anaemia, due to production of abnormal RBCs (nucleated; abnormal globin)


HbA (96% adult Hb)
HbA2 (3% adult Hb)
HbF (fetal: 10 weeks+ or 1% adult Hb)
2 α-globin chains
2 α-globin chains
2 α-globin chains
Haem molecule within each chain
2 β-globin chains
2 δ-globin chains
2 γ-globin chains

Epi

Mediterranean Basin – N+W Africa; Middle East; SE Asia; also occurs sporadically

Classification schemes

Globin chain mutation:

α: 2 genes on chromosome 16 (i.e. 4 genes per individual)
ß: 1 gene on chromosome 11 (i.e. 2 genes per individual)

Clinical severity:

Major	Hb <7 g/dl	Requires regular transfusion
Intermedia	Hb 7–10 g/dl	No regular transfusion; splenomegaly
Minor ('Trait')	Hb 10–14 g/dl	
Carrier	Anaemia only occurs at high altitudes or with general anaesthesia	

Types

α-Thalassaemia

No. of mutated genes	Name	Clinical
4 ––/––	**Hb Barts** γ_4	'Hydrops fetalis' – death in utero
3 α –/––	**Hb H** ß$_4$	Thalassaemia Intermedia
2 α –/α–	**Thalassaemia minor**	Mild anaemia or asymptomatic
αα/––		
1 αα/a –	**Carrier**	Asymptomatic

Key: α = normal gene; – = mutated gene; γ_4 or ß$_4$ represent alternative Hb type produced

ß-Thalassaemia

No. of mutated genes	Name	Clinical
2 ß^o/ß^o	**Thalassaemia major**	Regular transfusions
ß$^+$/ß$^+$ (different mutations)		
2 ß$^+$/ß$^+$ (mild mutations)	**Thalassaemia intermedia**	No regular transfusions
1 ß^o/ß		
δß fusion gene (Hb Lepore)		
1 ß^o/ß	**Thalassaemia minor**	
ß$^+$/ß		

Key: ß^o = no ß globin; ß$^+$= ↓ ß globin (over 100 mutations recognized)

PC

Haemolytic anaemia from 3–6 months old, when fetal Hb → adult Hb

Anaemia: Fatigue, pallor; leg ulcers; congestive cardiac failure

Haemolysis: Mild jaundice (unconjugated bilirubin ↑); gallstones

Compensation of anaemia

Bones – medullary hyperplasia:

- Facies: Bossed skull (X-ray = 'hair on end')/enlarged maxilla ('chipmunk facies')
- Pathological fractures, growth retardation: due to cortical thinning

Extramedullary haemopoeisis: Hepatosplenomegaly, gingival hyperplasia

Therapy complications

Fe overload (see p. 160):

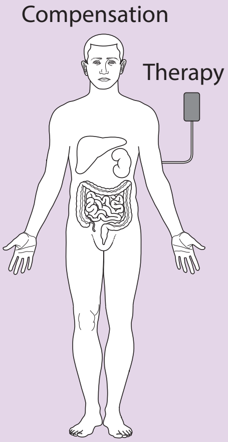
2° to repeated transfusions and ↑ GIT uptake (hence also present in thalassaemia intermedia), e.g. myocardial damage, diabetes, cirrhosis → death in 30s!!

Infections:

Yersinia enterocolitica: due to Fe overload and chelation therapy

Capsulated bacteria, due to splenectomy

Blood transfusion-associated



Ix

Bloods: FBC:

- Anaemia – microcytosis, hypochromia: Hb <7: major (ß-thal only); Hb 7–11: intermedia (α- or ß-thal); Hb 11–14: minor (α or ß-thal)
- Red cell count ↑
- Reticulocytes – normal/↓/↑; normal in thalassaemia intermedia

Film:

- 'Heinz bodies' due to oxidized Hb; 'golf ball cells' due to α_4 or $ß_4$ precipitation in ß- or α-thalassaemia, respectively
- Nucleated RBCs: Normoblasts, reflect increased marrow turnover; nuclear remnants – Howell–Jolly bodies; basophilic stippling
- Other: Target cells (haemolysis); siderocytes (iron inclusions); poikilocytes (α-thalassaemia)

Electrophoresis:

ß-thal major:	Hb F ↑↑ (30–60%); Hb A absent!, Hb A2 variable
ß-thal intermedia:	Hb F ↑
ß-thal minor:	Hb F low; Hb A present, Hb A2 >3.5%
α-thal intermedia:	Hb H Hurries along, i.e. fast-moving band

Globin-chain synthesis studies or PCR or restriction-enzyme analyses for family screening/prenatal diagnosis via cord blood or amniocentesis

Rx

Blood transfusions plus desferrioxamine (Fe chelator)

Folic acid: Due to high RBC turnover predisposing to deficiency

Vit. C (ascorbic acid): Decreases Fe absorption

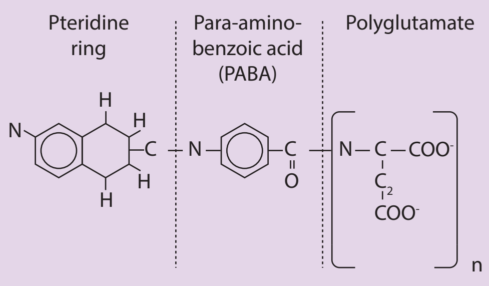
Splenectomy: Decreases haemolysis, but wait until >6 years old to reduce risk of infection

Bone marrow transplant

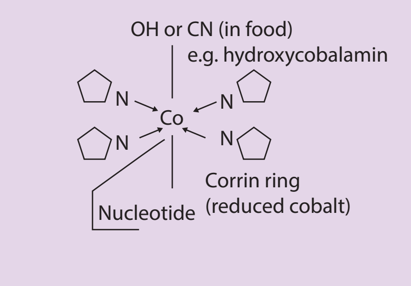
FOLATE AND VITAMIN B12 METABOLISM

Structure

Tetrahydrofolate polyglutamate


Pteridine ring
Para-amino-benzoic acid (PABA)
Polyglutamate
N
H
H
C
H
H
N
C
O
N
C
COO-
C2
COO-
n

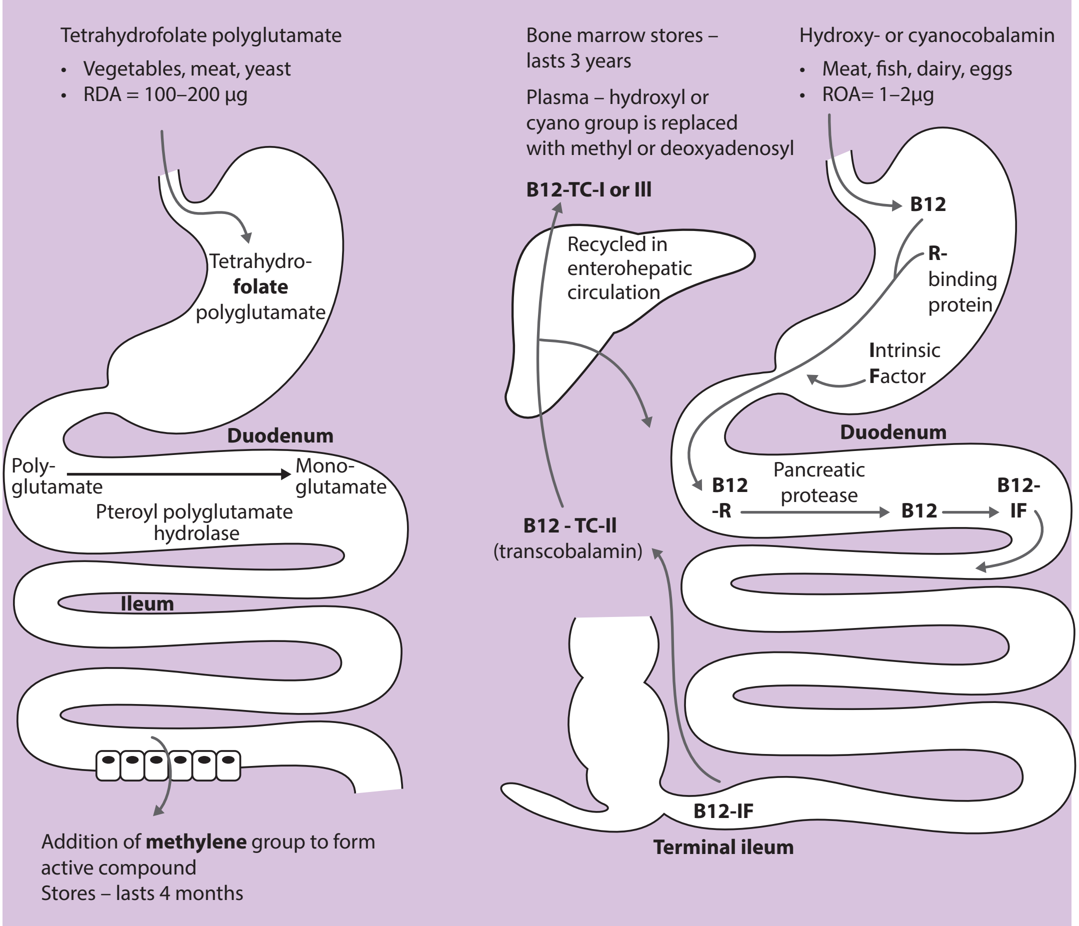
Vitamin B12 (cobalamin)


OH or CN (in food)
e.g. hydroxycobalamin
N
Co
N
N
N
Corrin ring (reduced cobalt)
Nucleotide

Absorption

Folic acid

Vitamin B12



Tetrahydrofolate polyglutamate

- Vegetables, meat, yeast
- RDA = 100–200 µg

Addition of **methylene** group to form active compound

Stores – lasts 4 months

Bone marrow stores – lasts 3 years

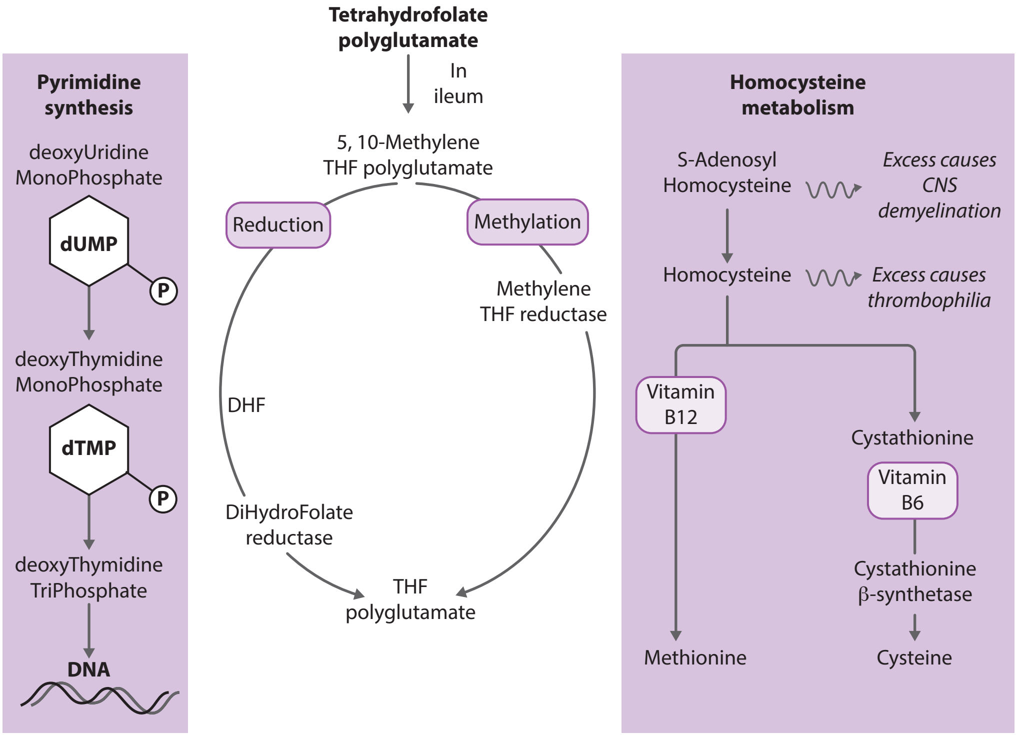
Plasma – hydroxyl or cyano group is replaced with methyl or deoxyadenosyl

Hydroxy- or cyanocobalamin

- Meat, fish, dairy, eggs
- ROA= 1–2µg

Tetrahydro-
folate
polyglutamate
Duodenum
Poly-glutamate
Mono-glutamate
Pteroyl polyglutamate hydrolase
Ileum
B12-TC-I or III
Recycled in enterohepatic circulation
B12 - TC-II
(transcobalamin)
B12
R- binding protein
Intrinsic **F**actor
Duodenum
B12 -R
Pancreatic protease
B12
B12- IF
B12-IF
Terminal ileum

Metabolism


Tetrahydrofolate polyglutamate
In ileum
5, 10-Methylene THF polyglutamate
Reduction
Methylation
Methylene THF reductase
DHF
DiHydroFolate reductase
THF polyglutamate
Pyrimidine synthesis
deoxyUridine MonoPhosphate
dUMP
P
deoxyThymidine MonoPhosphate
dTMP
P
deoxyThymidine TriPhosphate
DNA
Homocysteine metabolism
S-Adenosyl Homocysteine
Excess causes CNS demyelination
Homocysteine
Excess causes thrombophilia
Vitamin B12
Cystathionine
Vitamin B6
Cystathionine β-synthetase
Methionine
Cysteine

Other metabolic interactions

Folate: Purine synthesis, amino-acid interconversions, e.g. serine → glycine
Vit. B12: Methylmalonyl CoA → succinylCoA
NB: Deficiencies of DHF reductase, methylene THF reductase or cystathionine β-synthetase are responsible for homocystinuria

Ix

Bloods:
Serum B12/folate levels
Plasma homocysteine ↑ (folate or B12 deficiency)

MEGALOBLASTIC ANAEMIA

Def

Macrocytic anaemia
Erythroblasts have large, immature nuclei, reflecting diffuse, open chromatin structure
Due to defective DNA synthesis, esp. from vit. B12 or folate deficiency (see p. 433)

Pernicious anaemia

PATH

Autoantibodies directed against parietal cells (95%) and intrinsic factor (70%)
Chronic atrophic gastritis (plasma cell infiltrate of gastric lamina propria) → achlorhydria and gastric carcinoma

Epi

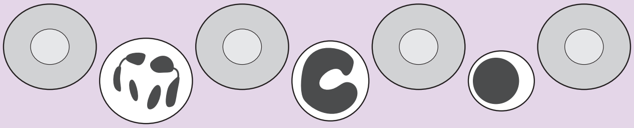
Inc: Most common cause of B12 deficiency in West
Age: Middle-aged or elderly
Sex: Females > males
Geo: North Europeans
Pre: **A**utoimmunity, esp. vitiligo, thyroid or parathyroid disease, Addison
Agammaglobulinaemia
A3 (HLA) or **A** blood group

PC

M.E^2.G.A.L.O.B.L.A.S.T.

Mucosal atrophy:
- Glossitis: Beefy red, sore, smooth tongue – due to papillae loss
- Angular cheilitis – due to decreased epithelial turnover
- Impaired healing, including fractures – due to decreased osteoblast activity

Eyes – blue, **E**arly greying of hair, wide-cheek bones (associations)
GIT: Indigestion, episodic diarrhoea
Anorexia
Loss of weight
Organomegaly: Splenomegaly
Bone marrow failure:
- Anaemia – pallor, cardiac failure
- Neutropenia – immunocompromise
- Thrombocytopenia – purpura



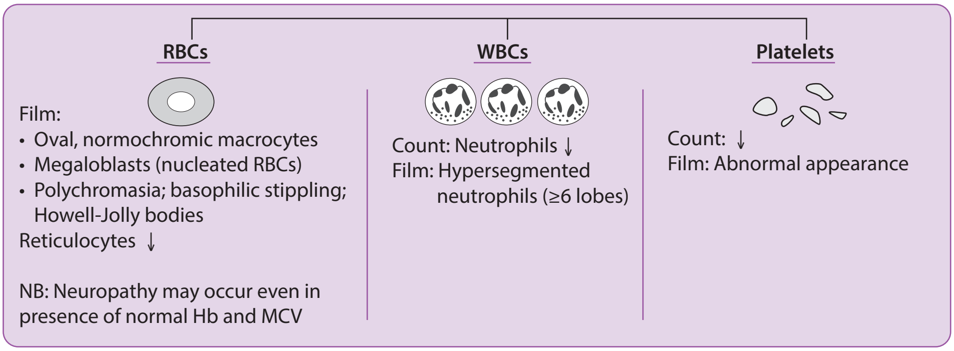
LFTs: Jaundiced, LDH ↑ due to haemolysis of abnormal RBCs
Autoimmune: Vitiligo, infertility, Addison, DM
Subacute combined degeneration of cord:
- PATH: Posterior column degeneration (vibration/JPSO, Rombergism, Charcot joints)
- PC: Sensory disturbance in feet; gait ataxia; Charcot joints; extensor plantars, areflexia + dementia, optic atrophy, peripheral neuropathy

Tumour: Gastric carcinoma in 4%

NB: Folate deficiency causes mucositis, anaemia, mild neuropath.

Ix

FBC



RBCs

Film:
- Oval, normochromic macrocytes
- Megaloblasts (nucleated RBCs)
- Polychromasia; basophilic stippling; Howell-Jolly bodies

Reticulocytes ↓

NB: Neuropathy may occur even in presence of normal Hb and MCV

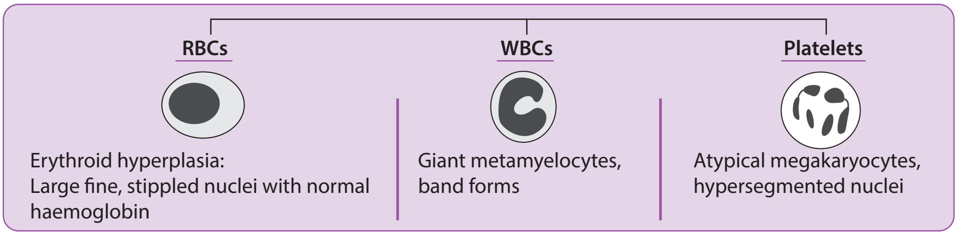
WBCs

Count: Neutrophils ↓
Film: Hypersegmented neutrophils (≥6 lobes)

Platelets

Count: ↓
Film: Abnormal appearance

Bone marrow



RBCs

Erythroid hyperplasia:
Large fine, stippled nuclei with normal haemoglobin

WBCs

Giant metamyelocytes, band forms

Platelets

Atypical megakaryocytes, hypersegmented nuclei

Chemistry

Haematinics:
- Serum vit. B12 ↓ (itself causes serum folate ↑ and red cell folate ↓)
- Red cell folate ↓ (reflects active THF polyglutamate form, cf. serum folate levels)
- Serum Fe and ferritin: ↑/↓ if co-existent malabsorption

Special tests to confirm vit. B12 deficiency:
- Urinary methylmalonyl CoA ↑ (B12 deficiency only)
- Deoxyuridine suppression test on bone marrow cells

LFT: Unconjugated BR ↑; LDH ↑

Identify underlying cause of vit. B12 or folate deficiency

Schilling test:
- Part 1: Give oral radiolabelled B12 (^{58}Co), and measure urinary radioactivity
- Part 2: Give oral intrinsic factor while repeating part 1 (corrects pernicious anaemia)
- Part 3: Give tetracycline + metronidazole for week prior to part 1 (corrects blind-loop syndrome)

Autoantibodies:
- Pernicious anaemia: Anti-parietal cell (95%); anti-intrinsic factor (70% +ve)
- Coeliac disease: Anti-endomysium or anti-tissue transglutaminase

Endoscopy:
- OGD: Pernicious anaemia, coeliac disease
- Colonoscopy: Crohn or other causes of terminal ileal disease

Malabsorption studies, e.g. faecal fat, ^{14}C-labelled–glycholate bile salt breath test

Rx

Vit. B12

Method: IM hydroxycobalamin 1 mg od on alt. days for 1–3 weeks, then 1 mg every 3 months
Monitor: Reticulocytes ↑; Hb ↑ 1g/dl per week; Platelets + WCC normalize in 10 days

Folic acid

Method: 5 mg od for 4 months – must correct B12 deficiency first to avoid neuropathy!

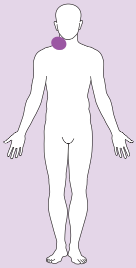
LYMPHOPROLIFERATIVE DISEASE

B.I.G^2. G.L.A.N.D.S.

Blood disorders
  Lymphoproliferative:
    Localized: Hodgkin; high-grade non-Hodgkin lymphoma – localized
    Generalized: Low-grade non-Hodgkin lymphoma; CLL; acute leukaemia
  Waldenström's macroglobulinaemia
  Rare:
    Angioimmunoblastic lymphadenopathy
    Sinus histiocytosis (massive lymphadenopathy)

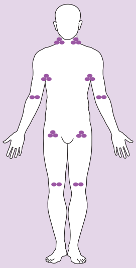
Infection
  Localized – **S.T.A.B.S.**:

- **S**treptococci or staphylococci, esp. URTI – pharyngo-tonsillitis; otitis media; dental abscess
- **T**B (scrofula) or **T**ropical: Lymphogranuloma venereum (*Chlamydia trachomatis*), filariasis
- ***A****ctinomyces*
- ***B****artonella henselae* – cat-scratch fever
- **S**yphilis, 1° (primary chancre)



Generalized:

- Virus: EBV, CMV; hepatitis A–E; HIV; measles; rubella; pertussis
- Bacterial: Typhoid, septicaemia, esp. with streptococci or staphylococci
- Atypical bacteria: Secondary syphilis, TB, atypical mycobacteria, *Brucella*
- Toxoplasmosis
- Tropical: Schistosomiasis, *Echinoccocus*, leishmaniasis, trypanosomiasis

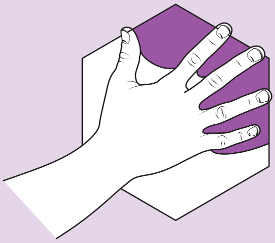


Granulomatous: Sarcoidosis

Generalized, e.g. CLL, HIV, toxoplasmosis
Localized, e.g. Hodgkin lymphoma, streptococci, TB, carcinoma
Autoimmune:
  SLE, rheumatoid arthritis (Still disease or Felty syndrome)
  Primary biliary cirrhosis
  Graves disease
Neoplasia:
  Squamous cell carcinoma, e.g. head–neck, bronchial – localized
  Adenocarcinoma, e.g. breast, gastric
  Melanoma, malignant
Drugs: Phenytoin
Special:
  Serum sickness, e.g. anti-lymphocyte globulin
  Berylliosis (granulomatous)

SPLENOMEGALY

B.I.G. S.P.A^2.N.



Blood disorders:

Neoplasia:
- Myeloproliferative:
  - Myelofibrosis, CML – massive
  - PRV, ET – medium
- Lymphoproliferative:
  - Prolymphocytic leukaemia (‘hairy cell’) – massive
  - CLL, lymphoma, acute leukaemia
- Other: Waldenström's macroglobulinaemia (but not myeloma), histiocytosis X – (massive)

Functional hyperplasia – removal of defective RBCs, and extramedullary haematopoiesis:
- Inherited haemolytic anaemia: Thalassaemia major or intermedia, hereditary spherocytosis
- Autoimmune: Autoimmune haemolytic anaemia, ITP, pernicious anaemia, PNH
- Other: Iron deficiency, aplastic anaemia

Infection:
Virus: EBV, CMV; hepatitis A–E; HIV
Bacterial: Endocarditis, typhoid, septicaemia with splenic abscess
Atypical bacteria: 2° syphilis, TB, atypical mycobacteria, *Brucella*
Toxoplasmosis
Tropical: Chronic malaria (massive), schistosomiasis, *Echinoccocus*, leishmaniasis, trypanosomiasis

Granulomatous: Sarcoid, primary biliary cirrhosis

Storage disease or other metabolic:
Lipid storage disease: Gaucher (massive splenomegaly), Niemann–Pick disease
Hyperlipidaemia

Portal vein hypertension:
Post-hepatic: Budd–Chiari syndrome, CCF
Hepatic, esp. cirrhosis
Pre-hepatic: Splenic vein; portal vein thrombosis
Pre-splenic: Splenic artery aneurysm

Autoimmune:
SLE, rheumatoid arthritis (Still disease or Felty syndrome)
Graves disease

Amyloid: AL or AA

Neoplasia:
Renal cell carcinoma (Stauffer syndrome)
Metastases, esp. melanoma
Cysts, incl. adult or infant polycystic kidney disease; hamartoma

LEUCOCYTOSIS

Neutrophilia

I.N.N.A.T.E^2.

Infection: Pyogenic
Atypical bacteria: Lyme, disseminated TB
Neoplasia: Myeloproliferative:

- CML, PRV, ET, myelofibrosis
- AML, esp. M5 (Sweet disease – acute febrile neutrophilic dermatosis)

Myelodysplasia: CMML
Solid tumours: Carcinoma, melanoma, lymphoma
Necrosis: Myocardial infarction (or even SVT)
Pulmonary, or bowel, infarction
Burns
Autoimmune: Connective tissue disease, esp. myositis, rheumatoid arthritis (or acute gout)
Vasculitis, esp. PAN, PMR, Behçet
Toxins: Glucocorticoids (inhibits tissue margination); growth factors (G-CSF, GM-CSF)
Digoxin; adrenaline (including stress, excitement, vigorous exercise)
Poisoning: CO, mercury, lithium
Endocrine: Diabetic ketoacidosis (or other acidotic states, e.g. uraemia)
Pregnancy
Extra: Acute haemorrhage or haemolysis
Epileptic seizure
Hyposplenism, incl. splenectomy – also causes eosinophilia

Eosinophilia

Infection Helminths: Nematodes, cestodes, trematodes (also scabies)
Bacteria: Rebound post-sepsis; Lyme
Aspergillosis
Neoplasia: Lymphoma: Hodgkin or T-cell non-Hodgkin (secretes IL-5)
AML – eosinophilic leukaemia
CML – hypereosinophilic syndrome
Nephrology: Cholesterol emboli – acute renal failure
Allergic tubulointerstitial nephritis
Autommune Atopy: Food or drug allergy, eczema, acute asthma
Vasculitis, esp. PAN; rheumatoid arthritis
Addison
Toxins: L-tryptophan
Poisoning: Spanish toxic oil, nickel –cause eosinophilic-myalgia syndrome
Eosinophilia – myofasciitis: PC: Pain, swelling in both arms; erythema; carpal tunnel syndrome
Extra: Sarcoid
Splenectomy

Lymphocytosis

Infection Viruses: EBV, CMV, hepatitis A–E (all may cause atypical lymphocytes), influenza, mumps, rubella
Bacteria: Post-sepsis, endocarditis, typhoid, pertussis
Atypical bacteria: TB, secondary syphilis, *Brucella*
Toxoplasmosis

Neoplasia: Lymphoproliferative:

- CLL, ALL
- Non-Hodgkin lymphoma

Myeloma
Carcinoma

Autoimmune – organ-based: Graves disease, myasthenia gravis, hypopituitarism

Monocytosis

Infection: Viruses: EBV
Bacteria: Septicaemia, endocarditis, typhoid, listeria
Atypical bacteria: TB, secondary syphilis, *Brucella*
Tropical: Rickettsia, malaria, leishmaniasis, trypanosomiasis

Neoplasia: Hodgkin lymphoma
AML – monocytic variant
Myelodysplasia

ACUTE LEUKAEMIA – 1

Def

Clonal proliferation of single abnormal progenitor, myeloid or lymphoid stem cell
Bone marrow infiltration >30% with blast cells (usually >50% at presentation)
Effects: Pancytopenia: Normal haematopoiesis is 'crowded out' and actively inhibited
Extreme leucocytosis: Spill-over of long-living immature cells into blood

Epi

Inc: 5/100,000 p.a. – most common childhood malignancy; 5% adult malignancies
Age: Commoner in children and elderly

Causes

T.R.I.G.G.ER.

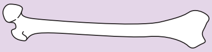
Toxins: Alkylating agents, esp. with radiotherapy; smoking; benzene, esp. AML
Radiation: Atom bomb survivors – AML peaked at 5–7 years; or in children of exposed fathers
Infection: HTLV-I virus – adult T-cell leukaemia/lymphoma (West Indies, Japan)
Genetic: Chromosomal instability: Down syn. (ALL or AML), ataxia telangiectasia, Fanconi's anaemia
Translocations: AML-M3: t(15; 17): PML–RARA (promyelocytic leukaemia – retinoic acid receptor)
Genetic: Haematological transformation from myeloproliferative disease, esp. CML, PRV, myelofibrosis; myelodysplasia
ER: Electromagnetic radiation – pylons

PC

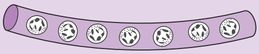
Bone pain, esp. children

Bone marrow failure:
Anaemia: Fatigue, LOW
Infections:
- Bacterial: PUO, mouth ulcers, *Strep. pneumoniae*
- Viral: HSV, VZV, CMV, measles
- Other: candida, aspergillosis

Thrombocytopenia: Purpura, excess bleeding time, cerebral or retinal bleeds
Clotting: DIC with AML-M3 (procoagulant release from granules with chemo Rx)

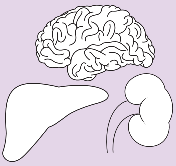


Hyperviscosity:
Fatigue, confusion
Seizures
Stroke, blindness



Organ infiltration:
Hepatosplenomegaly, lymphadenopathy, sternal pain
Meninges and eyes (esp. ALL, AML-M4, M5):
- Headaches, N+V
- Papilloedema, CNPs
- Fluid in anterior chamber

Other:
Spinal dura (AML-M2)
Gum hyperplasia, green skin, skin nodules (AML-M4, M5)
Renal failure, K^+ ↑ (AML-M5 due to lysozyme release from monocytes)



Ix

Bloods:

FBC:

- Normochromic, normocytic anaemia
- WBC: Often 100–300 × 10^9/l, esp. ALL and less differentiated AML, but can be normal, or even low ('aleukaemic leukaemia')
- Platelet ↑ (esp. AML; M3 also causes DIC)

U& E: Uric acid ↑; LDH ↑; calcium ↑

Radiol:

CXR:

- Infiltrates: due to leukaemia, infection or Rx, e.g. WBC transfusion
- Mediastinal lymph nodes, thymic enlargement

Bone: Lytic lesions (childhood ALL)

Brain MRI: Mass lesion: infiltrate or *Toxoplasma*; meningeal enhancement

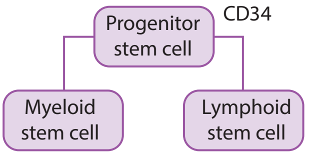
Special:

Bone marrow aspirate and biopsy: Blast cell proportion:

30% = acute leukaemia
5–30% = myelodysplasia
<5% = remission (must also have normal FBC, no peripheral blasts or symptoms)
<0.001% = minimal residual disease: only identifiable with immune or genetic markers

Lumbar puncture: ICP ↑ or blast cells

Typing

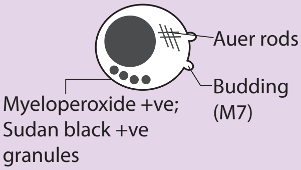


CD33
Persistent germ-line configuration of VDJ genes – not involved in myeloid cells

CD10
Terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase (TdT) +ve – adds extra bases to DJ genes

Acute myeloid leukaemia (AML)

M0: Undifferentiated
M1, 2: Myeloblastic
M3: Promyelocytic: t(15;17) translocation
M4, 5: Monocytic – commonest extramedullary disease
M6: Erythroleukaemia – elderly, MCV ↑
M7: Megakaryocytic – bone marrow fibrosis



Acute lymphoblastic leukaemia (ALL)

Pre-B-ALL or T-ALL:
L1: Small, uniform blasts, large nucleus:cytoplasm ratios
L2: Large, heterogeneous blasts, small nucleus:cytoplasm ratios
B-ALL (leukaemic phase of lymphoma)
L3: Blasts with vacuolated, basophilic cytoplasm; t(8;14) translocation

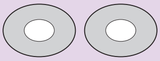
Pre-B-ALL and T-ALL can be differentiated by:
CD type: B – CD19, 22; T – CD7
VDJ gene clonal rearrangement pattern:
B – Ig; T – T-cell receptor

ACUTE LEUKAEMIA – 2

Rx

Bone marrow failure

RBCs



Packed RBC transfusions

- If Hb <9 g/dl
- Use CMV –ve, if pt. is seronegative
- Use leucodepleted blood to avoid alloimmunisation
- ☠: Hyperviscosity (thrombi form in brain, lung, heart if WCC >100 x10^9); antibody formation with multiple transfusions

WBCs

Physical: Source isolate pasteurized food

Prophylaxis: Nystatin mouthwash, cotrimoxazole (PCP), VZV or measles Ig if exposed

Febrile neutropenic episode: Broad-spectrum, e.g. piperacillin, tazobactam, gentamicin; fluconazole; aciclovir

Granulocyte transfusion or GM-CSF or G-CSF

Platelets

Physical – avoid IM injections

Platelet concentrates

- If Plts. <20 × 10^9/l
- ☠ : Antibody formation with multiple transfusions

Tranexamic acid = anti-fibrinolytic

Leucopharesis – if hyperviscosity

Chemotherapy ± radiotherapy

Induction:

AML: Ca.D.Et. (cytarabine, daunorubicin)

ALL: D.O.P.A. (daunorubicin, vincristine [Oncovin], prednisolone, asparaginase)

- Consolidation therapy is essential for AML (repeat cycles of cytarabine), or
- Maintenance therapy required for ALL (out-patient Rx)

Sanctuary sites:

CNS: Indications: ALL, M4, M5 during remission

Rx: Systemic and intrathecal methotrexate + cranial irradiation (not children or elderly)

Testes: Irradiate

Alternative chemotherapy:

All-*trans*-retinoic acid used in promyelocytic AML (M3):
Induces differentiation of promyelocyte clone, but resistance may develop

Gemtuzumab (anti-CD33 monoclonal antibodies) used in relapsing AML; abs. are linked to calicheamicin (cytotoxic), but resistance common

Multi-drug resistance inhibitor, e.g. cyclosporin A – experimental

Supportive:

Venous access: Hickman line insertion – tunnelled subcutaneously into SVC

Nausea: Metoclopramide, ondansetron, nabilone, steroids

Gout: Prophylactic allopurinol, hydration (tumour lysis syndrome)

DIC: FFP and heparin used in M3 before chemotherapy

Bone marrow transplant

Indications: Remission from AML with high-risk karyotype, or 1st relapse (in AML)
Age <60, and match present (for allogeneic)

Allogeneic grafting is associated with more adverse events (10% mortality rate, cf. 5% with autologous), due to graft-versus-host disease and graft rejection (inadequate chemo Rx + irradiation), but is also more effective due to a graft-versus-leukaemia effect. Autologous transplants may also suffer from contamination with residual leukaemic cells. Both risk infection, esp. CMV

Prog

Poor prognostic factors

General

Age: Extremes: AML >60 y; ALL <2 y or >10 y
(partly due to intolerance of chemotherapy)
Sex: Boys – testes becomes sanctuary site in ALL
PMH: Preceding myelodysplasia, CML, alkylating chemotherapy (AML)

PC

Age: Extremes: AML >60 y
Extramedullary involvement, esp. CNS and hepatosplenomegaly

Ix

WCC >50 × 10^9/l
Morphology: Undifferentiated or hybrid leukaemia
AML: M 0,5,6,7 (M3 best)
ALL: L3 (L1 best)
Immunophenotype:
ALL: B-ALL (surface Ig), or null-ALL (i.e. no B-cell markers) – worst T-ALL and c-ALL (common to B+T cells) have best prognosis
Genetics:
ALL: Philadelphia chromosome +ve (cf. CML where it's good!)
Hypodiploidy (cf. hyperdiploidy – best prognosis)
AML: Multiple complex chromosome abnormalities

Rx

Time to achieve remission >4 weeks

	AML	ALL
5-year disease-free survival	**40%** (20% in >60 y; 70% with M3)	**80%** (for children with c-ALL)
1st remission	**80%** (40% in >60 y)	**90%** (for children)

CHRONIC MYELOID LEUKAEMIA

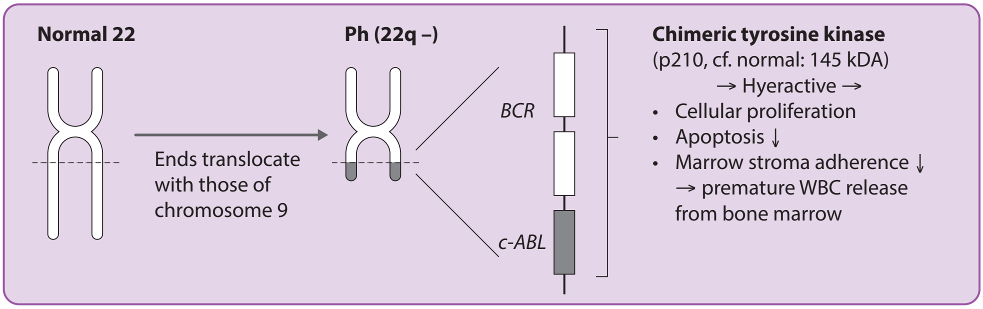
Def

Clonal proliferation of the pluripotent stem cell, with predominance of granulocyte lineage at all stages of maturity

Medullary and extramedullary proliferation

Epi

Inc: 1/100,000 p.a.
Age: Middle age (40–60); childhood variants (e.g. juvenile Ph –)
Sex: M slightly > F
Geo: Factory workers – benzene
Nuclear fallout – Hiroshima, Nagasaki, Chernobyl
Aet: 95% exhibit the 'Philadelphia (Ph) chromosome' = t(9;22), found in all dividing progeny



Chimeric tyrosine kinase
(p210, cf. normal: 145 kDA)
→ Hyeractive →
- Cellular proliferation
- Apoptosis ↓
- Marrow stroma adherence ↓ → premature WBC release from bone marrow

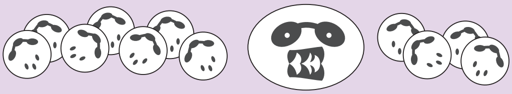
The Ph chromosome found in ALL has a short BCR component, resulting in a poorer prognosis

2.5% are Ph– (worse prognosis)
BCR–c-ABL rearrangement present, e.g. chronic monomyelocytic leukaemia
BCR–c-ABL rearrangement not present, e.g. *RAS* gene mutation – poor prognosis

PC

Can be **S.A.V.A^2.G.E**

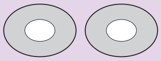
Splenomegaly, ± hepatomegaly:
Left-upper quadrant pain or dragging sensation; dyspepsia; early satiety
Pleuritic, L shoulder pain, pleural rub – splenic infarction
Anaemia/infections/purpura
Viscosity, hyper- (WCC >500 × 10^9/l):
Neurological: Headache, confusion, TIA–CVA, retinopathy (blurred vision)
Other: Pulmonary infiltrates, skin nodules, priapism
Accelerated phase → **A**cute leukaemia
Accelerated phase: Pancytopenia, new cytogenetic abnormalities (cumulative transformation rate = 80%; annual rate = 20%)
Acute leukaemia: >30% blast cells in bone marrow; 80% develop AML (80% mortality); 20% develop ALL (50% mortality) (cumulative transformation rate = 70%; median occurence = 4 years)
Myelofibrosis: Alternative outcome following accelerated phase
Gout: Give rasburicase with chemotherapy
Extra:
'B symptoms': Fever, night sweats, weight loss, anorexia
Bone pain



Ix

Bloods: FBC

RBCs



Anaemia:
Normochromic, normocytic, due to marrow infiltration

WBCs

Neutrophil count:
- 9–300 × 10^9/l: chronic phase
- 300–500 × 10^9/l: accelerated pase
- >500 × 10^9/l hyperviscosity

Film:
- Leftwards shift, e.g. myeloblast, promyelocyte
- Granulocytosis: Basophils, eosinophils
- Neutrophil elastate +ve

Platelets

↑ : Chronic phase
↓ : Accelerated phase

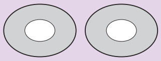
Other bloods
- Neutrophil alkaline phosphatase ↓ (cf. myeloproliferative disease, infection)
- ALP ↑
- Vit. B12 levels and vit. B12 binding capacity ↑; uric acid ↑

Special: Bone marrow biopsy: Hypercellularity of all haematopoietic lineages, esp. granulocyte precursors

Rx

Supportive

RBCs



RBC transfusion

WBCs

Leucapharesis – for hyperviscocity

Platelets

Splenectomy or splenic irradiation – for spleen pain or pancytopenia

Medical:
Imatinib (oral tyrosine kinase inhibitor):
- Blocks ATP-binding site on p210 BCR–ABL fusion protein
- ☠: Fluid retention, nausea, cramps

Interferon-α: Direct anti-proliferative effect, RNase ↑, natural killer cells ↑ ☠: Lethargy, weight loss
Cytotoxics: Busulphan (☠ : Pulmonary fibrosis), hydroxyurea (better at ↓ platelets)
Allogeneic stem-cell transplant
Curative in 60%, providing <65 y old, compatible donor and early chronic phase

Prog

Median survival = 4 years; death due to acute leukaemia or bleeding

Poor prognostic factors
Ph –ve, e.g. elderly men, juvenile, CMML
Splenomegaly
FBC: Hb: Persistent anaemia
WBC: Peripheral blasts; basophils; eosinophils
Plt: Thrombocytopenia or thrombocytosis

POLYCYTHAEMIA

Def

Polycythaemia: Increased number of RBCs, WBCs and platelets
Erythrocytosis: Increased number of RBCs only

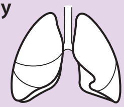
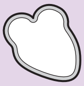
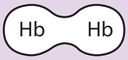
Causes

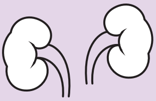
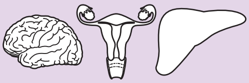
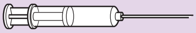
Relative

Hypovolaemia (loss of plasma): Vomiting, burns; renal disease; diuretics, including alcohol
Gaisbock syndrome: Assoc. obese, white, middle-aged men; hypertension

True

- **Tissue hypoxia**
  - **Atmosphere**

    High-altitude acclimatisation
    Nitrite-contaminated water
  - **Respiratory**
    
    Ventilation ↓: COPD, musculoskeletal Δ
    O_2 diffusion ↓: Fibrosing alveolitis
    $\dot{V}/\dot{Q}$ mismatch: Pulmonary AVM, e.g. HHT
  - **Cardiac - congenital**
    
    R→L shunt: Eisenmenger's, Fallot's
    R + L mixing: Transposition of great arteries
    Pulmonary blood flow ↓: Pulmonary atresia
  - **Haemoglobin**
    

    Hereditary low-affinity Hb:
    Hb Kansas or methaemaglobinaemia
    Acquired low-affinity Hb: Smoking
- **Excess erythropoietin (EPO)**
  - **Kidneys**
    
    Cysts, e.g. APKD, renal cell carcinoma
    Renal artery stenosis, Bartter syndrome
    Hydronephrosis
    Renal transplant
    Bartter syndrome
  - **Extra-renal**
    
    Cerebellar haemangioblastoma
    Hepatocellular carcinoma
    Phaeochromocytoma
    Uterine fibroids
  - **Drugs**
    
    Androgens – direct pro-haematopoietic effect
    Exogenous EPO – drug of abuse in runners
- **Polycythaemia rubra vera (PRV)**

POLYCYTHAEMIA RUBRA VERA (PRV)

Def

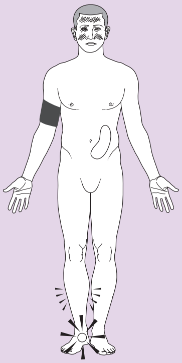
Red-cell count:
  Hb >18 g/dl (may be masked by haemorrhage that is assoc. with disease)
  Haematocrit >50%
  RBC mass – high (ascertained by dilution method using ^{51}Cr-labelled RBCs and ^{125}I -labelled plasma)
Secondary causes excluded, including normal EPO levels

PC

P^3.R.V. G.O.

Plethora: Including conjunctival suffusion; acne rosacea
Pruritus, esp. after hot bath: Due to histamine release from basophilia
Peptic ulcers: Due to histamine release
Retinopathy and neurological deficits:
  Fundi: Venule engorgement, haemorrhages, papilloedema
  Headaches ('fullness')
  Dizziness; fatigue; confusion
Vascular:
  Venous or arterial thrombosis – DVT, CVA
  Haemorrhage, e.g. cerebral: Due to impaired platelet function
  Hypertension, CCF

Gout: Due to hyperuricaemia
Organomegaly: Hepatosplenomegaly (in 90%)



Ix

Bloods: FBC (other than as in definition):
  - WCC ↑; neutrophil alkaline phosphatase (NAP) ↑, cf. CML, in which it is ↓
  - Platelets ↑; but bleeding time ↑, due to abnormal platelet function
  - ESR ↓

  Chemistry:
  - Vit. B12 ↑ and transcobalamin-I ↑
  - LDH ↓, cf. myelofibrosis, in which it is ↑
  - Ferritin ↑

  Genetic testing: JAK2 mutation common

Special: Bone marrow biopsy:
  - Erythropoiesis, granulopoiesis, megakaryocyte number and size – all increased
  - Other: Reticulin fibres (Ag stain) increased; Fe stores decreased; blast, colony-forming units

Rx

Venesection: Decrease haematocrit to <46%, by venesecting 1 unit on alternate days
  ☠: DVT, tolerated poorly in elderly
Myelosuppression: Hydroxyurea, alkylating agents (e.g. chlorambucil, melphalan), radioactive ^{32}P – ☠: Malignant transformation
Low-dose aspirin may prevent thrombotic events

Prog

Median survival is 10 years if treated; but **transformation risk** to AML is 10%

CHRONIC LYMPHOCYTIC LEUKAEMIA

Def

Slow, indolent, clonal proliferation of lymphocytes in mantle zone of 2° lymphoid follicles
B lymphocytes (CD19+) with T-cell marker (CD5+)
Immunodeficiency due to:
  Lymphocyte immaturity; lymphopenia; Ig ↓
  Neutropenia, due to marrow infiltration and hypersplenism

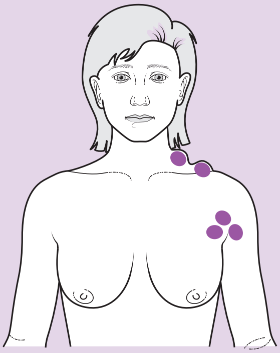
Epi

Inc: Commonest adult leukaemia: 3/100,000 p.a.
Age: Usually elderly (>60). Middle-aged patients have aggressive variant
Sex: M:F = 2:1. Men have worse prognosis
Geo:
  Factory workers (benzene, asbestos); farmers (soya bean production, herbicide)
  Whites > Blacks > Japanese, Chinese
Aet:
  bcl-2 proto-oncogene over-expression
  Chromosomal abnormalities, esp.:

- 13q deletion (75%) – good prognosis
- 11 deletion (20%) – poor prognosis; bulky lymphadenopathy

PC

B.L.O.B.B.I.E.S.



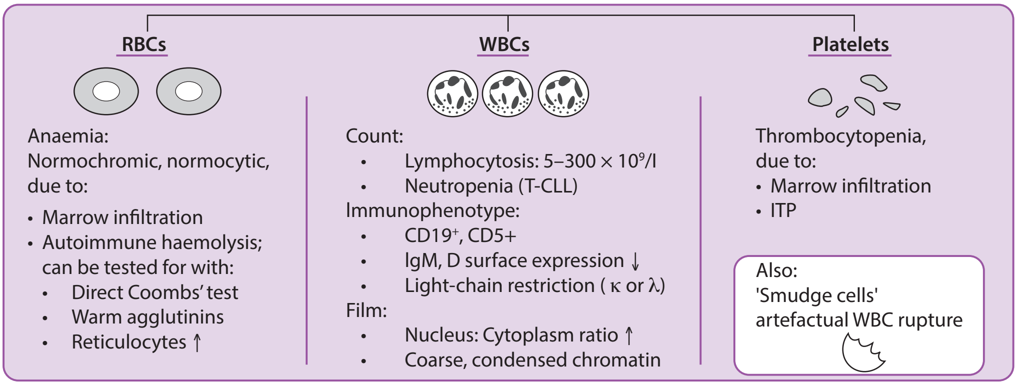
B symptoms (constitutional):
  Night sweats and weight loss
  Occur in late disease; or middle-aged aggressive variant, or Richter syn. (*see opposite*)
Lymphadenopathy: Painless, symmetrical, diffuse, rubbery
Organomegaly: Splenomegaly, hepatomegaly, esp. hairy cell or pro-lymphocytic variants
Bone marrow failure – anaemia (pallor)
Bone marrow failure – thrombocytopenia (purpura)
Immune dysfunction:
  Immunocompromised (cell-mediated immunity): Herpes, esp. zoster (disseminated in 20%); pneumonia – bacterial, fungal
  Autoimmune:

- Mikulicz syndrome: Xerophthalmia, xerostomia, tonsil – salivary gland enlargement
- Arthritis, effusions, vasculitis, esp. hairy cell, prolymphocytic or T-cell CLL
- Hypersensitivity to insect bites or vaccinations (‘vaccinia gangrenosum’)

Excess
  Viscosity, esp. prolymphocytic CLL: WCC >400 × 10^9/l (poor prognosis)
  Uric acid: Gout, give prophylactic allopurinol if chemo Rx considered
Skin: Nodules; vesicles; bullae; pruritus – ‘L’homme rouge’ (T-cell CLL)

Ix

Bloods: FBC:



RBCs

Anaemia:
Normochromic, normocytic, due to:

- Marrow infiltration
- Autoimmune haemolysis; can be tested for with:
  - Direct Coombs' test
  - Warm agglutinins
  - Reticulocytes ↑

WBCs

Count:

- Lymphocytosis: 5–300 × 10^9/l
- Neutropenia (T-CLL)

Immunophenotype:

- $CD19^+$, CD5+
- IgM, D surface expression ↓
- Light-chain restriction (κ or λ)

Film:

- Nucleus: Cytoplasm ratio ↑
- Coarse, condensed chromatin

Platelets

Thrombocytopenia, due to:

- Marrow infiltration
- ITP

Also:
'Smudge cells'
artefactual WBC rupture

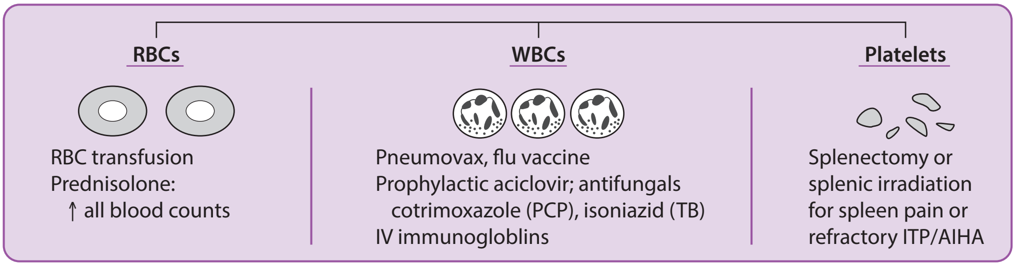
Other bloods:
Bilirubin (nodes at porta hepatis), ALT↑ (liver involvement), ALP ↑, albumin↓
IgG ↓ (paraproteinaemia in 5%); β_2-microglobulin ↑, LDH ↑ (poor prognosis)
Ca ↑, $P0_4$↓, uric acid ↑

Special: Lymph node or bone marrow biopsy:

- Lymphocytic replacement of >30% (poor prognosis)
- Richter syndrome: Rapid enlargement of lymph node by transformation into diffuse histiocytic lymphoma.

Rx

Supportive



RBCs

RBC transfusion
Prednisolone:
↑ all blood counts

WBCs

Pneumovax, flu vaccine
Prophylactic aciclovir; antifungals
cotrimoxazole (PCP), isoniazid (TB)
IV immunogloblins

Platelets

Splenectomy or splenic irradiation for spleen pain or refractory ITP/AIHA

Medical:

Cytotoxics – in high-stage disease:

- Chlorambucil (alkylating agent) or fludarabine (purine analogues) ± cyclophosphamide
- Combination CHOP chemo Rx – for younger pts. to acheive ↑ response rate

Immunotherapy: Anti-CD52 (alemtuzumab) or anti-CD20 (rituximab)

Radiotherapy: Reduces lymph node and spleen size

Allogeneic therapies:

Allogeneic stem-cell transplant + intensive chemo Rx + TBI: if <55 years old
Allogeneic lymphocyte infusion + mild chemotherapy: Enables graft vs. leukaemia reaction

Prog

Rai staging	**Median survival**
0: WBC >15 × 10^9/l (worse if>5% prolymphocytes)	10 years
1: Lymph nodes (worse if >2 sites)	8 years
2: Splenomegaly	6 years
3: Hb <10 g/dl	5 years
4: Platelets <100 × 10^9/l	2 years

HODGKIN LYMPHOMA

Def

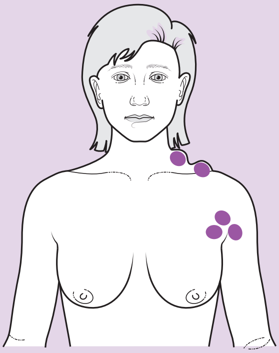
Tumour of main lymph node complex → orderly extension into contiguous sites
Reed–Sternberg (RS) cells = B cells with multinucleate, mirror-image, 'owl-eye' nuclei
Reactive inflammatory infiltrate: Plasma cells, lymphocytes, histiocytes, eosinophils

Epi

Inc: 3/100,000 p.a.
Age: Bimodal: 20–30s (nodular sclerosis type), and >60s (lymphocyte-depleted type)
Sex: M:F = 2:1. Women tend to have more favourable nodular sclerosis type
Geo: Low socioeconomic status; whites > blacks
Aet: Inherited: HLA-DPB-1 – monozygotic twins have 100× risk
Infection: EBV (genome present in RS cells in 40%) or HIV – mixed cellularity type
Toxins: Benzene, nitrous oxide, wood dust

PC

B.L.O.B.B.I.E.S.



B symptoms (constitutional):
- Weight loss >10% in 6 months
- Fever/night sweats: Continuous or cyclical, high + swinging ('Pel–Ebstein'), or sepsis

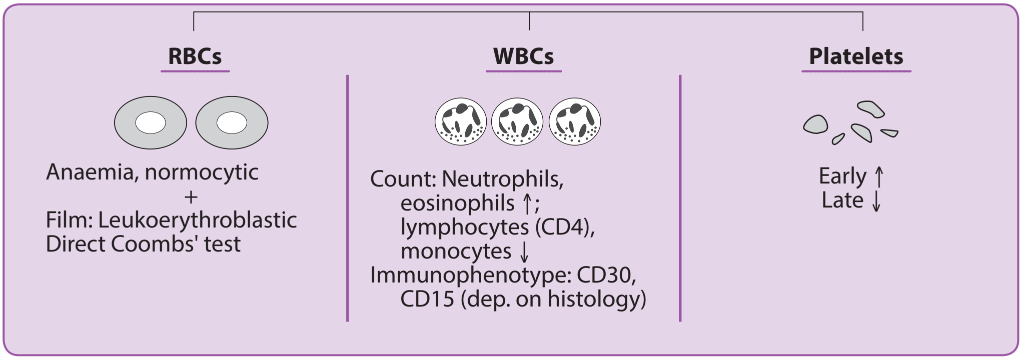
Lymphadenopathy:
- Superficial, esp. cervical and axillary; discrete, continuous, matted mass; firm, rubbery, painless (but pain with alcohol)
- Deep:
  - Mediastinal (superior vena cava obstruction), esp. nodular sclerosis type
  - Retroperitoneal (lower body oedema), esp. mixed cellularity type

Organomegaly: Splenomegaly ± hepatomegaly
Bone marrow failure – pancytopenia
Bone pain – with alcohol
Immune dysfunction:
- Immunocompromised (cell-mediated immunity) herpes, esp. zoster, CMV; TB; *Candida*; *Cryptococcus*
- Autoimmune: Autoimmune haemolytic anaemia, ITP, paraneoplastic cerebellar degeneration

Extra: Nephrotic syndrome
Skin: Pruritus; erythema nodosum; ichthyosis

Ix

Bloods: FBC


RBCs
WBCs
Platelets

Anaemia, normocytic
+
Film: Leukoerythroblastic
Direct Coombs' test

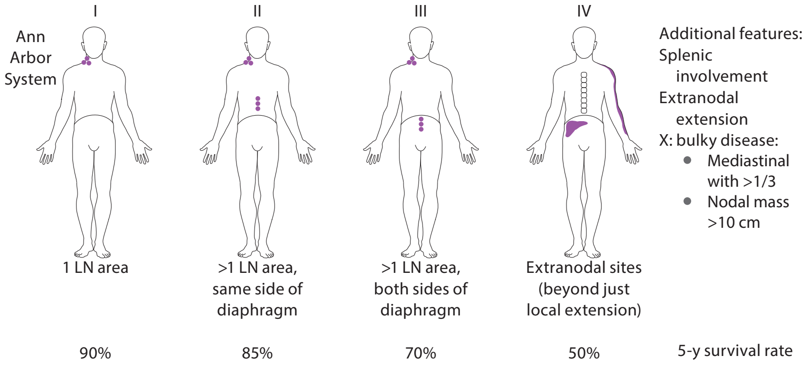
Count: Neutrophils, eosinophils ↑; lymphocytes (CD4), monocytes ↓
Immunophenotype: CD30, CD15 (dep. on histology)

Early ↑
Late ↓

Other bloods
Bilirubin↑ (nodes at porta hepatis), ALT↑ (liver involvement), ALP ↑, albumin ↓
IgG normal; β_2-microglobulin ↑ and LDH ↑ (both suggest poor prognosis)
Ca ↑, P0$_4$, uric acid ↑

Special: Lymph node ± bone-marrow biopsy
Nodular sclerosis (50%): Fibrosis; lacunar variant of RS cell; eosinophilia; young women
Lymphocyte-predominant (10%): RS cells ↓; monoclonal B cells ↑; young men; good prognosis as ↑ inflammatory response
Mixed cellularity (30%): Intermediate between lymphocyte predominant and depleted
Lymphocyte-depleted (10%) : RS cells ↑; elderly men; poor prognosis

Radiol: Staging CT, PET


Ann Arbor System
I
II
III
IV
1 LN area
>1 LN area, same side of diaphragm
>1 LN area, both sides of diaphragm
Extranodal sites (beyond just local extension)
Additional features:
Splenic involvement
Extranodal extension
X: bulky disease:
• Mediastinal with >1/3
• Nodal mass >10 cm
90%
85%
70%
50%
5-y survival rate

Rx

Supportive:
Blood products, prophylactic aciclovir, cotrimoxazole, vaccinate, sperm-oocyte bank

Medical:
Cytotoxics:
- MOPP (mustine, vincristine [Oncovin], procarbazine, prednisolone): ☠: Infertility; AML, solid tumour
- ABVD (doxorubicin [Adriamycin], bleomycin, vinblastine, dacarbazine): ☠: Cardiomyopathy; pulmo. fibrosis

Radiotherapy: Local; upper mantle (supra-diaphragmatic); inverted-Y (infra-diaphragmatic)
Autologous stem-cell transplant (+ intensive chemotherapy + total-body irradiation):
Reserved for patients after 1st relapse → 25% long-term disease-free survival

Prog

Poor prognosis suggested by:
Epi: Elderly, male
FBC: Hb <10 g/dl; WCC >15 × 10^9/l; lymphocytes <0.6 × 10^9/l
Other: ESR ↑, albumin ↓, β_2-microglobulin, LDH ↑

NON-HODGKIN LYMPHOMA

Def

Tumour of nodal and/or extranodal lymphoid tissue → widespread dissemination via blood
Heterogeneous group:
  B or T lymphocyte
  Immature (central, high-grade) or mature (peripheral, low-grade)

Epi

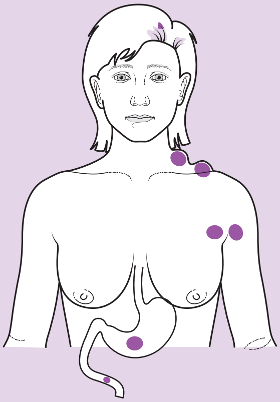
Inc: 10/100,000 p.a.
Age: Bimodal: Children – lymphoblastic or Burkitt – high-grade (like ALL)
  Adult – small cell lymphocytic or follicular – low-grade (like CLL)
Sex: M slightly > F
Geo: Japan, Caribbean (HTLV-I); Africa (EBV, malaria, HIV –Burkitt)
Aet: Infection: EBV + immunodeficiency state, e.g. HIV, malaria, HTLV-I, *H. pylori*
  Immunosuppression: Post-transplant, chemo Rx, radio Rx (e.g. Hodgkin lymphoma Rx)
  Immunodeficiency – hereditary: ataxia telangiectasia, Wiskott–Aldrich syndrome
  Autoimmune: Coeliac, Crohn, rheumatoid arthritis

PC

B.L.O.B.B.I.E.S.

B symptoms (constitutional): As for Hodgkin – but not prominent until advanced disease
Lymphadenopathy:
  Superficial: Multiple, widespread, non-contiguous – suggests advanced disease
  Deep: Mediastinal; retroperitoneal, esp. lymphoblastic
  Mucosa-associated (MALTomas):
  - Oral: Pharynx ('Waldeyer ring') – pharyngitis, dysphagia, stridor; mandible (Burkitt lymphoma); salivary glands – xerostomia, xerophthalmia
  - Gastric: associated with *H. pylori*:
    - Bowel ('Peyer's patches'): Colic, D+V, clubbing, wasting – associated with T-cell lymphoma; coeliac; α- heavy chain disease
    - Respiratory tract: Cough, stridor

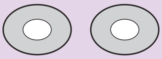
  CNS: Associated with HIV, HTLV-I, lymphoblastic
Organomegaly: Splenomegaly ± hepatomegaly
Bone marrow failure – pancytopenia
Bone pain – with alcohol
Immune dysfunction: Autoimmune haemolytic anaemia, ITP
Endocrine: Thyroid or testes infiltration
Skin: T-cell lymphoma (mycosis fungoides); ichthyosis



Ix

Bloods: FBC

RBCs



Anaemia – normochromic, normocytic: due to
- Marrow infiltration: Leucoerythroblastic film
- Autoimmune: Direct Coombs' test

ESR ↑, CRP ↑ poor prognosis

WBCs

Count: Neutrophils ↓ lymphocytes ↑
Film: 'Lymphoma cells', e.g. cleaved nuclei, blasts of follicular, large or mantle cell lymphoma
Immunophenotype: e.g. CD 19 (B-cell); CD3 (T-cell)
TdT: + (immature) or – (mature)

Platelets

↓ due to:
- Marrow infiltration
- ITP
- Hypersplenism

Other bloods Bilirubin ↑ (nodes at porta hepatis), ALT ↑ (liver involvement), ALP ↑, albumin ↓
IgG – total ↓, but paraproteinaemia in 15% (esp. indolent lymphomas)
Ca ↑ (esp. adult T-cell leukaemia-lymphoma), PO_4 ↓, uric acid ↑

Special: Lymph node biopsy (or GIT, bronchial, brain, bone-marrow biopsy)

Grading: REAL classification (Revised European American Lymphoma)

(5-year survival rates)	**B cell**	**T cell**
Low-grade	MALToma (75%)	Mycosis fungoides (90%)
	Follicular (70%)	
Intermediate-grade	Diffuse large cell (50%)	Anaplastic (75%)
	Mantle cell (50%)	Peripheral (25%)
High-grade	Burkitt (50%)	Adult T-cell leukaemia-lymphoma (20%)
	Lymphoblastic (50%)	

Staging: Whole-body CT, PET; CT brain and CSF; OGD; colonoscopy; ENT exam Ann Arbor System (see p. 463) – although staging less relevant to prognosis

Rx

Supportive: As for Hogkin lymphoma (p. 463)
Medical:
Cytotoxic: CHOP (cyclophosphamide, doxorubicin [hydroxydaunorubicin], vincristine [Oncovin], prednisolone)
Immunotherapy: Interferon-α; rituximab (anti-CD20), alemtuzimab (anti-CD52)
Radiotherapy:
Local – can be curative in stage I disease
Brain – CNS lymphoma
Autologous stem-cell transplant: (+ chemotherapy + total-body irradiation if pt. relapses)
Special:
Splenic lymphoma with villous lymphocytes – splenectomy (curative)
CNS lymphoma – brain irradiation; intrathecal (low-dose) and IV (high-dose) methotrexate

Prog

Poor prognosis suggested by grade and **International Prognostic Index:**
Epi: Age >60 y (also AIDS)
PC: Functional disability (Karnofsky score)
Bloods: LDH ↑ (also pancytopenia, ESR or CRP ↑, albumin ↓, β_2-microglobulin)
Staging: Ann Arbor stage 3 or 4; >1 extranodal site (also bulky disease of >10 cm)

MULTIPLE MYELOMA

Def

Monoclonal plasma cell clone that usually secretes monoclonal Ig, i.e. paraprotein
Arises from **post-germinal centre** of lymph node, or bone marrow

Epi

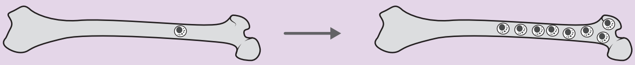
Inc: 5/100,000 p.a. (1% all cancers)
Age: >40 y, ↑ with age
Sex: Males slightly > females
Geo: More common in black ethnicity
Aet: Chromosomal translocation – esp. *Myc* or *Ras* oncogene mutation
IL-6: Growth factor secreted by osteoclasts

PC

P.O.P.U.L.A.T.I.O.N.

Plasma cells in >4% of bone marrow (usually >30% in myeloma)
Osteolytic lesions:
  PATH: Osteoclasts activated (via IL-β, TNF-β); osteoblasts inhibited
  PC: Bone pain, tenderness, worse with movement, during day, esp. back, shoulder, ribs
    Pathological fractures, e.g. wedge vertebral-cord compression; radicular pain
    Bony mass: Skull, sternum, clavicle
Paraproteinaemia: >30 g/l or rising
  Def: Plasma: Monoclonal Ig and/or Urine: Bence Jones protein (κ or λ light-chain restriction)
  Frequency: Plasma alone, 20%; BJP alone, 20%; both, 58%; none, 2% (esp. plasmacytomas)
  PC: Hyperviscosity, esp. Ig M, A, D, IgG3, cryoglobulins → headache, visual blurring, Raynaud
    Coagulopathy and impaired platelet function
U&Es:
  Urine: Nephrotic syndrome; chronic renal failure (30%), due to:
  - Deposition of Bence Jones protein; amyloid; infiltration of tumour
  - Other: Calcium ↑, uric acid ↑; pyelonephritis (immunodeficient); NSAIDs

  Electrolytes: Ca ↑ due to osteolysis → abdominal pain, N+V, polyuria, polydipsia
    Uric acid ↑ due to cell turnover → gout
Light chain amyloid (AL or primary) → nephrosis, neuropathy, cardiac failure
Anaemia: Due to IL-1 myelosuppression
Thrombocytopenia
Immunodeficiency:
  PATH: Due to polyclonal Ig ↓; cell-mediated immunity ↓; neutropenia; complement ↓
  PC: Bacterial respiratory and urinary tract infections – streptococci, staphylococci, Klebsiella
Organomegaly: Hepatosplenomegaly
Neurological: Peripheral neuropathy, papilloedema, POEMS syndrome (peripheral neuropathy; osteosclerosis; endocrine [e.g. DM]; M-band; skin [e.g. hyperpigmentation])

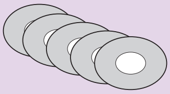


1st three features are essential for diagnosis

Ix

Bloods: FBC

RBCs

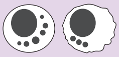


Anaemia – normo- or macrocytic

Film:

- Leukoerythroblastic
- Rouleaux formation or
- ↑ Background staining (due to ↑↑ Ig)

WBCs



Count: Neutrophils ↓ (advanced disease)

Film:

- Plasma cells (15%)
- Mott cells: Big cytoplasmic vacuoles
- Flaming of cell rim

Immunophenotype, e.g. surface expression of clonal Ig

Platelets

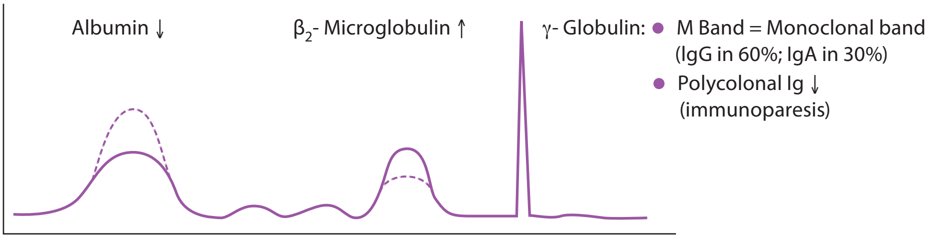
Usually ↓

Platelet function impaired due to hyperviscosity

Clotting times ↑ due to hyperviscosity

Chemistry

Electrophoresis – serum and urine:



U&E: Urea ↑, creatinine ↑; Ca↑, uric acid ↑, Na ↓ (real and pseudohyponatraemia due to Ig ↑), Cl ↑ (so anion gap ↓)

LFT: LDH ↑; albumin ↓; ALP normal as osteoblasts inactive

Urine: Proteinuria – suggests renal disease (Bence Jones protein is not detected by dipstick)
Glycosuria and aminoaciduria (Fanconi syndrome, due to tubular damage)

Radiol:

X-ray of limbs, spine, skull:

- Focal or generalized osteoporosis, e.g. 'punched-out' holes in skull
- Wedge fractures of spine

Tc bone scan: Silent due to osteoblastic inhibition (may be +ve if sclerotic reaction occurs)

Special: Bone-marrow biopsy

Rx

Supportive:

Bone marrow suppression: Blood products; antibiotics; IVIg

Bone lesions: Radiotherapy, surgery

Hyperviscosity: Plasmapharesis

Hypercalcaemia:- Hydration, bisphosphonates

Medical – cytotoxics:

Elderly: Single agent (melphalan or cyclophosphamide)

Young: VAD (vincristine, doxorubicin [Adriamycin], dexamethasone) ± IFN-α

Stem-cell transplant:

Autologous + high-dose melphalan: Increases survival time; decreases remission rate

Allogeneic: 50% curative or long-term remission, although 30% mortality rate from procedure

Prog

5-year survival rate = 20%, i.e. **B.A.D.** = poor prognostic markers:

β_2-microglobulin (albumin ↓, M-band ↑)

Bony lesions if extensive + symptomatic

Anaemia (ESR, CRP ↑↑)

Dehydration (urea >14; Ca ↑↑); LDH ↑

PARAPROTEINAEMIA

AKA monoclonal gammopathy

Malignant causes = C.L.A.M.P.

Chain (heavy chain disease) = clonal proliferation of heavy chain-producing cells:
  Alpha chain disease
  Gamma chain disease = Franklin disease:
    - Causes lymphoma-like symptoms in elderly men
  Mu chain disease
Lymphoproliferative disorder:
  CLL is rare cause of paraproteinaemia
  Lymphoplasmacytic lymphoma (AKA Waldenström's macroglobulinaemia):
    - 15% of all lymphomas
    - presents age 65
    - Lymphomatous infiltration of nodes, marrow, spleen
    - Usually IgM paraprotein >30 g/l
    - 10–30% have hyperviscosity
AL amyloidosis:
  Occurs in 15% cases of multiple myeloma
  May occur spontaneous (primary AL)
  Bence Jones proteins in urine
Multiple myeloma
Plasmacytoma = mass of plasma cells causing local symptoms, usually in bone

Non-malignant causes = M.A.I.L.

MGUS:
  50% of paraproteinaemias
  <30 g/l paraprotein
  1% cases per year progress to myeloma
Auto-immune disorders
Infections: SBE and mycoplasma
Liver cirrhosis

HYPERVISCOSITY

Causes

Cells	Polycythaemia: 1° (PRV) – commonest cause; 2° if severe Chronic myeloid leukaemia Acute leukaemia – if severe
Paraprotein	Waldenström's macroglobulinaemia: IgM Multiple myeloma: IgM or IgA Plasmacytoma
Latrogenic	Packed cell products Cryoprecipitate (given to haemophiliacs with circulating inhibitors): Causes hyperfibrinogenaemia IVIg therapy

PC

P^5.R.V. G.O.

Plethora, **P**ruritus, **P**eptic ulcers – all with PRV only

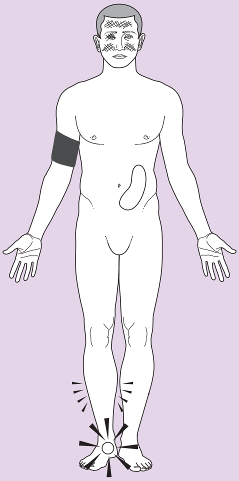
Purpura, **P**igmentation – reticulate, Raynaud phenomenon, necrosis – esp. with cryoglobulinaemia, due to paraproteinaemia

Retinopathy/neurological deficits:
- ‘Slow-flow retinopathy’:
  - PC: Visual disturbance – ‘looking through a watery windscreen’
  - Fundi: Venule engorgement, constrictions – ‘linked sausages’
    - Flame haemorrhages, exudates, papilloedema
- CNS: Headaches (‘fullness’); dizziness; encephalopathy – fatigue, confusion, seizures
- PNS: Peripheral neuropathy (demyelinating), due to anti-MAG Ab

Vascular:
- Venous or arterial thrombosis – DVT, CVA
- Haemorrhage, e.g. epistaxis, haematuria, cerebral: Due to impaired platelet function and coagulopathy
- Hypertension, CCF

Gout: Due to hyperuricaemia, but only with cell proliferation cause

Organomegaly:
- Hepatosplenomegaly: PRV, CML, myeloma, lymphoma
- Lymphadenopathy: Waldenström's macroglobulinaemia



Ix

Bloods:	FBC ↑: Myeloproliferative; ↓: Myeloma, Waldenström ESR ↓: Myeloproliferative; ↑: Myeloma, Waldenström Serum electrophoresis
Urine:	Electrophoresis
Special:	Biopsy: Bone marrow: Myeloproliferative, myeloma Lymph node: Waldenström (lymphoplasmacytoid infiltrate)

Rx

Waldenström:

Supportive: Packed RBC transfusions; antibiotics

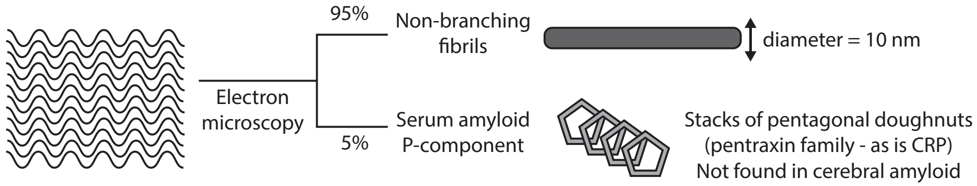
Plasmapharesis: Most effective for IgM as intravascularly confined

Chemotherapy: Cyclophosphamide + prednisolone if symptomatic or cytopenic

AMYLOIDOSIS

Def

Accumulation of any fibrillar protein that folds abnormally into β-pleated-sheets


Electron microscopy
95%
Non-branching fibrils
diameter = 10 nm
5%
Serum amyloid P-component
Stacks of pentagonal doughnuts
(pentraxin family - as is CRP)
Not found in cerebral amyloid

Types

Distinguished by type of protein that forms in excess:

Systemic

A**L** – **L**ight chain: Due to any cause of paraproteinaemia:
- Light-chain secretion only, esp. λVI, or N-terminus of V_L – commonest
- B-cell neoplasm, e.g. multiple myeloma, plasmacytoma, lymphoma
- MGUS

A**A** – **A**cute phase protein, protein A (breakdown product of serum amyloid A):
- Chronic inflammation (>2 y): IL-1, IL-6 cytokines → hepatocyte SAA secretion increases:
  - Autoimmunity: Rheumatoid arthritis (esp. Still), ankolysing spondylitis, ulcerative colitis
  - Infection: Bronchiectasis (staphylococci, TB), osteomyelitis, cellulitis
  - Neoplasm: Hodgkin, renal cell carcinoma
- Hereditary periodic fever:
  - Familial Mediterranean fever (autosomal recessive): Assoc: Sephardi Jews, Arabs
    - Type 1: Recurrent serositis (pleurisy, peritonitis, synovitis)
    - Type 2: Renal amyloid
  - Muckle–Wells syndrome

Autosomal dominant amyloidopathy:
- Transthyretin (carrier of thyroxine + retinol-binding protein; made in liver + choroid plexus)
  - PC: Lower limb and autonomic neuropathy, scalloped pupils, cardiac amyloid
- Gelsolin (actin modulator): Assoc: Finnish
  - PC: Cranial and autonomic neuropathy, corneal and vitreous dystrophy
- Other: Apolipoprotein AI, lysozyme, fibrinogen-α
  - PC: Renal, cardiac, GIT amyloid (not neuropathy)

Organ-based

Cerebral:
- Amyloid α_2: Dementia; cerebral lobar haemorrhage
- α-synuclein: Lewy body dementia, Parkinson disease
- Prion protein (PrP): Creutzfeldt–Jakob disease

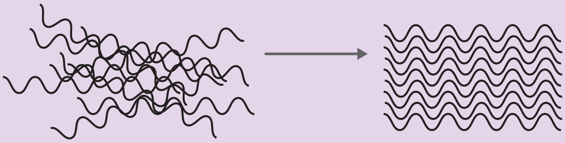
Cardiac: Transthyretin plus atrial natriuretic peptide – causes LVF and IHD in elderly

Endocrine:
- Amylin (homology to calcitonin gene-related peptide): Type 2 DM/insulinoma
- Pro-calcitonin: Medullary carcinoma of thyroid + other APUDomas

Soft tissue, e.g. α_2-macroglobulin via haemodialysis: Arthritis, carpal tunnel syndrome

PC

O.R.G.A.N.i.S.E.D.



Organomegaly:
- Hepatosplenomegaly
- Lymphadenopathy – in AA amyloid and lymphoma

Renal:
- Proteinuria: Nephrotic syndrome, renal vein thrombosis
- Chronic renal failure: Glomerular + tubule – interstitial + vascular disease
- Renal enlargement

GIT:
- Macroglossia – dysphagia
- Bowel: Malabsorption, diarrhoea, obstruction
- Liver: Intrahepatic cholestasis; portal hypertension

Arthritis: Rheumatoid-pattern, or large-joint monoarthritis; shoulder-pad sign

Neurological:
- Neuropathy: Painful, sensory, autonomic, enlarged nerves
- Carpal tunnel syndrome
- 'Pseudomyopathy'

Skin:
- Waxy plaques and papules
- Purpura: 'Raccoon eyes' (factor X/fibrinogen deficiency)

Endocrine: Goitre; adrenal, pituitary, pancreas enlargement (rarely deficiency)

Death due to:
- Cardiac: Arrhythmias, heart block, digoxin hypersensitivity, restrictive cardiomyopathy, constrictive pericarditis, endocardial – valve disease
- Airway: Larynx or bronchial thickening – stridor, dysphonia

Ix

Myeloma Ix:
FBC, film, BM biopsy; serum, urine electrophoresis, Ca, β_2-microglobulin; X-ray screen
Biopsy: Rectal; gingival; renal; abdominal fat pad aspirate
Stain: H&E – hyaline, eosinophilic, amorphous, proteinaceous material; Congo red +ve; birefringent
SAP-scan: Radiolabelled serum amyloid P scintigram (^{99}Tc)

Rx

Treatment of underlying cause leads to regression of amyloid deposits, but prognosis poor for 1°
AL: Chemotherapy as for myeloma
Serum amyloid P binding inhibitor: R-1-pyrrolidine carboxylic acid
AA: Immunosuppressants, e.g. chlorambucil in Still; or antibiotics for sepsis
Colchicine for familial Mediterranean fever
Transthyretin: Liver transplant
β_2-**microglobulin:** Renal transplant (i.e. stopping haemodialysis)

HYPOSPLENISM

Causes

C.A.B.O.T.'S. *rings*

Congenital:
- Agenesis: Associated immunodeficiency, e.g. Fanconi's anaemia
- Congenital cyanotic heart disease

Autoimmune:
- SLE, rheumatoid arthritis (associated big spleen)
- GIT: Coeliac, inflammatory bowel disease, chronic active hepatitis (associated small spleen)
- Graves disease, Hashimoto's thyroiditis, hypopituitarism or growth hormone deficiency, glomerulonephritis (associated small spleen for all)

Blood disorder:
- Sickle cell: Big spleen in infancy, but numerous microinfarcts cause gradual fibrosis and contraction
- Thalassaemia; hereditary spherocytosis – often treated with elective splenectomy
- Lymphoma
  - Sezary syndrome (T cell)
  - Radiotherapy or graft-versus-host disease
- Amyloid

Occlusion: Splenic artery or vein thrombosis

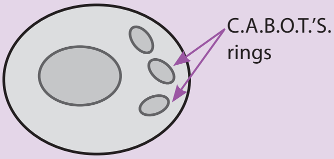
Trauma/splenectomy

Indications for elective splenectomy:

Autoimmune ITP or autoimmune haemolytic anaemia: Both when steroid-resistant and chronic

Leukaemia or lymphoma:
- CML or myelofibrosis:
  - ↓ symptoms of massive splenomegaly
  - ↓ need for tranfusions
- CLL or lymphoma:
  - ↓ thrombocytopenia
- Thalassaemia major or intermedia; hereditary spherocytosis

Sarcoid



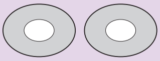
PC

Infection: Due to decreased phagocytosis, chemotaxis, Ab production
Thrombocytosis: Ischaemic heart disease; CVA; peripheral vascular disease
Hypersplenism: From accessory spleen enlargement at hilum, mesentery, or pancreas tail
Autoimmunity: Due to impaired T cell suppression

Ix

Bloods: FBC and blood film: All cell counts ↑ due to less natural destruction

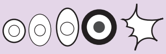
RBCs



Inclusion bodies:
- Nucleated RBCs
- Howell–Jolly bodies
- Cabot rings
- Pappenheimer bodies

+ Supravital staining:
- Reticulocytes
- Heinz bodies (denatured, oxidized Hb)

Bizarre shapes:



- Aniscytosis
- Target cells
- Acanthocytes or schizocytes (RBC fragments)

WBCs

Early:
- Neutrophils ↑
- Eosinophils ↑

Later:
- Lymphocytes ↑
- Monocytes ↑

Platelets

Thrombocythaemia:
- Peaks at day 7 (>1000 × 10^9/l)
- Continues to increase due to hypercellular bone marrow and anaemia

Large and bizarre shapes

Prophylaxis

Plan best time for splenectomy: Delay splenectomy, as <6 years old are most susceptible to infection
Vaccines:
  PneumoVax (from 1 month before operation)
  Hib (*Haemophilus influenzae* b)
  MeningoVax A + C (esp. if travelling abroad)
Antibiotics:
  Penicillin V/macrolide
  Anti-malarials (esp. if latent infection due to risk of reactivation or cerebral malaria)
  Salmonella infection
Anti-platelets: Aspirin

IMMUNODEFICIENCY – GENERAL

Causes

Causes can be categorized according to the part of the immune system affected:

- Innate:
  - *Mucosal defences:*
    - Neuromuscular weakness; recumbency; smoking
    - Iatrogenic: Lines; cannulas; catheters; tracheostomy
  - *Complement deficiency*
  - *Phagocytosis failure:* respiratory viruses
- B cells: Humoral
- T cells: Cell-mediated

I.N.F.E.C.T.I.O.N.

Infection:
- HSV, influenza *(phagocytosis failure)*
- EBV *(B-cell defect)*
- HIV, malaria, lepromatous leprosy *(T-cell defect; HIV also affects phagocytosis)*
- Measles *(B- and T-cell defects)*

Neoplasia:
- Leukaemia *(B- and T-cell defects)*
- AML, CMML: Acquired myeloperoxidase deficiency *(phagocytosis failure)* and IgA deficiency
- CLL, myeloma, thymoma: Hypogammaglobulinaemia *(B-cell defect)*
- Hodgkin lymphoma *(T-cell defect)*
- Metastatic carcinoma *(phagocytosis failure)*

Failure, organ:
- Cirrhosis, renal failure *(phagocytosis and B-cell defects, due to hypoproteinaemia)*
- Elderly *(T-cell defect)*

Endocrine: Diabetes mellitus *(B- and T-cell defects)*

Congenital: Primary immunodeficiencies (see p. 476)

Toxins:
- Leukaemia *(B- and T-cell defects)*
- Alcohol *(phagocytosis failure)*
- Smoking *(cilia inhibition, phagocytosis failure)*
- Colchicine, NSAIDs *(phagocytosis failure)*
- Steroids *(phagocytosis failure; B-cell defect)*
- Chemotherapy, radiotherapy *(global immune effects)*

Immune:
- SLE, rheumatoid arthritis *(phagocytosis and complement deficiency – classical pathway)*
- Sarcoidosis *(T-cell defect)*

Organomegaly – hypersplenism *(due to neutropenia)*

Nutritional:
- Malnutrition, malabsorption *(global immune effects)*
- Protein deficiency, esp. burns, protein-losing enteropathy, nephrosis *(B-cell defect)*
- Zinc deficiency (acrodermatitis enteropathica) *(B- and T-cell defects)*
- Fe deficiency *(T-cell defect)*

PC

Innate

Infection:

Pyogenic

- Boils, bronchiectasis – staphylococci: Catalase +ve, and so can overcome peroxide-based defences when superoxide production is impaired in CGD
- Sinusitis, meningitis – streptococcus, *Haemophilus*

Fungi

B cell

Infection:

Pyogenic – esp. encapsulated bacteria: *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, *Haemophilus*, *Meningococcus*, *Salmonella*

Viruses:

- VZV, recurrent
- HBV, chronic
- Enterovirus meningoencephalitis
- Live vaccines may cause disease

Fungi: *Pneumocystis pneumoniae* (hyperIgM)

Protozoa:

- Giardia (Bruton agammaglobulinaemia)
- Malaria (splenectomy)

Autoimmunity:

Myositis (Bruton agammaglobulinaemia)
SLE, rheumatoid arthritis, coeliac (IgA deficiency)
Atopy (IgA deficiency, hyperIgM)

Neoplasia: Lymphoma (common variable immunodeficiency)

T cell

Infection:

Pyogenic, incl. TB
Viruses – herpes: HSV, VZV, EBV, HHV-8
Fungi: *Candida*, PCP, *Cryptococcus*
Protozoa: Cryptosporidia, toxoplasmosis

Autoimmunity: Sjögren-like sicca syndrome

Neoplasia: Non-Hodgkin lymphoma

IMMUNODEFICIENCY – PRIMARY

Causes

Innate

Mucosal defences

Muscular dystrophy, cystic fibrosis, Kartagener

Complement deficiencies

Classical pathway: C2, 1, 4 deficiency – causes SLE-like syndrome
Common pathway:
- Membrane-attack complex – *Neisseria meningitis*
- C3 deficiency – severe pyogenic infections

C1 esterase deficiency: Angioedema
GPI cell anchor (protects against complement): paroxysmal nocturnal haemoglobinuria

Phagocytosis dysfunction

CGD (chronic granulomatous disease):
Epi: X-linked – 60%; auto. recessive – 40%
PATH: NADPH oxidase deficiency → ↓ superoxide
PC: Staphylococcal sepsis (being catalase +ve, it can overcome peroxide-based defences)
Fungal sepsis
Ix: Nitrazolium blue test
Myeloperoxidase deficiency:
Epi: Autosomal recessive, 1/2000
PC: Mild, unless concomitant diabetes mellitus
Systemic candidiasis
G6P dehydrogenase deficiency:
Immunodeficiency if <5% G6PD activity
Chediak–Higashi syndrome:
PATH: Deficient cathepsin G and elastase → inhibits fusion of phagolysosomes
Ix: Blood film – large granules
Kostmann syndrome: G-CSF receptor defect, leading to decreased granulocyte number

B-cell disorders

Non-selective Ig deficiency

X-linked agammaglobulinaemia
Epi: 1/100,000; X-linked
PATH: Bruton tyrosine kinase mutation
B-cell count ↓; lymphoid hyperplasia
PC: Presents in 1st year:

A.G.A.M.M.A.G.LOB.

Autoimmune: Dermatomyositis
Gastroenteritis (giardia, enterovirus)
Arthritis: Mycoplasma (rheumatoid-pattern)
Malabsorption; lactose intolerance
Meningo-encephalitis (enterovirus)
Anaemia, pernicious
Growth hormone deficiency (X linkage)
LOBar pneumonia; bronchiectasis; sinusitis

Ix: Ig <2 g/l
Common variable immunodeficiency
Epi: 1/2000
PATH: Abnormalities in B- or Th-cell maturation
Germinal centre hyperplasia
PC: Presents in adulthood as for Bruton, plus:
Fever
Lymphadenopathy, hepatosplenomegaly, lymphoma, lymphocytosis, Hb↓ platelets ↓
Ix: Bone marrow: Pre-B cells (no surface Ig)
Rx: IVIg (for CVID and Bruton)

Selective Ig deficiency

IgA deficiency
Epi: 1/600 Caucasians
PATH: 1°, congenital infection, penicillamine, phenytoin
PC: **A**symptomatic, or immunodeficient (if ↓ IgG2, 4)
Allergies: Asthma, allergy to milk; blood transfusions (due to anti-IgA)
Autoimmune: coeliac, CAH, SLE, RA
Assoc: Ataxia telangiectasia
Absent vaccine response
Ix: B cells bear IgM
Rx: Use blood from IgA-deficient donor
IgG subclass or functional IgG deficiency
PC: Asymptomatic ↔ pneumococcal infection

Hypergammaglobulinaemia

Immunodeficiency with hyperimmunoglobulin M
PATH: Neutrophils, IgG, A ↓ ; IgM, D ↑
PC: Infections: Bacterial, PCP, cryptosporidiosis
Autoimmune liver disease
Neoplasia
Hyper IgE: Job syndrome

T-cell disorders

Hypoparathyroidism-associated

DiGeorge syndrome

PATH: Developmental defects of pharyngeal pouches 3+4

PC: **C.A.T.C.H. 22**
- **C**ardiac anomalies
- **A**rtery Δ
- **T**hymus aplasia: Immunodeficiency
- **C**raniofacial anomalies
- **H**ypocalcaemia
- **22** = chromosome affected

Chronic mucocutaneous candidiasis

PATH: Deficient migratory inhibitory factor
PC: Superficial candida only
Assoc: Polyglandular autoimmune syndrome-1
Fe deficiency

T-cell defects

Ataxia telangiectasia

Epi: Autosomal recessive
PATH: Deficient DNA repair
PC: Presents in early childhood with:

Ataxia **T.E.L.A.N.G.**
- **A**taxia; Apraxia of oculomotor system
- **T**elangiectasia on sclera, elbows, ears
- **E**ndocrine: DM, hypogonadism
- **L**iver: Fatty liver/AFP ↑↑
- **A**utoimmunity
- **N**eoplasia: ALL, CLL, lymphoma; CEA↑:
  - In early 20s
  - 10% heterozygotes affected
  - Radiosensitive: Risk of mammograms
- **G**lobulins: IgA deficiency

Wiskott–Aldrich syndrome:

Epi: X-linked
PATH: Non-specific T-cell receptor (CD43)
PC: Recurrent infections
Autoimmunity: ITP, AIHA/eczema/JCA
Lymphoma in 20s
Ix: IgM ↓
IgA ↑

B- and T-cell disorders

SCID – severe combined immunodeficiency

Epi: X-linked, autosomal recessive, Swiss-type
PATH: Numerous mutations, incl.:
- RAG 1+2: V (D)J recombination
- DNA-dependent tyrosine kinase
- Adenosine deaminase
- IL-receptor g chain (XL) → ↓T cells, ↓ NK cells, functionally defective B cells

Primary T-cell defects

(with 2° B-cell dysfunction)
- MHC-II deficiency
- TCR deficiency
- ZAP70 tyrosine kinase deficiency
- JAK3 protein kinase deficiency (similar to XL SCID)

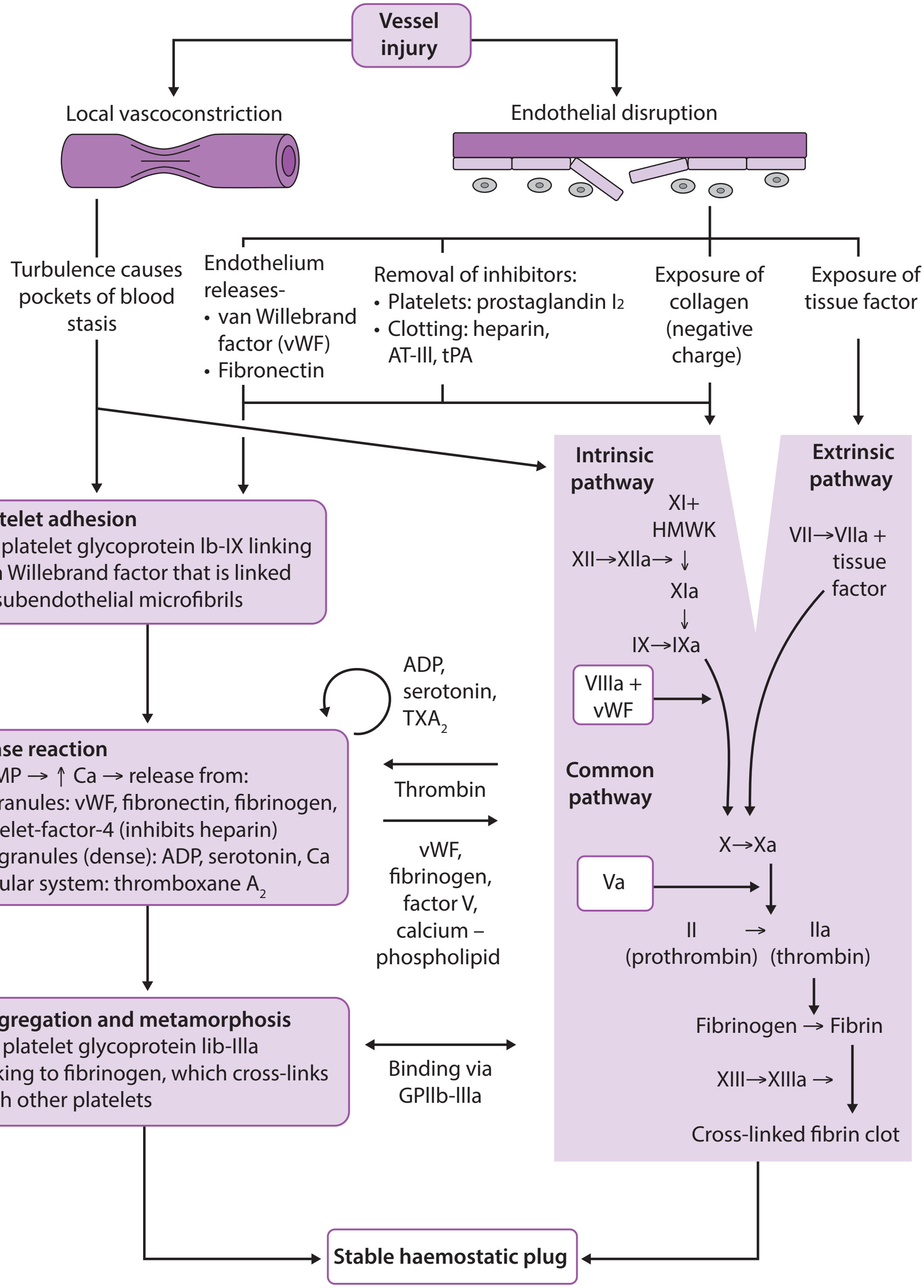
Chromosomal defects

Aneuploidy: Down, Turner syndromes
Instability:
- Fanconi's anaemia
- Xeroderma pigmentosa
- Bloom syndrome

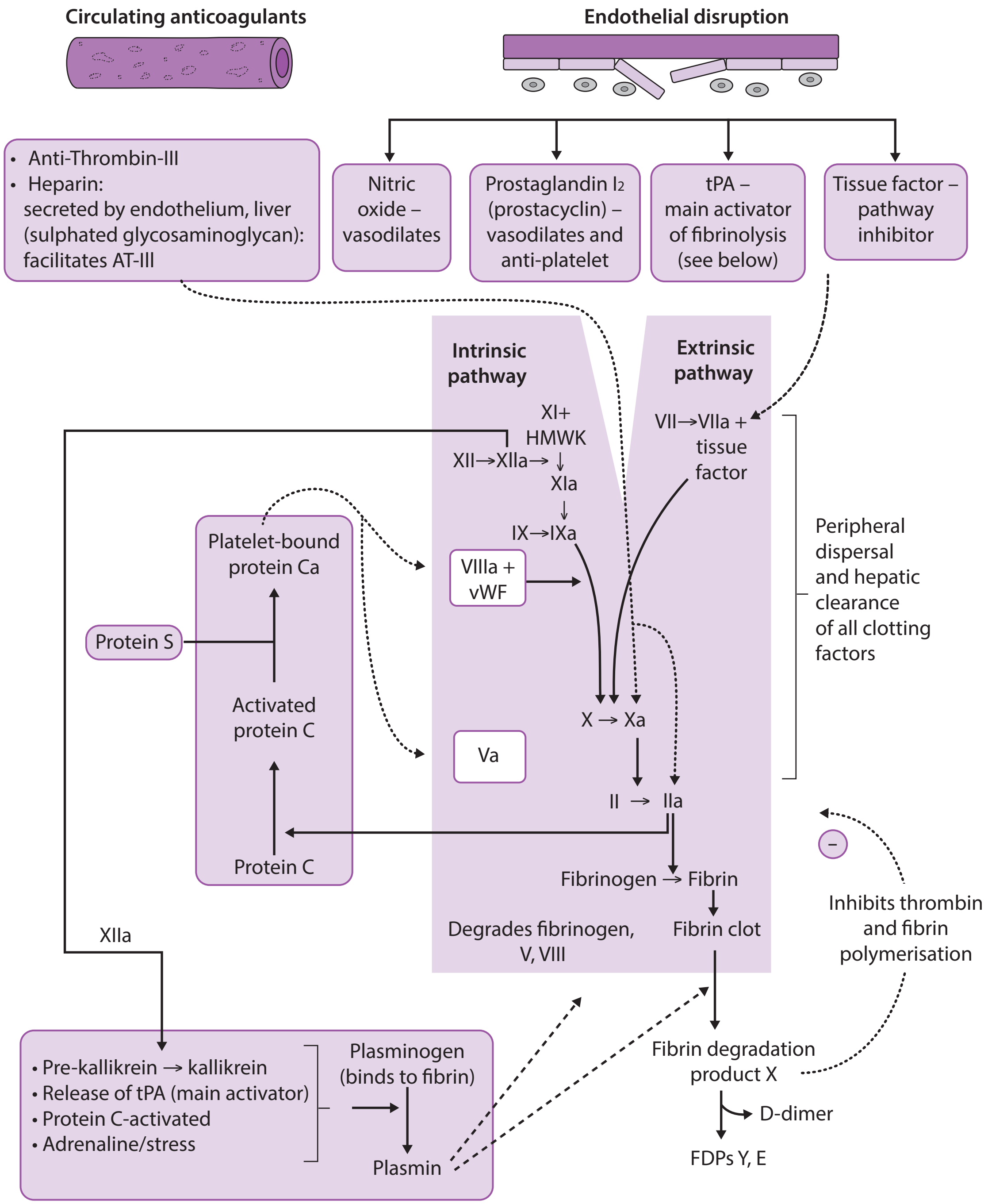
Other

Transcobalamin deficiency
PC: Megaloblastic anaemia

HAEMOSTASIS


Vessel injury
Local vascoconstriction
Endothelial disruption
Turbulence causes pockets of blood stasis
Endothelium releases-
• van Willebrand factor (vWF)
• Fibronectin
Removal of inhibitors:
• Platelets: prostaglandin I_2
• Clotting: heparin, AT-III, tPA
Exposure of collagen (negative charge)
Exposure of tissue factor
Platelet adhesion
via platelet glycoprotein Ib-IX linking van Willebrand factor that is linked to subendothelial microfibrils
Release reaction
↓cAMP → ↑ Ca → release from:
• α-granules: vWF, fibronectin, fibrinogen, platelet-factor-4 (inhibits heparin)
• δ:5-granules (dense): ADP, serotonin, Ca
• Tubular system: thromboxane A_2
ADP, serotonin, TXA_2
Thrombin
vWF, fibrinogen, factor V, calcium – phospholipid
Aggregation and metamorphosis
via platelet glycoprotein Iib-IIIa linking to fibrinogen, which cross-links with other platelets
Binding via GPIIb-IIIa
Intrinsic pathway
XI+ HMWK
XII→XIIa→ ↓
XIa
IX→IXa
VIIIa + vWF
Extrinsic pathway
VII→VIIa + tissue factor
Common pathway
X→Xa
Va
II → IIa
(prothrombin) (thrombin)
Fibrinogen → Fibrin
XIII→XIIIa →
Cross-linked fibrin clot
Stable haemostatic plug

HAEMOSTASIS CONTROL


Circulating anticoagulants
Endothelial disruption
• Anti-Thrombin-III
• Heparin: secreted by endothelium, liver (sulphated glycosaminoglycan): facilitates AT-III
Nitric oxide – vasodilates
Prostaglandin I2 (prostacyclin) – vasodilates and anti-platelet
tPA – main activator of fibrinolysis (see below)
Tissue factor – pathway inhibitor
Intrinsic pathway
Extrinsic pathway
XI+ HMWK
XII→XIIa→ ↓
XIa
↓
IX→IXa
VIIIa + vWF
VII→VIIa + tissue factor
Platelet-bound protein Ca
Protein S
Activated protein C
Protein C
Va
X → Xa
II → IIa
Fibrinogen → Fibrin
Fibrin clot
Degrades fibrinogen, V, VIII
Peripheral dispersal and hepatic clearance of all clotting factors
–
Inhibits thrombin and fibrin polymerisation
XIIa
• Pre-kallikrein → kallikrein
• Release of tPA (main activator)
• Protein C-activated
• Adrenaline/stress
Plasminogen (binds to fibrin)
Plasmin
Fibrin degradation product X
D-dimer
FDPs Y, E

All dotted lines represent inhibition; dashed lines represent proteolysis

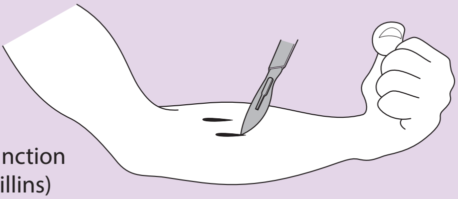
PLATELET DISORDERS

Causes

Platelet dysfunction may be caused by **thrombocytopenia or impaired platelet function**
Thrombocytopenia may be caused by:
  Spleen overactivity: Hypersplenism
  Peripheral destruction (immune) or consumption (non-immune)
  Bone marrow hypoproduction: Megakaryocyte failure

S.T.A.B.B.I.N.G.S.

Spleen: Hypersplenism
  PATH: Phagocytes remove platelets, and large spleen sequesters 60–90% platelets (normal = 30%)
  Causes: CML, portal hypertension, CCF (all cause pancytopenia)
Toxins
  PATH: Most are immune-mediated, but chemotherapy and alcohol have bone marrow suppressant effects
  Causes: **V.A.N.QU.I.S.H.E.D^2.**
    Valproate
    Alcohol
    Neuro – benzodiazepines, cocaine
    QUinine
    Inflammatory – NSAIDs inhibit platelet function
    Sulphonylureas, sulphonamides (+ penicillins)
    Heparin
    Extra – blood transfusions (anti-HPA-1a in multiparous women)
    Digoxin, **D**iuretics – thiazides



Autoimmune
  1°: Immune thrombocytopenic purpura (ITP)
  2°: SLE, Evan syndrome (ITP + autoimmune haemolytic anaemia)
Bone marrow failure
  Normocytic anaemia: Aplastic anaemia, bone marrow replacement, diet (starvation)
  Megaloblastic anaemia: Folate or B12 deficiency
  Selective megakaryocyte failure, e.g. Wiskott–Aldrich syndrome, HIV, alcohol
Blood vessel damage: DIC, TTP, vasculitis, fat embolism
Infection:
  Virus: HIV, EBV, VZV, measles; dengue haemorrhagic fever
  Other: Septicaemia (esp. meningococcal), endocarditis, rickettsia, malaria
Neoplasia
  CLL (B-cell), Hodgkin lymphoma – ITP
  Myeloproliferative disease; paraproteinaemia, esp. Waldenström – causes impaired platelet function
Genetic
  Thrombocytopenia: Wiskott–Aldrich or Chediak–Higashi syndromes: Impaired megakaryocyte production
  Impaired function: von Willebrand disease; glycoprotein, platelet granule or thromboxane deficiency
Systemic
  Thrombocytopenia: Dilution, e.g. overhydration
  Impaired function: Uraemia, liver failure
  Artefactual: Clotted blood or anti-platelet antibodies

PC

General: Superficial: Skin purpura or petechiae
Mucous membranes: Epistaxis, gums, GIT, menorrhagia, haematuria
Deep: Intracerebral haemorrhage
ITP: Childhood: Acute, mild, self-limiting
Adult: Chronic, severe, relapsing–remitting

Ix

Bloods:

FBC, film, platelet size:

- Large platelets: ITP, myeloproliferative disease, grey platelet syn. (a-granule deficiency)
- Small platelets: CRF

Auto-antibodies:

- Anti-glycoprotein IIb-IIIa (IgG, M): ITP; anti-$P1^{A1}$: Post-transfusion purpura
- ANA
- Direct Coombs' test (Evans syndrome)

DIC tests: Film showing schistocytes, clotting, FDPs, D-dimers, circulating fibrin monomer

Micro: HIV, EBV serology

Radiol: Abdominal USS – splenomegaly

Special:

Bone marrow – fine-needle aspirate and biopsy:

- Megakaryocyte number ↓: Bone marrow failure
- Megakaryocyte number ↑: Peripheral destruction

Aggregation times impaired with:

- Adrenaline, ADP: d-granule or COX-deficiency (genetic or aspirin), ET
- Ristocetin: von Willebrand disease

Other platelet studies:

- Granule contents (↓ in storage pool diseases, myeloproliferative disease)
- Glycoprotein quantification, arachidonic acid metabolism, Ca flux studies

Rx

ITP

Supportive: Platelet transfusion (half-life = hours)

Severe: Prednisolone or IVIg

Chronic:

Immunosuppression: Steroids, azathioprine, cyclophosphamide, rituximab
Other drugs: Danazol, colchicine, IFN-a, high-dose vit. C
Splenectomy: If platelet count <30 × 10^9/l, or intolerant of steroids, or young

PURPURA

Def

Purpura = pink-red macules <1 cm; petechiae = very fine macules

Non-blanching – due to intradermal bleeding

PC

The type of tissues in which bleeding occurs suggests the underlying cause:

Vascular: Petechiae, purpura, bruises

Platelets:
- Petechiae, purpura, bruises
- Mucous membrane bleeds: Epistaxis, gums, GIT, menorrhagia, urine
- Deep: Intracerebral

Clotting:
- Petechiae, purpura, bruises
- Mucous membrane bleeds
- Deep: Intracerebral, haemarthroses, subcutaneous (nerve palsies), teeth, tongue, trauma, bowel

Ix

Vascular:
- FBC, film and clotting times are normal
- Tourniquet Hess test: Blood pressure cuff inflated for 5 min; count petechiae within 2.5 cm diameter circle measured 4 cm below cubital fossa; if >20 petechiae = capillary fragility ↑

Platelets:
- FBC: Platelets ↓ or normal:
  - Platelet count↓: Film, bone marrow, autoAbs, FDP
  - Platelet count normal: Platelet function times, incl. Duke method – small nick on the earlobe with a lancet; bleeding should stop after 2 min

Clotting:
- Clotting times ↑
- Dilution studies: Does normal serum correct?
- Clotting factor, vWF assays; NB: Bleeding time normal

Causes

Vascular defect

V.I.G.I.L²$.A.N.T.

Vitamin C deficiency – scurvy:
- PATH: Vit. C is required for collagen cross-linking
- O/E: Perifollicular petechiae
  - Gum bleeding

Infection: Due to immune complexes:
- Meningococcaemia
- Rickettsia
- Viruses: Measles, dengue haemorrhagic fever (all also associated with low platelet count)

Genetic:
- Collagen disease: ED-IV, OI, Marfan
- Pseudoxanthoma elasticum (AD/AR)
- Hereditary haemorrhagic telangiectasia (AD): Endoglin mutation

Injury:
- Mechanical
- Thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura

Leg purpura: Chronic venous stasis or venous hypertension:
- DVT
- Excessive standing
- Right-sided heart failure
- Excessive coughing or vomiting

Limiting, self:
- Senile purpura
- Painful bruising syndrome:
  - Epi: Women of child-bearing age
  - PC: Prodromal tingling under skin; bruising of limbs, trunk

Autoimmune:
- Vasculitis: Henoch–Schonlein purpura, polyarteritis nodosa (men)
- SLE, rheumatoid arthritis
- Cryoglobulinaemia

Neoplasia: Amyloid, esp. facial purpura from AL amyloid
(Ix: Serum and urine electrophoresis)

Toxins:
- Steroid
- Anticoagulant therapy

Coagulopathy

V.I.G.I.L^2.A^2.N.T^3.

Vitamin K deficiency:
- PATH: Vit. K epoxide reductase causes g-carboxylation of glutamate residue on clotting factors II, VII, IX, X → enables Ca binding → adsorption onto phospholipid surfaces
- Malnutrition
- Malabsorption – coeliac, chronic pancreatitis
- Antibiotics
- Haemorrhagic disease of newborn

Infection, due to DIC

Genetic:
- Haemophilias: VIII C (A), IX (B), XI, VII – mild; XIII – severe
- Von Willebrand disease, type 3

Injury due to DIC

Liver: Obstructive jaundice leads to ↓ vit. K absorption

Liver: Hepatocellular dysfunction due to ↓ clotting factor synthesis, ↓ tPA detoxification and DIC

Acute pancreatitis: Pancreatic proteases degrade clotting factors
- PC: Bruising in flanks and umbilicus (Cullen sign)

Autoimmune: Circulating VIII inhibitors – complication of haemophilia

Neoplasia:
- Paraproteinaemia; amyloid: Due to factor X and fibrinogen deficiency
- Acute myeloid leukaemia M3
- Metastatic carcinoma – hyperplasminaemia

Toxins:
- Anticoagulants: Heparin, warfarin
- Other: Asparaginase, isoniazid (blocks XIII activity)

Transfusion, massive: Dilutional effect

Thrombolysis:
- tPA
- Hyperplasminaemia: 1° or 2° to congenital cyanotic heart disease

Platelet defect (p. 480)

S.T.A.B.B.I.N.G.S.

All cause **thrombocytopenia**, except where indicated as causing **impaired platelet function**

Spleen: Hypersplenism, due to CML, portal hypertension, CCF

Toxins:

V.A.N.QUI.S.HE.D.
- **V**alproate
- **A**lcohol
- **N**euro – benzodiazepines, cocaine
- **QUI**nine; Inflammatory – indomethacin, gold
- **S**ulphonylureas, sulphonamides (+ penicillins)
- **HE**parin; Extra – blood transfusions (anti-P1^{A1})
- **D**igoxin, Diuretics – thiazides + impaired function (NSAIDs)

Autoimmune:
- 1°: Immune thrombocytopenic purpura (ITP)
- 2°: SLE, Evans syndrome (ITP + haemolysis)

Bone marrow failure:
- Normocytic anaemia:
  - Aplastic anaemia
  - Bone marrow replacement
  - Diet (starvation)
- Megaloblastic anaemia: Folate or B12 deficiency
- Selective megakaryocyte failure, e.g. HIV, alcohol

Blood vessel damage: DIC, TTP, vasculitis, fat embolism

Infection:
- Viruses: HIV; EBV, VZV
- Other: Septicaemia, endocarditis; malaria

Neoplasia:
- CLL (B cell), Hodgkin lymphoma: ITP
- Myeloproliferative disease
- Impaired function: Paraproteinaemia, esp. Waldenström (hyperviscosity syndrome)

Genetic:
- Thrombocytopenia: Wiskott–Aldrich or Chediak–Higashi syndromes
- Impaired function: von Willebrand disease; glycoprotein, granule, TXA2 deficiency

Systemic:
- Thrombocytopenia: Dilution, e.g. overhydration
- Impaired function: Uraemia, liver failure
- Artefactual:
  - Clotted blood
  - Anti-platelet antibodies

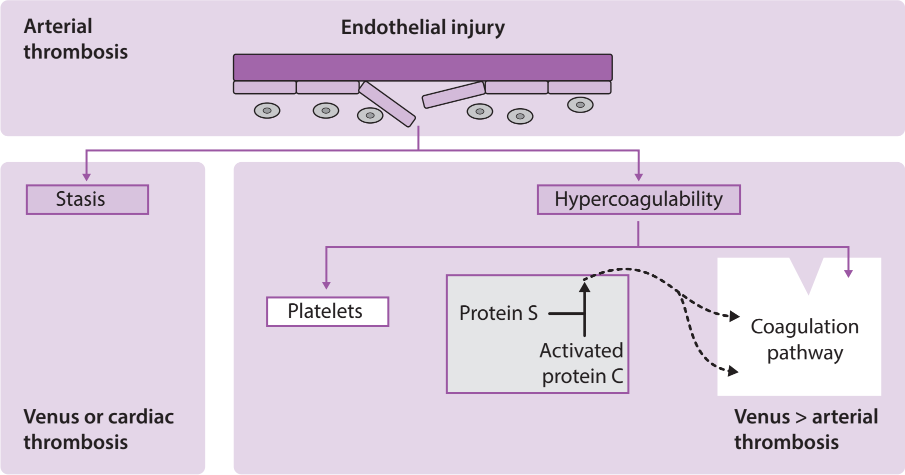
THROMBOSIS

Prothrombotic states are summarized by Virchow's triad of pathological processes:

1. Endothelial injury: Arterial thrombosis
2. Stasis: Venous or cardiac thrombosis
3. Hypercoagulability: Venous > arterial thrombosis

Each pathology tends to be associated with thrombosis in particular parts of the circulation, as shown. However, all 3 processes are probably involved at each instance of thrombosis, e.g. an atherosclerotic plaque may rupture causing endothelial injury, exposure of procoagulants and turbulence with pockets of stasis.

Arterial thrombosis


Arterial thrombosis
Endothelial injury
Stasis
Hypercoagulability
Platelets
Protein S
Activated protein C
Coagulation pathway
Venus or cardiac thrombosis
Venus > arterial thrombosis

Causes

Endothelial injury

(A.D.V.I.S.E.)^2 (O.R.)^2 H.E.P^3.A.R.I^2.N.I.S^2.E.

Atherosclerosis: Hypertension, DM, cholesterol, smoking
Arteriosclerosis: Hypertension, DM
Dissection: Hypertension, connective tissue mutation – Ehlers–Danlos, Marfan
Dysplasia: Fibromuscular
Vasculitis:
- Autoimmune (e.g. polyarteritis nodosa, giant-cell arteritis, SLE)
- Infection (e.g. TB, syphilis, *Pneumococcus*, *Chlamydia*)

Valvulitis: Endocarditis, aortic stenosis
Injury: Trauma, catheterisation (angioplasty), indwelling central line
Injury: Radiation
Spasm: Migraine, variant angina
Sarcoidosis
External compression, e.g. tumour, cervical rib
Embolism: Should be considered as a mechanism in any case of arterial ischaemia

Stasis

Obesity
Operation, esp. hip or other orthopaedic, or for cancer
Recumbency, e.g. long-haul flight, peripartum, debilitated
Right-sided heart failure, or other venous hypertension, incl. varicose veins

Hypercoagulability

Hereditary:
  Prothrombin mutation
  Factor V Leiden mutation (activated protein C resistance); protein S or C deficiency;
    anti-thrombin-III deficiency
  Fibrinolysis defect: Fibrinogen/plasminogen mutation; tPA ↓/tPA inhibitor ↑
  Homocystinuria
Endocrine:
  Oestrogens:
- Pregnancy: Phlegmasia alba dolens (3rd trimester/puerperium)
- OCP: ↑ vit. K-dependent CFs, VIII; ↓ AT-III, tPA
- HRT: Although ↓ LDL/HDL and hence ↓ IHD

  Androgens: Anabolic steroids, danazol (anti-oestrogen), oral contraceptive pill (anti-androgen)
  Diabetes mellitus, esp. due to HHS
Polycythaemia; **P**araproteinaemia; **P**NH (paroxysmal nocturnal haemoglobinuria):
  Polycythaemia, including myeloproliferative disease (hyperviscosity)
  Paraproteinaemia (hyperviscosity)
  Other haematological: PNH, sickle cell disease, Fe deficiency, DIC, TTP
Autoimmune:
  Antiphospholipid syndrome (primary or associated with SLE)
  Vasculitis: Behçet syndrome, PAN, granulomatosis with polyangiitis, Sjögren syndrome
  Ulcerative colitis + sarcoidosis
Renal:
  Nephrosis: Due to glomerular loss of AT-III
  Dehydration
Injury; **I**nfarction: Due to increased sympathetic response and CRP elevation
Neoplasia:
  Adenocarcinoma (mucin/protease-secreting), e.g. pancreas, bronchus, breast, bowel
    PC: 'Trousseau phenomenon' = migratory thrombophlebitis
  Acute leukaemia (AML or ALL)
  Local:
- Portal vein thrombosis, secondary to carcinoma of pancreas, liver, adrenal
- Cerebral vein thrombosis, secondary to head–neck squamous cell carcinoma

Infection
  Systemic: Endotoxinaemia (lipopolysaccharide), TB, chlamydia
  Local: Cellulitis (DVT); otitis media, sinusitis (cerebral vein thrombosis)
Smoking; **S**enility (increasing age)
Exogenous: Chemotherapy (L-asparaginase, methotrexate); steroids; COX-2 inhibitors

DISSEMINATED INTRAVASCULAR COAGULATION (DIC)

Def

Run-away control of haemostasis
Triggered by: Extensive endothelial disruption, e.g. infection, trauma, AVM
Procoagulant release, e.g. neoplasia, placental disruption
Results in consumption, and consequently depletion, of platelets and clotting factors

Causes

Make sure you **N.O.T.I.C.E.** *it!!*

6th March	
Platelets	148
PT	13
APTT	40

7th March	
Platelets	80
PT	19
APTT	55

8th March	
Platelets	25
PT	26
APTT	84

!!!

Neoplasia:
- Mucin-secreting adenocarcinoma: Pancreas, gastric, breast, bronchus
- AML: Acute promyelocytic leukaemia – M3

Obstetric:
- Abortion: Septic, missed, retained products of conception
- Peri-partum: Eclampsia; placental abruption; amniotic fluid embolism

Trauma:
- Crush injury, surgery, burns
- Hyperthermia or hypothermia
- Hypoxia (acute)

Infection:
- Bacterial: Meningococcaemia, coliforms (endotoxin), *Clostridium perfringens*, leptospirosis
- Viral: Purpura fulminans, esp. CMV, VZV, hepatitis
- Malaria: *Plasmodium falciparum* – large procoagulant release

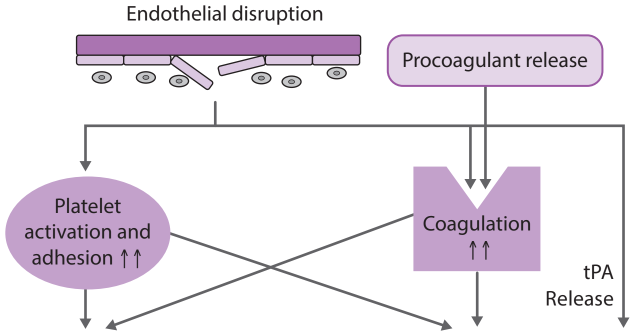
Congenital: AVM, e.g. Kasabach–Merritt syndrome – giant haemangioma in infants

Extra:
- Acute anaphylaxis
- Blood transfusion reaction
- Liver failure

Prog

Large spectrum of severity, including asymptomatic cases
50% mortality rate (because of associated condition)

PATH


Endothelial disruption
Procoagulant release
Platelet activation and adhesion ↑↑
Coagulation ↑↑
tPA Release

Thrombocytopenia/ Coagulopathy
Superficial haemorrhage:

- Purpura-ecchymoses
- IV puncture site, wound

Deep haemorrhage → failure brain, GIT, GU

Microvascular thrombi
Peripheral:

- Gangrene
- DVT

Acute renal failure

Fibrinolysis
Haemorrhage

Ix

Platelets ↓
Clotting: APTT↑, PT↑, TT ↑, fibrinogen ↓

NB: Clotting times may be normal in DIC, due to presence of activated clotting factors!

Film: Schistocytes, due to microangiopathic haemolytic anaemia (MAHA)
AT-III ↓

Fibrin degradation products, e.g. d-dimer ↑

Rx

Underlying condition +
Blood products

- Fresh frozen plasma (clotting factors)
- Platelet transfusion
- Cryoprecipitate (fibrinogen)
- Red blood cells

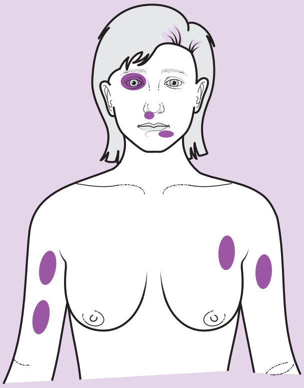
HAEMOPHILIA

Haemophilia A (factor VIII deficiency)

Inc: 1/10,000 males
Age: Presents in 1st year, e.g. cephalhaematoma, circumcision, crawling (bruising)
Sex: Males (X-linked), but female carriers may bleed after surgery/trauma due to 'lyonisation', i.e. if normal X-chromosome is disproportionately inactivated
Aet: Hereditary (75%): X-linked disease – numerous mutations on Xq
  Sporadic (25%), i.e. new mutation or latent carriership for several generations
  ↓ Synthesis of VIII from liver, spleen, kidney + lymphoid tissue
  Anti-VIII: C antibodies in 20%

PC

$S^2.T^2.A.I.N^2.S.$



Skin – **S**ubcutaneous tissue: Bruising
Teeth (dental extraction)/**T**ongue (haematoma → stridor)
Arthritis:
  Acute haemarthroses, esp. hip, knee, ankle
  Osteoarthritis: Due to recurrent haemarthroses → ankylosis + muscle atrophy
  Bony pseudotumours/cysts: Due to subperiosteal bleeding → pathological fractures
Intestine/urinary haemorrhage:
  GIT haemorrhage: Due to coagulopathy/NSAIDs for arthritis/hepatitis C
  GU haemorrhage/ureteric colic, papillary necrosis due to antifibrinolytic use
Neurological:
  CVA (bleed): Commonest cause of death
  Femoral nerve compression – 2° to retroperitoneal-psoas sheath haematoma
  Compartment syndrome due to muscle/fascial haemorrhage
Nose: Epistaxis
Side-effects of Rx:
  Viral infections: Transfusions pre-1990s (HIV), pre-2000 (HCV)
  Factor VIII inhibitor in 20% of pts.
  Thrombosis, due to antifibrinolytics, DDAVP, prothrombin complex

Severity depends on % VIII activity:	20–5% – mild bleeding post-op. or trauma
	5–1% – infrequent spontaneous bleeding
	<1% – frequent, severe spontaneous bleeds

Ix

Clotting times

- **APTT**: ↑
  - If it normalizes with 50:50 mix with normal plasma suggests factor deficiency
  - If it does not normalize with 50:50 VIII-deficient plasma suggests an inhibitor
  - Immune assay of individual factors: VIII, IX, vWF
- **PT**: Normal
- **TT**: Normal

Genetic screening

- Methods: RFLP; DNA hybridisation; PCR
- Used to amplify chorionic villus sampled blood (10–12 weeks) or umbilical vein (18–20 weeks)

Rx

Conservative

- Avoidance: Contact sports, unnecessary dental Rx; NSAIDs; IM injections
- Vaccines: Hep B; regular LFTs
- Haemarthrosis: Rest, splint, elevate; physiotherapy: prevents joint fibrosis

Factor VIII concentrate

- Source: FFP, cryoprecipitate; immunoaffinity (adsorbed + eluted onto monoclonal Abs); recombinant DNA
- Indications: Used to raise VIII activity to >30% activity in acute haemorrhage, or as prophylaxis, e.g. before sports or dental procedures
- ☠ Inhibitors, i.e. Anti VIII IgG
  - Rx:
    - High-dose VIII; only if low Ig titre; porcine VIII
    - Prothrombin complex concentrates = trace quantities of activated clotting factors
    - Immunosuppression; immunodepletion
  - Autoimmune haemolytic anaemia – due to anti-A and -B in intermediate-purity concentrates
  - Allergy

DDAVP (desmopressin = ADH) – IVI or nasal snuff:

- Releases VIII + vWF from endothelium; stabilizes VIII in plasma
- Indications: Acute haemorrhage in mild disease, as endothelium contains only limited stores
- ☠: Thrombosis esp. in elderly; hyponatraemia

Antifibrinolytics – tranexamic acid or s-aminocaproic acid (IV, PO, mouth wash):

- Inhibits plasmin formation by tPA (which is also released from endothelium by DDAVP!)
- Indications: Acute haemorrhage or prophylaxis; as an adjunct to DDAVP

Haemophilia B (factor IX deficiency) or 'Xmas disease'

Epi: 1/3 as common as haemophilia A, but also X- linked
PC: As for haemophilia A
Ix: Immune assay reveals IX deficiency; otherwise as for haemophilia A
Rx: Factor IX concentrate – longer half-life than VIII (less frequent infusions); DDAVP is ineffective!

Factor XI deficiency

Mild bleeding disorder, tends to occur in Ashkenazi Jews, and is autosomal recessive

Factor XIII deficiency

Severe bleeding disorder with infertility and abortions. Rare and autosomal recessive
Ix: Urea-dissolution test (XIII assay)

BLOOD TRANSFUSION COMPLICATIONS

Incidence

Any reaction = 2%; death = 2/100,000

Early

Haemolytic reaction – Immediate (1/12,000 transfusions)

Causes:

Blood-group mismatch:
  ABO – intravascular haemolysis: IgG, IgM, classical complement pathway
  RhD, Kell – extravascular haemolysis: IgG, C3b, mononuclear phagocytic system
Mechanical: faulty blood warmer; pumps, tubes

PC: General: Fever, shock, acute renal failure
  GIT symptoms: N+V, diarrhoea, abdominal–back pain
  Chest symptoms: Chest pain, SOB, wheeze
  Skin symptoms: Pruritus, jaundiced (haemolysis)
Ix: Sample donor and recipient blood: Serology, cross-match, direct Coombs' test, blood culture
  Haemolysis tests: Unconjugated BR, AST, LDH; reticulocytes, α2-haptoglobin
  Intravascular haemolysis: Haemoglobinuria, haemosiderinuria
  Complications: Screen for DIC (FDPs and D-dimers) and MAHA (film: schistocytes)
Rx: Fluids, blood, FFP
  Hydrocortisone, chlorpheniramine
  'Renal' dopamine, adrenaline, haemodialysis

Immune reactions – Non-haemolytic

Non-haemolytic febrile transfusion reaction (NHFTR) (1/50 transfusions)
  PATH: Anamnestic response to HLA-I and -II on WBCs, and platelets (HLA-I only), due to previous transfusion or pregnancies
  PC: Fever at 30 min to 2 h; flushing; tachycardia
  Prophylaxis: WBC-depleted products ('buffy-coat depleted'); in-line filters

Allergy – types (1/50 transfusions)
  Atopy: Plasma proteins of donor, e.g. Igs, react in atopic pt. → mild urticaria (continue transfusion)
  IgA deficiency: Reaction against donor IgA → anaphylactic shock
  Inadvertent donor antigen, e.g. C4-albumin, penicillin, ethylene oxide

Pulmonary leucagglutinin reaction (1/5000 transfusions)
  PATH: Donor or recipient has high anti-granulocyte Ab titre due to past transfusion or multiparity
  PC: Non-cardiogenic pulmonary oedema due to agglutination and leucostasis in lungs
  Neutropenia (cytotoxicity)
  Shock (complement-driven vasodilation)

Overload – fluid: Presents as features of congestive cardiac failure

+ delivery problems: Thrombophlebitis; air embolism
+ massive transfusion complications:

- Hypothermia
- Ion toxicity (transfused citrate → Ca ↓; K ↑; acid–base disturbance)
- Clotting factor and platelet depletion/DIC (give platelets and FFPs after 4 units)

Late

Haemolytic reaction – Delayed (1/1000 transfusions)

Causes

Due to delayed, 2° immune response to RBC alloantigen other than those routinely screened for
Not detected pre-transfusion by cross-matching because of low recipient antibody levels
Risk increased by previous transfusions or in multiparous women
Extravascular haemolysis

PC: Occurs 1 day–2 weeks after transfusion
Hb fails to rise; jaundice (but may be life-threatening)
Ix: Direct Coombs' test
Indirect Coombs' test: Ab screen against wide RBC Ag assay; quantify by no. of units lysed
Type donor blood given

Immune reactions – Non-haemolytic

Alloantigen sensitisation = Abs generated to RBC or HLA antigens, without reaction; predisposes to future transfusion reactions, including haemolytic disease of the newborn

Post-transfusion purpura

Causes

Where recipient lacks platelet antigen HPA-1a (GPIIIa receptor), transfusion leads to development of anti-platelet antibodies to both donor and self platelets
2% population lack HPA-1A; Abs more likely in multiparous women

PC: Thrombocytopenia at 7–10 days post-transfusion

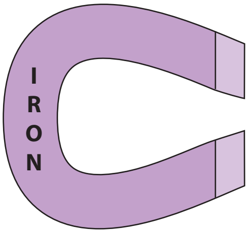
GVHD or immunosuppression
Immunocompromised patients may develop GVHD by donor T-cell activity
Lymphopenia may occur in post-surgery transfusion

Infection

Bacteria: Syphilis, *Salmonella*, *Brucella*
Viruses: Hepatitis B, C, E, G; HTLV-I; HIV; CMV (significant if recipient immunocompromised)
Parasites: Malaria, toxoplasmosis, microfilariasis
Other: Prion

Overload – Iron

At-risk groups = recurrent transfusions:
Congenital: Thalassaemia major or intermedia; pure red-cell aplasia (Diamond–Blackfan syndrome)
Acquired: Aplastic anaemia; myelodysplasia, myelofibrosis
Complications (as for 1° haemochromatosis – see p. 160



Myocardial deposition: Dysrhythmias
Endocrine: **P**ituitary (growth failure; hypogonadism)
Pancreas (DM); **P**arathyroid (Ca↓)/thyroid (T_4↓)
Arthritis
Liver: Cirrhosis
Skin: Pigmentation due to haemosiderin and melanin

Taylor & Francis
Taylor & Francis Group
http://taylorandfrancis.com

ABBREVIATONS

1,25-DHCC	1,25-dihydroxycholecalciferol
17-KS	17-ketosteroids
2,3-DPG	2,3-diphosphoglycerate
25-HCC	25-hydroxycholecalciferol
2-D	two-dimensional
3-D	three-dimensional
3TC	lamivudine
5-HIAA	5-hydroxyindoleacetic acid
5-HT	serotonin (5-hydroxytryptamine)
5-HT3	type 3 serotonin receptor
5-HTP	5-hydroxytryptophan
11BHSD	11 β-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase
AA	amino acid(s)
AAA	abdominal aortic aneurysm
AAFB	alcohol- and acid-fast bacilli
Ab	antibody
ABG	arterial bypass graft, arterial blood gases
ABP	arterial blood pressure
ABPA	allergic bronchopulmonary aspergillosis
ABVD	doxorubicin (Adriamycin), bleomycin, vinblastine and dacarbazine
AcAc	acetoacetate
AcCoA	acetyl coenzyme A
ACE	angiotensin-converting enzyme
ACEI	ACE inhibitor
Ach	acetylcholine
AchR	acetylcholine receptor
ACS	acute coronary syndrome
ACTH	adrenocorticotrophic hormone
AD	autosomal dominant
ADEM	acute disseminated encephalomyelitis
ADH	antidiuretic hormone (= AVP)
ADHD	attention deficit hyperactivity disorder
ADP	adenosine diphosphate
AE	air entry or adverse effects
AED	anti-epileptic drug
AF	atrial fibrillation
AFB	acid-fast bacilli
AFP	α-fetoprotein
Ag	antigen
AICA	anterior inferior cerebellar artery
AIDP	acute inflammatory demyelinating polyneuropathy
AIDS	acquired immunodeficiency syndrome
AIHA	autoimmune haemolytic anaemia
A-II	angiotensin-II receptor
AION	anterior ischaemic optic neuropathy
$Al(OH)_3$	aluminium hydroxide
AKI	acute kidney injury
ALA	aminolaevulinic acid
Alb	albumin
Alk. Phos.	alkaline phosphatase
ALL	acute lymphoblastic leukaemia
ALP	alkaline phosphatase
α_1-AT	α_1-antitrypsin
ALS	amyotrophic lateral sclerosis
ALT	alanine aminotransferase (transaminase)
AMA	antimitochondrial antibody
AM(S)AN	acute motor (and sensory) axonal neuropathy
AML	acute myeloid leukaemia
AMML	acute myelomonocytic leukaemia
ANA	antinuclear antibodies
ANCA	antineutrophil cytoplasmic antibodies
Ank. Spond.	ankylosing spondylitis
ANP	atrial natriuretic peptide
Anti-LKM	antibodies to liver–kidney microsomes
AP	anteroposterior, abdominoperineal
APB	apex beat
APC	adenomatous polyposis coli
APKD	adult polycystic kidney disease
APSAC	anisoylated plasminogen streptokinase activator complex
APTT	activated partial thromboplastin time
APUD	amine precursor uptake and decarboxylation
AR	aortic regurgitation, autosomal recessive
ARAS	ascending reticular activating system
ARC	AIDS-related complex
ARDS	adult respiratory distress syndrome
AS	aortic stenosis
ASD	atrial septal defect
ASH	asymmetric septal hypertrophy
ASIS	anterior superior iliac spine
ASO	anti-streptolysin O
AST	aspartate aminotransferase (transaminase)
AT	antitrypsin
AT-III	anti-thrombin III
ATN	acute tubular necrosis
ATP	adenosine triphosphate
AV	aortic valve, arteriovenous, atrioventricular
A-V	atrioventricular

AVM	arteriovenous malformation
AVN	atrioventricular node
AVNRE	atrioventricular nodal re-entry (tachycardia)
AVP	arginine vasopressin (= ADH)
AVRE	atrioventricular re-entry (tachycardia)
AVRT	atrioventricular re-entry tachycardia
AXR	abdominal X-ray
Aza/AZA	azathioprine
AZT	azidothymidine (zidovudine)
Ba	barium
BAL	bronchoalveolar lavage
BCG	bacille Calmette-Guérin
β-B	beta-blockers
β-HCG	β-human chorionic gonadotrophin
BHB	β-hydroxybutyrate
BHC	benzene hexachloride
BHL	bihilar lymphadenopathy
BJP	Bence Jones protein
blk	block
BM	bone marrow or name of manufacturer of 'BM stick'
BMPR	bone morphogenetic protein receptor
BNH	bilateral nodular hyperplasia
BO	bowel opening
BP	blood pressure
bpm	beats per minute
BPPV	benign paroxysmal positional vertigo
BR	bilirubin
BSE	bovine spongiform encephalopathy
Bx	biopsy
BXO	balanitis xerotica obliterans
ca./Ca.	carcinoma
Ca/Ca^{2+}	calcium
CABG	coronary artery bypass graft
$CaCO_3$	calcium carbonate
CADASIL	cerebral autosomal dominant arteriopathy with subcortical infarcts and leucoencephalopathy
CAG	cytosine-adenine-guanine
CAH	congenital adrenal hyperplasia, chronic autoimmune hepatitis
cAMP	cyclic adenosine monophosphate
c-ANCA	cytoplasmic anti-neutrophil cytoplasmic antibodies
CAPD	chronic ambulatory peritoneal dialysis
CBD	corticobasal degeneration
CCF	congestive cardiac failure
CCHD	cyanotic congenital heart disease
CCK	cholecystokinin
CCl_4	carbon tetrachloride

CCU	coronary care unit
CD	cluster differentiation antigen
CEA	carcinoembryonic antigen
Cef	cefuroxime
CF	cystic fibrosis, clotting factor
CFA	cryptogenic fibrosing alveolitis
CFTR	cystic fibrosis transmembrane regulator
CGD	chronic granulomatous disease
cGMP	cyclic guanosine monophosphate
C_H50	complement functional assay
CHOP	cyclophosphamide, doxorubicin (hydroxydaunorubicin), vincristine (Oncovin) and prednisolone
Chr	chromosome
CI	contraindication
CIDP	chronic inflammatory demyelinating polyneuropathy
CJD	Creutzfeldt–Jakob disease
CK	creatine kinase
CKD	chronic kidney disease
Cl^-	chloride
CLL	chronic lymphocytic leukaemia
CMC	carpometacarpal
CMI	cell-mediated immunity
CML	chronic myeloid leukaemia
CMML	chronic myelomonocytic leukaemia
CMT	Charcot–Marie–Tooth (disease)
CMV	cytomegalovirus
CMZ	carbamazepine
CNS	central nervous system
CO	cardiac output, carbon monoxide
CO_2	carbon dioxide
CO_3	carbonate
CoA	coenzyme A
COMT	catechol-*O*-methyltransferase
COPD	chronic obstructive pulmonary disease
COX	cyclooxygenase
CPAP	continuous positive airway pressure
CPH	chronic persistent hepatitis
CPR	cardiopulmonary resuscitation
CPT	carnitine palmitoyltransferase
Cr	chromium, or creatinine
CRAG	cryptococcal antigen
CREST	calcinosis, Raynaud, oesophageal and gut dysmotility, sclerodactyly, and telangiectasia
CRH	corticotrophin-releasing hormone
CRION	chronic relapsing inflammatory optic neuropathy
CRP	C-reactive protein
CS	Churg–Strauss (syndrome)

CSF	cerebrospinal fluid
CSM	carotid sinus massage
CSU	catheter-specimen urine
CT	computed tomography
CTZ	chemoreceptor trigger zone
Cu	copper
CVA	cerebrovascular accident
CVID	common variable immunodeficiency
CVP	central venous pressure
CVS	cardiovascular system
CXR	chest X-ray
Cyt	cytochrome
Δ	disorder, difference
D+V	diarrhoea and vomiting
DA_2	type 2 dopamine receptor
DAF	decay accelerating factor (CD55)
DAG	diacylglyceride
DBP	diastolic blood pressure
DC	direct current
DCC	deleted in colon cancer gene
DDAVP®	desmopressin (1-deamino-8-D-arginine vasopressin)
ddC	zalcitabine (dideoxycytidine)
DDD	dual-chamber pacemaker
ddI	didanosine (dideoxyinosine)
DEET	diethyltoluamide
def.	deficiency
DEXA	dual-energy X-ray absorptiometry
DH	drug history
DHEA	dehydroepiandrostenedione
DHF	dihydrofolate
DHFR	dihydrofolate reductase
DI	diabetes insipidus
DIC	disseminated intravascular coagulation
DIDMOAD	diabetes insipidus, diabetes mellitus, optic atrophy, deafness + bladder atony
DIP	distal interphalangeal
DKA	diabetic ketoacidosis
DM	diabetes mellitus, dermatomyositis
DMARD	disease-modifying anti-rheumatoid drug
DMD	Duchenne muscular dystrophy
DMSA	dimercaptosuccinic acid
DMT-1	divalent metal transporter
DNA	deoxyribonucleic acid
DNase	deoxyribonuclease
DOC	11-deoxycorticosterone
DOTS	directly observed therapy
DRPLA	dentatorubral-pallidoluysian atrophy
dsDNA	double-stranded DNA
dTMP	deoxythymidine monophosphate
DTPA	diethylenetriamine pentaacetic acid
dUMP	deoxyuridine monophosphate
DVT	deep vein thrombosis
DXM	dexamethasone
DZ	dizygotic
E2	oestradiol
EBV	Epstein–Barr virus
ECC	ecchondroma
ECG	electrocardiography
ECHO	echocardiography
ED	Ehlers–Danlos (syndrome)
EDTA	ethylenediamine tetraacetic acid
EEG	electroencephalography
EF	ejection fraction
EGPA	eosinophilic granulomatosis with polyangiitis
ELISA	enzyme-linked immunosorbant assay
EMD	electromechanical dissociation, also termed pulseless electrical activity (PEA)
EMG	electromyography
EMU	early-morning urine
ENA	extractable nuclear antigen
ENC	enchondroma
ENT	ear, nose and throat
EPO	erythroporetin
ER	endoplasmic reticulum
ERCP	endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography
ESM	ejection systolic murmur
ESR	erythrocyte sedimentation rate
ET	endotracheal
ET	essential thrombocythaemia
ethinylE2	ethinyloestradiol
F6P	fructose-6-phosphate
FAP	familial amyloid polyneuropathies
FB	foreign body
FBC	full blood count
FBPase	fructose-1,2-biphosphatase
FDP	fibrin degradation products
Fe	iron
FEV_1	forced expiratory volume in 1 second
FFA	free fatty acids
FFP	fresh frozen plasma
FH	family history, familial hyperlipidaemia
FiO_2	fractional concentration of oxygen in inspired air
FNA	fine-needle aspiration
FO	faeco-oral
FSGS	focal segmental glomerulosclerosis

FSH	facioscapulohumeral (dystrophy), follicle-stimulating hormone
fT3	free triiodothyronine
fT4	free thyroxine
FTA	fluorescent treponemal assay
FVC	forced vital capacity
G&S	Group and Save
G6Pase	glucose 6-phosphatase
G6PD	G6P dehydrogenase
GBM	glomerular basement membrane
GBS	Guillain–Barré syndrome
GCA	giant-cell arteritis
GCS	Glasgow Coma Scale
G-CSF	granulocyte colony-stimulating factor
GFR	glomerular filtration rate
GGP	glucose-6-phosphate
GGT	γ-glutamyl transpeptidase
GH	growth hormone
GHRH	growth hormone-releasing hormone
GI	gastrointestinal
GIT	gastrointestinal tract
Glu	glucose, glutamate
GLUT	glucose transporter
Gly	glycine
GM-CSF	granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor
GN	glomerulonephritis
GnRH	gonadotrophin-releasing hormone
G-O	gastro-oesophageal
GOR	gastro-oesophageal reflux
GP	glycoprotein
GPA	granulomatosis with polyangiitis
GPI	glycosylphosphatidylinositol
GRA	glucocorticoid-remediable aldosteronism
GTN	glyceryl trinitrate
GTP	guanosine triphosphate
GU	genitourinary
GVHD	graft-versus-host disease
H^+	hydrogen ion (proton)
H_1	type 1 histamine receptor
H_2	hydrogen, type 2 histamine receptor
H_2O_2	hydrogen peroxide
H_2S	hydrogen sulphide
HAART	highly active anti-retroviral therapy
HACEK	*Haemophilus* spp., *Actinobacillus actinomycetemcomitans, Cardiobacterium hominis, Eikenella corrodens* and *Kingella kingae*
HAV	hepatitis A virus
HB	heart block

Hb	haemoglobin
HBV	hepatitis B virus
HCC	hepatocellular carcinoma
HCG	human chorionic gonadotrophin
HCl	hydrochloric acid
HCO_3^-	bicarbonate
HCV	hepatitis C virus
HDL	high-density lipoprotein
HDV	hepatitis D virus
Hep	hepatitis
HFPEP	heart failure with preserved ejection fraction
HFREF	heart failure with reduced ejection fraction
HGPRT	hypoxanthine-guanine phosphoribosyl transferase
HHT	hereditary haemorrhagic telangiectasia
HHV	human herpesvirus
HIV	human immunodeficiency virus
HLA	human leucocyte antigen
HMG CoA	3-hydroxy-3-methylglutaryl coenzyme A
HMMA	4-hydroxy-3-methoxymandelic acid (= VMA)
HMWK	high-molecular-weight kininogen
HNPCC	hereditary non-polyposis colon cancer
HOCM	hypertrophic obstructive cardiomyopathy
HONK	hyperosmolar non-ketoacidosis
HPA	human platelet antigen
hPL	human placental lactogen
HPOA	hypertrophic pulmonary osteoarthropathy
HPV	human papillomavirus
HR	heart rate
HRT	hormone-replacement therapy
HS	heart sounds
HSAN	hereditary sensory and autonomic neuropathy
HSP	Henoch–Schönlein purpura
HSV	herpes simplex virus
HT	hypertension
HTLV	human T-cell lymphotrophic virus
HUS	haemolytic-uraemic syndrome
I/I^-	iodine/iodide
IBD	inflammatory bowel disease
IBM	inclusion body myositis
ICP	intracranial pressure
ICS	intercostal space
IDDM	insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus
IDL	intermediate-density lipoprotein
IF	immunofluorescence
IFN	interferon

Ig	immunoglobulin
IGF	insulin-like growth factor
IHD	ischaemic heart disease
IL-1 (etc.)	interleukin-1 (etc.)
IL-1R (etc.)	interleukin-1 receptor (etc.)
IM/im	intramuscular
IND	indication
INR	International Normalized Ratio
IP	interphalangeal (joint)
IPKD	infant polycystic kidney disease
IPPV	intermittent positive-pressure ventilator
IQ	intelligence quotient
IRMA	intraretinal microvascular abnormalities
ISMN	isosorbide mononitrate
ITP	idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura
ITU	intensive therapy unit
IUCD	intrauterine contraceptive device
IUD	intrauterine (contraceptive) device
IV/iv	intravenous
IVC	inferior vena cava
IVDU	intravenous drug user
IVI	intravenous infusion
IVIg	intravenous immunoglobulin
IVU	intravenous urography
Ix	investigations
JCA	juvenile chronic arthritis
JPS	joint position sense
JVP	jugular venous pressure
K/K^+	potassium ion
KCl	potassium chloride
$KClO_4$	potassium perchlorate
KCO	gas transfer coefficient (diffusion rate) across alveoli
KI	potassium iodide
KOH	potassium hydroxide
L	left
LBBB	left bundle branch block
LA	left atrium
LAD	left atrial dilatation, left axis deviation
LADP	left atrial diastolic pressure
LAP	left atrial pressure
LATS	long-acting thyroid stimulator (anti-TSH-R stimulating antibodies)
LCAT	lecithin:cholesterol acyltransferase
LDH	lactate dehydrogenase
LDL	low-density lipoprotein
LE	lupus erythematosus
LEMS	Lambert–Eaton myasthemic syndrome
LFT	liver function tests
LH	luteinising hormone

LHOA	Leber's hereditary optic atrophy
LHRH	luteinising hormone-releasing hormone
LHS	left hand side
LIF	left iliac fossa
LKM	(antibodies to) liver kidney microsomes
LL	lepromatous leprosy
LMN	lower motor neurone
LMW	low-molecular-weight
LN	lymph node
LOC	loss of consciousness
LOS	lower oesophageal sphincter
LOW	loss of weight
LP	lumbar puncture
LPL	lipoprotein lipase
LSE	left sternal edge
LSH	left side of heart
LTB4	leukotriene B4
LV	left ventricle
LVEDP	left ventricular end-diastolic pressure
LVEDV	left ventricular end-diastolic volume
LVF	left ventricular failure
LVH	left ventricular hypertrophy
LVP	left ventricular pressure
Ly	lymphocyte
mAchR	muscarinic acetylcholine receptor
MAD	mandibular advancement device
MADSAM	multifocal acquired demyelinating sensory and motor (neuropathy)
MAG	myelin-associated glycoprotein
MAG3	mercaptoacetyl triglycine (technetium scan)
MAHA	microangiopathic haemolytic anaemia
MAI	Mycobacterium avium intracelluiare
MALT	mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue
MAO	monoamine oxidase
MAOI	MAO inhibitor
MAT	microscopic agglutination test
Mb	myoglobin
MCHC	mean corpuscular haemoglobin concentration
MCP	metacarpophalangeal
MCTD	mixed connective tissue disease
MOV	mean cell volume
MDI	metered-dose inhaler
MDR	multi-drug resistant
MECG	mixed essential cryoglobulinaemia
MELAS	mitochondrial encephalomyopathy, lactic acidosis and stroke-like episodes
MEN	multiple endocrine neoplasia
met	metastasis
Mg/Mg^{2+}	magnesium

$MgSiO_3$	magnesium silicate
$MgSO_4$	magnesium sulphate
MGUS	monoclonal gammopathy of uncertain significance
MHC-I	major histocompatability complex class 1 molecule
MI	myocardial infarction
MIBG	*m*-iodobenzylguanidine
MIP	maximum inspiratory pressure
MMN	multifocal motor neuropathy with conduction block
MMR	measles, mumps and rubella
MND	motor neurone disease
Mø	macrophage
MODY	maturity-onset diabetes of young
MOPP	mustine, vincristine (Oncovin), procarbazine and prednisolone
MPO	myeloperoxidase
MPTP	1-methyl-4-phenyl-1, 2, 5, 6-tetrahydropyridine
MR	mitral regurgitation, mortality rate
MRA	magnetic resonance angiography
MRI	magnetic resonance venography
mRNA	messenger RNA
MRSA	methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*
MS	mitral stenosis, multiple sclerosis
MSA	multiple systems atrophy
MSU	midstream urine
MTP	metatarsophalangeal
MTX	methotrexate
MuSK	muscle-specific kinase
MV	mitral valve
MVP	mitral valve prolapse
MVR	mitral valve replacement
MZ	monozygotic
N	nerve
N. saline	normal saline
N+V (+D)	nausea and vomiting (and diarrhoea)
N_2	nitrogen
n_2o	nitrous oxide
Na	sodium
NABQI	*N*-acetyl-*p*-benzoquinoneimine
nAchR	nicotinic acetylcholine receptor
NaCl	sodium chloride
$NADH/NAD^+$	nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (reduced/oxidized forms)
NADPH	nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate
NAG	*N*-acetylglucosamine
$NaHCO_3$	sodium bicarbonate
NAM	*N*-acetylmuramie acid

NAP	neutrophil alkaline phosphatase
NARTI	nucleoside analogue reverse transcriptase inhibitor
NBM	nil by mouth
N.chromic	normochromic
N.cytic	normocytic
Neutroø	neutrophil
NG	nasogastric
NGT	nasogastric tube
NH_4^+	ammonium
NIDDM	non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus
NK	neurokinin
NMJ	neuromuscular junction
NNARTI	non-nucleoside-analogue reverse transcriptase inhibitor
NO_2	nitrogen dioxide
NREM	non rapid eye movement
NSAID	non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drug
NSTEMI	non-ST-elevation myocardial infarction
O_2	oxygen
OA	osteoarthritis
OCP	oral contraceptive pill
OGD	oesophagogastroduedenoscopy
OGTT	oral glucose tolerance test
OI	osteogenesis imperfecta
OM	osteomalacia
OSA	obstructive sleep apnoea
OT	occupational therapy
P	phosphorus
P:S	pulmonary-to-systemic
P:SVR	ratio of pulmonary to systemic vascular resistance
PABA	*p*-aminobenzoic acid
$PaCO_2$	partial pressure of carbon dioxide in arterial blood
RAF	platelet activating factor
PAN	polyarteritis nodosa
p-ANCA	perinuclear anti-neutrophil cytoplasmic antibodies
PaO_2	partial pressure of oxygen in arterial blood
PAO_2	alveolar partial pressure of oxygen
PAS	periodic acid-Schiff (stain)
PAWP	pulmonary arterial wedge pressure
PAXR	plain abdominal X-ray
PBC	primary biliary cirrhosis
PBG	porphobilinogen
PC	presenting complaint (used in a loose sense to include signs and abnormal tests)
PCOS	polycystic ovarian syndrome

PCP	*Pneumocystis carinii* pneumonia
PCR	polymerase chain reaction
PCT	proximal convoluted tubule
PCV	packed cell volume
PD	Parkinson disease
PDA	patent ductus arteriosus
PDH	pyruvate dehydrogenase
PE	pulmonary embolism
PEEP	positive end-expiratory pressure
PEFR	peak expiratory flow rate
PEG	percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomy
PEP	phosphoenolpyruvate
PET	positron-emission tomography, pancreatic endocrine tumours
PFK	phosphofructokinase
PGAS	polyglandular autoimmune syndrome
PGE_1	prostaglandin E_1
PGL	persistent generalized lymphadenopathy
PH	personal history (e.g. smoking, alcohol, drugs)
Ph	Philadelphia chromosome
Phaeo.	phaeochromocytoma
PHT	pulmonary hypertension
PI	protease inhibitor
PICA	posterior inferior cerebellar artery
PID	pelvic inflammatory disease
PION	posterior ischaemic optic neuropathy
PIP	proximal interphalangeal
PIP	phosphatidylinositol phosphate
PKA	protein kinase A
PKU	phenylketonuria
Pits	platelets
PM	polymyositis
PMF	progressive massive fibrosis
PMH	past medical history
PML	progressive multifocal leucoencephalopathy
PML	promyelocytic leukaemia
PMP22	peripheral myelin protein 22 gene
PMR	polymyalgia rheumatica
PNET	primitive neuroectodermal tumour
PNH	paroxysmal nocturnal haemoglobinuria
PNS	peripheral nervous system
PO	*per os* (by mouth)
PO_2	partial pressure of oxygen
PO_4^{3-}	phosphate
POEMS	polpolyneuropathy, organomegaly, endocrinopathy, monoclonal gammopathy and skin changes
POTS	postural orthostatic tachycardia syndrome

PP	pancreatic polypeptide
PPD	purified protein derivative
PPI	proton-pump inhibitor
PPi	free (inorganic) pyrophosphate
PPM	permanent pacemaker
PPr	peroxisome proliferator-activated (receptor)
PR	*per rectum* (by/from rectum) and pulmonary regurgitation
PRL	prolactin
Prox.	prophylaxis
PrP	prion protein
PRPP	phosphoribosyl pyrophosphate
PRV	polycythaemia rubra vera
PS	pulmonary stenosis
PSC	primary sclerosing cholangitis
PSM	pansystolic murmur
PSM	progressive supranuclear palsy
pt	patient
PT	prothrombin time
PTH	parathyroid hormone
PTH-rp	parathyroid hormone-related peptide
PTT	partial thromboplastin time
PTU	propylthiouracil
PU	peptic ulcer
PUJ	pelvic-ureteric junction
PUO	pyrexia of unknown origin
PV	*per vaginam* (by/from vagina)
PVD	pulmonary venous dilatation
PXE	pseudoxanthoma elasticum
R	right
RBBB	right bundle branch block
RA	right atrium, rheumatoid arthritis
RAAS	renin–angiotensin–aldosterone system
RAD	right axis deviation
RARA	retinoic acid receptor α
RAST	radio-allergosorbent test
RBC	red blood cells
RCA	right coronary artery
REM	rapid eye movement
RF	radiofemoral
RFLP	restriction fragment length polymorphism
Rh	rhesus
RhF	rheumatoid factor
RHS	right hand side
RIF	right iliac fossa
RIPE	rifampicin, isoniazid, pyrazinamide and ethambutol
RNA	ribonucleic acid
RNase	ribonuclease

RNP	ribonucleoprotein
RPGN	rapidly progressive glomerulonephritis
RPLND	retroperitoneal lymph-node dissection
RPR	rapid plasma reagin
RR	respiratory rate
RS	Reed–Sternberg (cell)
RSE	right sternal edge
RSH	right-sided heart
RSV	respiratory syncytial virus
rT3	reverse triiodothyronine
RTA	renal tubular acidosis
RTI	respiratory tract infection
rtPA	recombinant tissue-type plasminogen activator
RUQ	right upper quadrant
RV	right ventricle, residual volume
RVEDP	right ventricular end-diastolic pressure
RVF	right ventricular failure
RVH	right ventricular hypertrophy
RVOTO	right ventricular outflow tract obstruction
Rx	treatments
SAA	serum amyloid A
SAH	subarachnoid haemorrhage
SALT	speech and language therapy
SAM	systolic anterior motion
SAN	sino-atrial node
SAP	radiolabelled serum amyloid P scintigram (^{99}Tc)
SARS	severe acute respiratory syndrome
SBE	subacute bacterial endocarditis
SBP	systolic blood pressure
SC/sc	subcutaneous
SCA	spinocerebellar ataxia
SCID	severe combined immunodeficiency
SE	side-effects
SEP	serum electrophoresis
SER	smooth endoplasmic reticulum
SERM	selective oestrogen receptor modulator
SH	social history
SHBG	sex hormone-binding globulin
SI	sacro-iliac
SIADH	syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone secretion
SK	streptokinase
SLA	(antibodies to) soluble liver antigen
SLE	systemic lupus erythematosus
SMA	spinal muscular atrophy
SNRI	serotonin and noradrenaline reuptake inhibitor
SO$_2$	sulphur dioxide
SOB	shortness of breath
SOBOE	shortness of breath on exercise
SOD	superoxide dismutase
SR	survival rate
SRP	signal recognition particle
SS-A	Sjögren syndrome antibodies A
SS-B	Sjögren syndrome antibodies B
ssDNA	single-stranded DNA
SSPE	subacute sclerosing panencephalitis
SSRI	selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor
SST	short Synacthen test
STD	sexually transmitted disease
STEMI	ST-elevation myocardial infarction
SUFE	slipped upper femoral epiphysis
SUNCT	short-lasting unilateral neuralgia with conjunctival injection and tearing
SV	supraventricular
SVC	superior vena cava
SVCO	superior vena cava obstruction
SVT	supraventricular tachycardia
Sx	symptoms, signs
syn.	syndrome
T4	thyroxine
TAC	trigeminal-autonomic cephalgia
TAG	triacylglyceride
TAPVD	total anomalous pulmonary venous drainage
TB	tuberculosis
TBB	transbronchial biopsy
TBG	thyroxine-binding globulin
Tc	technetium
TCA	tricyclic antidepressant
TCR	T-cell receptor
TdT	terminal deoxynucleotidyltransferase
TED	transverse elastic graduated
temp	temporary
TENS	transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation
TERT	telomerase reverse transcriptase
TFTs	thyroid function tests
TG	thyroglobulin
TG	triglycerides
TGA	transposition of the great arteries
TGF	transforming growth factor
T$_H$	helper T (cell)
THF	tetrahydrofolate
TIA	transient ischaemic attack
TIBC	total iron-binding capacity
TIN	tubulo-intestinal nephritis
TIPSS	transjugular intrahepatic porto-systemic shunt

TLC	total lung capacity
TLCO	total lung diffusion coefficient
TMJ	temporomandibular joint
TNF	tumour necrosis factor
TnI	troponin I
TOE	transoesophageal echocardiography
top	topical
TORCH	toxoplasmosis, other (e.g. syphilis), rubella, cytomegalovirus, herpes (and hepatitis)
tPA	tissue-type plasminogen activator
TPHA	*Treponema pallidum* haemagglutination assay
TPI	*Treponema pallidum* immobilisation
TPN	total parenteral nutrition
TPR	temperature, pulse and respiration
TR	tricuspid regurgitation
TRH	thyrotrophin-releasing hormone
tRNA	transfer RNA
TSH	thyroid-stimulating hormone
TSH-R	TSH receptor
TT	tuberculoid leprosy
TTP	thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura
TURP	transurethral resection of the prostate
TV	tricuspid valve
TVF	tactile vocal fremitus
TWOC	trial without catheter
TXA_2	thromboxane A_2
U&E	urea and electrolytes
UA	unstable angina
UC	ulcerative colitis
UDP	uridine diphosphate
UIP	usual interstitial pneumonitis
ULN	upper limit of normal
UMN	upper motor neurone
UO	urine output
URT	upper respiratory tract
URTI	upper respiratory tract infection
USS	ultrasound scan
UTI	urinary tract infection
UVA	ultraviolet A
V/Q	ventilation/perfusion
VAD	vincristine, doxorubicin (Adriamycin) and dexamethasone
Val	valine
VDRL	Venereal Diseases Research Laboratory (syphilis serological test)
VE	ventricular extrasystole
VF	ventricular fibrillation
VG	voltage-gated
VHL	von Hippel–Lindau (disease)

ViM	ventral intermediate
VIP	vasoactive intestinal peptide
Vit	vitamin
VLDL	very low-density lipoprotein
VMA	vanillylmandelic acid (= HMMA)
VMN	ventromedial nucleus (of thalamus)
VPB	ventricular premature beat
VRE	vancomycin-resistant enterococci
VSD	ventricular septal defect
VT	ventricular tachycardia
VTEC	verocytotoxicogenetic *Escherichia coli*
VUJ	vesico-ureteric junction
VUR	vesico-ureteric reflux
vWF	von Willebrand factor
VZV	varicella-zoster virus
WBC	white blood cell
WCC	white cell count
WG	Wegener's granulomatosis
WPW	Wolff–Parkinson–White (syndrome)
X-match	cross-match blood type
XL	X-linked
xsome	chromosome
xteristics or xters	characteristics
Zn	zinc
ZN	Ziehl–Neelsen (stain)

Taylor & Francis
Taylor & Francis Group
http://taylorandfrancis.com

INDEX

Numbers

5α reductase deficiency 358

A

abdominal examination 114
abdominal masses 115
abdominal pain 102–3
abscesses
  brain 262
  liver 186, 187
  lung 82–3, 201
  tuberculous 201
absences 283
acarbose 328
achondroplasia 254
acid–base balance 376–7
acidosis
  diabetic ketoacidosis 319
  lactic 319
  metabolic 377
  respiratory 376
acid-suppression 123
acrocyanosis 251
acromegaly 335, 338–9
acropachyderma 345
ACTH 333, 334, 335
actinomycosis 172
acute confusional state 266–7
acute coronary syndromes 24
  management 27
  see also myocardial infarction
acute intermittent porphyria 399
acute kidney injury 402–3
acute leukaemia
  causes 452
  clinical features 452
  investigations 453
  prognosis 455
  treatment 454
acute lymphoblastic leukaemia (ALL) 453
  Philadelphia chromosome 456
acute myeloid leukaemia (AML) 453
acute tubular necrosis 402
Addison disease 350
adenocarcinoma 93
  colorectal 130-1
  gastric 124
  hypercoagulability 485
  lung 93
  oesophageal 117–18
  ovarian 429
  pancreatic 163
adenomatous polyposis coli 130
adenoviruses 176
ADH radioimmunassay 383
adrenal gland
  phaeochromocytoma 368
  steroid synthesis 356
adrenal insufficiency 350–1
adult polycystic kidney disease 423
adult respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS) 91
air bronchogram 61
alcohol amblyopia 304
aldosterone
  hyperaldosteronism 354
  hypoaldosteronism 355, 417
aldosterone resistance 417
alkalosis 376, 377
alpha-thalassaemia 442
Alport disease 254
Alzheimer disease 271
amenorrhoea
  causes 357–8
  clinical features 359
  investigations 360
  treatment 361
  types 359
amino aciduria 416
aminosalicylates 129
amoeboid infections 169
  amoebic dysentery 186–7
  liver abscess 186
amylin 470
amyloidosis 468, 470–1
amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS) 294, 295
anaemia 432–3
  aplastic 435
  causes of bone marrow failure 434
  chronic kidney disease 406
  haemolytic 436–9
  megaloblastic 446–7
  sickle cell 440–1
  thalassaemia 442–3
anaphylaxis 29
androgen insensitivity syndrome 358
androgen resistance 363
angina 35
anion gap 377
anisocytosis 441
ankylosing spondylitis 228, 230, 257
anterior ischaemic optic neuropathy (AION) 303
anterior-horn cell diseases 295
antibiotics 174–5
anti-coagulation 97
antifibrinolytics 489
anti-GBM disease 414
anti-neutrophil cytoplasmic antibodies (ANCA) 239
anti-nuclear antibodies (ANA) 239, 241
antiphospholipid syndrome 238, 485
aortic regurgitation 6, 9
aortic stenosis 6, 8
apex beat 5
aphthous ulcers 109
aplastic anaemia 433, 435
APUDomas 368
  carcinoid tumours 370–1
arrhythmias
  atrial fibrillation 18–19
  bradycardia 22–3
  complicating myocardial infarction 25–6
  tachycardia 16–17, 20–1
arterial thrombosis 484
arthritis
  crystal arthropathies 234–7
  diabetic 320
  osteoarthritis 220–3
  rheumatoid 224–7
  septic 232–3
  seronegative arthropathies 228–31
arthroplasty 223
arthroscopy 223
asbestosis 76
Ascaris lumbricoides 214
ascites 147, 150–1
Asherman syndrome 358
asthma
  acute severe attacks 70–1
  chronic 64–5
  drugs used 68
  general management 66–7
  side-effects of medication 69
ataxia 279
ataxia telangiectasia 477
atlanto-axial dislocation 225
atrial fibrillation (AF) 16, 17, 18–19
atrial flutter 16, 17
atrial septal defect (ASD) 48
atrophic thyroiditis 340
atypical mycobacteria 204
auscultation
  abdomen 114
  heart 5
auto-antibodies 239
  megaloblastic anaemia 447
  scleroderma 243
  Sjögren syndrome 245
  systemic lupus erythematosus 241
  thyroid disease 342, 346
  vasculitides 249
autoimmune anaemias 437
  investigations 439
autoimmune diseases
  auto-antibodies 239
  classification 238
  polyglandular autoimmune syndromes 373
autoimmune glomerulonephritis 414, 415
autoimmune hepatitis 159
autoimmune myositis 246–7
autoimmune thyroiditis 340, 344
AV nodal re-entry (AVNRE) tachycardia 16
axis, ECG 13

B

babesiosis 169
back pain 256–7
bacterial infections 170, 172–3
  borreliosis 208

  food poisoning and gastroenteritis 180–5
  genital infections 188-91
  leprosy 205
  leptospirosis 209
  mycobacteria 204
  opportunistic 198, 199
  pneumonia 178-9
  rickettsia 210-11
  septic arthritis 232
  syphilis 206-7
  tuberculosis 200-3
Bacteroides species 173
balance, impaired 281
  vertigo 306
Balantidium coli 187
Barrett's oesophagus 117, 118
Bartter syndrome 354
B-cell disorders 476, 477
Behçet syndrome 109
Bell's palsy 309
benign paroxysmal positional vertigo (BPPV) 306
beta$_2$-agonists 68
  side-effects 69
beta-thalassaemia 442
bicarbonaturia 416
biguanides 329
bile salts 132, 133
bilharzia (schistosomiasis) 168, 217
bilirubin metabolism 141
bird fancier's lung 77
bisphosphonates 389, 393
blackouts 280–1
bleeding
  disseminated intravascular coagulation 486–7
  haematemesis 112
  haematuria 408, 409
  haemophilias 488–9
  haemostasis 478–9
  platelet disorders 480–1
  rectal 113
blood pressure
  hypertension 30–1
  hypotension 28
blood transfusion complications 490–1
blood-group mismatch 490
bone
  osteomalacia and rickets 390–1
  osteoporosis 392–3
  Paget disease 394–5
bone cysts 258
bone marrow aspiration, acute leukaemia 453
bone marrow failure
  acute leukaemia 452
  aplastic anaemia 433, 435
  causes 434
  microcytic anaemia 432
  thrombocytopenia 480, 483
  treatment 454
bone marrow transplantation 454
bone mineral density 392
bone sclerosis 259
bone tumours 259
borreliosis 170, 208
botulism 298, 299
bowel obstruction 103
brachial plexus lesions 290
bradycardia 22–3, 26
brain abscess 262
bronchiectasis 53, 80–1
bronchoalveolar cell carcinoma 93
broncho-pleural fistula 83
Budd–Chiari syndrome 146, 148, 153
Buerger disease 248
bulbospinal muscular atrophy (Kennedy disease) 294
bundle branch block 15, 17, 20
byssiniosis 77

C

café-au-lait spots 310
calcium balance
  hypercalcaemia 388–9
  hypocalcaemia 386–7
  vitamin D 390
calcium pyrophosphate dihydrate crystal deposition disease 237
Campylobacter jejuni 180
candidiasis 169
  chronic mucocutaneous 477
  opportunistic infections 198, 199
capillary-blood glucose monitoring 323
caput medusa 147
carcinoid syndrome 370
carcinoid tumours (APUDomas) 93, 370–1
cardiac tamponade 41
cardiology 2–49
  acute coronary syndromes 24–7
  aortic regurgitation 9
  aortic stenosis 8
  atrial fibrillation 18–19
  blackouts 280, 281
  bradycardia 22–3
  cardiomyopathy 44–5
  chest pain 2–3
  chronic kidney disease 405
  congenital heart disease 46–9
  diabetic complications 320
  ECG interpretation 12–15
  examination 4–5
  heart failure 32–3
  heart murmurs 5–7
  infective endocarditis 38–9
  mitral regurgitation 11
  mitral stenosis 10
  myocarditis 42
  myxoma 43
  pericardial disease 40–1
  rheumatic fever 36–7
  tachycardia 16–17
  treatments 34–5
  ventricular tachycardia 20–1
cardiology mnemonics
  ALAS I'M TRAPPED 25
  ATRIAL SWITCH 18
  CARNAGE 2, 31
  DILATED 45
  DIVACOP 32
  DIVISIONS 23
  FLECKS 43
  I AM HURTIN' 40
  I'M QVICK 21
  PASSES 36–7
  PREDICTION 30
  SINE 45
cardiomyopathy 32, 44–5
Carey–Coombs' murmur 37
Carney complex 338, 372
carpal tunnel syndrome 252–3
central pontine myelinosis 379
central retinal vessel occlusion 302
cerebellar diseases 278–9
cerebello-pontine angle lesions 308, 309
cerebral vein thrombosis 485
cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) analysis 263
  Guillain–Barré syndrome 289
cerebrotendinous xanthomatosis 396
cestodes (tapeworms) 168, 216
chancroid 190, 191
Chediak–Higashi syndrome 476, 480, 483
chemotherapy
  acute leukaemia 454
  chronic lymphocytic leukaemia 461
  Hodgkin lymphoma 463
  multiple myeloma 467
  non-Hodgkin lymphoma 465
chest examination
  cardiology 4
  respiratory 52
chest pain 2–3
chest X-ray patterns 60–1
  lung abscess 83
  occupational lung diseases 76–7
  pleural effusion 89
  pneumothorax 87
  tuberculosis 202
chicken pox (varicella) 193
Child–Pugh score 148
Chlamydia species 170
  genital infections 189
  pneumonia 178
cholecystitis 165
cholera 183
chondrosarcoma 259
chorda tympani 308
chorea 274
chronic bronchitis 72
chronic disease, anaemia of 432, 433, 434
chronic granulomatous disease (CGD) 476
chronic kidney disease
  causes 404
  clinical features 405
  investigations 406
  treatment 407
chronic liver disease 154–5
chronic lymphocytic leukaemia (CLL) 460–1
chronic mucocutaneous candidiasis 477
chronic myeloid leukaemia 456–7
chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) 72–3

chronic relapsing inflammatory optic neuropathy (CRION) 303
Churg–Strauss syndrome *see* eosinophilic granulomatosis with polyangiitis
cirrhosis 155
claudication
  neurogenic 257
  peripheral vascular disease 320
clinical chemistry
  acid–base balance 376–7
  diabetes insipidus 382–3
  hypercalcaemia 388–9
  hyperkalaemia 384
  hyperlipidaemia 396–7
  hypernatraemia 381
  hypocalcaemia 386–7
  hypokalaemia 385
  hyponatraemia 378–9
  osteomalacia 390–1
  osteoporosis 392–3
  Paget disease 394–5
  polyuria and polydipsia 380
  porphyria 398–9
  rickets 390–1
clinical chemistry mnemonics
  AIP 399
  CaRDIac 377
  CARDIAC 384, 385
  DIVINITY 382
  DRIED 381
  I AM 386
  INVITE IS FREE 376
  KILLER TRIGGER 377
  OX CHOPS 397
  PCT 399
  PEARLS 396
  PENSIONERS 392
  PINT 378
  PINTS 379
  PTH 388
  PVC BONES 395
  SLAP PUNCH 398
  STONES 388
  TUBULAR pH 382
  VIBRATIN' 386
closed-angle glaucoma 302
Clostridium species 172
  botulism 298
  C. difficile 185
  food poisoning 180
clotting factors 478–9
clotting times 489
clubbing 54
cluster headaches 264, 265
coagulopathy 483
  disseminated intravascular coagulation 486–7
cobalamin *see* vitamin B_{12}
coeliac disease 134–5
coin lesions, CXR 60
cold agglutinins 439
cold sores 194
collagen defects 254
collapsed lung 53, 61
colorectal carcinoma 130–1
coma
  causes 268
  management 269
common variable immunodeficiency 476
complement deficiencies 476
complex partial seizures 283
COMT inhibitors 273
congenital adrenal hyperplasia 355, 358, 359
congenital dysplasia of hip 221
congenital heart disease
  cyanotic 46–7
  non-cyanotic 48–9
congenital myasthenia 298
congenital syphilis 207
connective tissue diseases
  classification 238
  scleroderma 242–3
  Sjögren syndrome 244–5
  systemic lupus erythematosus 240–1
consciousness 268
consolidation 53, 61
constipation 105
  bowel obstruction 103
constrictive pericarditis 41
continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP) 95
Coombs' test 141,161, 240, 241, 432, 439, 461, 463, 481, 490, 491
cord compression 292
cortisol, Cushing syndrome 300, 352–3
costochondritis 229
Courvoisier's Law 115
Coxiella burnetii 210
creatinine clearance 406
Creutzfeldt–Jacob disease (CJD) 171
Crigler–Najjar syndrome 140
Crohn disease 126–9
cryoglobulinaemia 251
cryptorchidism 426
crystal arthropathies
  gout 234–6
  pyrophosphate arthropathy 237
Cullen's sign 137, 483
Cushing syndrome 300, 352–3
cutaneous larva migrans 215
cyanosis 55
cystic fibrosis 84–5
cystinosis 420, 421
cysts
  ovarian 428
  renal 422–3

D

'dawn phenomenon', insulin therapy 327
de Quervain's thyroiditis 344, 348
deafness 307
delayed puberty 359, 366–7
dementia 270–1
demyelination 293, 296
depot Synacthen test 351
dermatomyositis 246
desmopressin (DDAVP) 489
dexamethasone tests 353
diabetes insipidus 334, 380, 381, 382–3, 417
diabetes mellitus
  acromegaly 339
  causes 314
  chronic complications 320–1
  conservative treatment 324
  diagnosis 322
  hyperosmolar hyperglycaemic state 318
  hypoglycaemia 330
  insulin physiology 315
  insulin side-effects 327
  insulin treatment 326
  lactic acidosis 319
  monitoring 323
  oral hypoglycaemics 328–9
  treatment of complications 325
diabetic ketoacidosis 316–17
dialysis 407
Diamond–Blackfan syndrome 435
diarrhoea 104
  food poisoning 180
  gastroenteritis 181–7
diet, in diabetes mellitus 324
diffusion rate (transfer factor, KCO) 58–9
DiGeorge syndrome 477
dilated cardiomyopathy 45
dipeptidyl peptidase-4 (DPP-4) inhibitors 329
disc prolapse 257
disease-modifying anti-rheumatoid drugs (DMARDs) 227
disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC) 486–7
distal renal tubular disease 417
dizziness 281
dopamine agonists 273
  in acromegaly 339
  in hyperprolactinaemia 337
dorsal-root ganglionopathy 297
drapanocytes 441
Dressler syndrome 26
drug ladders
  asthma 67
  COPD 73
dry eyes and mouth 245
dual-energy X-ray absorptiometry (DEXA) 393
Dubin–Johnson syndrome 140
dumping syndrome 331
duodenal ulcers 120–3
dysdiadochokinesis 279
dysentery *see* gastroenteritis
dysgerminoma 428
dyskeratosis congenita 435
dysphagia 110–11
dystonia 275

E

ECG (electrocardiogram) interpretation 12–15
  hyperkalaemia 384
  hypokalaemia 385

ectopics 12
eczema herpeticum 194
Ehlers–Danlos syndrome 254
ehrlichiosis 211
Eisenmenger syndrome 47–49, 55, 458
elastic tissue defects 255
elliptocytosis 436
emphysema 72
empty sella syndrome 332
empyema 83
encephalitis, herpes simplex 194
enchondroma 258
endocrinology
  acromegaly 338–9
  adrenal insufficiency 350–1
  amenorrhoea 357–61
  Cushing syndrome 352–3
  delayed puberty 366–7
  diabetes mellitus 314–31
  goitre 348
  hypermineralocorticoidism 354–5
  hyperprolactinaemia 336–7
  hyperthyroidism 344–7
  hypopituitarism 332–5
  hypothyroidism 340–3
  male infertility 363
  male sexual problems 362
  multiple endocrine neoplasia 372
  neuroendocrine tumours 368–71
  polyglandular autoimmune syndromes 373
  precocious puberty 364–5
  steroid synthesis 356
  thyroid tumours 349
endocrinology mnemonics
  4 Cs 323
  ADDISON'S 350
  CANNONICAL 320
  CAPITALS 368
  DELAYS 324
  DIVINE 364, 366
  DIVINITY 332, 357, 363
  DKA 317
  FASTiNG 331
  FIVE HT AMINE 370
  GAIN OF FUNCTION 344, 348
  GAMES 365
  GIANT CONK 339
  GIVES GAS 369
  GLARGINE 327
  GLUCOSE AMINO ACIDS 352
  HATRED 340, 348
  HHS 318
  IATROGENIC 330
  MAMA 370
  PAPa's FAMiLY 349
  PATENTS 362
  PECTORALIs 362
  PEPSI & COKE 314
  PGAS 373
  SEX GITAR 333, 334
  SHOWING OFF 341, 345
  STRICT 346
  TAINT 358, 363, 367
  TOAD PGAS 373
  WASHED OUT 351
endothelial injury 484
Entamoeba histolytica 169, 186–7
enteric fever 182
Enterobacteria 173, 174
Enterobius vermicularis (pinworm/threadworm) 214
enteropathic arthritis 228
enteroviruses 177
enthesopathy 229
eosinophilia 450
eosinophilic granulomatosis with polyangiitis 64, 239, 248
epidermolysis bullosa 254
epilepsy 281, 282-3
Epstein–Barr virus 195
erythema infectiosum 193
erythrocytosis 458
erythromelalgia 251
escape beats 14
Escherichia coli 184
Ewart's sign 41
Ewing (reticular cell) sarcoma 259
exophthalmos 345
exudates 150
  causes 88, 90
eyes
  dry 245
  see also ophthalmopathy; optic atrophy; optic neuritis; retinopathy

F
facial examination 4, 52, 114, 142
factor IX deficiency (haemophilia B, Xmas disease) 489
factor VIII concentrate 489
factor VIII deficiency (haemophilia A) 488–9
factor XI deficiency 489
factor XIII deficiency 489
falciparum malaria 212, 213
Fallot's tetralogy 46–7
familial combined hyperlipidaemia 396
familial dysbetalipoproteinaemia 396
familial hypercholesterolaemia 396
familial hypertriglyceridaemia 396
familial Mediterranean fever 470
Fanconi syndrome 416, 435
farmer's lung 77
fatty change, liver 155
Felty syndrome 224
fibrillin 255
fibromas
  neurofibromatosis 310
  ovarian 428
filariasis 168, 215
flatworms (trematodes) 168
flow–volume loops 58–9
fluid overload 490
flukes (trematodes) 217
flushing 370
focal segmental glomerulonephritis 415
folate deficiency 433
  megaloblastic anaemia 446–7
folate metabolism 444–5
follicular adenoma 344
follicular carcinoma 349
food poisoning 104, 180
foot
  osteoarthritis 222
  rheumatoid arthritis 225
  ulcers 321, 325
forced expiratory volume in 1 second (FEV_1) 58–9
forced vital capacity (FVC) 58–9
Friedrich's sign 41
frontotemporal dementia 271
FSH 360
fungi 169
  opportunistic infections 198, 199
  see also candidiasis

G
Gaisbock syndrome 458
gait disorders 291
galactorrhoea 337
gallbladder, palpable 115
gallstones 164–5
Gardner syndrome 130
gastric neoplasia 124–5
gastric ulcers 120–3
gastrinoma 369
gastroenteritis 104, 181
  cholera 183
  Clostridium difficile 185
  Escherichia coli 184
  protozoal 186–7
  Salmonella 182
  Shigella 185
  Yersinia 185
gastrointestinal medicine
  abdominal examination 114
  abdominal masses 115
  abdominal pain 102–3
  ascites 150–1
  autoimmune hepatitis 159
  chronic liver disease 154–5
  coeliac disease 134–5
  colorectal carcinoma 130–1
  constipation 105
  diarrhoea 104
  dysphagia 110–11
  gallstones 164–5
  gastric neoplasia 124–5
  haematemesis 112
  haemochromatosis 160
  infective hepatitis 156–7
  inflammatory bowel disease 126–9
  jaundice 140–1
  liver failure 142–5, 152–3
  liver tumours 162
  malabsorption 132–3
  nausea and vomiting 106–7
  oesophageal carcinoma 118–19
  oesophagitis 116–17
  oral ulceration 109
  pancreatitis, acute 136–7
  pancreatitis, chronic 138–9
  peptic ulcers 120–3
  portal hypertension 146–9
  primary biliary cholangitis 158
  rectal bleeding 113

  Wilson disease 161
gastrointestinal mnemonics
  7As 124
  A123 107
  ABC 127
  ACUTE 137
  AFFLICTS 164
  AGITATES 138
  AGITATES ME 136
  BIG METS 162
  BIG SPAN 115
  BOSSES 105
  BULGIN' 110
  BURNS 117
  CLANKING 161
  CRAGGY 132
  DRIPPING TAPS 113
  FACE 147
  FOAM BC 127
  GIN & TO(O)NICS 106
  GIT SCARS 120
  GLIADINS 134
  HASSLES 127
  HEIGHT(E)N 147
  HIDDEN 130
  HOPING 122
  INTERNAL 109
  INTERNALS 108
  INTRAHEPATIC 140
  INVIS(i)BLE 115
  IRRITANTS 116
  LAST 157
  MAIN 153, 155
  MEALS 160
  OPEN IT WIDE 105
  PANCR^{3}EAS 137
  PAT PINTS 150
  PBC 158
  PHONE 115
  PINCHES 146
  POTENTIAL 102
  REALMS 135, 143
  SINS 163
  SNACKS 129
  SNAGS 156
  SOILINGS 104
  TABOOS 115, 145, 152
  VANISHING POO 103
  VINTAGE 112
  WATCH 145, 154
gastro-oesophageal reflux (GOR) 116
gelsolin 470
genital ulceration 190–1
germ-cell tumours
  ovarian 428
  testicular 426
giant cell arteritis 248, 264, 265
Giardia lamblia 169, 187
Gilbert syndrome 140
Gitelman syndrome 354
glandular fever 195
glaucoma
  chronic open-angle 304
  closed-angle 302
glomerulonephritis 414–15
  causes 402
  IgA nephropathy 409
glucagon 331
glucagon-like peptide-1 (GLP-1) agonists 329
glucagonoma 369
glucose
  diabetes diagnosis 322
  diabetes monitoring 323
glucose regulation 315
glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase (G6PD) deficiency 436, 476
  investigations 439
gluten-free diet 135
glycated haemoglobin (HbA1c) 323
glycogen storage disease 330
glycosuria 416
goitre 348
  hyperthyroidism 344, 345
  hypothyroidism 341
gonadorelin test 360
gonococci 174
gonorrhoea 189
Goodpasture syndrome 414
Gottron's papules 246
gout
  causes 234
  clinical features 235
  epidemiology 235
  investigations 236
  treatment 236
granuloma inguinale 190, 191
granulomatosis with polyangiitis 248
granulosa-cell tumours 428
Graves disease 344
  clinical features 345
  ophthalmopathy 347
Grey–Turner's sign 137
growth hormone
  acromegaly 338–9
  physiology 338
growth hormone deficiency 333, 334
  treatment 335
Guillain–Barré syndrome 289
Guinea worm 168, 215
gynaecomastia 362

H

haem synthetic pathway 398
haematemesis 112
haematocrit (PCV) 432
haematology
  acute leukaemia 452–5
  anaemia 432–3
  aplastic anaemia 435
  blood transfusion complications 490–1
  bone marrow failure 434
  chronic lymphocytic leukaemia 460–1
  chronic myeloid leukaemia 456–7
  disseminated intravascular coagulation 486–7
  folate and vitamin B12 metabolism 444–5
  haemolytic anaemias 436–9
  haemophilias 488–9
  Hodgkin lymphoma 462–3
  hyperviscosity 469
  hyposplenism 472–3
  immunodeficiency 474–7
  leucocytosis 450–1
  lymphoproliferative disease 448
  megaloblastic anaemia 446–7
  multiple myeloma 466–7
  non-Hodgkin lymphoma 464–5
  paraproteinaemia 468
  platelet disorders 480–1
  polycythaemia 458–9
  purpura 482–3
  sickle cell anaemia 440–1
  splenomegaly 449
  thalassaemia 442–3
  thrombosis 484–5
haematology mnemonics
  ADVISE OR HEPARINISE 484–5
  AGAMMAGLOB 476
  APLASTIC 433, 435
  BIG GLANDS 448
  BIG SPAAN 449
  BLACKING OUT 440
  BLOBBIES 460, 462, 464
  CABOT'S 472
  CATCH 22 477
  CLAMP 468
  INFECTION 474
  INNATE 450
  MAIL 468
  MARMALADE 433
  MEGALOBLAST 446
  NIPPY 437
  NOTICE 486
  ORGANISED 471
  POPULATION 466
  PRV GO 459, 469
  SAVAGE 456
  SHARP 440
  SPLIT 439
  SPLITTING 433
  STABBINGS 480, 483
  STAINS 488
  TAN 437
  TELANG 477
  TRIGGER 452
  VANQUISHED 480, 483
  VIGILANT 482, 483
haematuria 408
  IgA nephropathy 409
  thin basement membrane disease 409
haemochromatosis 160
haemodialysis 407
haemoglobin, definition of anaemia 432
haemoglobin abnormalities 55
haemoglobinopathies 436
  hyposplenism 472
  investigations 439
  microcytic anaemia 432
  normocytic anaemia 433
  sickle cell anaemia 440–1
  thalassaemia 442–3
haemolytic anaemias 433

  - acquired 437
  - clinical features 438
  - hereditary 436
  - investigations 438–9
  - treatment 439
- haemolytic transfusion reactions 490, 491
- haemolytic–uraemic syndrome (HUS) 184, 412
- haemophilias 483, 488–9
- haemorrhagic colitis 184
- haemorrhagic stroke 286–7
- haemorrhoids 147
- haemostasis 478
  - control of 479
- hamartomas 93
- hands
  - clubbing 54
  - dermatomyositis 246
  - examination 4, 52, 114, 142
  - osteoarthritis 222
  - rheumatoid arthritis 225
  - wasting 253, 290
- Harrison's sulcus 70
- Hashimoto thyroiditis 340, 342
- Hb SC 441
- headache
  - acute 262–3
  - chronic 264–5
  - pituitary tumours 333
- Heaf test 202
- hearing impairment 307
- heart
  - acute coronary syndromes 24–7
  - aortic regurgitation 9
  - aortic stenosis 8
  - bradycardia 22–3
  - cardiology examination 4–5
  - cardiomyopathy 44–5
  - congenital heart disease 46–9
  - ECG interpretation 12–15
  - infective endocarditis 38–9
  - mitral regurgitation 11
  - mitral stenosis 10
  - myocarditis 42
  - myxoma 43
  - pericardial disease 40–1
  - rheumatic fever 36–7
  - tachycardia 16–21
- heart block 15, 17, 22
- heart failure 32–3
  - treatments 35
- heart murmurs 5–7
- heart rhythm 14
- heart sounds 5
- heavy chain disease 468
- *Helicobacter pylori* 120, 123, 173
- hemicrania continua 265
- Henoch–Schönlein purpura 248
- hepatitis 155
  - autoimmune 159
  - infective 156–7
- hepatocellular carcinoma 162
- hepatomegaly 115, 147
  - amyloidosis 471
- hepatorenal syndrome 412
- hereditary elliptocytosis 436
- hereditary non-polyposis colon cancer (HNPCC) 130
- hereditary spherocytosis 432, 436
  - investigations 439
- hereditary stomatocytosis 436
- herpes viruses 176
  - genital infections 191
  - herpes simplex 194
- hiatus hernia 116
- high output heart failure 32
- highly-active anti-retroviral therapy (HAART) 199
- hip
  - osteoarthritis 222
  - rheumatoid arthritis 225
- hirsutism 359
  - treatment 361
- histamine (H_2) receptor antagonists 123
- HIV infection
  - clinical features 198
  - natural history 197
  - pathogenesis 196
  - treatment 199
- Hodgkin lymphoma 462–3
- homocysteine metabolism 445
- hookworm 168, 214
- hormone replacement
  - hypopituitarism 335
  - post-menopausal 393
- Howell–Jolly bodies 441
- Huntington disease 274
- hyperaldosteronism 300, 377
- hyperandrogenism 357
- hypercalcaemia 388–9
  - renal stones 420, 421
- hypercalciuria 420
- hypercholesterolaemia 396–7
- hypercoagulability 485
- hypergammaglobulinaemia 476
- hyperglycaemia
  - diabetic ketoacidosis 316–17
  - hyperosmolar hyperglycaemic state 318
- hyperkalaemia 384
- hyperlipidaemia 396–7
- hypernatraemia 381
- hyperosmolar hyperglycaemic state (HHS) 318
- hyperparathyroidism 388, 389
- hyperprolactinaemia 333, 334, 336–7
- hypersensitivity pneumonitis 77
- hypertension 30–1
  - renovascular disease 412
  - treatments 34
- hypertensive crisis 262
- hyperthyroidism
  - causes 344
  - clinical features 345
  - complications 347
  - investigations 346
  - neonatal thyrotoxicosis 347
  - treatment 346
- hypertonic saline IV challenge 383
- hypertriglyceridaemia 396–7
- hypertrophic cardiomyopathy (HOCM) 44
- hyperuricaemia 234-6, 420
- hyperviscosity 469
  - acute leukaemia 452
- hypoalbuminaemia 410
- hypo-aldosteronism 355
- hypocalcaemia 386–7
- hypocalciuric hypercalcaemia 388
- hypoglycaemia 330
- hypogonadotrophic hypogonadism 337
- hypokalaemia 377, 385
- hyponatraemia 378–9
- hypopituitarism
  - causes 332
  - clinical features 333
  - investigations 334
  - treatment 335
- hyposplenism 472–3
- hypotension
  - postural 280, 281
  - shock 28–9
- hypothyroidism
  - causes 340
  - clinical features 341
  - investigations 342
  - myxoedematous coma 343
  - treatment 342
- hypovolaemia 378

I

- idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis 75
- IgA deficiency 476
- IgA nephropathy 409, 415
- IgG deficiency 476
- immune-mediated anaemias 437
  - investigations 439
- immunocompromised patients, pneumonia 179
- immunodeficiency
  - causes 474
  - clinical features 475
  - primary 476–7
  - transfusion reactions 491
- immunodeficiency with hyperimmunoglobin M 476
- immunosuppressants, in inflammatory bowel disease 129
- impotence 362
- inclusion body myositis 247
- infant polycystic kidney disease 423
- infectious disease mnemonics
  - BLAND 172
  - BOLT 170
  - CHAIN FREE 177
  - CIRCULAR 179
  - CLOUDY AGAIN 206
  - CRAPPERS 189
  - FACE 193
  - FALCIPARUMS 212
  - FAR 212
  - FASCINATE 178
  - FIGhTS 215
  - FRICTION 210, 211
  - GO SALMONELLA 182
  - GO SOON 194
  - GOA 189
  - GOES SLOWLY 195

  GUCCI'S VAGINA 188
  MEASLES 192
  MOURNS 209
  MUMPS 192
  OPERA 177
  PANICKER 178
  PhD PETS 168
  PITHY 181, 184
  PSEUDO 173
  QuaRTILES 170, 210
  RANSACKS 201
  RIPPERS 203
  RUBELLA 192
  SCARED SLOUCHERS 189
  SCOFFs HEMP 168, 217
  SHAGGIN' SCARS 190
  SHIGA 185
  SHOCK 207
  SICk 180
  SNACK 208
  SNAKE 214
  SNAKE FIGHTS 168
  SORE 193
  SPY SEEKS GBH, PVC & L 173
  TAX SLUM 170, 204
  VERY SICk 181
infectious diseases
  blood transfusion-related 491
  borreliosis 208
  cestodes (tapeworms) 216
  Epstein–Barr virus 195
  food poisoning 180
  gastroenteritis 181–7
  genital 188–91
  herpes simplex virus 194
  HIV 196–9
  hypercoagulability 485
  in immunodeficiency 475
  leprosy 205
  leptospirosis 209
  malaria 212–13
  mycobacteria 204
  nematodes (roundworms) 214–15
  pneumonia 178–9
  rickettsia 210–11
  syphilis 206–7
  trematodes (flukes) 217
  treponemal infections, non-venereal 207
  tuberculosis 200–3
  viral exanthema 192–3
infectious organisms 168–71
  bacteria 172–3
  viruses 176-7
infective endocarditis 38–9
infective hepatitis 156–7
infertility
  amenorrhoea 357–61
  male 363
inflammatory bowel disease 126–9
inhalers 66
insects 168
insulin
  in hyperkalaemia 384
  physiology 315
  side-effects 327
insulin regimens 326
insulin resistance 314
  acromegaly 339
insulin types 326
insulinoma 330, 331, 369
intention tremor 279
intersex 358
intracranial pressure 262, 264
  raised 303, 305
iron deficiency 432
iron overload 491
irritable bowel syndrome 104
ischaemic stroke 284–5
ischemic ulcers 321

J

Jansen syndrome 388
jaundice 140–1
Job syndrome 476
jugular venous pressure (JVP) 5
juvenile polyposis 130

K

Kallman syndrome 357, 359, 366
Kaposi's sarcoma 61, 113, 118, 176, 179, 198
Kartagener syndrome 363
Kawasaki disease 248
Kayser–Fleischer rings 161
Kennedy disease (bulbospinal muscular atrophy) 294
kidney *see* renal medicine
Klebsiella 178
Klinefelter syndrome 367
knee
  osteoarthritis 222
  rheumatoid arthritis 225
Kostmann syndrome 476
Kuru 171
Kussmaul breathing 317
Kussmaul's sign 5, 41
Kveim test 79

L

labyrinthitis 306
lactic acidosis 319
Lambert–Eaton myasthenic syndrome 298, 299
large cell lung carcinoma 93
lateral sclerosis 295
Lawrence–Moon–Biedl syndrome 366
laxatives 105
L-DOPA 273
lead poisoning 432
lead positions, ECG 13
Leber hereditary optic atrophy (LHOA) 304
Legionella pneumophila 178
leishmaniasis 169
lentiviruses 177
leprosy 205
leptospirosis 209
Lesch–Nyhan syndrome 234
leucocytosis 450–1
leukaemia
  acute 452–5
  chronic lymphocytic 460–1
  chronic myeloid 456–7
leukodystrophies 304
leukoplakia 191
leukotriene receptor antagonists 68
  side-effects 69
Lewy body disease 271
Leydig-cell tumours 427, 428
lice 168
  pubic 191
lichen sclerosus et atrophicus 191
lipid disorders 396–7
lipid-lowering therapy 397
  in diabetes mellitus 324
liver disorders
  abscesses 186
  tumours 162
  see also hepatitis; hepatomegaly
liver failure 142–3
  acute 152–3
  coagulopathy 483
  management 144
liver transplant 145
lobectomy 53
lower motor neurone lesions 288, 291
  facial nerve 308–9
lumbar puncture 263
  Guillain–Barré syndrome 289
lumbar spinal stenosis (neurogenic claudication) 257
lung abscess 82–3
lung carcinoma 92–3
lungs
  patterns of disease 53
  see also respiratory examination; respiratory medicine
Lyme disease 170, 208
lymphadenopathy
  amyloidosis 471
  HIV infection 197
  Hodgkin lymphoma 462
  non-Hodgkin lymphoma 464
lymphocytosis 451
lymphogranuloma venereum 190, 191
lymphoma
  Hodgkin 462–3
  non-Hodgkin 464–5
  testicular 427
  thyroid 349
lymphoproliferative disease 448, 468
Lynch syndrome 130

M

macrocytic anaemia 433
  megaloblastic 446–7
macrovascular complications of diabetes 320, 325
macular degeneration 302
malabsorption 132–3, 433
maladie de Roger 49
malaria 169, 186, 212–13
male infertility 363
male sexual problems 362
Mallory–Weiss tear 112
Mantoux test 202
MAO-B inhibitors 273

Marfan syndrome 255
mast cell stabilizers 68
  side-effects 69
McCune–Albright syndrome 338, 344, 365
measles 192
mechanical ventilation 91
Meckel's diverticulum 103, 113, 120
median nerve compression 290
mediastinal masses 61
medication-overuse headache 264
medullary thyroid carcinoma 349
medullary-cystic disease 422
medullary-sponge kidneys 422
megaloblastic anaemia 433, 446–7
Melkersson syndrome 309
membranoproliferative glomerulonephritis 415
membranous glomerulonephritis 415
Ménétrier disease 124
Ménière disease 306
meningitis 262
  herpes simplex 194
meningococci 174
mesothelioma 76
metabolic acidosis 376, 377
metastases
  bone 257, 258
  liver 162
  lung 92, 93
  from ovarian tumours 428
metformin 329
microcytic anaemia 432
  haemolytic 436
microvascular complications of diabetes 320, 325
migraine 264, 265
miliary nodules 60
minimal-change glomerulonephritis 415
mites 168
mitral regurgitation 7, 11
mitral stenosis 7, 10
monoclonal gammopathy (paraproteinaemia) 468
monocytosis 451
monomelic atrophy 294
mononeuropathies 290
mononeuropathy multiplex 297
motor neurone disease 294, 295
mouth, dry 245, 308
Muckle–Wells syndrome 470
multiple endocrine neoplasia 372
  MEN-1 338, 369
  MEN-2 349, 368
multiple myeloma 466–7
mumps 192
muscarinic antagonists 68
  side-effects 69
muscular dystrophies 300, 301
myasthenia gravis 298, 299
mycobacteria 170, 174, 204
  see also leprosy; tuberculosis
Mycoplasma species 170, 178
myelopathy 292–3
myelophthisis 434
myocardial infarction (MI) 24
  complications 25–6
  ECG interpretation 15
  management 27
myocarditis 42
myopathy 300–1
myositis 246–7
myxoedema 341
myxoedematous coma 343
myxoma 43

N

Naegleria fowleri 169
nausea and vomiting 106–7
  food poisoning 180
  gastroenteritis 181–7
nebulizers 66
neck examination 4, 52, 114, 142
  goitre 348
nematodes (roundworms) 168, 214–15
neonatal thyrotoxicosis 347
nephritic syndrome 410, 414, 415
nephronophthisis 422
nephropathy, diabetic 320, 325
nephrotic syndrome 410–11, 414, 415
neuroendocrine tumours 368
  carcinoid tumours 370–1
  pancreatic endocrine tumours 369
  phaeochromocytoma 368
neurofibromatosis 310
neurology
  acute confusional state 266–7
  amyloidosis 471
  anterior-horn cell diseases 294–5
  blackouts 280–1
  cerebellar diseases 278–9
  chorea 274
  chronic kidney disease 405
  coma 268–9
  deafness 307
  dementia 270–1
  dystonia 275
  epilepsy 282–3
  facial nerve palsy 308–9
  Guillain–Barré syndrome 289
  hand wasting 290
  headache, acute 262–3
  headache, chronic 264–5
  myelopathy 292–3
  myopathy 300–1
  neurofibromatosis 310
  neuromuscular junction disease 298–9
  optic atrophy 304
  papilloedema 305
  Parkinsonism 272–3
  peripheral neuropathy 296–7
  rheumatoid arthritis 224
  stroke, haemorrhagic 286–7
  stroke, ischaemic 284–5
  Sturge–Weber syndrome 311
  tremor 276–7
  tuberous sclerosis 311
  vertigo 306
  visual loss, acute 302–3
  Von Hippel–Lindau disease 311
  walking disturbance 291
  weakness 288
neurology mnemonics
  5 Rs 285
  AAAAA 283
  ABCd 287
  ABSENCE 283
  ACTION 298
  ADVISE AND HEPARINISE 284
  APPLES 295
  ATAXIC 297
  BEATINGS 277
  CAFE NOIR 310
  CHOREA 274
  CRASH 280
  DANISH PASTRY 279
  DIDMOAD 304
  DIVINITY 270, 272, 278, 282, 292–3, 305, 307
  DOPAMINE 273
  FAMILIAL 270
  HAEMATOMA 286
  HEATING 297
  HITTING MEE 274, 275
  IMBALANCE 306
  INVITE/PASS IS FREE 267, 268
  IT'S THIN 296
  LARGE 297
  LEMS 299
  MADDENING 264
  OPTIC 303, 304
  PAIN ENDINGS HURT 296
  RAPID TAPS 276
  SICK 300
  A SKINNY MAN 294
  STAND UP 280
  THINNER 300
  TRAPPED 273
  VICIOUS 262
  VISION 303, 304, 305
  WIDENING 307
neuromuscular junction disease 298–9
neuropathic ulcers 321
neuropathy, peripheral 296–7
neutrophilia 450
nodular goitre 344
non-haemolytic febrile transfusion reaction (NHFTR) 490
non-Hodgkin lymphoma 464–5
normocytic anaemia 433
  haemolytic 436
nystagmus 279

O

obstructive pulmonary disease 58
obstructive sleep apnoea 94–5
occipital neuralgia 264
occupational lung diseases 76–7
oesophageal carcinoma 118–19
oesophageal varices 147, 148–9
oesophagitis 116–17
oestrogens
  excessive production 357, 360, 363
  hypercoagulability 485
Ollier syndrome 258
opacification, CXR 61

ophthalmopathy
    acute visual loss 302-3
    diabetic 321, 325
    Graves disease 345, 347
    rheumatoid arthritis 224
opportunistic infections 198, 199
optic atrophy 304
optic neuritis 303
oral glucose tolerance test (OGTT) 322
oral hypoglycaemics 328–9
oral ulceration 109
organophosphates 298
osmolar gap 378
osmotic diuresis 380
osteoarthritis
    causes 220–1
    clinical features 222
    investigations 223
    treatment 223
osteochondritis 221
osteogenesis imperfecta 254
osteomalacia 387, 390–1, 410
osteonecrosis (avascular necrosis) 221
osteoporosis 392–3
osteosarcoma 259
otitis media 307
ovarian failure
    causes 358
    clinical features 359
    delayed puberty 367
    investigations 360
    treatment 361
ovarian tumours 357, 428
    adenocarcinoma 429
oxalic acid stones 420, 421

P

P wave 14
packed cell volume (PCV) 432
Paget disease 394–5
pain
    abdominal 102–3
    back 256–7
    chest 2
    pleuritic 41
Pancoast tumour 92, 290
pancreatic tumours 163
    endocrine (PETs) 369
pancreatitis
    acute 136–7, 483
    ascites 150
    chronic 138–9
papillary necrosis 418
papillary thyroid carcinoma 349
papillitis 304, 305
papilloedema 304, 305
papova viruses 176
paraneoplastic syndromes 92
paraproteinaemia 250, 468, 485
    hyperviscosity 469
    multiple myeloma 466–7
parathyroid hormone (PTH)
    in hypercalcaemia 388, 389
    in hypocalcaemia 386, 387
Parkinson disease 272
Parkinsonism 272–3
    tremor 276
parotid enlargement 245
paroxysmal hemicrania 265
paroxysmal nocturnal haemoglobinuria (PNH) 437
    clinical features 438
    investigations 439
parvobacteria 173, 174
parvoviruses 176
    B19 (erythema infectiosum) 193
patent ductus arteriosus (PDA) 49
patent foramen ovale 48
peak expiratory flow rate (PEFR) 58–9
    asthma 65
'pepper-pot skull' 258
peptic ulcers 120–3
pericardial disease 40–1
pericardial effusion 41
pericardial rub 41
peripheral neuropathy 296–7
    diabetic 320, 325
peripheral vascular disease 320
peritoneal dialysis 407
peritonitis 102–3
pernicious anaemia 433, 446–7
pertechnate scan 346
Perthes disease 221
Peutz–Jeghers syndrome 130
phaeochromocytoma 368
phagocytosis dysfunction 476
Phalen test 253
Philadelphia chromosome 456
phosphate deficiency 391
phosphaturia 416
picornaviruses 177
pinta 207
pinworms (threadworms) 214
pituitary function tests 334
pituitary gland
    anatomy 332
    see also hypopituitarism
pituitary tumours 332, 333, 338
    hyperprolactinaemia 336
    prolactinoma 336–7
    treatment 335
plasma, examination in hyperlipidaemia 397
plasma cells, multiple myeloma 466–7
plasmacytoma 468
Plasmodium species 169, 186
    malaria 212–13
platelet disorders 480–1
    purpura 483
pleural effusion 53, 88–9
pleural plaques 61
pleuritic pain 41
Plummer–Vinson syndrome 118
pneumectomy 53
pneumoconiosis 76
pneumonia 62–3
    atypical 178–9
    community-acquired 178–9
    immunocompromised 179
    nosocomial 179
pneumothorax 53, 83, 86–7
POEMS syndrome 466
poikilocytosis 441
polyarteritis nodosa (PAN) 248
polycystic kidney disease 422, 423
polycystic ovaries syndrome (PCOS) 357, 359
    investigations 360
    treatment 361
polycythaemia 458, 485
polycythaemia rubra vera (PRV) 459
polydipsia 378, 380
polyglandular autoimmune syndromes (PGAS) 373
polymyositis 247
polyoma viruses 176
polyposis coli 130
polyuria 380
porphyria 398–9
porphyria cutanea tarda 399
portal hypertension 142, 146–7, 449
    ascites 150–1
    oesophageal varices 148–9
portal vein thrombosis 485
posterior reversible encephalopathy syndrome (PRES) 262
post-partum lymphocytic thyroiditis 344
postural hypotension 280, 281
potassium balance
    hyperkalaemia 384
    hypokalaemia 385
pox viruses 176
PQRST complex 13
PR interval 14
Prader–Willi syndrome 366
precocious puberty 359, 364–5
pretibial myxoedema 345
primary biliary cholangitis 158, 238
prions 171, 470
progestogen withdrawal bleed 360
progressive bulbar palsy 295
progressive muscular atrophy 295
prolactin 360
    hyperprolactinaemia 333, 334, 336–7
prolactinoma 335, 336–7
proliferative glomerulonephritis 414
proprioceptive loss 291
proteinuria 411
Proteus mirabilis 420
prothrombotic states 484
proton-pump inhibitors 123
protozoa 169
    gastroenteritis 186–7
    opportunistic infections 198
    see also amoeboid infections; *Plasmodium* species
proximal renal tubular disease 416
pseudogout (pyrophosphate arthropathy) 237
pseudohyperparathyroidism 387
pseudomembranous colitis 185
Pseudomonas aeruginosa 174
pseudopapilloedema 305
pseudoxanthoma elasticum 255
psoriatic arthropathy 228, 231

puberty
  delayed 359, 366–7
  precocious 359, 364–5
pulmonary embolism (PE) 96–7
pulmonary fibrosis 53
  causes 74
  idiopathic 75
  occupational lung diseases 76
pulmonary hypertension 98–9
pulmonary leucagglutinin reaction 490
pulmonary oedema 90
pulse 4, 5, 52
purine metabolism 234
purpura 482–3
  post-transfusion 491
pyrimidine synthesis 445
pyrophosphate arthropathy 237
pyruvate kinase deficiency 436
  investigations 439

Q

Q waves 14
Q-fever 170, 178, 210
QRS complex 15
QT interval 15

R

R wave 15
radio-iodine (^{131}I) 346
radiotherapy
  acute leukaemia 454
  Hodgkin lymphoma 463
  non-Hodgkin lymphoma 465
Ramsay–Hunt syndrome 309
rapidly progressive glomerulonephritis (RPGN) 414
rashes
  Epstein–Barr virus infection 195
  measles 192
  'slapped cheek' syndrome 193
  varicella (chicken pox) 193
  see also skin
Raynaud phenomenon 250
reactive arthritis 228, 231
REAL classification, non-Hodgkin lymphoma 465
rectal bleeding 113
red cell membrane defects 436
Reed–Sternberg cells 462
reflux oesophagitis 116
relapsing fever 208
renal amyloidosis 471
renal artery stenosis 413
renal cell carcinoma 424–5
renal cysts 422
renal enlargement 115
renal medicine
  acute kidney injury 402–3
  chronic kidney disease 404–7
  enlarged kidneys 422
  glomerulonephritis 414–15
  haematuria 408
  IgA nephropathy 409
  nephrotic syndrome 410–11
  polycystic kidney disease 423
  renal cell carcinoma 424–5
  renal tubular disease 416–17
  renovascular disease 412
  small kidneys 422
  stones 420–1
  urinary obstruction 418–19
renal medicine mnemonics
  ATN 402
  BANG'd UP 416
  CRASH 402
  CRUSHING 420
  FANCONI 416
  GLAD GRACE 404
  GROSS BLOOD 409
  KIDDNNEYS 407
  MISSHAPEN 423
  M-SPACE 408
  NEPHROTIC 410–11
  PAINT 402
  PAInts 414
  PAINTS 415
  PHONE 422
  REALMS 406
  SCARRING TUBES 405
  SNIPPING 402, 408, 418–19
  STENTABLE 412
  STIGMATA 408
  TIN 402
  TRAP IT 404
  TUBULAR pH 417
  VAN 402
  VICTORY 424
  VISA 404
renal stones 420–1
renal tubular disease 416–17
renovascular disease 402, 412–13
residual volume (RV) 58–9
respiratory acidosis 376
respiratory distress 70
respiratory examination 52
  clubbing 54
  patterns of lung disease 53
respiratory failure 56–7
respiratory function tests 58–9
respiratory medicine
  adult respiratory distress syndrome 91
  asthma 64–71
  bronchiectasis 80–1
  chest X-ray patterns 60–1
  COPD 72–3
  cyanosis 55
  cystic fibrosis 84–5
  lung abscess 82–3
  lung carcinoma 92–3
  obstructive sleep apnoea 94–5
  occupational lung diseases 76–7
  pleural effusion 88–9
  pneumonia 62–3
  pneumothorax 86–7
  pulmonary embolism 96–7
  pulmonary fibrosis 74–5
  pulmonary hypertension 98–9
  rheumatoid arthritis 224
  sarcoidosis 78–9
respiratory mnemonics
  BAN ME 88
  BLOBS 92
  BOMBERS 93
  BRONCHIECTATIC 80
  CABBIE 58
  CHANGE 98
  CHEST INSULATION 88
  COILED 90
  CRANE 63
  FANGS 60
  FINE shadows 60
  GRANULOMAS 78
  HARMFUL 62
  OSA 94
  PRATS 74
  RAID 74
  RAMP 70
  STINK 82
  STRIP 86
  TAME 66
  TIGHT 91
  TOXIC 91
restrictive airways disease 59
restrictive cardiomyopathy 45
reticular cell sarcoma 259
reticulocytosis 433
reticulo-nodular shadowing, CXR 60
retinal detachment/tear 302
retinitis pigmentosa 304
retinopathy
  diabetic 321, 325
  hypertensive 31
  hyperviscosity 469
Revised Jones Criteria 36–7
rhabdomyolysis 300
rheumatic fever 36–7, 228
rheumatoid arthritis 257
  clinical features 224–5
  epidemiology 226
  investigations 226
  treatment 227
rheumatoid factor 239
rheumatology
  autoimmune myositis 246–7
  back pain 256–7
  bone cysts 258
  bone sclerosis 259
  carpal tunnel syndrome 252–3
  collagen defects 254
  cryoglobulinaemia 251
  crystal arthropathies 234–7
  multisystemic autoimmune disease 238–9
  osteoarthritis 220–3
  Raynaud phenomenon 250
  rheumatoid arthritis 224–7
  scleroderma 242–3
  septic arthritis 232–3
  seronegative arthropathies 228–31
  Sjögren syndrome 244–5
  systemic lupus erythematosus 240–1
  vasculitides 248–9
rheumatology mnemonics
  ANNOYIN' SCARS 224
  ART 235
  ATTACK 235
  BONE 1M 257, 258
  CHONDRO 254
  CRACKING 242
  CRAC(K)ING 246

  CREST 242
  EELLAASSTTIC 255
  ELASTIc 254
  ELASTIC 255
  FINALITY 221
  GOA 231
  GOUTY 234
  IT'S ACHING MEE 220
  LOAF 253
  MADDENING PAIN 256
  OSTEOCLAST 254
  OWTCHA 221
  PAIN 251
  PAINT 248
  PAINT POT 250
  PENNIES 258
  PENNIEs 259
  POMEGRANATE 252
  RAPERS 228
  SAFE 258
  SALIVATE 245
  SAUNA 251
  SCARED SLOUCHERS 229, 230
  SIDS 253
  SOS ANA…SOS ANA 240
  SURROUNDINGS 249
  WILLIAM 255
  XXX SURROUNDINGS 244
Richter syndrome 461
rickets 390–1
rickettsia 170, 210–11
Riddoch's sign 279
Riedel thyroiditis 340
ringworm 169
Rocky-mountain spotted fever 170, 211
rotavirus 177
Rotor syndrome 140
roundworms (nematodes) 168, 214–15
rubella 192

S

sacro-iliitis 229
Salmonella species
  food poisoning 180
  typhoid/enteric fever 182
sanctuary sites, acute leukaemia 454
sarcoidosis 78–9
scabies 191
Schilling test 447
schistosomiasis 168, 217
Schmidt syndrome 373
Schober test 229
scleroderma 242–3
scrub typhus 211
scurvy 482
seizures *see* epilepsy
selective oestrogen receptor modulators (SERMS) 393
seminoma 426
sensory disturbance
  Guillain–Barré syndrome 289
  peripheral neuropathy 296–7
sepsis 6 29
septic arthritis 232–3
seronegative arthropathies 228
  ankylosing spondylitis 230
  clinical features 229
  psoriatic arthropathy 231
  reactive arthritis 231
Sertoli-cell tumours 427, 428
severe combined immunodeficiency (SCID) 477
sex cord–stromal tumours
  ovarian 428
  testicular 427
Shigella gastroenteritis 185
shock 28–9
short Synacthen test (SST) 351
shoulder, rheumatoid arthritis 225
SIADH 378, 379
sick sinus syndrome 23
sickle cell anaemia 433, 440–1
  clinical features 438, 440
  hyposplenism 472
  investigations 439
sickle cell crises 440, 441
sickle cell trait 441
sideroblastic anaemia 432
silicosis 76
sinus venosus defect 48
Sjögren syndrome 244–5
skin
  adrenal insufficiency 351
  bacterial infections 172
  borreliosis 208
  chronic kidney disease 405
  Cushing syndrome 352
  dermatomyositis 246
  diabetic complications 320, 321
  herpes simplex infections 194
  HIV infection 197, 198
  leprosy 205
  leptospirosis 209
  nematode infections 214–15
  sarcoidosis 78
  scleroderma 242
  systemic lupus erythematosus 240
  thyroid disease 341, 345
  tuberculin testing 202
  tuberculosis 201
  see also rashes
'slapped cheek' syndrome 193
slipped capital femoral epiphysis 221
small cell lung carcinoma 93
small-fibre neuropathies 297
sodium balance
  hypernatraemia 381
  hyponatraemia 378–9
sodium-glucose transport protein-2 (SGLT-2) inhibitors 329
somatostatinoma 369
Somogyi effect, insulin therapy 327
sore throat 108
spermatogenesis 363
spermatozoa defects 363
spherocytosis 432, 436
  investigations 439
spider naevi 142
spinal cord injury 292–3
spinal cord tumours 257
spinal muscular atrophy (SMA) 294
spine
  osteoarthritis 222
  rheumatoid arthritis 225
spirochaetes 170
spirometry 58–9
splenectomy 472–3
splenomegaly 115, 147, 449
  amyloidosis 471
  thrombocytopenia 480, 483
spondylosis 222, 229, 257
squamous cell carcinoma, lung 93
ST segment 15, 24
'staghorn' calculi 420, 421
staphylococci 172, 174
  food poisoning 180
  pneumonia 178, 179
Starling's Law 33
statins, in diabetes mellitus 324
steatorrhoea 138
stem-cell transplantation
  chronic lymphocytic leukaemia 461
  Hodgkin lymphoma 463
  non-Hodgkin lymphoma 465
steroid synthesis 356
steroids
  in adrenal insufficiency 351
  in asthma 67, 68
  in inflammatory bowel disease 129
  in rheumatoid arthritis 227
  side-effects 69
Still disease 224, 228
stomatocytosis 436
Strachan syndrome 304
streptococci 172, 174
  pneumonia 178, 179
  post-infective glomerulonephritis 414
stroke
  haemorrhagic 286–7
  ischaemic 284–5
Strongyloides stercoralis 214
Sturge–Weber syndrome 311
subacute combined degeneration of the cord 446
sulphonylureas 328
SUNCT 265
superior vena cava obstruction (SVCO) 92
supraventricular tachycardia (SVT) with BBB 17
Synacthen tests 351
syphilis 190, 206–7
systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) 240–1
systemic sclerosis 242–3

T

T waves 15
tachycardia 16–17, 25
  atrial fibrillation 18–19
  ventricular 20–1
Takayasu disease 248
tapeworms (cestodes) 168, 216
target cells 441
T-cell disorders 477
temporal arteritis 264, 265
tension pneumothorax 86
teratoma
  ovarian 428
  testicular 426

testicular failure 363
  delayed puberty 367
testicular tumours 426–7
testosterone 363
thalassaemia 432, 442–3
  hyposplenism 472
  investigations 439
theca-cell tumours 428
thin basement membrane disease 409
thioureas 346
thiazolinediones 329
thoracoplasty 53
throat, sore 108
thrombocythaemia, hyposplenism 473
thrombocytopenia 480
  disseminated intravascular coagulation 486–7
  post-transfusion purpura 491
thrombolysis 483
thrombosis 484–5
thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura (TTP) 412
thunderclap headache 262
thyroid disease
  goitre 348
  hyperthyroidism 344–7
  hypothyroidism 340–3
  tumours 349
thyroid function tests
  hyperthyroidism 346
  hypopituitarism 334
  hypothyroidism 342
thyroidectomy 346
thyrotoxic storm 347
thyroxine treatment 342
  in myxoedematous coma 343
tinea cruris 191
Tinel test 253
tobacco amblyopia 304
torsades de pointes 17
total lung capacity (TLC) 58–9
tourniquet Hess test 482
Toxocara canis 215
Toxoplasma gondii 169
transfer factor (diffusion rate, KCO) 58–9
transthyretin 470
transudates 150
  causes 88, 90
trematodes 168, 217
tremor 276–7
  intention tremor 279
Treponema species 170
  non-venereal infections 207
  T. pallidum 206
Trichinella spiralis 215
Trichomonas vaginalis 169
Trichuria trichuris (whipworm) 214
trigeminal autonomic cephalgias (TACs) 265
trigeminal neuralgia 264, 265
trypanosomiasis 169
tuberculosis
  clinical features 200–1
  investigations 202
  opportunistic infection 198, 199
  prophylaxis 203
  treatment 203
tuberous sclerosis 311, 422
tubulo-interstitial nephritis, causes 402
Turcot syndrome 130
Turner syndrome 358, 359, 367
  XY mosaic 361
typhoid/enteric fever 182
typhus 170, 211

U

U waves 15
ulceration
  diabetic 321, 325
  gastric neoplasia 124
  genital 190–1
  inflammatory bowel disease 126–9
  oral 109
  peptic 120–3
ulcerative colitis 126–9
ulnar nerve compression 290
upper motor neurone lesions 288, 291
  facial nerve 308–9
Ureaplasma 170
ureteric obstruction, causes 402
urethral discharge 188
uric acid
  hyperuricaemia 234-6
  urinary stones 420, 421
urinalysis
  acute renal failure 403
  chronic kidney disease 406
  diabetes diagnosis 322
  diabetes monitoring 323
  nephrotic syndrome 411
  stones 421
urinary obstruction 418–19
urinary retention 402
urine electrophoresis 411

V

vaginal discharge 188
vagus hypertonia 23
valvular heart disease
  aortic regurgitation 9
  aortic stenosis 8
  mitral regurgitation 11
  mitral stenosis 10
  murmurs 6–7
varicella (chicken pox) 193
vascular dementia 271
vasculitides 248–9, 485
  classification 238
vasovagal syncope 280, 281
venous stasis/hypertension 482
ventricular fibrillation 17
ventricular septal defect (VSD) 49
ventricular tachycardia 17, 20–1, 25
vertebrobasilar insufficiency 303
vertigo 281, 306
Vibrio cholerae 183
Vincent's angina 170, 208
VIPoma 369
viral exanthema 192–3
Virchow's triad 484
viruses 171, 176–7
  Epstein–Barr virus 195
  herpes simplex 194
  HIV 196–9
  opportunistic infections 198, 199
  septic arthritis 232
visual impairment
  acute 302–3
  diabetic ophthalmopathy 321
vitamin B1 deficiency 304
vitamin B6 445
vitamin B12 deficiency 304, 433
  megaloblastic anaemia 446–7
vitamin B12 metabolism 444–5
vitamin C deficiency 482
vitamin D
  deficiency 391
  physiology 390
vitamin K deficiency 483
vitreal haemorrhage 302
vomiting 106–7
  food poisoning 180
  gastroenteritis 181–7
Von Hippel–Lindau disease 311, 372, 422, 424

W

Waldenström macroglobulinaemia 469
walking disturbance 291
water-deprivation test 334, 383
weakness 288
  facial nerve palsy 308–9
  Guillain–Barré syndrome 289
  hand wasting 290
  neuromuscular junction disease 298–9
  peripheral neuropathy 296–7
Wegener granulomatosis *see* granulomatosis with polyangiitis
Weil disease 170, 209
Werner–Morrison syndrome 369
whipworm 214
Williams syndrome 255, 388
Wilson disease 161
Wiskott–Aldrich syndrome 477, 480, 483
Wolff–Parkinson–White syndrome 16

X

xanthomata 396, 397
X-linked agammaglobulinaemia 476
Xmas disease 489

Y

yaws 207
yeasts 169
  see also candidiasis
yellow nail syndrome 88
Yersinia gastroenteritis 185

Z

Zollinger–Ellison syndrome 120, 369